

# English for Pharmacy Writing and Oral Communication

*Miriam Díaz-Gilbert*

*symptoms*  
*important part of communication*  
*labored breathing, coughing, and chest constriction*  
*various forms of words and to use*  
*tightness*  
*pneumonic*  
*Dandruff is dead skin that falls from a person's head*  
*pharmacist recommended*  
*persistence*  
*superficial wound*  
*tissue that can cause pain, redness, and swell*  
*A good understanding of vocabulary words in pharmacy*  
*front of an audience, he becomes very nervous and*



English for Pharmacy Writing  
and Oral Communication



---

# English for Pharmacy Writing and Oral Communication

---

Miriam Díaz-Gilbert

*Assistant Director, Writing Center  
Lecturer of English, Humanities Department  
University of Sciences in Philadelphia  
Philadelphia, PA*

*Acquisitions Editor:* John Goucher  
*Managing Editor:* Andrea M. Klingler  
*Marketing Manager:* Christen D. Murphy  
*Creative Director:* Doug Smock  
*Compositor:* International Typesetting and Composition

Copyright © 2009 Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, a Wolters Kluwer business.

351 West Camden Street  
Baltimore, MD 21201

530 Walnut Street  
Philadelphia, PA 19106

Printed in the United States of America.

All rights reserved. This book is protected by copyright. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, including as photocopies or scanned-in or other electronic copies, or utilized by any information storage and retrieval system without written permission from the copyright owner, except for brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. Materials appearing in this book prepared by individuals as part of their official duties as U.S. government employees are not covered by the above-mentioned copyright. To request permission, please contact Lippincott Williams & Wilkins at 530 Walnut Street, Philadelphia, PA 19106, via email at [permissions@lww.com](mailto:permissions@lww.com), or via website at [lww.com](http://lww.com) (products and services).

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

#### DISCLAIMER

Care has been taken to confirm the accuracy of the information present and to describe generally accepted practices. However, the authors, editors, and publisher are not responsible for errors or omissions or for any consequences from application of the information in this book and make no warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the currency, completeness, or accuracy of the contents of the publication. Application of this information in a particular situation remains the professional responsibility of the practitioner; the clinical treatments described and recommended may not be considered absolute and universal recommendations.

The authors, editors, and publisher have exerted every effort to ensure that drug selection and dosage set forth in this text are in accordance with the current recommendations and practice at the time of publication. However, in view of ongoing research, changes in government regulations, and the constant flow of information relating to drug therapy and drug reactions, the reader is urged to check the package insert for each drug for any change in indications and dosage and for added warnings and precautions. This is particularly important when the recommended agent is a new or infrequently employed drug.

Some drugs and medical devices presented in this publication have Food and Drug Administration (FDA) clearance for limited use in restricted research settings. It is the responsibility of the health care provider to ascertain the FDA status of each drug or device planned for use in their clinical practice.

To purchase additional copies of this book, call our customer service department at **(800) 638-3030** or fax orders to **(301) 223-2320**. International customers should call **(301) 223-2300**.

Visit Lippincott Williams & Wilkins on the Internet: <http://www.lww.com>. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins customer service representatives are available from 8:30 am to 6:00 pm, EST.

*I dedicate this book to all of the pharmacy students, pharmacy technicians, and practicing pharmacists I have had the great pleasure of teaching and learning from, and to the future pharmacy professionals I will teach. They are the true inspiration for my writing this much-needed book. May they learn from it in good health. I also dedicate this book to my loving family for their everlasting support and love—my husband Jonathan, my daughter Jonna, and my son Sebastian. I love you!*





# Preface

---

*English for Pharmacy Writing and Oral Communication* is a language skills textbook that incorporates pharmacy and medical language and knowledge. The textbook is intended for pharmacy students, pharmacy technicians, and practicing pharmacists whose first or best language is not English. The book integrates vocabulary, pronunciation, listening, reading, and writing skills, along with idiomatic language. *English for Pharmacy Writing and Oral Communication* has been written with the following goals in mind: (i) to serve the English language needs of students and professionals studying and practicing pharmacy; (ii) to assist pharmacy faculty, who teach pharmacy, and pharmacy technician students, whose first or best language is not English, with their pharmacy language learning needs; (iii) to help pharmacy students, pharmacy technicians, and practicing pharmacists develop and gain communication confidence; and (iv) to help those for whom English is not their first or best language to master a solid foundation of pharmacy-related language dedicated to patient communication and care.

## Organizational Philosophy

Effective and acceptable writing and oral communication skills are essential to success. In pharmacy, lack of good communication skills can lead to misspellings of words and drug names, medication errors, and much more. For pharmacy students, pharmacy technicians, and practicing pharmacists whose first or best language is not English, assessing patients, counseling patients, and documenting subjective information from patients who sometimes use idiomatic expressions can be challenging. Assessing, counseling, and documenting require a good command of spoken and written language and acceptable pronunciation and listening comprehension skills, as well as a solid knowledge of pharmacy-related language dedicated to patient communication and care.

*English for Pharmacy Writing and Oral Communication* is written with the learner in mind. The language and learning activities are presented in a straightforward, meaningful, purposeful, and engaging manner. The textbook and accompanying audio files found on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diazgilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diazgilbert)) will help prepare students to enter their pharmacy education and the profession with the communication skills, knowledge, and confidence essential to function effectively in the pharmacy health care setting.

## Chapter Organization

The design of each chapter provides students opportunities to acquire new medical and pharmacy-related language, to practice and reinforce new skills in an interactive and engaging manner, to retain these new language skills and knowledge, and to then reinforce them in subsequent chapters. Each chapter is dedicated to a body system and contains meaningful and purposeful medical and pharmacy-related language related to that body system.

Chapters 1 through 12 are organized similarly. Each chapter begins with a Pre-Assessment section containing true/false and multiple choice questions to gauge the student's existing knowledge of language related to that body system, medical conditions, and general medical and pharmacy-related language. The Post-Assessment section at the end of each chapter contains true/false and multiple choice questions and listening comprehension dialogues followed by multiple choice questions to gauge the learner's thorough understanding of the chapter's content and his or her listening comprehension skills.

The first half of each chapter is devoted to the following written language skills and exercises:

**Medical Vocabulary**—In this section, students are presented with medical vocabulary related to the chapter body system.

**Parts of Speech**—In this section, students will learn, develop, enhance, and demonstrate their knowledge of the English parts of speech and word forms using sentences related to the chapter body system.

**Typical Medical Conditions and Patient Complaints**—In this section, students will learn, develop, enhance, and demonstrate their knowledge of the English parts of speech and word forms using sentences related to typical medical conditions and patient complaints related to the chapter body system.

**Medical Vocabulary Comprehension**—In this section, students will demonstrate their understanding and comprehension of the content presented in the Parts of Speech and Word Forms section and in the Typical Medical Conditions and Patient Complaints section by answering true/false multiple choice questions.

**Writing Exercise**—In this section, students will demonstrate their comprehension and their ability to write about designated medical conditions and diseases presented in the chapter.

These sections will help students to learn, read, recognize, and retain language found in written medical and pharmacy-related language in the context of the body system, medical conditions, and patient complaints. The student will also practice his or her reading comprehension, writing, and spelling skills by completing the various exercises.

The second half of each chapter is devoted to the following aural, oral, and pronunciation skills and exercises:

**Listening and Pronunciation**—In this section, students will listen to the audio files found on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) for correct pronunciation of the medical vocabulary presented in the Medical Vocabulary section and will practice the pronunciation of the provided terms.

**Listening/Spelling**—In this section, students will listen to dictated sentences in the audio files found on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) related to the chapter, and then write down what they hear. Students will integrate their listening and writing skills and practice and demonstrate their ability to write what they hear.

**Pharmacist/Patient Dialogues**—In this section, students will listen to authentic dialogues in the audio files found on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) typically found during pharmacist/patient communication in a pharmacy and other pharmacy-related health care settings. The dialogues integrate the content from the chapter with authentic patient medical conditions and disorders, prescriptions, side effects, and general patient counseling. Students will practice listening to authentic spoken communication between a pharmacist and patients and then demonstrate their comprehension skills by answering a series of multiple choice questions.

**Idiomatic Expressions**—In this section, students will learn idioms that contain body parts vocabulary. They will learn the meaning of the idioms and listen to mini-dialogues in the audio files found on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) that contain the idiom. The students will then demonstrate their comprehension through a short multiple choice exercise.

These activities will help students to learn, recognize, aurally and orally comprehend, write, and pronounce language commonly encountered in pharmacy and medical settings and in pharmacist/patient communication. Each chapter also contains a sidebar of English sounds that are difficult for speakers of other languages to pronounce.

Chapter 13 consists of a Pre-Assessment section containing true/false and multiple choice questions that gauge the student's knowledge of pharmacy documentation vocabulary, medical and pharmacy abbreviations, and pharmacy documentation forms. The Post-Assessment section contains true/false and multiple choice questions to gauge the learner's comprehension of that chapter's content. The chapter is devoted to the following written pharmacy documentation skills and exercises:

**Pharmacy Documentation Vocabulary**—In this section, students are presented with key vocabulary related to written pharmacy documentation.

**Pharmacy Documentation Vocabulary and Abbreviations**—In this section, students are presented with abbreviations related to medical and pharmacy documentation. The students will practice and demonstrate their ability to recognize pharmacy documentation language and abbreviations through fill-in-the-blank and multiple choice exercises.

**Pharmacy and Medical Abbreviations Exercises**—In this section, students will practice and demonstrate their ability to read written documentation in the form of short passages and provide abbreviations for designated vocabulary words from the passages.

**Abbreviations Writing Exercises**—In this section, students will put into practice their ability to comprehend abbreviations by rewriting abbreviated sentences into complete sentences.

**Pharmacy Documentation Abbreviations Comprehension**—In this section, students will demonstrate comprehension of written pharmacy documentation and abbreviations presented in the chapter by answering multiple choice and true/false questions.

**Pharmacy Documentation and Standardized Patient Forms**—In this section, students will be introduced to the SOAP note and the Patient History and Physical Database models of patient pharmacy documentation. Students will be introduced to a patient scenario and will practice completing a SOAP note and a Patient History and Physical Database to demonstrate their comprehension.

**Pharmacy Documentation Forms Comprehension**—In this section, students will demonstrate their understanding of the patient scenarios documentation and abbreviations in the patient scenario by answering true/false and multiple choice questions.

These sections will help students to read, recognize, and write patient pharmacy documentation and abbreviations, and to successfully complete a SOAP note and the Patient History and Physical Database. Students will practice and enhance their written pharmacy documentation skills.

## Using the Textbook and the Website

*English for Pharmacy Writing and Oral Communication* and the accompanying website have been designed to meet, develop, and enhance the English language needs of pharmacy students and professionals whose first or best language is not English. It can be used as a supplement in a pharmacy communication class, as a textbook in ESL classes composed of pharmacy technician students and pharmacy students, and as a self-taught textbook for practicing pharmacy technicians and practicing pharmacists who cannot be in a classroom setting but who are able to use the textbook and website at their own pace and in the comfort of their home, the workplace, or school. The website can be accessed at [thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert).

## For Instructors and Students

*English for Pharmacy Writing and Oral Communication* contains several appendices to further aid learning. The online Answer Key provides the answers to the exercises in each chapter (available at [thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)). Students and instructors can quickly check answers as soon as they complete an exercise and monitor their progress. Appendix A contains all the scripts from the pharmacist/patient dialogues and the mini-dialogues that are on the accompanying website. Students and instructors can quickly refer to the scripts for further practice or for clarification. Appendix B contains a sample Pharmacotherapy Patient Work-Up, which students and instructors will find a useful additional source of patient pharmacy documentation.



# Acknowledgments

---

I would like to thank the reviewers of my book proposal and my manuscript. Their fabulous reviews, positive feedback, and support kept me energized as I wrote each chapter. I can't express my gratitude enough to my Managing Editor, Karen Ruppert. I could not have done it without her support and enthusiasm for each chapter. We laughed out loud a lot through our e-mail exchanges. I would also like to thank David Troy, Senior Acquisitions Editor, and Barrett Kroger, Acquisitions Editor, for their enthusiasm and support through the writing of the manuscript. A great big thanks to Andrea Klingler, Managing Editor, Michael Marino, Managing Editor-Ancillaries, Ed Schultes, Jr. and Freddie Patane from Media Services at Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Michael Licisyn, and to voice over artists Michael Yurcaba, Deneane Richburg and Karen Ballerini for their enthusiastic participation in the success of my book. And to Rasika Mathur, for assisting me with "marathon" proofing.

Finally, I want to thank my student staff and tutoring staff in the writing center for their support, for being excited for me, for putting up with my kookiness, and for patiently listening to my dialogue ideas. They are Jenny, Melanie, Gayana, Sneha, Alice, Tonia, Jamie, Judi, Norma, Michelle, and Mary Ellen.



# Reviewers

---

**Rachel Abrishami, PharmD**

USC/Ralphs Community Pharmacy Resident  
University of Southern California  
Compton, CA

**Linda Albrecht, RPh, MBA**

Instructor and Externship Coordinator  
Richland College, UT Austin  
Arlington, TX

**Jennifer Borowski, PharmD**

Assistant Professor  
Long Island University and Bronx East  
Montefiore Medical Center  
Bronx, NY

**Tracy Call-Schmidt, MSN, FNP**

Assistant Professor  
University of Utah  
Salt Lake City, UT

**Shelley Chambers-Fox, PhD**

Associate Professor  
Washington State University  
Pullman, WA

**Patricia Darbshire, PharmD**

Purdue University  
Lafayette, IN

**Beverly Hawkins, CPhT**

Lab Instructor  
AH/Pharm Tech  
Chattanooga State Community College  
Chattanooga, TN

**Karl Hess, PharmD**

Community Pharmacy Practice Resident  
University of Southern California  
Los Angeles, CA

**Scott Higgins, MA**

Technology Education College  
Columbus, OH

**Doris C. Kalamut, RPh, BScPhm**

Coordinator in Professional Practice  
University of Toronto  
Toronto, Ontario

**Candace Smith, PharmD**

Associate Clinical Professor  
Clinical Pharmacy Practice Department  
St. John's University  
College of Pharmacy and Allied Health Professions  
Queens, NY

**Kristy J. Spetz, PharmD**

Concord Pharmacy  
Glen Mills, PA





# Contents

---

Preface vii

Acknowledgments xi

Reviewers xiii

**Chapter 1: Skin, Hair, and Nails** 1

**Chapter 2: Ears and Eyes** 25

**Chapter 3: Mouth and Nose** 51

**Chapter 4: Endocrine and Lymphatic System** 77

**Chapter 5: Chest, Lung, and Respiratory System** 103

**Chapter 6: Heart and Cardiovascular System** 129

**Chapter 7: The Abdomen and Gastrointestinal System** 155

**Chapter 8: The Musculoskeletal System** 181

**Chapter 9: Neurologic System and Mental Health** 207

**Chapter 10: The Urinary System** 231

**Chapter 11: Hepatic System** 253

**Chapter 12: Reproductive System** 275

**Chapter 13: Writing Pharmacy Documentation** 301

**Appendix A: Dialogues** 333

**Appendix B: Pharmacotherapy Workup Notes** 393

Index 401



English for Pharmacy Writing  
and Oral Communication



## PRE-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ A **scar** is a cut on the skin.
2. \_\_\_\_ **Dandruff** is dead skin that falls from a person's head.
3. \_\_\_\_ **Flaky** is an adjective form.
4. \_\_\_\_ Some individuals allergic to certain detergents can develop a very **itchy rash** on their hands.
5. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **blister** is blistery.
6. \_\_\_\_ Irritants such as solvents and cosmetics do not **trigger** contact dermatitis.
7. \_\_\_\_ **Prickly heat** can cause a skin rash.
8. \_\_\_\_ **Blisters** on the toes and feet, which may **ooze** a clear or bloody liquid, can be caused by wearing brand new shoes or shoes that are too tight.
9. \_\_\_\_ A **rough, scaly** patch of skin is very moist.
10. \_\_\_\_ The noun form of **itchy** is itch.
11. \_\_\_\_ **Brittle** nails are strong.
12. \_\_\_\_ **Athlete's foot** is a fungal infection that causes itching and burning between the toes.
13. \_\_\_\_ If **pus** is produced in an infected part of the body, the infected part is healing itself.
14. \_\_\_\_ If a person is allergic to penicillin, he or she can **break out in hives**.
15. \_\_\_\_ The word **scarred** is a past tense verb and adjective form.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ "It hurts a lot when I **bump the area**" means:
  - a. when I hit the area
  - b. when I massage the area
  - c. when I rub the area
2. \_\_\_\_ If you are **tearing your hair out** while sitting in a traffic jam on your way to the pharmacy, you are:
  - a. pulling your hair, one strand at a time
  - b. very angry and anxious
  - c. breaking off the split ends

3. \_\_\_\_\_ A **cluster of lesions** on the arm means:
  - a. many scabs
  - b. a few scars
  - c. a group of wounds
4. \_\_\_\_\_ He passed the exam **by the skin of his teeth** means:
  - a. he had a skin rash on the day of the exam
  - b. he is an expert and very experienced
  - c. he almost failed the exam
5. \_\_\_\_\_ If a patient complains of **flaky** skin on the head, the patient most likely has:
  - a. dandruff
  - b. alopecia
  - c. head lice
6. \_\_\_\_\_ A common skin condition in adolescents is:
  - a. acne
  - b. sunburn
  - c. impetigo
7. \_\_\_\_\_ A **keloid** is:
  - a. brittle
  - b. scar tissue
  - c. a laceration
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The verb and adjective from of **laceration**:
  - a. lacerated
  - b. lacerate
  - c. laceration
9. \_\_\_\_\_ A **zit** is another word for:
  - a. scab
  - b. wound
  - c. pimple
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient complained that her fingernail was **oozing pus**. This could indicate she has:
  - a. a brittle nail
  - b. a sharp nail
  - c. an ingrown nail

How did you do? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

## MEDICAL VOCABULARY

---

A good understanding of vocabulary words in pharmacy is very important for communication with professors, fellow students, patients, and coworkers. Knowledge and understanding of vocabulary leads to successful communication and success as a pharmacy student, as a pharmacy technician, and as a practicing pharmacist. You may already know many of the vocabulary words in this chapter, but for words that are unfamiliar, pay careful attention to them and make every effort to know their correct spelling, meaning, and pronunciation. It is a good idea to keep a list of new words and to look up these new words in a bilingual dictionary or dictionary in your first language. A good command of pharmacy-related vocabulary and good pronunciation of vocabulary will help to prevent embarrassing mistakes and increase effective verbal communication skills.

## Skin Vocabulary

abscess	flaky	rupture
acne	gash	scabies
birthmark	hangnail	scabs
black nail	hives	scales
black toe	inflammation	scar
blister	irritation	scrape
boils	itch	scratch
break out	keloid	shingles
bruise	laceration	sore
bump	lesion	spider bite
chiggers	moist	superficial
clear up	mole	sweat
cracked	ooze	tick bite
crusty	patch	ulcers
cyst	pimple	wart
dermatitis	pins and needles	wound
diaper rash	prickly heat rash	wrinkles
dry	psoriasis	zit
eczema	pus	
excrete	pustules	

## Hair Vocabulary

alopecia	fine	scalp
coarse	hair loss	silky
dandruff	head lice	
dry	oily	

## Nail Vocabulary

black nail	cuticle	peeling nail
black toe	floating	splitting nail
brittle	fungal infection	
clubbing	ingrown nail	

## PARTS OF SPEECH

A good understanding of parts of speech, such as verbs, nouns, adjectives, and adverbs, is important for successful communication when speaking or writing. It is equally important to know the various forms of words and to use them appropriately.

## Word Forms

The table below lists the main forms of some terms that you will likely encounter in pharmacy practice. Review the table and then do the exercises that follow to assess your understanding.

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v) —Past Tense	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
a blister	to blister; blistered	blistery	
a boil	to boil; boiled	boiling; boiled	
brittleness		brittle	brittly
a bruise	to bruise; bruised	bruised	
a bump	to bump; bumped	bumpy	
a crack	to crack; cracked	cracked; cracking	
a crust	to crust; crusted	crusty; crusting	
dryness	to dry; dried	dry; dried; drying	dryly
eczema		eczematous	
excretion	to excrete; excreted	excreted	
flakes; flakiness	to flake; flaked	flaky	flakily
inflammation	to inflame; inflamed	inflamed; inflammatory	
irritation; irritant	to irritate; irritated	irritable; irritated; irritating	irritably
itch; itchiness	to itch; itched	itchy; itching	
laceration	to lacerate; lacerated	lacerated	
moistness	to moisten; moistened	moist	moistly
oil; oiliness	to oil; oiled	oily; oiled	
ooze	to ooze; oozed	oozy	
a patch	to patch; patched	patchy; patched	
a pimple		pimpley; pimples	pimpler
psoriasis			psoriatic
pus		pusy*	
a rupture	to rupture; ruptured	rupturing; ruptured	
a scab	to scab; scabbed	scabby; scabbed	
a scar	to scar; scarred	scarred; scarring	
a scrape	to scrap; scraped	scraped	
a sore		sore	sorely
sweat	to sweat; sweated	sweaty; sweating	sweatily
a swell	to swell; swelled	swollen; swelling; swelled	
an ulcer; an ulceration		ulcerated	
a wound	to wound; wounded	wounded; wounding	

\*Caution: When *pusy* is pronounced (p<sup>oo</sup> s'ē), the speaker is referring to a cat, as in *pusy cat*, or to a gentle person, or using it as a vulgar word to refer to a female sexual organ or to a male who is weak. However, when used in *pusy sore*, *pusy* is pronounced (p<sup>ū</sup> s'ē).



**Word Forms Exercise**

Read the following sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv.

1. Her lips are **cracked** as a result of the cold weather.  
cracked \_\_\_\_\_
2. The **rash** on her skin is very **itchy**.  
rash \_\_\_\_\_ itchy \_\_\_\_\_
3. Her scalp is **dry** but her hair is **oily**.  
dry \_\_\_\_\_ oily \_\_\_\_\_
4. She **dried** her skin completely before she applied the ointment.  
dried \_\_\_\_\_
5. The **scab** did not heal well and now the area is **scarred**.  
scab \_\_\_\_\_ scarred \_\_\_\_\_
6. It was not a superficial **wound**, but a deep **laceration**.  
wound \_\_\_\_\_ laceration \_\_\_\_\_
7. She **lacerated** her hand while opening the sharp lid of the cat food can.  
lacerated \_\_\_\_\_
8. The **wound** was filled with **pus**.  
wound \_\_\_\_\_ pus \_\_\_\_\_
9. Keep the sterile gauze on the **laceration** and be careful not to **wound** it again.  
laceration \_\_\_\_\_ wound \_\_\_\_\_
10. Her fingernails left big **scratch** marks on her **itchy** skin.  
scratch \_\_\_\_\_ itchy \_\_\_\_\_
11. The **boil** under her skin **ruptured**.  
boil \_\_\_\_\_ ruptured \_\_\_\_\_
12. The new body lotion she rubbed on her skin **irritated** her skin.  
irritated \_\_\_\_\_
13. If he doesn't get treatment for his acne, his face is going to become more **pimply**.  
pimply \_\_\_\_\_
14. He **scraped** his already **bruised** knees after he fell off his bike again.  
scraped \_\_\_\_\_ bruised \_\_\_\_\_
15. When she is speaking in front of an audience, she becomes very nervous and her hands become very **sweaty**.  
sweaty \_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

**Typical Medical Conditions and Patient Complaints**

The sentences below contain vocabulary that describes and explains typical medical conditions, diseases, symptoms, and patient complaints that a pharmacist encounters. Read the sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv. Look up words you do not know in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

1. **Acne** is a skin condition that many adolescents and some adults experience, usually on the face. The acne, which is also called **pimples**, can consist of **white heads** or **black heads**. White heads are pimples that are white in color, and black heads are black in color.  
acne \_\_\_\_ pimples \_\_\_\_ white heads \_\_\_\_ black heads \_\_\_\_
2. After washing the dishes with a new liquid detergent, the woman's hands and wrists **broke out** in a very itchy rash. The pharmacist recommended an over-the-counter ointment, which stopped the **itchy rash**. Soon the woman stopped **scratching** her hands and wrists, and the rash **cleared up**.  
broke out \_\_\_\_ itchy \_\_\_\_ rash \_\_\_\_ scratching \_\_\_\_ cleared up \_\_\_\_
3. Some individuals develop a **keloid** after a **wound** or a surgical incision has healed. The keloid is a thick **scar tissue**.  
keloid \_\_\_\_ wound \_\_\_\_ scar tissue \_\_\_\_
4. Another word for **alopecia** is baldness, which is hair loss.  
alopecia \_\_\_\_
5. It is not uncommon for children to contract **head lice**, wingless insects that live in their hair or scalp, from other children.  
head lice \_\_\_\_
6. People with **dandruff** will experience **dry, itchy scalp**. Whether or not they **scratch** their head, **flakes** of dead skin can be seen on their hair and on their clothes, especially on their shoulders.  
dandruff \_\_\_\_ dry \_\_\_\_ itchy \_\_\_\_ scalp \_\_\_\_ scratch \_\_\_\_ flakes \_\_\_\_
7. **Brittle** nails break easily.  
brittle \_\_\_\_
8. A **scab** is mainly dry blood that forms over a cut or a **wound** on the skin. If it does not heal properly, the scab may **ooze pus** and become infected.  
scab \_\_\_\_ wound \_\_\_\_ ooze \_\_\_\_ pus \_\_\_\_
9. The young boy's knees became **inflamed** after he fell off his skateboard. Not only did he **scrape** his right elbow, he also got a deep bloody **gash**, a **wound**, on both knees that did not heal right away.  
inflamed \_\_\_\_ scrape \_\_\_\_ gash \_\_\_\_ wound \_\_\_\_
10. She **lacerated** her left index finger while slicing the tomato and tore off a piece of skin at the tip of the finger below the nail. What she thought was a **superficial wound** was actually a deep **wound** that required sutures.  
lacerated \_\_\_\_ superficial wound \_\_\_\_ wound \_\_\_\_
11. Some medications may cause the skin to **sweat**.  
sweat \_\_\_\_
12. He developed a **bump** on the right wrist after being hit with a baseball. Two days later, the bump turned a reddish black color and began to **ooze** liquid.  
bump \_\_\_\_ ooze \_\_\_\_
13. The red, **itchy patch** of **flaky** dry skin on her left forearm caused her to **scratch** so hard that soon it began to bleed.  
itchy \_\_\_\_ patch \_\_\_\_ flaky \_\_\_\_ scratch \_\_\_\_
14. The **scrape** on his knee healed nicely and did not form a **scab** or a **scar**.  
scrape \_\_\_\_ scab \_\_\_\_ scar \_\_\_\_
15. The **cyst** on her forehead **ruptured** and **oozed** bloody pus.  
cyst \_\_\_\_ ruptured \_\_\_\_ oozed \_\_\_\_

16. The **fungal infection** in his right toe caused **black toe**, and the nail eventually fell off.  
fungal infection \_\_\_\_ black toe \_\_\_\_
17. Children with **head lice** will scratch their head because it itches.  
head lice \_\_\_\_
18. A **wart** is a small **bump** on the foot or hand that is caused by a virus.  
wart \_\_\_\_ bump \_\_\_\_
19. **Shingles** is a very painful **rash** caused by a virus.  
shingles \_\_\_\_ rash \_\_\_\_
20. The skin of nervous people will sometimes **break out into hives** that are itchy and bumpy, as will the skin of some people who are allergic to cats.  
break out into \_\_\_\_ hives \_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## Medical Vocabulary Comprehension

Now that you have read sentences 1 through 20 describing language regarding skin, hair, and nails, assess your understanding by doing the exercises below.

### *Multiple Choice Questions*

Choose the answer that correctly completes each sentence below.

- \_\_\_\_ **Pimples** are:
  - lacerations on the skin
  - flakes of dead skin
  - acne, a skin condition that consists of black heads or white heads
- \_\_\_\_ A **scab**:
  - is dry blood that forms on the skin
  - causes the skin to sweat
  - is a patch of flaky skin
- \_\_\_\_ A **gash**:
  - is a superficial cut
  - oozes pus
  - is a deep wound
- \_\_\_\_ People with **alopecia**:
  - have gray hair
  - are bald
  - have a full head of hair
- \_\_\_\_ People with **dandruff** have:
  - a dry and flaky scalp
  - bumps on their head
  - brittle hair
- \_\_\_\_ If a skin condition **clears up**, it means:
  - the pus is clear
  - it has healed
  - it is itchy

7. \_\_\_\_\_ A **ruptured cyst** is:
- another word for scab
  - another word for laceration
  - a growth on the skin that has broken open or burst
8. \_\_\_\_\_ A **superficial wound** is:
- a deep laceration
  - a bump
  - not deep
9. \_\_\_\_\_ A **scrape** on the skin is a:
- cyst
  - scar
  - small mark on the skin caused by a rough surface
10. \_\_\_\_\_ An example of thick **scar tissue** is a:
- keloid
  - laceration
  - pimple
11. \_\_\_\_\_ Small wingless insects on children's hair and scalp are:
- hives
  - head lice
  - dandruff
12. \_\_\_\_\_ A **wart** is a:
- white head
  - pimple
  - bump on the skin caused by a virus
13. \_\_\_\_\_ **Shingles** is a:
- painful rash on the skin caused by a virus
  - skin condition caused by prickly heat
  - scrape that hasn't cleared up
14. \_\_\_\_\_ White heads and black heads are examples of:
- alopecia
  - head lice
  - acne
15. \_\_\_\_\_ **Sweaty** skin is:
- dry
  - moist
  - flaky

### *True/False Questions*

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

- \_\_\_\_\_ If a patient complains that pus is oozing from his skin, it means that the skin is dry.
- \_\_\_\_\_ If a patient complains that she needs an over-the-counter treatment for acne, it means that the patient needs treatment for baldness.
- \_\_\_\_\_ If the pharmacist tells a patient that the medicine may make the skin itch, it means the patient's skin will sweat.

4. \_\_\_\_ A scrape on the skin is a much more serious injury than a gash.
5. \_\_\_\_ If fingernails are brittle, they are strong and healthy.
6. \_\_\_\_ If you are allergic to cats, you might break out in hives.
7. \_\_\_\_ The word “itchy” is a noun.
8. \_\_\_\_ The word “wound” is both a verb and a noun.
9. \_\_\_\_ If a lesion is oozing blood, it means the lesion has formed into a scab.
10. \_\_\_\_ A scrape on the skin is a gash.

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### ***Writing Exercise***

An important part of communication is the ability to write about what you read, to write correctly, and to spell correctly. In the exercises below, write your understanding of the meaning of the bolded words.

1. Describe in writing what a **laceration**, a superficial **wound**, a **gash**, and a **scrape** are.

---

---

---

---

2. Describe in writing what a **scab**, a **scar**, and a **keloid** are.

---

---

---

---

3. Describe in writing what **acne**, a **pimple**, a **black head**, and a **white head** are.

---

---

---

---

4. Describe in writing what **baldness**, **dandruff**, and **head lice** are.

---

---

---

---

5. Describe in writing what **athlete’s foot** and **ingrown nail** are.

---

---

---

---

Check what you have written with acceptable answers that appear in the Answer Key online.

## LISTENING AND PRONUNCIATION

The ability to listen and understand what is being said and heard, and the ability to pronounce words clearly, is extremely important. A word misheard and a word mispronounced will lead to poor communication and can seriously put both the pharmacist and patient in danger. Therefore, it is very important that one hear clearly what another person has said, and that one speak clearly with correct pronunciation.

Listen carefully to the pharmacy-related words presented in the audio files found in Chapter 1 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), and then pronounce them as accurately as you can. Listen and then repeat. You will listen to each word once and then you will repeat it. You will do this twice for each word. Listening and pronunciation practice will increase your listening and speaking confidence. Many languages do not produce or emphasize certain sounds produced and emphasized in English, so pay careful attention to the pronunciation of each word.



### Pronunciation Exercise

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 1 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)). Listen and repeat the words. Then say the words aloud for additional practice.

1. abscess	ăb'sĕs
2. acne	ăk'nĕ
3. alopecia	ăl'ə-pĕ'shə
4. birthmark	bûrth'mărk'
5. black nail	blăk năl
6. black toe	blăk tō
7. blister	blĭ's'tĕr
8. boil	boil
9. breakout	brăk out
10. brittle	brĭ'tl
11. bruise	brōz
12. bump	bŭmp
13. chiggers	chĭ'g'ĕrz
14. clear up	klĭr ũp
15. coarse	kôrs
16. cracked	krăkt
17. crusty	krŭs'tĕ
18. cuticle	kyŭō' tĭ-kĕl
19. cyst	sĭst
20. dandruff	dăn'drəf
21. dermatitis	dûr'mĕ-tĭ'tĭs
22. diaper rash	dĭ'ə-pĕr răsh
23. dry	drĭ
24. eczema	ĕk'sĕ-mə
25. excrete	ĭk-skrĕt'
26. fine	fĭn
27. flaky	flă'kĕ
28. fungal infection	fŭng'gĕl ĭn-fĕk'shĕn
29. gash	găsh
30. hair loss	hâr lôs
31. head lice	hĕd lĭs
32. hives	hĭvz
33. inflammation	ĭn'flĕ-mă'shĕn
34. ingrown nail	ĭn'grŭn' năl
35. irritation	ĭr'ĭ-tă'shĕn
36. itch	ĭch

37. keloid	kē'loid
38. laceration	lās'ə-rā'shə'n
39. lesion	lē'zhə'n
40. moist	moist
41. mole	mōl
42. oily	oi'lē
43. ooze	ōōz
44. patch	pāch
45. peeling	pē'līng
46. pimple	pīm'pəl
47. pins and needles	pīns ənd nēd'ls
48. prickly heat	prīk'lē hēt
49. psoriasis	sə-rī'ə-sīs
50. pus	pūs
51. rash	rāsh
52. rupture	rūp'chə
53. scab	skāb
54. scabies	skā'bēz
55. scales	skālz
56. scar	skär
57. scrape	skrāp
58. scratch	skrāch
59. shingles	shīng'gəlz
60. silk	sīlk
61. sore	sôr
62. sunscreen	sūn'skrēn'
63. superficial	sōō'pə-r-fīsh'əl
64. sweat	swēt
65. swollen	swō'lə'n
66. tick bite	tīk bīt
67. ulcer	ūl'sə
68. wart	wôrt
69. wound	wōōnd
70. wrinkles	rīng'kəls
71. zit	zīt

Which words are easy to pronounce? Which are difficult to pronounce? Use the space below to write in the words that you find difficult to pronounce. These are words you should practice saying often.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 1 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) as many times as you need to increase your pronunciation ability of the difficult words. Pronounce these words with a friend or a colleague who speaks English.

## English Sounds That Are Difficult for Speakers of Other Languages to Pronounce

**Spanish**

In Spanish, there is no English “v” sound, but the “v” consonant in Spanish is pronounced like the English “b.” The vowel “i” is pronounced like a long “e.” Pay careful attention to the “v” sound in English when pronouncing words that begin with “v.” Also pay careful attention to English words that begin with “s;” do not use the Spanish “es” sound when pronouncing English words that begin with “s.”

For example, in English,

vane is not pronounced bane  
 scratch is not pronounced escratch  
 scar is not pronounced escar  
 itch is not pronounced eetch

**Vietnamese**

In Vietnamese, the “t” consonant is pronounced “s,” but in English the “t” is pronounced “t” and “s” is pronounced “s.” Be careful with English words that begin with “t.” In Vietnamese, the “b” consonant is pronounced “p,” but in English “p” is pronounced “p” and “b” is pronounced “b.”

In Vietnamese, words do not end in “b,” “ch,” “f,” “d,” “j,” “l,” “p,” “r,” “s,” “sh,” “v,” and “z.” In English, words end in these letters. Pay special attention to pronouncing these English sounds. In Vietnamese, there is no “dzh” or “zh” sound, so English words like “judge” (dzh) and “rupture” (zh) will be hard for Vietnamese speakers to pronounce.

For example, in English,

bump is not pronounced pum  
 gash is not pronounced gah  
 dandruff is not pronounced dandruh  
 rash is not pronounced rah

**Gujarati**

In Gujarati, “v” is pronounced “w,” “f” is pronounced “p,” “p” is pronounced “f,” and “z” is pronounced “j.” Short “i” is pronounced long “e,” “x” is pronounced “ch,” and “th” is pronounced “s.” In English, “v” is pronounced “v,” “f” is pronounced “f,” “z” is pronounced “z” or “s,” “j” is pronounced “j,” and “x” is pronounced “x.” Pay careful attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

wart is not pronounced vart  
 fungal is not pronounced pungal  
 bump is not pronounced bumf  
 tick is not pronounced teek  
 path is not pronounced pass  
 zit is not pronounced jit

**Korean**

In Korean, the “v” consonant is pronounced “b” and the “f” consonant is pronounced “p.” In English, the “v” is pronounced “v,” the “f” is pronounced “f,” and the “p” is pronounced “p.” Pay special attention when pronouncing these sounds.

(continued)



For example, in English,  
 fungal is not pronounced pungal  
 vane is not pronounced bane

### Chinese

In Chinese, the “r” consonant is pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are not pronounced at all. Pay careful attention to English words that begin with “r” because the “r” is not pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are pronounced in English.

For example, in English,  
 rash is not pronounced lash  
 keloid is not pronounced keloi  
 peeling is not pronounced peelin  
 scab is not pronounced sca

### Russian

The “w” consonant is pronounced like a “v” and the “v” sounds like a “w.” Pay careful attention to the English “th.” It is not pronounced “s.”

For example, in English,  
 wart is not pronounced vart  
 vein is not pronounced wein  
 thank is not pronounced sank  
 thought is not pronounced sought

## DICTATION



### Listening/Spelling Exercise: Word and Word Pairs

Listen to the words or word pairs on the audio files found in Chapter 1 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_



### Listening/Spelling Exercise: Sentences

Listen to the sentences on the audio files found in Chapter 1 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diazgilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diazgilbert)), and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Now, check your sentences against the correct answers in the Answer Key online. If there are any new words that you do not know or that you spelled incorrectly, make a list of those words and study them for meaning and spelling.

## PHARMACIST/PATIENT DIALOGUES

---

The ability to orally communicate effectively with your professors, colleagues, and especially with patients is very important. As a pharmacist, you will be counseling patients; patients will come to you for advice. They will have questions about a condition and symptoms they may experience and will ask you to help treat the condition. Therefore, it is extremely important that you understand what they are saying and that you respond to them and their questions appropriately. Your patients will speak differently. For example, some may speak very quickly, others too low, and yet others may speak angrily. To help you improve your listening skills, listen to the following dialogues, or short conversations, between a pharmacist and a patient and between a pharmacy technician and a patient.



### Listening and Comprehension Exercises

#### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ What is the patient's complaint?
  - a. she can't swallow tablets
  - b. she is allergic to jellyfish
  - c. she has bumps on her body from the waist down
2. \_\_\_\_ Which part of the body does the patient claim has bumps?
  - a. from the waist down
  - b. her arms only
  - c. her entire body
3. \_\_\_\_ Before recommending treatment, what does the pharmacist ask the patient?
  - a. how long she had been scratching
  - b. if she is allergic to any medication
  - c. how long she was swimming in the ocean
4. \_\_\_\_ What over-the-counter medicine does the pharmacist recommend?
  - a. betadine in liquid form only
  - b. Benadryl in liquid form only and a shot of hydrocortisone
  - c. Benadryl in liquid form because the patient can't swallow tablets, and hydrocortisone cream
5. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient:
  - a. to call her doctor if the rash and itching continue
  - b. that she can continue to swim in the ocean as long as she takes the medication
  - c. that her skin will become very dry

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



**Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient is complaining that:
  - a. he has an ingrown nail on his big left toe
  - b. his left toe has a laceration
  - c. his right toe is oozy and blistering
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient is wearing open-toe sandals because:
  - a. it is summertime
  - b. his right toe is sensitive to the touch
  - c. he has foot odor

3. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
  - a. he has an infected toe caused by wearing tight shoes with no socks
  - b. his toe is peeling
  - c. he has a fungal infection caused by the moist environment of a wet sneaker and wet socks rubbing against his toe
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient is allergic to:
  - a. sulfa only
  - b. sulfa and iodine
  - c. iodine only
5. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to find:
  - a. fungicide in aisle 5
  - b. Lidocaine in aisle 3
  - c. Lamisil in aisle 3
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient's right toenail will:
  - a. never grow back
  - b. grow back in 1 week
  - c. grow back in a few months
7. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist suggests that the patient:
  - a. continue to run in wet socks
  - b. see a podiatrist or a primary care doctor if the toe does not get better
  - c. run races in open-toe shoes

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### **Dialogue #3**

Listen to Dialogue #3, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The child's mother is concerned because her daughter:
  - a. has dandruff
  - b. has an itchy scalp
  - c. is not happy in day camp
2. \_\_\_\_ Her daughter is:
  - a. 16 months old
  - b. 6 years old
  - c. 6 weeks old

3. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the mother that:
  - a. head lice taste like sesame seeds
  - b. head lice look like sesame seeds
  - c. sesame seed is another name for head louse
4. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist recommends that the mother:
  - a. purchase a louse comb and Nix, a medicated anti-lice treatment
  - b. wash only her daughter's hair and the pillowcases
  - c. remove the head lice with her fingers
5. \_\_\_\_ Nix is:
  - a. a type of head lice
  - b. a cream rinse applied to the hair after shampooing to remove head lice
  - c. an antibiotic
6. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the mother that she and her husband should also treat their hair with Nix because head lice are:
  - a. contagious
  - b. not contagious
  - c. infectious
7. \_\_\_\_ The mother thinks her daughter may have picked up head lice:
  - a. on vacation
  - b. in day care
  - c. in day camp

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

Idioms and idiomatic expressions are made up of a group of words that have a different meaning from the original meaning of each individual word. Native speakers of the English language use such expressions comfortably and naturally. However, individuals who are new speakers of English or who have studied English for many years may still not be able to use idioms and idiomatic expressions as comfortably or naturally as native speakers. As pharmacy students, pharmacy technicians, and practicing pharmacists, you will hear many different idiomatic expressions. Some of you will understand and know how to use these expressions correctly. At times, however, you may not understand what your professors, colleagues, and patients are saying. This of course can lead to miscommunication, embarrassment, and possibly dangerous mistakes.

To help you improve your knowledge of idioms and idiomatic expressions, carefully read the following idiomatic expressions that contain the body words of skin, hair, and nail.

### Idiomatic Expressions using “Skin”

1. ***by the skin of my teeth*** means that the person succeeded in doing something but almost failed.  
For example: I passed my pharmacy exam ***by the skin of my teeth***.
2. ***to be thick skinned*** means that the person does not get easily upset.  
For example: Because I'm ***thick skinned***, almost failing the exam did not upset me.
3. ***to get under my skin*** means that someone annoys or upsets others by the way that they behave.  
For example: People who behave like they know it all really ***get under my skin***.

4. **to make my skin crawl** means that a person has made others uncomfortable, upset, or afraid.

For example: Sometimes patients who are very impatient and who demand their prescriptions immediately **make my skin crawl**.

5. **to be skin deep** is used to mean that something that is seen as important is not really important because it only appears that way.

For example: Beauty is only **skin deep**.

### Idiomatic Expressions using “Hair”

1. **to get in my hair** means that someone is annoying or bothering me.

For example: I try not to let the sick patients at the pharmacy **get in my hair** during the cold season.

2. **to let my hair down** means that I am behaving in a relaxed manner.

For example: I’m usually a very serious and professional person, but sometimes I **let my hair down** after work and go dancing with my friends.

3. **to tear my hair out** means to become very anxious or worried.

For example: I began to **tear my hair out** after I was told that I needed to fill 25 prescriptions in 1 hour.

4. **to keep your hair on** means to stay calm.

For example: **Keep your hair on!** Don’t let the stress of the job upset you.

5. **make your hair stand on end** means to be frightened and shocked.

For example: My professor’s rude behavior in class sometimes makes the students’ **hair stand on end**.

### Idiomatic Expressions using “Nail”

1. **to be hard as nails** or **tough as nails** means one is strong and determined.

For example: My boss is **tough as nails**.

2. **to be nail biting** means the situation makes you nervous because you are waiting for something important to happen.

For example: Waiting to hear whether I had gotten into pharmacy school was a real **nail biting** experience because there were only 10 seats for more than 100 applicants.

### Mini Dialogues Listening Exercise

How much did you understand? Listen to the following mini dialogues on the audio files found in Chapter 1 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), read the questions below, and then choose the correct answer.



#### Mini Dialogue #1

1. \_\_\_\_\_ **Let your hair down** means:  
a. to wear one’s hair long  
b. to relax  
c. to fill the prescriptions quickly

**Mini Dialogue #2**

2. \_\_\_\_\_ **Hair stand on end** means:
- to remain calm
  - to have no tender feelings
  - to be frightened and shocked

**Mini Dialogue #3**

3. \_\_\_\_\_ **Getting under my skin** means:
- the new pharmacist gets easily upset
  - to annoy others with one's behavior
  - to stay calm

**Mini Dialogue #4**

4. \_\_\_\_\_ **Get in my hair** means:
- to bother and annoy
  - to be worried and anxious
  - to say or do the right thing

**Mini Dialogue #5**

5. \_\_\_\_\_ **Tearing my hair out** means:
- to worry and to be anxious
  - to relax
  - to not worry

**Mini Dialogue #6**

6. \_\_\_\_\_ **Tough as nails** means:
- brittle
  - strong and determined
  - to be mean

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## POST-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

- \_\_\_\_\_ The idiom **pulling my hair out** means the individual has head lice.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The noun form of **to inflame** is inflammatory.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Another word for pimple is keloid.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The adjective form of the word **scratch** is scratchy.
- \_\_\_\_\_ If a person **gets under your skin**, the person annoys you by the way he or she behaves.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Another word for head lice is dandruff.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ A bloody toe blister is an example of a white head.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The past tense and adjective forms of **scrape** is scraped.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Acne is a form of dry skin.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ A laceration is a superficial wound.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ If a person is **thick skinned**, it means he or she has a big bump on the skin.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ If a patient complains that his foot is burning and itching, he most likely has an infected ingrown toenail.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ A keloid is a swollen scab.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ Head lice are insects that bite the skin.
15. \_\_\_\_\_ A person with alopecia has head lice.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **scratch** is:
  - a. scratched
  - b. scratchy
  - c. scratched and scratchy
2. \_\_\_\_\_ If a person has **athlete's foot**, the person:
  - a. is a fast runner
  - b. plays many sports
  - c. has a fungal infection
3. \_\_\_\_\_ If a person is **tearing his or her hair out**, the person:
  - a. is balding
  - b. is worried and anxious
  - c. has alopecia
4. \_\_\_\_\_ A child with head lice:
  - a. needs to scratch his or her head
  - b. needs to remove the head lice with his or her fingers
  - c. needs to have his or her hair combed with a louse comb and treated with anti-lice treatment
5. \_\_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "I have a bruised bump on my head," the word **bruised** is:
  - a. a past tense verb
  - b. an adjective
  - c. a noun
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **sweat** is:
  - a. sweaty, sweating, and sweatily
  - b. sweaty and sweating
  - c. sweating and sweated
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Scratch marks are:
  - a. produced on the skin from scratching too much
  - b. caused by a jellyfish sting
  - c. caused by a laceration
8. \_\_\_\_\_ A person who is **tough as nails**:
  - a. has healthy nails
  - b. has brittle nails
  - c. is strong and determined



9. \_\_\_\_\_ Dried blood that is formed on the skin after a cut or wound is healed is called:
- a laceration
  - a scab
  - a scrape
10. \_\_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "The girl complained of an itchy sensation on her arm," the word **itchy** is:
- an adjective
  - a verb
  - a noun
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The word **wound** is:
- both a verb and a noun
  - a verb only
  - a noun only
12. \_\_\_\_\_ A superficial wound is:
- a deep gash
  - a deep laceration
  - not deep
13. \_\_\_\_\_ An oozy blister can contain:
- pus
  - lice
  - scabs
14. \_\_\_\_\_ The word **swell** is:
- a noun, a verb, and an adjective
  - a noun only
  - an adjective
15. \_\_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "Because the scab on the skin did not heal properly, the area is scarred," the word **scarred** is used as:
- an adjective
  - a past tense verb
  - a noun

## Listening and Comprehension Exercises



### Dialogue #1

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist her arm:
- has itchy bumps
  - has a deep gash
  - is painful and itchy

2. \_\_\_\_ The patient asks the pharmacist for:
  - a. a cream to reduce the swelling and itchiness
  - b. Tylenol
  - c. an antibiotic
3. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist asks the patient if she:
  - a. has been bitten by an insect
  - b. went camping on Labor Day
  - c. has called her doctor
4. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient she has:
  - a. impetigo
  - b. inflammation
  - c. itchiness
5. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist recommends the patient contact the doctor for an antibiotic:
  - a. today
  - b. in 1 week
  - c. in 1 day



### *Dialogue #2*

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient complains that his feet are:
  - a. oozing pus
  - b. burning and itching
  - c. dry
2. \_\_\_\_ When the patient says that he is tearing his hair out, he means that:
  - a. he is bald
  - b. his hair is dry
  - c. he is anxious and worried
3. \_\_\_\_ Characteristics of athlete's foot are:
  - a. blistering skin
  - b. dry and itchy skin
  - c. scaliness, in combination with burning and itching
4. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist recommends:
  - a. a cream to help stop the burning and itchiness on his foot
  - b. an antibiotic to stop the burning and itchiness on his foot
  - c. a pill he can take

5. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist instructed the patient to:
- wash and completely dry his feet, even between the toes, before applying Lamisil
  - apply the cream with the feet still wet
  - wash and completely dry his feet, even between the toes, before applying Lamisil and to change his socks daily



### **Dialogue #3**

Listen to Dialogue #3, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's bad habit is:
  - splitting her nails
  - biting her nails
  - painting her nails
- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient complains that her finger is:
  - red, swollen, and painful
  - lacerated
  - breaking out in hives
- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient noticed that her finger discharged:
  - a white head
  - a rash
  - yellow pus
- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's finger is:
  - red only
  - red, inflamed, painful, and discharging pus
  - discharging pus only
- \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist recommends that she soak her finger in:
  - table salt
  - Epsom salts
  - iodized salt
- \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist also recommends the patient apply:
  - peroxide and Neosporin
  - peroxide only
  - Neosporin only

How did you do on the Post-Assessment in Chapter 1? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.



## PRE-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ A person with **conjunctivitis** has swollen eyes.
2. \_\_\_\_ A **cataract** can make lamplight or sunlight seem too bright or glaring.
3. \_\_\_\_ Children with an **ear infection** will sometimes tug on their ears.
4. \_\_\_\_ One way to reduce **ear wax** is to put drops of baby oil in the ear.
5. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **infection** is infected.
6. \_\_\_\_ A **foreign body** in the eye can cause it to become irritated, red, and painful.
7. \_\_\_\_ A **stye** is a bumpy, red, itchy infection in the middle ear.
8. \_\_\_\_ Infants with an **ear infection** will experience inconsolable crying.
9. \_\_\_\_ A **cataract** is a yellow discharge from the eye.
10. \_\_\_\_ The noun form of **itchy** is itch.
11. \_\_\_\_ **Pink eye** is another term for conjunctivitis.
12. \_\_\_\_ A person should never use a warm compress over the ear to relieve an **earache**.
13. \_\_\_\_ **Glaucoma** can lead to blindness.
14. \_\_\_\_ A **droopy eye** is swollen and itchy.
15. \_\_\_\_ The word **swell** is a noun and verb form.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ “My ear feels like it’s clogged up” means:
  - a. the ear is infected
  - b. the ear is closed
  - c. the ear feels tight
2. \_\_\_\_ If you are **all ears** while listening to the professor’s lecture, you are:
  - a. putting your hands over your ears during the lecture
  - b. very interested in the lecture and paying attention
  - c. you can’t hear the lecture
3. \_\_\_\_ **Ear popping** is caused by:
  - a. pressure in the ear
  - b. wax in the ear
  - c. a broken eardrum

4. \_\_\_\_\_ If you can't see **eye to eye** with another person, it means:
- you have weak vision
  - the other person is blind
  - you can't agree with the person
5. \_\_\_\_\_ If a patient complains of **blurred vision**, the patient should be tested for:
- glaucoma
  - dry eye
  - conjunctivitis
6. \_\_\_\_\_ A common ear condition in infants is:
- swimmer's ear
  - middle ear infection
  - fungal infection
7. \_\_\_\_\_ If a person has **tunnel vision**, he or she:
- can only see things that are straight ahead
  - can only see in the dark
  - can only see around them
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The word **discharge** is:
- a verb
  - a verb and a noun
  - a noun
9. \_\_\_\_\_ **Pink eye** is another term for:
- crusty eyes
  - a sty
  - conjunctivitis
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient complained that she had a yellow, green, and watery **discharge** from her eye. This could indicate she has:
- a droopy eye
  - an eye infection
  - an eyelash in her eye

How did you do? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

## MEDICAL VOCABULARY

---

A good understanding of vocabulary words in pharmacy is very important for communication with professors, fellow students, patients, and coworkers. Knowledge and understanding of vocabulary leads to successful communication and success as a pharmacy student, as a pharmacy technician, and as a practicing pharmacist. You may already know many of the vocabulary words in this chapter, but for words that are unfamiliar, pay careful attention to them and make every effort to know their correct spelling, meaning, and pronunciation. It is a good idea to keep a list of new words and to look up these new words in a bilingual dictionary or dictionary in your first language. A good command of pharmacy-related vocabulary and good pronunciation of vocabulary will help to prevent embarrassing mistakes and increase effective verbal communication skills.

### Ear Vocabulary

airplane ear  
buzzing

cauliflower ear  
deafness

dizziness  
drainage

ear lobe	middle ear infection	tinnitus
ear plug	perforated eardrum	tugging
fluid	pressure	vertigo
foreign body	ringing	wax
hearing loss	swimmer's ear	

## Eye Vocabulary

astigmatism	dry eye	lazy eye
blinking	eyeball	macular degeneration
bloodshot	eyelid	nearsightedness
blurred	eye herpes	night vision
bulging eye	eye pressure	optic nerve
cataract	eye strain	peripheral vision
clogged	farsightedness	photophobia
conjunctivitis	floaters	pink eye
contact lens	focus	pupils
cornea	fuzzy vision	retina
cross-eyed	glare	secrete
crusty eyelid	glaucoma	squinting
distorted vision	grittiness	tears
double vision	halos	twitching
droopy eyelid	jaundice	watery

## PARTS OF SPEECH

A good understanding of parts of speech, such as verbs, nouns, adjectives, and adverbs, is important for successful communication when speaking or writing. It is equally important to know the various forms of words and to use them appropriately.

### Word Forms

The table below lists the main forms of some terms that you will likely encounter in pharmacy practice. Review the table and then do the exercises that follow to assess your understanding.

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v)		Adverb (adv)
		—Past Tense	
a blink	to blink; blinked	blinking	
a blur	to blur; blurred	blurred; blurry	
a bulge; bulginess	to bulge; bulged	bulged; bulging; bulgy	
a clog	to clog; clogged	clogged	
distortion	to distort; distorted	distorted; distorting	
deafness		deaf; deafening	
dizziness		dizzy; dizzier	dizzily; dizzily

(continued)

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v) —Past Tense	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
drainage	to drain; drained	drained; draining; drainable	
droop	to droop; drooped	droopy; drooping	droopingly
focus	to focus; focused	focused	
fluid; fluidity	to flow; flowed	flowing	flowingly
fuzziness; fuzz		fuzzy	fuzzily
glare	to glare; glared	glaring	glaringly
grit; grittiness	to grit; gritted	gritty	grittily
jaundice		jaundiced	
lump	to lump; lumped	lumpy	
presbyopia		presbyopic	
pressure	to pressure; pressured	pressured	
ring	to ring; rang	ringing	
squint; squinter	to squint; squinted	squinting	
tear;* tearfulness	to tear; teared	tearing; teary; tearful; tearless	tearfully
tug	to tug; tugged	tugging	tuggingly
twitch	to twitch; twitched	twitching	twitchily
wax	to wax; waxed	waxing; waxy	

\*Caution: The pronunciation of this form of tear is (tîr) and not (târ); tore is the past tense of (târ).

### Word Forms Exercise

Read the following sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv.

- The foreign body in his eye caused him to **blink**.  
blink \_\_\_\_\_
- The doctor told her that **tugging** and pulling on her earlobe might be a sign of swimmer's ear.  
tugging \_\_\_\_\_
- Because her eyes are sensitive to light, she **squints** a lot when she's outdoors on a sunny day.  
squints \_\_\_\_\_
- A buildup of **fluid** or **wax** in the ear can cause hearing problems.  
fluid \_\_\_\_\_ wax \_\_\_\_\_
- Jaundice** is a yellowish discoloration of the whites of the eyes.  
jaundice \_\_\_\_\_
- Some of the symptoms experienced by people with **airplane ear** are **hearing loss** and **ringing** in the ear.  
airplane ear \_\_\_\_\_ hearing loss \_\_\_\_\_ ringing \_\_\_\_\_
- She accidentally **perforated** her **eardrum** after inserting a Q-tip in her ear to remove the **wax** from her ear.  
perforated \_\_\_\_\_ eardrum \_\_\_\_\_ wax \_\_\_\_\_



8. Dandruff and bacteria can cause inflammation of the **eyelid** and cause the eye to **tear** and the eyelids to become **crusty**.  
eyelid \_\_\_\_\_ tear \_\_\_\_\_ crusty \_\_\_\_\_
9. A sudden loud noise, explosion, or too much pressure from **fluid** in the ear can cause the eardrum to **rupture**.  
fluid \_\_\_\_\_ rupture \_\_\_\_\_
10. A **cataract** can cause a person's vision to **blur** and make him or her sensitive to sunlight and **glare**.  
cataract \_\_\_\_\_ blur \_\_\_\_\_ glare \_\_\_\_\_
11. The **stye** on her left eyelid was **itchy** and **bumpy** and looked like a **pimple**.  
stye \_\_\_\_\_ itchy \_\_\_\_\_ bumpy \_\_\_\_\_ pimple \_\_\_\_\_
12. **Foreign objects** in your ear, such as a cotton swab or a bobby pin, can cause an eardrum to **rupture**; and foreign objects in your eye, such as sand or dust particles, can cause the eye to become **infected**.  
foreign objects \_\_\_\_\_ rupture \_\_\_\_\_ infected \_\_\_\_\_
13. **Floater**s, which look like clouds and spots, are dark or gray spots that we see with our vision and that move as we move our eyes.  
floaters \_\_\_\_\_
14. During night driving, a person with **cataracts** will see **halos** and **glare**.  
cataracts \_\_\_\_\_ halos \_\_\_\_\_ glare \_\_\_\_\_
15. It is not unusual for the eyes of people in their 40s to have **presbyopia** or the inability to **focus** on reading materials or close objects.  
presbyopia \_\_\_\_\_ focus \_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### *Typical Medical Conditions and Patient Complaints*

The sentences below contain vocabulary that describes and explains typical medical conditions, diseases, symptoms, and patient complaints that a pharmacist encounters. Read the sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv. Look up words you do not know in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

1. Children with **lazy eye** may have permanent eye problems if they do not get treatment.  
lazy eye \_\_\_\_\_
2. The patient complained he was experiencing tinnitus, some **hearing loss**, and **vertigo**.  
hearing loss \_\_\_\_\_ vertigo \_\_\_\_\_
3. After the mother picked up her child, who was crying inconsolably and **tugging** at her right ear, the mother noticed the child had a fever. She knew right away that her child had an **ear infection** and called the doctor.  
tugging \_\_\_\_\_ ear infection \_\_\_\_\_
4. If you experience **itching**, **hearing loss**, redness, **swelling**, **pressure**, or **fluid** in your ear, you should see your doctor.  
itching \_\_\_\_\_ hearing loss \_\_\_\_\_ swelling \_\_\_\_\_ pressure \_\_\_\_\_ fluid \_\_\_\_\_
5. Applying a warm compress to **inflamed** eyelids can help reduce the **inflammation** and help loosen the **crust** in the eye.  
inflamed \_\_\_\_\_ inflammation \_\_\_\_\_ crust \_\_\_\_\_

6. It is not uncommon for children to experience **fluid** and **wax** buildup in their ears.  
fluid \_\_\_\_ wax \_\_\_\_
7. People with **conjunctivitis** should avoid spreading it to others and re-infecting themselves by washing their hands often and by avoiding contact with their eyes such as rubbing and touching.  
conjunctivitis \_\_\_\_
8. **Pressure** in your ear as a result of a hit to the ear, a loud noise, or traveling in an airplane can easily **rupture** your eardrum.  
pressure \_\_\_\_ rupture \_\_\_\_
9. The eyes of people with **dry eye**, which is caused by a lack of **tears**, can appear **swollen** and feel **gritty**.  
dry eye \_\_\_\_ tears \_\_\_\_ swollen \_\_\_\_ gritty \_\_\_\_
10. One way to prevent **swimmer's ear** is to place drops of half alcohol and half white vinegar solution in your ear.  
swimmer's ear \_\_\_\_
11. People with eye herpes, which is a viral infection that can cause **scarring** and **inflammation** of the cornea, will experience **tearing** and **swelling** around the eye.  
scarring \_\_\_\_ inflammation \_\_\_\_ tearing \_\_\_\_ swelling \_\_\_\_
12. If you are experiencing **drainage** from your ear, see a doctor as soon as you can.  
drainage \_\_\_\_
13. If a person has a **bloodshot** eye, the whites of the eye are red.  
bloodshot \_\_\_\_
14. People who are **farsighted** have difficulty seeing objects that are close but can see objects that are far away or at a distance without difficulty.  
farsighted \_\_\_\_
15. To prevent **airplane ear**, people should swallow and yawn frequently and wear **ear plugs**.  
airplane ear \_\_\_\_ ear plugs \_\_\_\_
16. Working too long in front of the computer can cause **eye strain** and fatigue.  
eye strain \_\_\_\_
17. A **stye** is an infection near the eyelash and forms into a red **lump** filled with **pus** that will eventually burst.  
stye \_\_\_\_ lump \_\_\_\_ pus \_\_\_\_
18. It is not uncommon for people who are feeling faint, who have had too much alcohol, or who have had a head injury to have **double vision**.  
double vision \_\_\_\_
19. Swimmer's ear is caused by a fungus and will cause the ear to **itch**, the skin inside the ear canal to **flake**, and pus to **discharge** from the ear.  
itch \_\_\_\_ flake \_\_\_\_ discharge \_\_\_\_
20. You should be tested for **tinnitus** if you hear **ringing**, **buzzing**, or **hissing** sounds.  
tinnitus \_\_\_\_ ringing \_\_\_\_ buzzing \_\_\_\_ hissing \_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## Medical Vocabulary Comprehension

Now that you have read sentences 1 through 20 describing language regarding ears and eyes, assess your understanding by doing the exercises below.

### *Multiple Choice Questions*

Choose the answer that correctly completes each sentence below.

1. \_\_\_\_ **Styes** are:
  - a. a kind of ear infection
  - b. an infected lump on the eyelid
  - c. floaters
2. \_\_\_\_ Swallowing and yawning often during a plane ride will help to prevent:
  - a. swimmer's ear
  - b. ear wax
  - c. a ruptured ear drum
3. \_\_\_\_ To prevent airplane ear during a plane ride, a person should:
  - a. cover their ears with their hands
  - b. yawn and swallow frequently
  - c. not wear ear plugs
4. \_\_\_\_ In children, symptoms of an **ear infection** include:
  - a. tugging at the ear and crying inconsolably
  - b. airplane ear
  - c. ringing and buzzing sounds
5. \_\_\_\_ People experiencing **itchiness, fluid, pressure, or swelling** in their ear should:
  - a. insert a Q-tip in the ear
  - b. chew gum
  - c. see a doctor
6. \_\_\_\_ Another term for **pink eye** is:
  - a. lazy eye
  - b. droopy eye
  - c. conjunctivitis
7. \_\_\_\_ A **ruptured eardrum** can be caused by:
  - a. fungus in the ear
  - b. a loud noise, a foreign object, or pressure
  - c. wax buildup
8. \_\_\_\_ To help remove the **crust** from an inflamed eyelid, you should:
  - a. wash the eyelid with water
  - b. put an ice pack on the eyelid
  - c. put a warm compress on the eyelid
9. \_\_\_\_ A person who is **farsighted** sees:
  - a. halos
  - b. floaters
  - c. objects that are far away without difficulty

10. \_\_\_\_\_ **Dry eye** is caused by:
  - a. crying
  - b. the inability to produce tears
  - c. grittiness
11. \_\_\_\_\_ A person who is feeling faint or who has had too much alcohol may experience:
  - a. droopy eye
  - b. hearing loss
  - c. double vision
12. \_\_\_\_\_ A yellowish discoloration of the eyes is:
  - a. mucus
  - b. jaundice
  - c. dry crust
13. \_\_\_\_\_ Working in front of a computer for a long time can:
  - a. make you cross-eyed
  - b. cause eye strain and fatigue
  - c. cause macular degeneration
14. \_\_\_\_\_ **Presbyopia** is:
  - a. the ability to focus on close objects
  - b. tunnel vision
  - c. the inability to focus on close objects
15. \_\_\_\_\_ **Swimmer's ear** is caused by:
  - a. a fungus
  - b. an inner ear infection
  - c. a rupture

### *True/False Questions*

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_\_ If a patient complains that his eyelid is irritated and is secreting pus that gets crusty, it means that he has dry eye.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ If a patient complains that she can see objects close up, the patient probably has tunnel vision.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Swimmer's ear is caused by rupturing the eardrum with a Q-tip.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ If you have glaucoma, you will not see halos or have night vision problems.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ A droopy eye is a symptom of middle ear infection in children.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ A sty is a pus-filled lump inside the ear.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The word "gritty" is an adjective.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The word "tear" is both a verb and a noun.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ If you hear whistling, hissing, and ringing in your ears, it means you are tone deaf.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Allergies can trigger conjunctivitis.

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### *Writing Exercise*

An important part of communication is the ability to write about what you read, to write correctly, and to spell correctly. In the exercises below, write your understanding of the meaning of the bolded words.

1. Describe in writing what a **cataract** and a **stye** are.

---



---



---

2. Describe in writing what a **ruptured eardrum**, **airplane ear**, and **swimmer's ear** are.

---



---



---

3. Describe in writing what **nearsightedness**, **farsightedness**, **photophobia**, and **tunnel vision** are.

---



---



---

4. Describe in writing what **pink eye** and **dry eye** are.

---



---



---

Check what you have written with acceptable answers that appear in the Answer Key online.

## LISTENING AND PRONUNCIATION

The ability to listen and understand what is being said and heard, and the ability to pronounce words clearly, is extremely important. A word misheard and a word mispronounced will lead to poor communication and can seriously put both the pharmacist and patient in danger. Therefore, it is very important that one hear clearly what another person has said, and that one speak clearly with correct pronunciation.

Listen carefully to the pharmacy-related words in the audio files found in Chapter 2 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), and then pronounce them as accurately as you can. Listen and then repeat. You will listen to each word once and then you will repeat it. You will do this twice for each word. Listening and pronunciation practice will increase your listening and speaking confidence. Many languages do not produce or emphasize certain sounds produced and emphasized in English, so pay careful attention to the pronunciation of each word.



### Pronunciation Exercise

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 2 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) and repeat the words. Then say the words aloud for additional practice.

- |                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. airplane ear | âɹ'plā'n' îɹ      |
| 2. astigmatism  | ə-st'ɪg'mə-t'ɪz'm |
| 3. blinking     | blɪŋk ɪŋ          |
| 4. bloodshot    | blʊd'shɔt'        |
| 5. blur         | blʊr              |
| 6. bulging eye  | bʊlɪŋ ɪ           |

7. buzzing	bũzŋ
8. cataract	kãt'ə-rãkt'
9. cauliflower ear	kó'lĩ-flou'ər ĩr
10. clog	klôg
11. conjunctivitis	kən-jũngk'tə-vĩ tĩs
12. contact lens	kɔn'tãkt' lɛnz
13. cornea	kôr'nɛ.ə
14. cross-eyed	krôs ĩd
15. crusty eyelid	krũs'tɛ ĩ'lĩd'
16. deaf	def
17. distorted	dĩ-stôrt ĩd
18. dizzy	dĩz'ɛ
19. double vision	dũb'ə  vĩzh'ən
20. drain	drãn
21. dry eye	dr ĩ ĩ
22. earache	ĩr'ãk'
23. ear lobe	ĩr' lɔb'
24. eyeball	ĩ'bɔl'
25. eye herpes	ĩ hũr'pɛz
26. eye pressure	ĩ prɛsh'ər
27. eye strain	ĩ strãn
28. farsighted	fãr'sĩ tĩd
29. floaters	fłɔ'tɔrs
30. fluid	fłɔɔ'ĩd
31. focus	fɔ'kɔs
32. foreign body	fôr'ĩn bɔd'ɛ
33. fuzzy	fũz'ɛ
34. glare	glãr
35. glaucoma	glou-kɔ'mə
36. gritty	grĩt'ɛ
37. halos	hã'lɔs
38. hearing loss	hĩr'ĩng lɔs
39. jaundice	jɔn'dĩs
40. lazy eye	lã'zɛ ĩ
41. macular degeneration	mãkyɔɔ lãr dĩ-jɛn'ə-rã'shən
42. middle ear infection	mĩd'l ĩr ĩn-fɛk'shən
43. nearsighted	nĩr'sĩ tĩd
44. night vision	nĩt vĩzh'ən
45. optic nerve	ɔp'tĩk nũrv
46. perforated eardrum	pũr'fə-rã'tĩd ĩr'drũm
47. peripheral vision	pə-rĩf'ər-əl vĩzh'ən
48. photophobia	fɔ'tə-fɔ'bɛ.ə
49. pink eye	pĩngk ĩ
50. presbyopia	prɛz'bɛ.ɔ'pɛ.ə
51. pupil	pyɔɔ'pəl
52. retina	rɛt'n-ə
53. ringing	rĩng ŋ
54. secrete	sĩ-krɛt'
55. squint	skwĩnt
56. swimmer's ear	swĩmərz ĩr
57. tear	tĩr
58. tinnitus	tĩ-nĩ'tɔs

59. tug	t <sup>ũ</sup> g
60. twitch	tw <sup>1</sup> ch
61. vertigo	vũr' t <sup>ĩ</sup> -gō'
62. wax	wāks

Which words are easy to pronounce? Which are difficult to pronounce? Use the space below to write in the words that you find difficult to pronounce. These are words you should practice saying often.

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 2 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) as many times as you need to increase your pronunciation ability of the difficult words. Pronounce these words with a friend or a colleague who speaks English.

#### English Sounds That Are Difficult for Speakers of Other Languages to Pronounce

##### Spanish

In Spanish, there is no English “v” sound, but the “v” consonant in Spanish is pronounced like the English “b.” The vowel “i” is pronounced like a long “e.” Pay careful attention to the “v” sound in English when pronouncing words that begin with “v.” Also pay careful attention to English words that begin with “s;” do not use the Spanish “es” sound when pronouncing English words that begin with “s.”

For example, in English,

vertigo is not pronounced berteego  
 swimmer’s ear is not pronounced esweemmer’s ear  
 squint is not pronounced esqueent  
 secrete is not pronounced escrete

##### Vietnamese

In Vietnamese, the “t” consonant is pronounced “s,” but in English the “t” is pronounced “t” and “s” is pronounced “s.” Be careful with English words that begin with “t.” In Vietnamese, the “b” consonant is pronounced “p,” but in English “p” is pronounced “p” and “b” is pronounced “b.”

In Vietnamese, words do not end in “b,” “ch,” “f,” “d,” “j,” “l,” “p,” “r,” “s,” “sh,” “v,” and “z.” In English, words end in these letters. Pay special attention to pronouncing these English sounds. In Vietnamese, there is no “dzh” or “zh” sound, so English words like “judge” (dzh) and rupture (zh) will be hard for Vietnamese speakers to pronounce.

For example, in English,

buzzing is not pronounced puzzing  
 twitch is not pronounced twih  
 nearsighted is not pronounced nearsigh  
 pressure is not pronounced prehso

(continued)

### Gujarati

In Gujarati, “v” is pronounced “w,” “f” is pronounced “p,” “p” is pronounced “f,” and “z” is pronounced “j.” Short “i” is pronounced long “e,” “x” is pronounced “ch,” and “th” is pronounced “s.” In English, “v” is pronounced “v,” “f” is pronounced “f,” “z” is pronounced “z” or “s,” “j” is pronounced “j,” and “x” is pronounced “x.” Pay careful attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

wax is not pronounced vax

farsighted is not pronounced parsighted

### Korean

In Korean, the “v” consonant is pronounced “b” and the “f” consonant is pronounced “p.” In English, the “v” is pronounced “v,” the “f” is pronounced “f,” and the “p” is pronounced “p.” Pay special attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

focus is not pronounced pocus

vertigo is not pronounced bertigo

### Chinese

In Chinese, the “r” consonant is pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are not pronounced at all. Pay careful attention to English words that begin with “r” because the “r” is not pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are pronounced in English.

For example, in English,

eyelid is not pronounced eyelih

bloodshot is not pronounced bluhshah

### Russian

The “w” consonant is pronounced like a “v” and the “v” sounds like a “w.” Pay careful attention to the English “th.” It is not pronounced “s.”

For example, in English,

wax is not pronounced vax

vertigo is not pronounced wertigo

## DICTIONATION



### Listening/Spelling Exercise: Word and Word Pairs

Listen to the words or word pairs on the audio files found in Chapter 2 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_



8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_



### Listening/Spelling Exercise: Sentences

Listen to the sentences on the audio files found in Chapter 2 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diazgilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diazgilbert)) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Now, check your sentences against the correct answers in the Answer Key online. If there are any new words that you do not know or that you spelled incorrectly, make a list of those words and study them for meaning and spelling.

### PHARMACIST/PATIENT DIALOGUES

The ability to orally communicate effectively with your professors, colleagues, and especially with patients is very important. As a pharmacist, you will be counseling patients; patients will come to you for advice. They will have questions about a condition and symptoms they may experience and will ask you to help treat the condition. Therefore, it is extremely important that you understand what they are saying and that you respond to them and their questions appropriately. Your patients will speak differently. For example, some may speak very quickly, others too low, and yet others may speak angrily. To help you improve your listening skills, listen to the following dialogues, or short conversations, between a pharmacist and a patient and between a pharmacy technician and a patient.

## Listening and Comprehension Exercises



### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ What is the patient's complaint?
  - a. She can't wear contact lenses
  - b. She woke up with her left eye crusted and shut tight
  - c. She woke up with her right eye crusted and shut tight
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Throughout the day the patient's eye:
  - a. got worse
  - b. got better
  - c. stayed the same
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's eye is:
  - a. itchy
  - b. itchy, swollen, and really red
  - c. gritty
4. \_\_\_\_\_ What condition does the patient have?
  - a. a sty
  - b. crusty eye syndrome
  - c. conjunctivitis
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient has a prescription for:
  - a. tobramycin tablets
  - b. tobramycin ointment
  - c. tobramycin solution
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to use:
  - a. 4 eyedrops once a day
  - b. 1 eyedrop every 4 hours
  - c. 4 eyedrops every hour

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### *Dialogue #2*

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's mother is complaining that her daughter:
  - a. has an earache
  - b. has an ear infection and is crying non-stop
  - c. is crying non-stop
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor prescribed:
  - a. penicillin
  - b. baby oil eardrops
  - c. an antibiotic
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The antibiotic is:
  - a. astigmatism
  - b. amoxicillin
  - c. Augmentin
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is:
  - a. almost 3 years old
  - b. 3 months old
  - c. 36 months old
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist recommends that the patient's mother buy a:
  - a. measuring spoon
  - b. dose-measuring spoon
  - c. regular spoon
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient's mother to call the doctor immediately if her daughter:
  - a. has some diarrhea
  - b. gets a rash, starts itching, or starts wheezing
  - c. stops crying
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient's mother to:
  - a. keep the medicine in the refrigerator
  - b. make sure her daughter takes the entire medicine even if she starts to feel better
  - c. both a and b

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### **Dialogue #3**

Listen to Dialogue #3, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that the eye doctor gave him a prescription to treat his:
  - a. glaucoma
  - b. hematoma
  - c. high blood pressure
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The name of the prescription is:
  - a. Isopto Cetamide
  - b. Isopto Carpine
  - c. Isopto Tears
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist explains that the medication will help:
  - a. increase pressure in the eyes and decrease vision problems
  - b. reduce pressure in the eyes and help to prevent vision problems
  - c. decrease pressure in the eyes but not increase vision
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient:
  - a. lives at the same address and is allergic to Visine
  - b. lives at the same address, has the same insurance, and has no allergies
  - c. lives at the same address and has no insurance
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist instructs the patient that after squirting the drops in his eyes, the patient should:
  - a. try to wink
  - b. try not to blink
  - c. try to shut his eyes tight
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Al Mangini and he is 60 years old
  - b. Aldo Mancine and he is 44 years old
  - c. Aldo Mancini and he is 62 years old
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is:
  - a. April 15, 1945
  - b. April 4, 1944
  - c. April 5, 1944
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Common side effects of the medication include:
  - a. watery discharge
  - b. irritation, burning, and stinging
  - c. swelling and stinging
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The correct spelling of the eyes drops is:
  - a. I-S-O-T-O-P-E      C-A-R-B-O-N
  - b. I-S-O-T-O-P        C-A-R-P-I-N
  - c. I-S-O-P-T-O        C-A-R-P-I-N-E

10. \_\_\_\_\_ The following information is on the prescription label:
- the pharmacist's name, the pharmacy phone number, and number of times patient will need to use the eyedrops
  - the pharmacy phone number and the number of times the patient will need to use the eyedrops
  - the side effects only

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

Idioms and idiomatic expressions are made up of a group of words that have a different meaning from the original meaning of each individual word. Native speakers of the English language use such expressions comfortably and naturally. However, individuals who are new speakers of English or who have studied English for many years may still not be able to use idioms and idiomatic expressions as comfortably or naturally as native speakers. As pharmacy students, pharmacy technicians, and practicing pharmacists, you will hear many different idiomatic expressions. Some of you will understand and know how to use these expressions correctly. At times, however, you may not understand what your professors, colleagues, and patients are saying. This of course can lead to miscommunication, embarrassment, and possibly dangerous mistakes.

To help you improve your knowledge of idioms and idiomatic expressions, carefully read the following idiomatic expressions that contain the body words of eye and ear.

### Idiomatic Expressions using “Eye”

- keep an eye out** for something means that the person should look for, watch, find, or notice something.  
For example: You need to **keep an eye out** for any allergic reactions to the medication.
- to have eyes in the back of one's head** means that the person knows everything that is happening around him or her even with the back turned.  
For example: Mothers with children usually have **eyes in the back of their head** when their children are playing outdoors.
- to have eyes like a hawk** means that the person can notice every small detail so it would be difficult to deceive that person.  
For example: My boss has **eyes like a hawk**, so I try not to eat while I'm dispensing medicines to patients.
- to have a good eye** for something means that a person has the ability to notice and recognize something of good quality, something that is valuable, etc.  
For example: The pharmacy technician who pays attention to every detail **has a good eye** for recognizing fake prescriptions.
- to have your eyes glued** to something means you are watching something with all your attention, or you are not able to move because you are frightened of something.  
For example: Everyone in the office had their **eyes glued** to the TV news report about the pharmacist who went to jail for stealing prescription medicines.
- to be hit between the eyes** means the person has received surprising and shocking news.  
For example: She was really **hit between the eyes** when she did not receive the promotion to pharmacy regional manager.

### Idiomatic Expressions using “Ear”

- to lend an ear** means to listen sympathetically to someone.  
For example: It important to **lend an ear** to patients who are medically ill when they speak to you.

2. **to turn a deaf ear** means that the person is ignoring and pretending not to hear what the other person is saying.

For example: It's not always a good idea to **turn a deaf ear** to patient complaints that you feel are not serious.

3. **to be wet/green behind the ears** means to be new at your job or to have little experience.

For example: Because I was still **wet/green behind the ears**, I made several nonfatal mistakes switching the patient labels on the prescription bottles.

4. **to be up to your ears** in something means that you are very busy.

For example: Because she was **up to her ears** in work, she called another pharmacist to help her fill the prescriptions.

5. **to bend someone's ear** means to talk to someone for a long time about your problems or concerns.

For example: Some patients will **bend their pharmacist's ear** about their health problems.

6. **to smile/grin from ear to ear** means to be very happy.

For example: She **smiled from ear to ear** for a week after learning she had passed the pharmacy licensing exam.

### Mini Dialogues Listening Exercise

How much did you understand? Listen to the following mini dialogues in the audio files found in Chapter 2 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), read the questions below, and then choose the correct answer.



#### Mini Dialogue #1

1. \_\_\_\_\_ **Smiling from ear to ear** means:

- a. the person has been hired by three pharmacies
- b. the person took the licensing exam three times before she passed
- c. the person is very happy



#### Mini Dialogue #2

2. \_\_\_\_\_ **My eyes were glued** means:

- a. I sat close to the TV because I could not see
- b. I watched the soccer game with all my attention
- c. I was frightened and shocked



#### Mini Dialogue #3

3. \_\_\_\_\_ **Up to his ears** means:

- a. the new head pharmacist can talk for a long time
- b. the new head pharmacist is very busy with work
- c. the new pharmacist is in shock



#### Mini Dialogue #4

4. \_\_\_\_\_ **Bend your ear** means:

- a. to pay careful attention to someone's problems
- b. to damage your ear
- c. to talk a very long time to someone else about one's problems



### Mini Dialogue #5

5. \_\_\_\_\_ *Green behind the ears* means:
- to worry and to be anxious
  - to be happy
  - to be new at your job and have little experience



### Mini Dialogue #6

6. \_\_\_\_\_ *To have eyes like a hawk* means:
- the boss is strong and determined
  - the boss has poor vision
  - the boss can't be easily deceived because he notices every detail



### Mini Dialogue #7

7. \_\_\_\_\_ *To have eyes in the back of your head* means:
- to be able to see what's going on when our backs are turned
  - to look directly at people
  - to be unable to see

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## POST-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

- \_\_\_\_\_ The idiom **to bend someone's ear** means the individual is breaking someone's ear.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The noun form of **deaf** is deafness.
- \_\_\_\_\_ An infected eyelid causes lazy eye.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **lump** is lumpy.
- \_\_\_\_\_ If a person's **eyes are glued to something**, it means he or she has crusty eyes.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Another word for squinting is blinking.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Floaters are dark spots that cause tunnel vision.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The past tense and adjective form of **tug** is tugged.
- \_\_\_\_\_ A sty is a one kind of ear infection.
- \_\_\_\_\_ A halo is a ringing sound in the ear.
- \_\_\_\_\_ If a person is **up to his or her ears in work**, it means he or she is not busy.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Jaundice is a yellowish discoloration of ear wax.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Photophobia means sensitivity to sound.
- \_\_\_\_\_ People with presbyopia have no difficulty seeing close objects or reading print.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Working on the computer for a long time helps to reduce eye strain.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **swell** is:
  - a. swollen and swelled
  - b. swelled
  - c. swell
2. \_\_\_\_\_ If a person has airplane ear, the person:
  - a. is an airline pilot
  - b. flies many planes
  - c. has ear pressure
3. \_\_\_\_\_ If a person is **all ears**, the person is:
  - a. deaf in both ears
  - b. worried and anxious
  - c. paying attention
4. \_\_\_\_\_ A child with a middle ear infection:
  - a. will wear ear plugs
  - b. will tug at the ear and cry inconsolably
  - c. needs to have the wax in the ear removed
5. \_\_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "If you are experiencing drainage from your ear, see a doctor," the word **drainage** is:
  - a. a past tense verb
  - b. an adjective
  - c. a noun
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **bulge** is:
  - a. bulgy
  - b. bulged only
  - c. bulged, bulging, and bulgy
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Cataracts cause:
  - a. farsightedness
  - b. blurred vision
  - c. tunnel vision
8. \_\_\_\_\_ A person who has **eyes like a hawk**:
  - a. has perfect vision
  - b. is difficult to deceive because he or she notices every small detail
  - c. is strong and determined
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Dry eye is caused by:
  - a. contact lenses
  - b. the inability to produce tears
  - c. styes
10. \_\_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "The girl complained of an itchy bump on her eye," the word **bump** is:
  - a. an adjective
  - b. a verb
  - c. a noun
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The word **perforated** is:
  - a. both a verb and a noun
  - b. a verb and an adjective
  - c. a verb only



12. \_\_\_\_ A crusty eyelid is caused by:
- having your eyes glued to something
  - dry eye
  - discharge from the eye that will dry
13. \_\_\_\_ If your ears are clogged, you will:
- hear perfectly
  - have difficulty hearing
  - hear hissing sounds
14. \_\_\_\_ The word **focused** is:
- a verb only
  - an adjective only
  - a verb and an adjective
15. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "The child tugged at her ear," **tugged** is:
- an adjective
  - a verb
  - a noun

## Listening and Comprehension Exercises



### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

- \_\_\_\_ The patient has a prescription for:
  - a topical antibiotic
  - an antibiotic
  - an antihistamine
- \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist he:
  - is a fast swimmer
  - has swimmer's ear
  - can only swim above his ears
- \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient the prescription is for:
  - cortisol
  - cortisone
  - Cortisporin
- \_\_\_\_ The patient probably got the ear infection:
  - swimming in a pool
  - swimming in Cooper River
  - swimming in a pool and in Cooper River

5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist he has:
- never had swimmer's ear before
  - had swimmer's ear a couple of times
  - had swimmer's ear only one time before
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that he:
- usually puts diluted vinegar in his ear and takes Tylenol for pain when he has swimmer's ear
  - never puts diluted vinegar in his ear when he has swimmer's ear
  - has only taken Tylenol when he has swimmer's ear
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that the antibiotic will:
- stop the growth of bacteria only
  - reduce the swelling and inflammation only
  - stop and reduce the growth of bacteria and reduce the swelling and inflammation
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor prescribed the patient to put drops in his ear:
- three to four times a week
  - thirty-four times a day
  - three to four times a day
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist told the patient he should start feeling better in:
- 35 days
  - 3 to 5 days
  - 3 to 5 weeks
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The side effects of the antibiotic could include:
- a plugged ear
  - a ruptured ear
  - hearing loss
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient told the pharmacist he will:
- read the directions and instructions in the package and run a marathon in 1 week
  - read the directions and instructions in the package and run a triathlon in 1 month
  - read the directions and instructions in the package and run a biathlon in about 1 month
12. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
- Michael E. Frank and his birth date is February 2, 1960
  - Michael P. Frances and his birth date is February 2, 1960
  - Michael P. Francis and his birth date is February 2, 1960



### **Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient has just had:
  - a. hip surgery
  - b. cataract surgery
  - c. foot surgery
2. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist on duty is:
  - a. Miss Newman
  - b. Dr. Newmark
  - c. Mr. Newmark
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient's prescription is for:
  - a. conjunctivitis
  - b. inflammation
  - c. a laceration
4. \_\_\_\_ The name of the drug is:
  - a. Levitra
  - b. Lotemax
  - c. Lamisil
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Edeline Burn
  - b. Ethel Burns
  - c. Ethel Byrnes
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is:
  - a. December 14, 1928
  - b. December 4, 1938
  - c. December 4, 1948
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient is allergic to:
  - a. penicillin and is taking other medications
  - b. ampicillin and is taking other medications
  - c. penicillin and is not taking other medications
8. \_\_\_\_ Upon putting the eyedrops in the eye, the patient may experience:
  - a. dry eye
  - b. burning and stinging
  - c. crusty eye
9. \_\_\_\_ The patient should call the doctor immediately if she:
  - a. goes for her 2-mile walk
  - b. experiences dizziness, a rash, itching, and difficulty breathing
  - c. gets itchy while she walks
10. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist is glad the patient has:
  - a. a good sense of humor
  - b. no sense of humor
  - c. a bad sense of humor



### **Dialogue #3**

Listen to Dialogue #3, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient has a ruptured eardrum as a result of:
  - a. swimming
  - b. a brawl
  - c. inserting a Q-tip in his ear
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that the emergency room doctor told him he has:
  - a. a plugged ear
  - b. a ruptured eardrum
  - c. airplane ear
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient went to the emergency room:
  - a. immediately after the brawl
  - b. a week after the brawl
  - c. a couple of days after the brawl
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The prescription is for:
  - a. hydrocortisone
  - b. Cortisporin Otic
  - c. cortisone
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Tom Mill
  - b. Thomas Milner
  - c. Thomas Miller
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is:
  - a. November 6, 1980
  - b. November 16, 1980
  - c. November 16, 1986
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's home address is:
  - a. 17 Oak Bluff Road in Middle Berry, Connecticut
  - b. 7 Oak Bluff Road in Middlebury, Connecticut
  - c. 17 Oak Bluff Road in Middlebury, Connecticut
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist told the patient:
  - a. to use a shower cap when showering and to blow his nose gently if he needs to
  - b. that it is not necessary to wear a shower cap
  - c. that it is not necessary to blow his nose gently
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient:
  - a. has insurance and a credit card
  - b. has no credit card
  - c. has no insurance, but has a credit card

10. \_\_\_\_ The patient said “Yikes!” to express:
- a. his shock at the cost of the prescription
  - b. how happy he was he had his credit card
  - c. he will try to not get in another brawl in the future

How did you do on the Post-Assessment in Chapter 2? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.



## PRE-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ A person who has **halitosis** should use mouthwash regularly.
2. \_\_\_\_ Drinking water regularly can help to reduce **dry mouth**.
3. \_\_\_\_ The slang term for **rhinoplasty** is nose job.
4. \_\_\_\_ Allergies or a cold can cause a person to experience **postnasal drip**.
5. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **infection** is infected.
6. \_\_\_\_ A **canker sore** is a small but painful ulcer in the mouth, which can make eating and talking unpleasant.
7. \_\_\_\_ If a child's **runny nose** is not wiped as needed, the **mucous discharge** will become dry and crusted.
8. \_\_\_\_ A **cold sore** appears on the lip and can look red and crusted.
9. \_\_\_\_ Colds, allergies, nose picking, dryness, and cocaine use can cause a **nosebleed**.
10. \_\_\_\_ Whitish patches on the tongue and the back of the mouth can be a sign of **thrush**.
11. \_\_\_\_ Saline nose drops, a humidifier, or a vaporizer can help alleviate **nasal dryness**.
12. \_\_\_\_ If you are experiencing pain and pressure in your face, a headache, and a **congested** and **stuffy** nose that is discharging a thick yellow-green **mucus**, you might have **sinusitis**.
13. \_\_\_\_ **Chapped lips** are soft and healthy.
14. \_\_\_\_ A **deviated septum** can block one or both **nostrils** and cause **nasal congestion**.
15. \_\_\_\_ The word **swell** is a noun and verb form.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ "My nose is **stuffy**" means:
  - a. the nose is infected
  - b. the nose is bleeding
  - c. the nose is congested
2. \_\_\_\_ "I **paid through the nose** for my medicine" means:
  - a. I bought nose drops for my congested nose
  - b. the medicine is very expensive
  - c. the medicine is inexpensive

3. \_\_\_\_\_ A **canker sore** is:
  - a. a benign mouth ulcer
  - b. a blister on the lip
  - c. a malignant ulcer
4. \_\_\_\_\_ A person who **shoots his or her mouth off**:
  - a. accidentally shoots their mouth with a gun
  - b. talks too much about matters they shouldn't talk about
  - c. is protesting
5. \_\_\_\_\_ If the patient complains of **hay fever**, the patient will experience:
  - a. a low-grade fever
  - b. itchy eyes with a clear discharge and sneezing
  - c. fever blisters
6. \_\_\_\_\_ A common mouth condition in infants is:
  - a. oral thrush
  - b. sinusitis
  - c. hay fever
7. \_\_\_\_\_ If a person has **fever blisters**, he or she:
  - a. need to only apply Blistex on them
  - b. should get treatment, because fever blisters are contagious
  - c. should cover the nose when he or she sneezes
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The word **congested** is:
  - a. a verb
  - b. an adjective and a verb
  - c. an adverb
9. \_\_\_\_\_ **Stuffy nose** is another term for:
  - a. bloody nose
  - b. nasal congestion
  - c. nasal passages
10. \_\_\_\_\_ A person who **snores**:
  - a. may temporarily stop breathing during sleep
  - b. is a sound sleeper
  - c. has too much mucus in the nose

How did you do? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

## MEDICAL VOCABULARY

---

A good understanding of vocabulary words in pharmacy is very important for communication with professors, fellow students, patients, and coworkers. Knowledge and understanding of vocabulary leads to successful communication and success as a pharmacy student, as a pharmacy technician, and as a practicing pharmacist. You may already know many of the vocabulary words in this chapter, but for words that are unfamiliar, pay careful attention to them and make every effort to know their correct spelling, meaning, and pronunciation. It is a good idea to keep a list of new words and to look up these new words in a bilingual dictionary or dictionary in your first language. A good command of pharmacy-related vocabulary and good pronunciation of vocabulary will help to prevent embarrassing mistakes and increase effective verbal communication skills.



## Nose Vocabulary

adenoids	halitosis	ragweed
antihistamine	hay fever	rhinoplasty
blocked nose	mucus	roof of the mouth
boogers	nasal congestion	runny nose
clogged nose	nasal discharge	sinus infection
cloudy discharge	nosebleed	sinus passages
congestion	nose job	sneezing
coughing	nostril	snoring
decongestant	pick the nose	tonsils
deviated septum	pollen	
dry cough	postnasal drip	

## Mouth Vocabulary

canker sore	gingivitis	saliva
chapped lips	gums	scratchy throat
cheek	hairy tongue	spit
chipped tooth	halitosis	sputum
cold sore	hoarse voice	taste buds
cracked lips	itchy throat	sore throat
dentures	mouth sore	strep throat
drool	oral herpes	swallow
dry mouth	oral thrush	teething
fever blister	palate	tingle
gag reflex	phlegm	tooth
gargle	plaque	yeast infection

## PARTS OF SPEECH

A good understanding of parts of speech, such as verbs, nouns, adjectives, and adverbs, is important for successful communication when speaking or writing. It is equally important to know the various forms of words and to use them appropriately.

### Word Forms

The table below lists the main forms of some terms that you will likely encounter in pharmacy practice. Review the table and then do the exercises that follow to assess your understanding.

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v) —Past Tense	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
an allergen; an allergy		allergic	
a bleed	to bleed; bled	bleeding; bloody	
a block	to block; blocked	blocked; blockage	
a blow	to blow; blew	blowing	
a cloud; cloudiness	to cloud; clouded	clouded; cloudy; clouding	
congestion	to congest; congested	congested; congestive	
contagion		contagious	contagiously
a cough; coughing	to cough; coughed	coughing	
a crack	to crack; cracked	cracked; cracking	
a drip	to drip; dripped	dripping	

(continued)

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v) —Past Tense	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
a drool	to drool; drooled	drooling	
drowsiness		drowsy	
excessiveness		excessive	excessively
a gag	to gag; gagged	gagging	
a gargle	to gargle; gargled	gargling	
hoarseness		hoarse	hoarsely
mucus		mucous; mucousy; mucosal	
a recurrence	to recur; recurred	recurrent	
a relief	to relieve; relieved	relieved; relieving	
a sneeze	to sneeze; sneezed	sneezing	
stuffiness	to stuff; stuffed	stuffed	
snore	to snore; snored	snoring	
a spit	to spit; spat		
sufferer; suffering	to suffer; suffered	suffering	
a swallow	to swallow; swallowed	swallowing	
tenderness	to tender; tendered	tender	tenderly
a tingle	to tingle; tingled	tingling	
a tooth	to teethe	teething	
water	to water; watered	watered; watering; watery	

### *Word Forms Exercise*

Read the following sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv.

- One way to relieve a **stuffy nose**, which is caused by **swollen** membranes, is to use a **nasal** spray.  
stuffy nose \_\_\_\_\_ swollen \_\_\_\_\_ nasal \_\_\_\_\_
- A **canker sore** is a red **bump** in the mouth that **ulcerates**.  
canker sore \_\_\_\_\_ bump \_\_\_\_\_ ulcerates \_\_\_\_\_
- Because infants and small children do not know how to **blow** their noses, a **nasal** aspirator can be used to remove the **mucus** that **clogs** their **nostrils**.  
blow \_\_\_\_\_ nasal \_\_\_\_\_ mucus \_\_\_\_\_ clogs \_\_\_\_\_ nostrils \_\_\_\_\_
- If you have a **mouth sore**, it's a good idea to **gargle** with cool water to help relieve the **irritation** in your mouth.  
mouth sore \_\_\_\_\_ gargle \_\_\_\_\_ irritation \_\_\_\_\_
- People **allergic** to pollen, dust, and dander will experience a **stuffy** nose and **swollen, watering** eyes.  
allergic \_\_\_\_\_ stuffy \_\_\_\_\_ swollen \_\_\_\_\_ watering \_\_\_\_\_
- Some people will experience the **irritating, tingling** sensation of a **canker sore** if they have bitten their tongue or cheek.  
irritating \_\_\_\_\_ tingling \_\_\_\_\_ canker sore \_\_\_\_\_

7. Over-the-counter **antihistamines** can help reduce the amount of **mucus** produced if you have a **runny nose**, but they may also make you **drowsy**.  
antihistamines \_\_\_\_\_ mucus \_\_\_\_\_ runny nose \_\_\_\_\_ drowsy \_\_\_\_\_
8. Though **coughing** helps us to **clear** our throats, you should see a doctor if you have **excessive** coughing.  
coughing \_\_\_\_\_ clear \_\_\_\_\_ excessive \_\_\_\_\_
9. If you feel pain and **scratchiness** in your throat and have difficulty **swallowing**, you probably have a **sore** throat.  
scratchiness \_\_\_\_\_ swallowing \_\_\_\_\_ sore \_\_\_\_\_
10. Hay fever **sufferers** may experience thick or discolored **drainage** from their **inflamed sinuses**.  
sufferers \_\_\_\_\_ drainage \_\_\_\_\_ inflamed \_\_\_\_\_ sinuses \_\_\_\_\_
11. Another word for **mucus** and **sputum** is **phlegm**.  
mucus \_\_\_\_\_ sputum \_\_\_\_\_ phlegm \_\_\_\_\_
12. The slang word for **mucus** is **boogers**, and is used more by children than adults.  
mucus \_\_\_\_\_ boogers \_\_\_\_\_
13. To **diagnose strep throat**, a throat culture test is needed.  
diagnose \_\_\_\_\_ strep throat \_\_\_\_\_
14. **Postnasal drip** is another word for the **mucus** that runs down the back of the throat.  
postnasal drip \_\_\_\_\_ mucus \_\_\_\_\_
15. To get some **relief** from a **painful** mouth sore, you should **gargle** with **cool** water.  
relief \_\_\_\_\_ painful \_\_\_\_\_ gargle \_\_\_\_\_ cool \_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### *Typical Medical Conditions and Patient Complaints*

The sentences below contain vocabulary that describes and explains typical medical conditions, diseases, symptoms, and patient complaints that a pharmacist encounters. Read the sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv. Look up words you do not know in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

1. Children with **runny noses** can be treated with over-the-counter **decongestants** and a cool mist vaporizer.  
runny noses \_\_\_\_\_ decongestants \_\_\_\_\_
2. The patient complained that when he **blew** his nose, the **nasal discharge** was thick, **cloudy** and yellow-green in color.  
blew \_\_\_\_\_ nasal discharge \_\_\_\_\_ cloudy \_\_\_\_\_
3. If you **suffer** from a **sinus infection**, the **tenderness** you feel around your eyes and cheekbones will feel worse if you bend your head forward.  
suffer \_\_\_\_\_ sinus infection \_\_\_\_\_ tenderness \_\_\_\_\_
4. If you experience **itching** eyes, a **watery discharge** from your nose, and **sneezing**, you might have hay fever.  
itching \_\_\_\_\_ watery \_\_\_\_\_ discharge \_\_\_\_\_ sneezing \_\_\_\_\_
5. **Allergens**, such as dander and pollen, can cause a person's nose to **run**, **itch**, **swell**, and produce **mucus**.  
allergens \_\_\_\_\_ run \_\_\_\_\_ itch \_\_\_\_\_ swell \_\_\_\_\_ mucus \_\_\_\_\_

6. A person with **oral thrush**, which is caused by a **fungus**, will have yellow and white spots on the mouth and tongue.  
oral thrush \_\_\_\_\_ fungus \_\_\_\_\_
7. Toddlers who are **teething** will be cranky, **irritable**, and will cry and **drool** a lot.  
teething \_\_\_\_\_ irritable \_\_\_\_\_ drool \_\_\_\_\_
8. **Nosebleeds** can be caused by dry **nasal passages** and by rubbing and picking at a **blocked** or **itching** nose.  
nosebleeds \_\_\_\_\_ nasal passages \_\_\_\_\_ blocked \_\_\_\_\_ itching \_\_\_\_\_
9. A person with a **deviated septum** can suffer from **sinus infections** and **snoring**, and have difficulty breathing.  
deviated septum \_\_\_\_\_ sinus infections \_\_\_\_\_ snoring \_\_\_\_\_
10. Lozenges, mouthwashes, and mints can temporarily **relieve halitosis**, commonly known as bad **breath**.  
relieve \_\_\_\_\_ halitosis \_\_\_\_\_ breath \_\_\_\_\_
11. **Fever blisters**, or cold sores, are painful **fluid-filled blisters** found on the lips, **gums**, and roof of the mouth.  
fever blisters \_\_\_\_\_ fluid-filled \_\_\_\_\_ blisters \_\_\_\_\_ gums \_\_\_\_\_
12. **Sputum**, which is **coughed** up with saliva, is another word for **phlegm** and **mucus**.  
sputum \_\_\_\_\_ coughed \_\_\_\_\_ phlegm \_\_\_\_\_ mucus \_\_\_\_\_
13. It's not uncommon to lose one's **taste buds**, and for food to taste differently when one has a **cold** or a **stuffy nose**.  
taste buds \_\_\_\_\_ cold \_\_\_\_\_ stuffy nose \_\_\_\_\_
14. An **inflammation** of the throat can cause a sore throat, **scratchiness** in the throat, and difficulty **swallowing**.  
inflammation \_\_\_\_\_ scratchiness \_\_\_\_\_ swallowing \_\_\_\_\_
15. The patient complained that the **coughing** episodes were becoming more frequent and that she was **spitting up bloody**, green-yellow **phlegm**.  
coughing \_\_\_\_\_ spitting \_\_\_\_\_ bloody \_\_\_\_\_ phlegm \_\_\_\_\_
16. **Bruising** and **swelling** will occur around the eyes after rhinoplasty, commonly referred to as a nose surgery or a nose job.  
bruising \_\_\_\_\_ swelling \_\_\_\_\_
17. Even though canker sores are not **contagious**, it's a good idea not to kiss another person if you have one because the person can **infect** your canker sore.  
contagious \_\_\_\_\_ infect \_\_\_\_\_
18. If your gums are red, **sore**, **swollen**, and **bleed** easily, you should see your dentist.  
sore \_\_\_\_\_ swollen \_\_\_\_\_ bleed \_\_\_\_\_
19. To treat **chapped** lips, which can become red, **sore**, and **peel**, apply an over-the-counter antibiotic ointment to **prevent** an **infection**.  
chapped \_\_\_\_\_ sore \_\_\_\_\_ peel \_\_\_\_\_ prevent \_\_\_\_\_ infection \_\_\_\_\_
20. **Dry mouth** can be caused by certain health conditions, medications, smoking, **snoring**, and the inability to **produce saliva**.  
dry mouth \_\_\_\_\_ snoring \_\_\_\_\_ produce \_\_\_\_\_ saliva \_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## Medical Vocabulary Comprehension

Now that you have read sentences 1 through 20 describing language regarding the nose and mouth, assess your understanding by doing the exercises below.

### *Multiple Choice Questions*

Choose the answer that correctly completes each sentence below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ **Nose spray** relieves:
  - a. a nosebleed
  - b. a stuffy nose
  - c. thrush
2. \_\_\_\_\_ **Teething** in toddlers can cause:
  - a. bite marks
  - b. drooling
  - c. fever blisters
3. \_\_\_\_\_ **Fever blisters** are:
  - a. painful fluid-filled blisters
  - b. blood-filled blisters
  - c. pus-filled blisters
4. \_\_\_\_\_ In children, a **nasal aspirator** can be used to:
  - a. prevent coughing
  - b. stop a runny nose
  - c. remove mucus
5. \_\_\_\_\_ A red bump that ulcerates in the mouth is:
  - a. a canker sore
  - b. fungus
  - c. sputum
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Another term for **phlegm** is:
  - a. sputum
  - b. cough
  - c. postnasal drip
7. \_\_\_\_\_ A **stuffy nose** can cause:
  - a. fungus in the nasal passage
  - b. teething
  - c. a loss of taste buds
8. \_\_\_\_\_ To help relieve the irritation of a **canker sore**, you should:
  - a. apply a warm compress
  - b. gargle with cool water
  - c. pick it
9. \_\_\_\_\_ **Postnasal drip** is another term for:
  - a. blowing your nose
  - b. allergens that produce mucus
  - c. the mucus that runs down the back of the throat

10. \_\_\_\_\_ Another term for **halitosis** is:
  - a. bad breath
  - b. halos
  - c. grittiness
11. \_\_\_\_\_ One way to relieve a stuffy nose is to:
  - a. blow your nose hard
  - b. use a nasal spray
  - c. pick your nose
12. \_\_\_\_\_ **Antihistamines** can:
  - a. make a person drowsy
  - b. cause a runny nose
  - c. cause mouth sores
13. \_\_\_\_\_ **Oral thrush** is caused by:
  - a. halitosis
  - b. fungus
  - c. pollen
14. \_\_\_\_\_ Another term for **palate** is:
  - a. tongue
  - b. roof of mouth
  - c. gums
15. \_\_\_\_\_ **Dry nasal passages** can cause:
  - a. a nosebleed
  - b. sputum
  - c. phlegm

### *True/False Questions*

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_\_ If a patient complains that tenderness around the eyes and cheeks gets worse when bending the head forward, the patient may be suffering from a sinus infection.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ If a patient complains of pain and scratchiness in the throat, and is having difficulty swallowing, the patient probably has postnasal drip.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ People allergic to dander, pollen, and dust will not experience a stuffy nose or swollen and watering eyes.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Because coughing helps us to clear our throats, if you have excessive coughing you should not see a doctor.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Teething may cause some children to be irritable and to drool.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Halitosis can be temporarily relieved by lozenges only.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The word “drowsiness” is an adjective.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The word “relieved” is both a verb and an adjective.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Whitish patches on the tongue and back of the mouth can be a sign of thrush.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Allergies or a cold can trigger postnasal drip.

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### *Writing Exercise*

An important part of communication is the ability to write about what you read, to write correctly, and to spell correctly. In the exercises below, write your understanding of the meaning of the bolded words.

1. Describe in writing what a **runny nose**, a **stuffy nose**, and a **nosebleed** are.

---



---



---



---

2. Describe in writing what a **canker sore** and a **fever blister** are.

---



---



---



---

3. Describe in writing what a **sore throat** and **strep throat** are.

---



---



---



---

4. Describe in writing what **phlegm**, **sputum**, and **mucus** are.

---



---



---



---

Check what you have written with acceptable answers that appear in the Answer Key online.

## LISTENING AND PRONUNCIATION

The ability to listen and understand what is being said and heard, and the ability to pronounce words clearly, is extremely important. A word misheard and a word mispronounced will lead to poor communication and can seriously put both the pharmacist and patient in danger. Therefore, it is very important that one hear clearly what another person has said, and that one speak clearly with correct pronunciation.

Listen carefully to the pharmacy-related words presented in the audio files found in Chapter 3 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), and then pronounce them as accurately as you can. Listen and then repeat. You will listen to each word once and then you will repeat it. You will do this twice for each word. Listening and pronunciation practice will increase your listening and speaking confidence. Many languages do not produce or emphasize certain sounds produced and emphasized in English, so pay careful attention to the pronunciation of each word.



### Pronunciation Exercise

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 3 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) and repeat the words. Then say the words aloud for additional practice.

- |                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. adenoids      | ãd' n-oidz           |
| 2. antihistamine | ãn't ĕ-h ĭs't ə-m ĕn |
| 3. blocked nose  | blŏkt nŏz            |
| 4. booger        | bŏŏg' ər             |
| 5. chapped lips  | chãpt l ĭpz          |
| 6. cheek         | ch ĕk                |

7. chipped tooth	ch <sup>ĩ</sup> p t <sup>ōo</sup> th
8. clogged nose	klôgd n <sup>ōz</sup>
9. cloudy discharge	klou'd <sup>ē</sup> d <sup>ĩ</sup> s-chärj
10. cold sore	k <sup>ō</sup> ld s <sup>ōr</sup>
11. congestion	kon-jes'ch <sup>ũ</sup> n
12. coughing	kôfŋ
13. cracked lips	kr <sup>ä</sup> kt l <sup>ĩ</sup> pz
14. decongestant	d <sup>ē</sup> 'kə-n-j <sup>ēs</sup> 'tənt
15. dentures	d <sup>ē</sup> n'chərs
16. deviated septum	d <sup>ē</sup> 'v <sup>ē</sup> -ā't' s <sup>ē</sup> p'təm
17. drool	dr <sup>ōo</sup> l
18. dry cough	dr <sup>ĩ</sup> kôf
19. dry mouth	dr <sup>ĩ</sup> mouth
20. fever blister	f <sup>ē</sup> 'vər bl <sup>ĩ</sup> s'tər
21. gag reflex	gäg r <sup>ē</sup> 'fl <sup>ē</sup> ks
22. gargle	gär'gəl
23. gingivitis	j <sup>ĩ</sup> n'jə-v <sup>ĩ</sup> 't <sup>ĩ</sup> s
24. gums	gumz
25. hairy tongue	hâr'ē t <sup>ũ</sup> ng
26. halitosis	hāl'ĩ-t <sup>ō</sup> 's <sup>ĩ</sup> s
27. hay fever	hā f <sup>ē</sup> 'vər
28. hoarse voice	h <sup>ō</sup> rs vois
29. itchy throat	ĩch'ē thr <sup>ō</sup> t
30. mouth sore	mouth s <sup>ōr</sup>
31. mucus	my <sup>ōo</sup> 'kəs
32. nasal discharge	nā'zəl d <sup>ĩ</sup> s-chärj'
33. nosebleed	n <sup>ōz</sup> bl <sup>ē</sup> d
34. nose job	n <sup>ōz</sup> jōb
35. nostril	n <sup>ō</sup> s'trəl
36. oral herpes	ôr'əl hûr'pēz
37. oral thrush	ôr'əl, ôr' thr <sup>ũ</sup> sh
38. palate	pāl'ĩt
39. phlegm	fl <sup>ē</sup> m
40. pick the nose	p <sup>ĩ</sup> k thə n <sup>ōz</sup>
41. plaque	plāk
42. pollen	p <sup>ō</sup> l'ən
43. postnasal drip	p <sup>ō</sup> st nā'zəl dr <sup>ĩ</sup> p
44. ragweed	räg'wēd'
45. rhinoplasty	r <sup>ĩ</sup> n <sup>ō</sup> -plās'tē
46. runny nose	r <sup>ũ</sup> n'ē n <sup>ōz</sup>
47. saliva	sə- ĩ'və
48. scratchy throat	skräch'ē thr <sup>ō</sup> t
49. sinus infection	s <sup>ĩ</sup> 'nəs ĩn-f <sup>ē</sup> k'shən
50. sinus passages	s <sup>ĩ</sup> 'nəs pās'ĩjs
51. sneezing	sn <sup>ē</sup> zŋ
52. snoring	snôrŋ
53. sore throat	sôr thr <sup>ō</sup> t
54. spit	sp <sup>ĩ</sup> t
55. sputum	spy <sup>ōo</sup> 'təm
56. strep throat	str <sup>ē</sup> p thr <sup>ō</sup> t



57. taste buds	t <sup>ā</sup> st b <sup>ū</sup> ds
58. tingle	t <sup>ī</sup> ng'g <sup>ə</sup> l
59. tonsils	t <sup>ō</sup> n's <sup>ə</sup> ls
60. tooth	t <sup>oo</sup> th

Which words are easy to pronounce? Which are difficult to pronounce? Use the space below to write in the words that you find difficult to pronounce. These are words you should practice saying often.

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 3 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) as many times as you need to increase your pronunciation ability of the difficult words. Pronounce these words with a friend or a colleague who speaks English.

#### English Sounds That Are Difficult for Speakers of Other Languages to Pronounce

##### Spanish

In Spanish, there is no English “v” sound, but the “v” consonant in Spanish is pronounced like the English “b.” The vowel “i” is pronounced like a long “e.” Pay careful attention to the “v” sound in English when pronouncing words that begin with “v.” Also pay careful attention to English words that begin with “s;” do not use the Spanish “es” sound when pronouncing English words that begin with “s.”

For example, in English,

stuffy nose is not pronounced estuffy nose  
sneezing is not pronounced esneezeen

##### Vietnamese

In Vietnamese, the “t” consonant is pronounced “s,” but in English the “t” is pronounced “t” and “s” is pronounced “s.” Be careful with English words that begin with “t.” In Vietnamese, the “b” consonant is pronounced “p,” but in English “p” is pronounced “p” and “b” is pronounced “b.”

In Vietnamese, words do not end in “b,” “ch,” “f,” “d,” “j,” “l,” “p,” “r,” “s,” “sh,” “v,” and “z.” In English, words end in these letters. Pay special attention to pronouncing these English sounds. In Vietnamese, there is no “dzh” or “zh” sound, so English words like “judge” (dzh) and rupture (zh) will be hard for Vietnamese speakers to pronounce.

For example, in English,

blocked nose is not pronounced plo no  
cracked lips is not pronounced crah lih  
postnasal drip is not pronounced ponayso drih  
discharge is not pronounced dihshar

(continued)

### Gujarati

In Gujarati, “v” is pronounced “w,” “f” is pronounced “p,” “p” is pronounced “f,” and “z” is pronounced “j.” Short “i” is pronounced long “e,” “x” is pronounced “ch,” and “th” is pronounced “s.” In English, “v” is pronounced “v,” “f” is pronounced “f,” “z” is pronounced “z” or “s,” “j” is pronounced “j,” and “x” is pronounced “x.” Pay careful attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

fever blister is not pronounced pever bleester  
 deviated septum is not pronounced dewiated seftum  
 postnasal drip is not pronounced fostnasal dreef

### Korean

In Korean, the “v” consonant is pronounced “b” and the “f” consonant is pronounced “p.” In English, the “v” is pronounced “v,” the “f” is pronounced “f,” and the “p” is pronounced “p.” Pay special attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

fever is not pronounced pever

### Chinese

In Chinese, the “r” consonant is pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are not pronounced at all. Pay careful attention to English words that begin with “r” because the “r” is not pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are pronounced in English.

For example, in English,

runny nose is not pronounced lunny nose

### Russian

The “w” consonant is pronounced like a “v” and the “v” sounds like a “w.” Pay careful attention to the English “th.” It is not pronounced “s.”

For example, in English,

throat is not pronounced sroat

## DICTATION



### Listening/Spelling Exercise: Word and Word Pairs

Listen to the words or word pairs on the audio files found in Chapter 3 on thePoint (thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_

9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_



### Listening/Spelling Exercise: Sentences

Listen to the sentences on the audio files found in Chapter 3 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Now, check your sentences against the correct answers in the Answer Key online. If there are any new words that you do not know or that you spelled incorrectly, make a list of those words and study them for meaning and spelling.

## PHARMACIST/PATIENT DIALOGUES

The ability to orally communicate effectively with your professors, colleagues, and especially with patients is very important. As a pharmacist, you will be counseling patients; patients will come to you for advice. They will have questions about a condition and symptoms they may experience and will ask you to help treat the condition. Therefore, it is extremely important that you understand what they are saying and that you respond to them and their questions appropriately. Your patients will speak differently. For example, some may speak very quickly, others too low, and yet others may speak angrily. To help you improve your listening skills, listen to the following dialogues, or short conversations, between a pharmacist and a patient and between a pharmacy technician and a patient.

## Listening and Comprehension Exercises



### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ What is the patient's complaint?
  - a. She has a runny nose
  - b. She has nasal blockage
  - c. She has a nosebleed
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor prescribed
  - a. a nasal pump
  - b. a nasal aspirator
  - c. Nasonex
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist demonstrates to the patient how to
  - a. spray her nose
  - b. prime the pump
  - c. blow her nose
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is
  - a. Debbie Allen
  - b. Debra Allen
  - c. Deborah Allan
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient
  - a. it can take up to 2 days to get relief
  - b. it can take up to 2 weeks to get relief
  - c. it's OK to skip a day
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The side effects of Nasonex are
  - a. headache
  - b. headache, sore throat, nosebleeds, and coughing
  - c. headache and coughing

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### *Dialogue #2*

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient is getting a prescription for:
  - a. Valium
  - b. Vicodin
  - c. Valtrex
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient complained of a:
  - a. tingling, itching, burning sensation in her mouth
  - b. core sore on both lips
  - c. tingling, itching, burning sensation in her lower lip
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Rebekah Low
  - b. Rebecca Lowe
  - c. Rebekah Lowe
4. \_\_\_\_ Valtrex is:
  - a. a 12-day ointment treatment
  - b. a caplet taken every 12 hours
  - c. a caplet taken once and then 12 hours later
5. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient:
  - a. not to kiss others, even though the cold sore is not contagious
  - b. not to kiss others or touch the cold sore with her hands
  - c. that the cold sore is contagious but she can touch the sore with her hands
6. \_\_\_\_ Valtrex has:
  - a. no side effects
  - b. side effects such as headache, dizziness, nausea, and a sore throat.
  - c. side effects such as drowsiness and inconsolable crying
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient said the doctor told her:
  - a. she will not have a recurrence
  - b. she may have a recurrence
  - c. she will definitely have a recurrence

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### **Dialogue #3**

Listen to Dialogue #3, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The child's mother is complaining that her:
  - a. 6-month-old son is teething
  - b. 6-month-old daughter has infected gums
  - c. 6-month-old daughter is teething and drooling
2. \_\_\_\_ To relieve her daughter's teething pain, the mother has:
  - a. fed her daughter bananas
  - b. rubbed her daughter's gums, given her a frozen washcloth, and massaged her daughter's gums with a frozen banana
  - c. cleaned her daughter's gums with a frozen washcloth
3. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist asks the mother if she has given her child:
  - a. Children's Tylenol
  - b. Zilactin Baby
  - c. Tylenol Baby
4. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist recommends that the mother:
  - a. purchase prescription Zilactin
  - b. purchase non-prescription Zilactin Baby
  - c. purchase a grape gel
5. \_\_\_\_ Zilactin Baby is:
  - a. a grape-flavored medicated gel
  - b. a medicated ointment to rub on the gums
  - c. an antibiotic
6. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the mother to keep her eye on the following side effects:
  - a. vomiting
  - b. a rash and hives
  - c. diarrhea
7. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist instructs the mother to apply Zilactin Baby on her daughter's gums:
  - a. with her fingertip or a cotton swab no more than four times a day
  - b. with a cotton swab only for 4 days only
  - c. with her fingertip only no more than twice a day

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

---

Idioms and idiomatic expressions are made up of a group of words that have a different meaning from the original meaning of each individual word. Native speakers of the English language use such expressions comfortably and naturally. However, individuals who are new speakers of English or who have studied English for many years may still not be able to use idioms and idiomatic expressions as comfortably or naturally as native speakers. As pharmacy students, pharmacy technicians, and practicing pharmacists, you will hear many different idiomatic expressions. Some of you will understand and know how to use these expressions correctly. At times, however, you may not understand what your

professors, colleagues, and patients are saying. This of course can lead to miscommunication, embarrassment, and possibly dangerous mistakes.

To help you improve your knowledge of idioms and idiomatic expressions, carefully read the following idiomatic expressions that contain the body words of nose, mouth, lips, and tongue.

### Idiomatic Expressions using “Nose”

1. **to be hard-nosed** means that the person is strong, stubborn, and determined to get what he or she wants.  
For example: Because he is such a **hard-nosed** negotiator, he got the ten percent salary increase he wanted.
2. **to keep your nose clean** means to stay out of trouble.  
For example: If you don't want to get fired, come to work on time, do your work, and **keep your nose clean**.
3. **to keep your nose to the grindstone** means to keep very busy and work very hard.  
For example: She was warned by her supervisor to **keep her nose to the grindstone**, and to fill as many prescriptions as possible during her shift.
4. **to stick or poke your nose into something** means that a person gets involved in private matters that do not concern him or her.  
For example: The new pharmacist and the supervisor do not get along because the supervisor likes **to poke her nose into** the new pharmacist's private life.
5. **to nose around** means to look for information, to explore, and to inquire.  
For example: From time to time, the regional manager of the pharmacy likes to **nose around** the pharmacy to see how the pharmacists and pharmacy technicians are doing their jobs.
6. **no skin off one's nose** is used to show that the person is not interested in or concerned about a matter.  
For example: It's **no skin off my nose** if I don't get hired by this pharmacy because I have another job offer.
7. **under one's nose** means that what a person is looking for is in his or her sight.  
For example: The pharmacy technician was about to panic when she realized the prescription she thought she had misplaced was right **under her nose**.

### Idiomatic Expressions using “Mouth”

1. **to bad mouth** means to say bad things about someone.  
For example: The student was so angry he failed the exam that he started **to bad mouth** the professor.
2. **to foam at the mouth** means to be very angry.  
For example: After the patient was given the wrong antibiotic prescription for the second time, the patient's mother was **foaming at the mouth**.
3. **to make one's mouth water** means food looks and smells good and makes you want to eat it.  
For example: Certain foods, such as Chinese food and freshly baked chocolate chip cookies, **make my mouth water**.
4. **to melt in your mouth** means that the food you are eating is very delicious and so tender that it doesn't need to be chewed.  
For example: Even people with high cholesterol can't stop themselves from eating delicious roast pork, which just **melts in their mouth**.

5. *to take someone's words out of his or her mouth* means that you say what another person is thinking and say it before he or she says it.

For example: The pharmacist *took the words right out of the pharmacy technician's mouth* when he announced she could leave early.

### Idiomatic Expressions using “Lips”

1. *to keep a stiff upper lip* means to be brave and strong in a difficult situation.

For example: The patient managed to *keep a stiff upper lip* after the doctor told her she was having a recurrence of her fever blisters on her lip.

2. *lips are sealed* means a person knows a secret and will not tell others.

For example: *My lips are sealed*; I cannot tell you who has been promoted to regional manager.

### Idiomatic Expressions using “Tongue”

1. *a slip of the tongue* means a person has said something in error or had not planned to say something.

For example: The pharmacy technician made a *slip of the tongue* when she told the patient her prescription for Predisol, instead of Prednisone, would be ready for pickup in one hour.

2. *hold your tongue* means to be silent and not speak.

For example: You're very angry right now; don't say anything you'll regret so *hold your tongue*.

### Mini Dialogues Listening Exercise

How much did you understand? Listen to the following mini dialogues in the audio files found in Chapter 3 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), read the questions below, and then choose the correct answer.



#### Mini Dialogue #1

1. \_\_\_\_\_ *Keep my nose to the grindstone* means:  
a. her nose was hit by a stone  
b. she can relax  
c. she has to work very hard



#### Mini Dialogue #2

2. \_\_\_\_\_ *Foaming at the mouth* means:  
a. to have a mouth infection  
b. to have no tender feelings  
c. to be very angry



#### Mini Dialogue #3

3. \_\_\_\_\_ *Poking her nose* means:  
a. the new pharmacist is a private person  
b. the new pharmacist gets involved in matters that don't concern her  
c. she likes to blow her nose in front of other people



**Mini Dialogue #4**

4. \_\_\_\_\_ *No skin off my nose* means:
- some skin came off the nose
  - to be worried and anxious
  - not to be concerned about the matter

**Mini Dialogue #5**

5. \_\_\_\_\_ *Melts in your mouth* means:
- to be hot
  - to burn the mouth
  - it's delicious and doesn't need to be chewed

**Mini Dialogue #6**

6. \_\_\_\_\_ *To bad mouth* means:
- to have bad breath
  - to say nice things about someone
  - to say bad things about someone

**Mini Dialogue #7**

7. \_\_\_\_\_ *Keep your nose clean* means:
- to remove mucus from one's nose
  - to blow one's nose
  - to stay out of trouble

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## POST-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

- \_\_\_\_\_ The idiom **to be hard-nosed** means the individual cannot blow his or her nose.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The adjective form of the word **recurrence** is recurrent.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Another word for rhinoplasty is nose job.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The adjective form of the word **dry** is dryness.
- \_\_\_\_\_ If a person **noses around**, the person is spreading their cold.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Another word for cold sore is fever blister.
- \_\_\_\_\_ A canker sore is an example of a mouth sore.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Bulge and bulginess are both noun forms.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Phlegm is a kind of allergen.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Another word for roof of the mouth is palate.
- \_\_\_\_\_ If food **makes a person's mouth water**, it means they are producing excessive saliva.
- \_\_\_\_\_ If a person's **lips are sealed**, the lips are cracked and dry.

13. \_\_\_\_\_ A nosebleed can be caused by picking the nose.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ The slang word for **mucus** is boogers.
15. \_\_\_\_\_ A person who has a cold sore on the lip will feel a cold, sweaty sensation.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The adverb form of **excessive** is:
  - a. excessively
  - b. excessiveness
  - c. excessive
2. \_\_\_\_\_ If a person has **halitosis**, the person has:
  - a. a sinus infection
  - b. bad breath
  - c. speaks badly of others
3. \_\_\_\_\_ If a person is **foaming at the mouth**, the person is:
  - a. vomiting
  - b. making bubbles with saliva
  - c. very angry
4. \_\_\_\_\_ A child who is teething:
  - a. will tug at the ear
  - b. will cry and drool a lot
  - c. needs head lice removed with a fine-tooth comb
5. \_\_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "Mints can temporarily relieve halitosis," the word **relieve** is:
  - a. a noun
  - b. a verb
  - c. an adjective
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **stuff** is:
  - a. stuffed
  - b. stuffy
  - c. stuffed and stuffy
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Excessive mucus can produce:
  - a. a runny nose
  - b. a stuffy nose
  - c. a bloody nose
8. \_\_\_\_\_ A person who is **hard-nosed**:
  - a. is stubborn and determined
  - b. cannot smell
  - c. is always getting in trouble
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Pollen, dander, and dust can cause:
  - a. thrush
  - b. a canker sore
  - c. hay fever
10. \_\_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "The woman complained of a tingling sensation on her lip," the word **tingling** is:

- a. an adjective  
b. a verb  
c. a noun
11. \_\_\_\_ The word **wound** is:  
a. both a verb and noun  
b. a verb only  
c. a noun only
12. \_\_\_\_ The part of the mouth that hurts when a child is teething is:  
a. the tongue  
b. the gums  
c. the roof of the mouth
13. \_\_\_\_ A fever blister is:  
a. contagious  
b. not contagious  
c. the same as a canker sore
14. \_\_\_\_ The noun form of **allergic** is:  
a. allergy only  
b. allergen only  
c. both allergy and allergen
15. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence, “Chapped lips can be treated with over-the-counter antibiotic ointment,” the word **chapped** is:  
a. an adjective  
b. a past tense verb  
c. a noun

## Listening and Comprehension Exercises



### Dialogue #1

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient’s mother tells the pharmacist she needs a prescription filled for:  
a. her baby girl  
b. herself  
c. her baby boy
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient’s mother does not know the name of the prescription or how to pronounce it:  
a. because she can’t read  
b. because she forgot her glasses  
c. because she can’t understand the doctor’s handwriting

3. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient's mother the prescription is for:
  - a. Nasonex
  - b. Nystatin Suspension
  - c. Neosporin
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Sabastian Hofmen
  - b. Sebastian Hoffman
  - c. Sebastian Hofman
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient is:
  - a. 45 months old
  - b. 45 days old
  - c. 4 days old
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient was born on:
  - a. June 6, 2002
  - b. June 2, 2006
  - c. June 6, 2006
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient's address is:
  - a. 7 Treelane Rd
  - b. 77 Tree Rd
  - c. 77 Tree Lane
8. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist instructs the patient's mother to:
  - a. squirt the liquid drops of Nystatin in her mouth four times a day
  - b. squirt drops of Nystatin in her son's cheek using a dropper once a day
  - c. squirt drops of Nystatin in her son's cheek four times a day using a dropper
9. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist instructs the patient's mother to:
  - a. sterilize the bottles and nipples, and to keep an eye out for side effects such as vomiting and diarrhea
  - b. sterilize the bottles and nipples only
  - c. watch out for side effects only



### **Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient wants to speak to:
  - a. Sam the pharmacy technician
  - b. Sam the pharmacist
  - c. the technician on duty

2. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's full name is:
  - a. Jennie Braun
  - b. Jennifer Browne
  - c. Jenny Browne
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient also calls herself:
  - a. Jenne
  - b. Jenny
  - c. Jennie
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's date of birth is:
  - a. October 10, 1980
  - b. October 6, 1980
  - c. June 10, 1980
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is complaining about:
  - a. her canker sores
  - b. her doctor
  - c. her fever blisters
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that:
  - a. Orabase helped heal her canker sores
  - b. Orabase did not help heal her canker sores
  - c. she wants to buy more Orabase
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor gave her a prescription for:
  - a. Diflucan
  - b. Debacterol
  - c. Duclolax
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Debacterol is:
  - a. a cream
  - b. a liquid
  - c. an ointment
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that after applying the Debacterol, she:
  - a. will feel a tingling sensation and be pain-free
  - b. will feel a stinging sensation and be pain-free
  - c. will feel a numbing sensation and get no relief
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's insurance plan is:
  - a. Life and Health Insurance
  - b. Healthy Life Insurance
  - c. Health and Life Plan



### **Dialogue #3**

Listen to Dialogue #3, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ What medical condition does the patient have?
  - a. phlebitis
  - b. arthritis
  - c. sinusitis
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient has just left:
  - a. her home
  - b. her doctor's office
  - c. her office
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient thinks the name of the prescription begins with the letter:
  - a. A
  - b. M
  - c. L
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The prescription was phoned in to the pharmacy by the:
  - a. doctor
  - b. patient
  - c. nurse
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor's name is:
  - a. Rob Dixon
  - b. Robert Dixson
  - c. Robert Dixon
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The prescription is for:
  - a. Ampicillin
  - b. Amoxicillin
  - c. Augmentin
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient asks the pharmacist if she can:
  - a. take the medication with food and if it will make her feel different and sick
  - b. take the medication with a full glass of water and if there are side effects
  - c. break open the capsules and mix it in a full glass of water
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist instructs the patient to get immediate medical attention if:
  - a. she experiences diarrhea and hairy tongue
  - b. she experiences hives, swelling, closing of her throat, and difficulty breathing
  - c. she experiences thrush
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist also instructed the patient to:
  - a. read the side effects on the computer printout
  - b. call her doctor if she has any concerns
  - c. both a and b
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The name of the patient's insurance is:
  - a. Good Health Insurance
  - b. Best Health Insurance
  - c. Total Health Insurance

11. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
- a. Melinda Costanza
  - b. Melissa Costello
  - c. Melissa Constanza
12. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's home number is:
- a. 555-1710
  - b. 505-0172
  - c. 555-0171
13. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacy is located in a:
- a. mall
  - b. supermarket
  - c. discount store

How did you do on the Post-Assessment in Chapter 3? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.





# Endocrine and Lymphatic System

# 4

## PRE-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ Bleeding and bruising is a common symptom of **leukemia**.
2. \_\_\_\_ **Thyroid** hormones are produced by the lymph glands.
3. \_\_\_\_ **Lymph nodes** are filled with red blood cells.
4. \_\_\_\_ **Hypothyroidism** is the term used to refer to lower-than-normal production of thyroid hormone.
5. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **lethargy** is lethargic.
6. \_\_\_\_ A person with hypothyroidism will suffer from cold **intolerance**.
7. \_\_\_\_ Another word for trachea is **windpipe**.
8. \_\_\_\_ A person with leukemia will suffer swelling in the abdomen as a result of an **enlarged spleen**.
9. \_\_\_\_ Non-Hodgkin's **lymphoma** is a type of cancer that begins in the thyroid.
10. \_\_\_\_ The noun form of **agitated** is agitation.
11. \_\_\_\_ **Protruding eyes** are deep-set eyes.
12. \_\_\_\_ Signs of **diabetes** are lack of thirst and urination.
13. \_\_\_\_ If a person experiences **constipation**, cold intolerance, and fatigue, he or she should be tested for **hyperthyroidism**.
14. \_\_\_\_ **Hypoglycemia** refers to above normal levels of **glucose** in the blood.
15. \_\_\_\_ The word **delirium** is the adjective form of **delirious**, which is the noun form.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ An **overactive** thyroid:
  - a. does not produce enough thyroid hormones
  - b. produces too much thyroid hormone
  - c. produces too little thyroid hormone
2. \_\_\_\_ The front of the neck that sticks out a little bit and moves when we swallow is the:
  - a. trachea
  - b. Adam's apple
  - c. windpipe

3. \_\_\_\_\_ Clusters of **lymph nodes** are found in the:
  - a. groin
  - b. groin, armpits, neck, chest, and abdomen
  - c. armpits
4. \_\_\_\_\_ A person with **Graves disease** will experience:
  - a. heat intolerance
  - b. cold intolerance
  - c. the inability to sweat
5. \_\_\_\_\_ People who experience frequent urinating and increased thirst should be tested for:
  - a. enlargement of the lymph nodes
  - b. bacterial infection
  - c. diabetes
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The enlargement of the thyroid gland is called:
  - a. a cyst
  - b. an Adam's apple
  - c. a goiter
7. \_\_\_\_\_ A **thyroid nodule**:
  - a. is a fluid-filled cyst
  - b. is scar tissue
  - c. regulates metabolism
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The adjective and verb form of **breath** is:
  - a. breathe
  - b. breathing
  - c. breathed
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The term used to refer to cancers in the lymphatic system is:
  - a. carcinoma
  - b. melanoma
  - c. lymphoma
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Gangrene can develop in people suffering from:
  - a. colds
  - b. diabetes
  - c. fluid-filled cysts

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## MEDICAL VOCABULARY

---

A good understanding of vocabulary words in pharmacy is very important for communication with professors, fellow students, patients, and coworkers. Knowledge and understanding of vocabulary leads to successful communication and success as a pharmacy student, as a pharmacy technician, and as a practicing pharmacist. You may already know many of the vocabulary words in this chapter, but for words that are unfamiliar, pay careful attention to them and make every effort to know their correct spelling, meaning, and pronunciation. It is a good idea to keep a list of new words and to look up these new words in a bilingual dictionary or dictionary in your first language. A good command of pharmacy-related vocabulary and good pronunciation of vocabulary will help to prevent embarrassing mistakes and increase effective verbal communication skills.

## Endocrine System Vocabulary

ache	glucose	nervousness
Adam's apple	goiter	nodule
Addison's disease	Graves disease	overactive
agitation	Hashimoto's disease	overproduction
appetite	heat intolerance	pituitary gland
benign	hormone	protruding
bowel movement	hypoglycemia	puffy
cold intolerance	hyperthyroidism	regulate
constipation	hypothyroidism	stiffness
coordination	indigestion	swallow
Cushing's disease	insulin	tender
delirium	lethargy	thirst
diabetes	malignant	tremble
drowsy	mask	underactive
enlarged	metabolism	underproduction
exhaustion	mood swings	urination
gangrene	muscle cramps	water retention
gland	nausea	windpipe

## Blood Disorders and Lymphatic System Vocabulary

abdomen	groin	mononucleosis
anemia	Hodgkin's lymphoma	mumps
armpit	immune system	non-Hodgkin's lymphoma
blood	lightheaded	numbness
bone marrow	lymph node	pallor
enlarged spleen	malaise	relapse
fatigue	measles	underarm

## PARTS OF SPEECH

A good understanding of parts of speech, such as verbs, nouns, adjectives, and adverbs, is important for successful communication when speaking or writing. It is equally important to know the various forms of words and to use them appropriately.

### Word Forms

The table below lists the main forms of some terms that you will likely encounter in pharmacy practice. Review the table and then do the exercises that follow to assess your understanding.

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v)		Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
		—Past Tense		
abdomen			abdominal	abdominally
an ache	to ache; ached		achy; aching	
agitation	to agitate; agitated		agitated; agitating	
blood			bloody; bloodied	
constipation			constipated	
coordination	to coordinate; coordinated		coordinated	
delirium			delirious	deliriously
diabetes; a diabetic			diabetic	
drowsiness			drowsy	drowsily

(continued)

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v) —Past Tense	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
enlargement	to enlarge; enlarged	enlarged; enlarging	
exhaustion	to exhaust; exhausted	exhausted; exhausting	
fatigue	to fatigue; fatigued	fatigued; fatiguing	
gangrene		gangrened	gangrenous
hormone		hormonal	hormonally
hypoglycemia; hyperglycemic		hypoglycemic	
hyperthyroidism		hyperthyroid	
hypothyroidism		hypothyroid	
incontinence		incontinent	
insomnia; insomniac		insomniac	
intolerance		intolerant; intolerable	
lethargy		lethargic	
lightheadedness		lightheaded	
mask	to mask	masked; masking	
metabolism	to metabolize	metabolized; metabolizing	
nausea; nauseation	nauseate; nauseated	nauseous; nauseating	
nervousness		nervous	nervously
numbness	to numb; numbed	numbed; numbing	
overactivity		overactive	
pallor; paleness		pale; pallid	
protrusion	to protrude; protruded	protruding	
puffiness; puff	to puff; puffed	puffy	puffily
regulation	to regulate	regulated; regulating	
relapse	to relapse; relapsed	relapsing	
retention; retentiveness	to retain; retained	retentive	retentively
stiffness	to stiff; stiffed	stiff; stiffing	stiffly
a swallow	to swallow; swallow	swallowed	
tenderness		tender	tenderly
thirst		thirsty	
thyroid; thyroiditis			
tolerance	to tolerate; tolerated	tolerant; tolerable	
a tremble; tremor; trembler	to tremble; trembled	trembled; trembling; trembly	tremblingly
urination; urine	to urinate; urinated; urinating		

### *Word Forms Exercise*

Read the following sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv.

1. Early signs of hypothyroidism are **puffiness** around the face, constant **fatigue**, and **constipation**.  
puffiness \_\_\_\_\_ fatigue \_\_\_\_\_ constipation \_\_\_\_\_
2. **Paleness**, **bruising**, and **fatigue** may be signs of leukemia.  
paleness \_\_\_\_\_ bruising \_\_\_\_\_ fatigue \_\_\_\_\_
3. Because she complained of **weight loss** despite an increased **appetite**, frequent **diarrhea**, and feeling **nervous**, her doctor tested her for possible thyroid conditions.  
weight loss \_\_\_\_\_ appetite \_\_\_\_\_ diarrhea \_\_\_\_\_ nervous \_\_\_\_\_
4. The lymphatic system helps to fight **infection** and disease.  
infection \_\_\_\_\_
5. **Painless swelling** in the lymph nodes in the groin, armpit, or neck and **recurrent** fevers should not be ignored.  
painless \_\_\_\_\_ swelling \_\_\_\_\_ recurrent \_\_\_\_\_
6. People with type I **diabetes** are not able to **produce insulin**, whereas people with type II diabetes **resist** insulin and are not able to use it properly.  
diabetes \_\_\_\_\_ produce \_\_\_\_\_ insulin \_\_\_\_\_ resist \_\_\_\_\_
7. After complaining to her doctor that she was experiencing **insomnia**, **tremors** of her hands, weight loss, and that her eyes were **protruding**, she was given a series of thyroid tests and **diagnosed** with Graves disease.  
insomnia \_\_\_\_\_ tremors \_\_\_\_\_ protruding \_\_\_\_\_ diagnosed \_\_\_\_\_
8. Some symptoms of hypothyroidism include, but are not limited to, **cold intolerance**, body **aches**, **coarse** hair, and decreased **concentration**.  
cold intolerance \_\_\_\_\_ aches \_\_\_\_\_ coarse \_\_\_\_\_ concentration \_\_\_\_\_
9. A person experiencing **involuntary** loss of **urine** or **stool**, and experiencing **mental** confusion and **drowsiness**, should seek medical attention immediately.  
involuntary \_\_\_\_\_ urine \_\_\_\_\_ stool \_\_\_\_\_ mental \_\_\_\_\_ drowsiness \_\_\_\_\_
10. Graves disease is a **form** of hyperthyroidism that causes the patient to **overproduce** thyroid hormone and to have **protruding** eyes.  
form \_\_\_\_\_ overproduce \_\_\_\_\_ protruding \_\_\_\_\_
11. A **goiter**, which is an **enlargement** of the thyroid gland, can be reduced in size with thyroid **hormone**.  
goiter \_\_\_\_\_ enlargement \_\_\_\_\_ hormone \_\_\_\_\_
12. Symptoms of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma may include **swelling** in the armpits, groin, and neck, **night sweats**, weight loss, itchy skin, and **recurrent** fevers.  
swelling \_\_\_\_\_ night sweats \_\_\_\_\_ recurrent \_\_\_\_\_
13. A common thyroid **disorder** is Hashimoto's disease, which is caused by **inflammation** of the thyroid **gland** and can lead to an **underactive** thyroid, **stiffness**, and problems with concentration.  
disorder \_\_\_\_\_ inflammation \_\_\_\_\_ gland \_\_\_\_\_ underactive \_\_\_\_\_ stiffness \_\_\_\_\_
14. Some symptoms of leukemia include fatigue resulting from **anemia**, and **bruises**, a **rash**, and **swollen** lymph nodes.  
anemia \_\_\_\_\_ bruises \_\_\_\_\_ rash \_\_\_\_\_ swollen \_\_\_\_\_
15. **Diabetics** should exercise to help them control their blood **glucose**, weight, and blood **pressure**.  
diabetics \_\_\_\_\_ glucose \_\_\_\_\_ pressure \_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

***Typical Medical Conditions and Patient Complaints***

The sentences below contain vocabulary that describes and explains typical medical conditions, diseases, symptoms, and patient complaints that a pharmacist encounters. Read the sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv. Look up words you do not know in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

1. People with type II **diabetes** are not able to properly use their sugar, which is called **glucose**.  
diabetes \_\_\_\_\_ glucose \_\_\_\_\_
2. Radioactive iodine **therapy** is one way to **treat thyroid cancer**.  
therapy \_\_\_\_\_ treat \_\_\_\_\_ thyroid \_\_\_\_\_ cancer \_\_\_\_\_
3. Some individuals suffering with either Hodgkin's lymphoma, a cancer of the **lymphatic** system, or non-Hodgkin's **lymphoma**, a cancer of the lymphatic system, may experience soaking night **sweats** and **severely itchy** skin.  
lymphatic \_\_\_\_\_ lymphoma \_\_\_\_\_ sweats \_\_\_\_\_ severely \_\_\_\_\_ itchy \_\_\_\_\_
4. Another word for **trachea** is **windpipe**.  
trachea \_\_\_\_\_ windpipe \_\_\_\_\_
5. **Insulin** is a **hormone** that helps the body to use **glucose**, the main source of fuel in the body.  
insulin \_\_\_\_\_ hormone \_\_\_\_\_ glucose \_\_\_\_\_
6. Leukemia is not a single disease but a number of **related blood** cancers that begin in the **bone marrow**.  
related \_\_\_\_\_ blood \_\_\_\_\_ bone marrow \_\_\_\_\_
7. **Cold intolerance** and excessive **sleepiness** are experienced by some individuals with hypothyroidism, but some individuals with hyperthyroidism are not able to **tolerate** heat and experience **excessive sweating** and weight gain.  
cold intolerance \_\_\_\_\_ sleepiness \_\_\_\_\_ tolerate \_\_\_\_\_ excessive \_\_\_\_\_ sweating \_\_\_\_\_
8. Patients suffering from diseases of the lymph and blood will **exhibit** many of the same symptoms, such as fatigue, **numbness**, **paleness**, **night sweats**, and **incontinence**.  
exhibit \_\_\_\_\_ numbness \_\_\_\_\_ paleness \_\_\_\_\_ night sweats \_\_\_\_\_ incontinence \_\_\_\_\_
9. The **bone marrow** of a person with leukemia will **produce abnormal** white blood cells.  
bone marrow \_\_\_\_\_ produce \_\_\_\_\_ abnormal \_\_\_\_\_
10. Because people with type II diabetes are not able to have **normal levels** of sugar, other **complications** such as kidney, heart, and eye disease can **occur**.  
normal \_\_\_\_\_ levels \_\_\_\_\_ complications \_\_\_\_\_ occur \_\_\_\_\_
11. Type I diabetes is an **autoimmune disease** in which the pancreas is not able to **produce** insulin.  
autoimmune disease \_\_\_\_\_ produce \_\_\_\_\_
12. People with diabetes need to be watchful of **slow-healing sores**, which can **typically** be found on their feet.  
slow-healing \_\_\_\_\_ sores \_\_\_\_\_ typically \_\_\_\_\_
13. Thyroid hormones will help people with hypothyroidism **restore** their **metabolism**.  
restore \_\_\_\_\_ metabolism \_\_\_\_\_
14. A thyroid **nodule** is an **abnormal** growth that forms a **lump** in the thyroid gland, which is located below the **Adam's apple** in the front of the neck.  
nodule \_\_\_\_\_ abnormal \_\_\_\_\_ lump \_\_\_\_\_ Adam's apple \_\_\_\_\_

15. Depending on the **stage** and **grade** of the disease, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma may be treated with radiation, chemotherapy, a **combination** of both, and stem cell transplantation.  
stage \_\_\_\_\_ grade \_\_\_\_\_ combination \_\_\_\_\_
16. People with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma may experience a wide range of symptoms, including **swollen** lymph nodes, weight loss, **swelling** in the **abdomen**, night sweats, and trouble breathing.  
swollen \_\_\_\_\_ swelling \_\_\_\_\_ abdomen \_\_\_\_\_
17. After her daughter had experienced **unexplained** fevers, night **sweats**, weight loss, and **abdominal discomfort**, a series of blood tests **confirmed** the daughter had leukemia.  
unexplained \_\_\_\_\_ sweats \_\_\_\_\_ abdominal \_\_\_\_\_ discomfort \_\_\_\_\_ confirmed \_\_\_\_\_
18. Diabetes can lead to **hyperglycemia**, which can lead to blindness, kidney **failure**, and foot **ulcers**.  
hyperglycemia \_\_\_\_\_ failure \_\_\_\_\_ ulcers \_\_\_\_\_
19. If a person is feeling **lightheaded**, he or she is feeling a bit **dizzy** and is not able to think clearly or move **steadily**.  
lightheaded \_\_\_\_\_ dizzy \_\_\_\_\_ steadily \_\_\_\_\_
20. Some **medical** conditions and diseases can cause a person to **experience delirium** and confusion.  
medical \_\_\_\_\_ experience \_\_\_\_\_ delirium \_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## Medical Vocabulary Comprehension

Now that you have read sentences 1 through 20 describing language regarding the endocrine and lymphatic systems, assess your understanding by doing the exercises below.

### *Multiple Choice Questions*

Choose the answer that correctly completes each sentence below.

- \_\_\_\_\_ **Hypothyroidism** symptoms include:
  - sweaty skin and constipation
  - constipation, weight gain, and fatigue
  - an enlarged spleen
- \_\_\_\_\_ The **Adam's apple** is located:
  - in the thyroid gland
  - in the lymph node
  - in front of the neck
- \_\_\_\_\_ An enlarged spleen and malaise might be experienced by a person who may have:
  - Hashimoto's disease
  - leukemia
  - a deep wound
- \_\_\_\_\_ People with **type I diabetes**:
  - can make their own insulin
  - have protruding eyes
  - cannot make their own insulin

5. \_\_\_\_\_ Another word for **windpipe** is:
- tonsils
  - esophagus
  - trachea
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Radioactive iodine therapy is treatment for:
- lymphoma
  - Graves disease
  - thyroid cancer
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Slow-healing sores can be found in patients suffering from:
- diabetes
  - lymphoma
  - leukemia
8. \_\_\_\_\_ If you are unable to tolerate heat and experience excessive sweating, you should be tested for:
- hypothyroidism
  - hyperthyroidism
  - a blood disease
9. \_\_\_\_\_ **Hyperglycemia** is caused by diabetes and can lead to:
- ulcers
  - ulcers, blindness, and kidney failure
  - a skin rash
10. \_\_\_\_\_ A **goiter** is an enlargement of:
- a lymph node
  - the thyroid gland
  - the abdomen
11. \_\_\_\_\_ Puffiness around the face and constipation are symptoms of:
- hives
  - hyperthyroidism
  - hypothyroidism
12. \_\_\_\_\_ Signs of leukemia include:
- itchy, flaky skin
  - irritability and agitation
  - paleness, bruising, and fatigue
13. \_\_\_\_\_ Frequent urination and unquenchable thirst may be signs of:
- incontinence
  - diabetes
  - ulcers
14. \_\_\_\_\_ Hashimoto's disease is:
- a disorder of the lymph nodes
  - inflammation of the thyroid gland and can lead to an underactive thyroid
  - a kind of leukemia
15. \_\_\_\_\_ A person who is feeling lightheaded is:
- wide awake
  - delirious
  - feeling dizzy and unsteady



### *True/False Questions*

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ A patient diagnosed with hypothyroidism may require life-long treatment with hormones.
2. \_\_\_\_ A person diagnosed with Graves disease may have protruding eyes.
3. \_\_\_\_ If the patient complains that he is constipated, it means he cannot urinate.
4. \_\_\_\_ A diabetic with a sore on the foot should not be concerned because the sore will heal quickly.
5. \_\_\_\_ If a patient complains of abdominal discomfort, frequent fevers, and fatigue, she should be tested for Hashimoto's disease.
6. \_\_\_\_ "Incontinence" is the adjective form and "incontinent" is the noun form.
7. \_\_\_\_ The word "intolerable" is a noun form.
8. \_\_\_\_ The word "diabetic" is both an adjective and a noun.
9. \_\_\_\_ A person with an underactive thyroid may experience stiffness.
10. \_\_\_\_ People with type II diabetes have normal sugar levels.

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### *Writing Exercise*

An important part of communication is the ability to write about what you read, to write correctly, and to spell correctly. In the exercises below, write your understanding of the meaning of the bolded words.

1. Describe in writing what **hypothyroidism** and **hyperthyroidism** are.

---

---

---

---

2. Describe in writing what **type I diabetes** and **type II diabetes** are.

---

---

---

---

3. Describe in writing what **Hodgkin's lymphoma** and **non-Hodgkin's lymphoma** are.

---

---

---

---

4. Describe in writing what **Hashimoto's disease** and **Graves disease** are.

---

---

---

---

Check what you have written with acceptable answers that appear in the Answer Key online.

## LISTENING AND PRONUNCIATION

The ability to listen and understand what is being said and heard, and the ability to pronounce words clearly, is extremely important. A word misheard and a word mispronounced will lead to poor communication and can seriously put both the pharmacist and patient in danger. Therefore, it is very important that one hear clearly what another person has said, and that one speak clearly with correct pronunciation.

Listen carefully to the pharmacy-related words presented in the audio files found in Chapter 4 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), and then pronounce them as accurately as you can. Listen and then repeat. You will listen to each word once and then you will repeat it. You will do this twice for each word. Listening and pronunciation practice will increase your listening and speaking confidence. Many languages do not produce or emphasize certain sounds produced and emphasized in English, so pay careful attention to the pronunciation of each word.



### Pronunciation Exercise

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 4 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) and repeat the words. Then say the words aloud for additional practice.

1. abdomen	ăb-dŏ' mən
2. ache	āk
3. Addison's disease	ăd'ĩ-sənz dī-zēz'
4. agitation	ăj'ĩ-tā' shən
5. anemia	ə-nē' mē-ə
6. appetite	ăp'ĩ-tīt'
7. armpit	ärm' pīt'
8. benign	bĩ-nĩn'
9. blood	blūd
10. bone marrow	bŏn măr'ŏ
11. bowel movement	bou'əl mŏŏv' mənt
12. cold intolerance	kŏld ĩn-tŏl'ər-əns
13. constipation	kŏn'stə-pā' shən
14. coordination	kŏ-ŏr' dn-ā' shən
15. Cushing's disease	kŏŏsh' ĩngz dī-zēz'
16. delirium	dĩ-lĩr' ē-əm
17. diabetes	dī-ə-bē' tīs
18. drowsy	drou'zē
19. enlargement	ĉn-lărj' mənt
20. exhaustion	ĩg-zŏs' chən
21. fatigue	fə-tēg'
22. gangrene	găng' grēn
23. gland	glănd
24. glucose	glŏŏ' kŏs'
25. goiter	goi' tər
26. Graves disease	gră'vā z dī-zēz'
27. groin	groin
28. Hashimoto's disease	hă' shē-mŏ' tŏz' dī-zēz'
29. Hodgkin's lymphoma	'hŏj' kĩnz ĩm-fŏ' mə
30. heat intolerance	hēt ĩn-tŏl'ər-əns
31. hormone	hŏr' mŏn'
32. hyperthyroidism	hĩ' pər-thĩ' roi-dĩz' əm
33. hypoglycemia	hĩ' pŏ-glĩ-sē' mĩk
34. hypothyroidism	hĩ' pŏ-thĩ' roi-dĩz' əm
35. immune system	ĩ-myŏŏn' sīs' təm
36. incontinence	ĩn-kŏn' tən-əns
37. indigestion	ĩn' dī-jēs' chən

38. insomnia	ĩn-sõm'nə
39. insulin	ĩn'sə-lĩn
40. lethargy	lẽth'ə-r-jẽ
41. lightheaded	lĩt'hẽd'ĩd
42. lymph node	lĩmf nõd
43. malaise	mă-lāz
44. malignant	mə-lĩg'nənt
45. mask	măsk
46. measles	mẽ'zəlz
47. metabolism	mĩ-tăb'ə-lĩz'əm
48. mononucleosis	mõn-'õnõõ'klẽ-'õ'sĩs
49. mood swings	mõød swĩngs
50. mumps	mũmps
51. muscle cramp	mũs'əl krămp
52. nausea	nò'zẽ-ə
53. nervous	núr'vəs
54. nodule	nõj'õõl
55. non-Hodgkin's lymphoma	nõn'hõj'kĩnz lĩm-fõ'mə
56. numb	nũm
57. overactive	õ'və-r-ăk'tĩv
58. overproduction	õ'və-r prə-dũk'shən
59. pallor	păl'ər
60. pituitary gland	pĩ-tõõ'ĩ-tẽr'ẽ glănd
61. protruding	prõ-trõõd'ng
62. puffy	pũfẽ
63. regulate	rẽg'yə-lăt'
64. relapse	rĩ-lăps'
65. stiff	stĩf
66. swallow	swõl'õ
67. tender	tẽn'dər
68. thirst	thũrst
69. tremble	trẽm'bəl
70. underactive	ũn'dər ăk'tĩv
71. underarm	ũn'dər ărm'
72. underproduction	ũn'dər prõ dũk'shən
73. unquenchable	ũn-kwẽ'n chə-bəl
74. urinate	yõõr'ə-năt'
75. water retention	wó'tər rĩ-rẽn'shən
76. windpipe	wĩnd'pĩp'

Which words are easy to pronounce? Which are difficult to pronounce? Use the space below to write in the words that you find difficult to pronounce. These are words you should practice saying often.

---



---



---



---



---



---

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 4 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) as many times as you need to increase your pronunciation ability of the difficult words. Pronounce these words with a friend or a colleague who speaks English.

## English Sounds That Are Difficult for Speakers of Other Languages to Pronounce

**Spanish**

In Spanish, there is no English “v” sound, but the “v” consonant in Spanish is pronounced like the English “b.” The vowel “i” is pronounced like a long “e.” Pay careful attention to the “v” sound in English when pronouncing words that begin with “v.” Also pay careful attention to English words that begin with “s;” do not use the Spanish “es” sound when pronouncing English words that begin with “s.”

For example, in English,

stiff is not pronounced esteef  
insulin is not pronounced eensuleen

**Vietnamese**

In Vietnamese, the “t” consonant is pronounced “s,” but in English the “t” is pronounced “t” and “s” is pronounced “s.” Be careful with English words that begin with “t.” In Vietnamese, the “b” consonant is pronounced “p,” but in English “p” is pronounced “p” and “b” is pronounced “b.”

In Vietnamese, words do not end in “b,” “ch,” “f,” “d,” “j,” “l,” “p,” “r,” “s,” “sh,” “v,” and “z.” In English, words end in these letters. Pay special attention to pronouncing these English sounds. In Vietnamese, there is no “dzh” or “zh” sound, so English words like “judge” (dzh) and “rupture” (zh) will be hard for Vietnamese speakers to pronounce.

For example, in English,

blood is not pronounced plud  
armpit is not pronounced ahmpih  
malaise is not pronounced malai

**Gujarati**

In Gujarati, “v” is pronounced “w,” “f” is pronounced “p,” “p” is pronounced “f,” and “z” is pronounced “j.” Short “i” is pronounced long “e,” “x” is pronounced “ch,” and “th” is pronounced “s.” In English, “v” is pronounced “v,” “f” is pronounced “f,” “z” is pronounced “z” or “s,” “j” is pronounced “j,” and “x” is pronounced “x.” Pay careful attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

puffy is not pronounced fuffy  
fatigue is not pronounced patigue  
mumps is not pronounced mumfs  
stiff is not pronounced steef  
lethargy is not pronounced lesargy

**Korean**

In Korean, the “v” consonant is pronounced “b” and the “f” consonant is pronounced “p.” In English, the “v” is pronounced “v,” the “f” is pronounced “f,” and the “p” is pronounced “p.” Pay special attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

fatigue is not pronounced patigue  
windpipe is not pronounced vinpipe

(continued)

**Chinese**

In Chinese, the “r” consonant is pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are not pronounced at all. Pay careful attention to English words that begin with “r” because the “r” is not pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are pronounced in English.

For example, in English,

gland is not pronounced glan

protruding is not pronounced plotludin

**Russian**

The “w” consonant is pronounced like a “v” and the “v” sounds like a “w.” Pay careful attention to the English “th.” It is not pronounced “s.”

For example, in English,

windpipe is not pronounced vinpipe

thirst is not pronounced sirst

**DICTATION****Listening/Spelling Exercise: Word and Word Pairs**

Listen to the words or word pairs on the audio files found in Chapter 4 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_

**Listening/Spelling Exercise: Sentences**

Listen to the sentences on the audio files found in Chapter 4 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Now, check your sentences against the correct answers in the Answer Key online. If there are any new words that you do not know or that you spelled incorrectly, make a list of those words and study them for meaning and spelling.

## PHARMACIST/PATIENT DIALOGUES

---

The ability to orally communicate effectively with your professors, colleagues, and especially with patients is very important. As a pharmacist, you will be counseling patients; patients will come to you for advice. They will have questions about a condition and symptoms they may experience and will ask you to help treat the condition. Therefore, it is extremely important that you understand what they are saying and that you respond to them and their questions appropriately. Your patients will speak differently. For example, some may speak very quickly, others too low, and yet others may speak angrily. To help you improve your listening skills, listen to the following dialogues, or short conversations, between a pharmacist and a patient and between a pharmacy technician and a patient.

### Listening and Comprehension Exercises



#### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Why is the patient in the pharmacy?
  - a. to pick up a prescription
  - b. to get a prescription filled
  - c. to pay for her prescription

2. \_\_\_\_ The prescription is for:
  - a. Levoxlytine
  - b. Levoxy
  - c. Levoxyl
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Linda Anders
  - b. Lynn Danders
  - c. Linda Anderson
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is:
  - a. December 2, 1969
  - b. January 2, 1969
  - c. January 2, 1959
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist she has been taking:
  - a. vitamins only
  - b. vitamins, Tylenol, and Neosporin for her cut finger
  - c. Tylenol and vitamins only
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient was in the pharmacy a year ago for:
  - a. amoxicillin
  - b. ampicillin
  - c. antacids
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient's new address is:
  - a. 32 Sunset Drive
  - b. 32 Harvard Road
  - c. 32 Sunset Road
8. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist she:
  - a. has been feeling cold, tired, forgets things, can't concentrate, has gained weight but is not eating more
  - b. is confused
  - c. is cold and tired only
9. \_\_\_\_ Levoxyl is prescribed to treat:
  - a. an overactive thyroid
  - b. an underactive thyroid
  - c. a normal thyroid
10. \_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor has prescribed:
  - a. 15  $\mu\text{g}$  to be taken once a day before breakfast
  - b. 50  $\mu\text{g}$  to be taken once a day before breakfast
  - c. 5  $\mu\text{g}$  to be taken once a day after breakfast
11. \_\_\_\_ Side effects of Levoxyl include:
  - a. headaches, nervousness, trembling, and sweating only
  - b. headaches, nervousness, trembling, sweating, insomnia, and in rare cases, hair loss
  - c. headaches, nervousness, trembling, and hair loss
12. \_\_\_\_ The patient's copayment for the prescription is:
  - a. \$5.00
  - b. \$15.00
  - c. \$50.00

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### **Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Shawn Smith
  - b. Shaun Smith
  - c. Sean Smith
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is picking up his:
  - a. insulin pump
  - b. insulin prescription
  - c. insulin tablets
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is:
  - a. March 8, 1988
  - b. March 18, 1980
  - c. March 18, 1988
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is allergic to:
  - a. nuts only
  - b. peanuts only
  - c. peanut butter and peanuts
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's address is:
  - a. 8 Marlboro Lane in Waine
  - b. 88 Marlboro Road in Wayne
  - c. 88 Marlboro Lane in Waine
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's cell phone number is:
  - a. 818-0818
  - b. 881-0818
  - c. 818-0181
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The name of the insulin is:
  - a. Novowhat
  - b. NovoLog
  - c. NovuLog
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor's name is:



- a. Dr. Harwick
  - b. Dr. Harwickee
  - c. Dr. Harwicke
9. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist instructs the patient to:
- a. store the insulin at room temperature
  - b. inject cold insulin
  - c. store the insulin at room temperature and not to inject cold insulin
10. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist instructs the patient to:
- a. inject the insulin 5 to 10 minutes after eating
  - b. inject the insulin 5 to 10 minutes before eating
  - c. inject the insulin while eating
11. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist explains to the patient that:
- a. too much insulin can cause thirst, frequent urination, confusion, and drowsiness
  - b. too little insulin can cause thirst, frequent urination, confusion and drowsiness, and that too much insulin can cause sweating, chills, dizziness, and hunger
  - c. too little insulin can cause sweating, chills, dizziness, and hunger
12. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that:
- a. his grandmother has diabetes
  - b. his mother has diabetes
  - c. his late mother had diabetes

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### **Dialogue #3**

Listen to Dialogue #3, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient is picking up a prescription for:
- a. Zofram
  - b. Sofran
  - c. Zofran
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist he has:
- a. leukemia
  - b. lupus
  - c. anemia

3. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Michael Moralis
  - b. Martin Morales
  - c. Martin Moralis
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is:
  - a. July 27, 1966
  - b. July 7, 1927
  - c. July 27, 1967
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor prescribing the medication is:
  - a. Dr. Tom Milner
  - b. Dr. Thomas Milner
  - c. Dr. Thomas Miller
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient has been prescribed Zofran to treat his:
  - a. leukemia
  - b. nausea and vomiting
  - c. chemotherapy
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor has prescribed:
  - a. 2 tablets of Zofran 30 minutes after treatment
  - b. 1 tablet of Zofran 30 minutes before treatment
  - c. 1 tablespoon of Zofran 30 minutes before treatment
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Some side effects of Zofran include, but are not limited to:
  - a. drowsiness, constipation, and lightheadedness
  - b. lightheadedness and headaches only
  - c. excessive thirst and lightheadedness
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Examples of allergic reactions include:
  - a. moderate swelling and trouble breathing
  - b. severe constipation and abdominal pain
  - c. severe rash, swelling, and difficulty breathing
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient informs the pharmacist that he will:
  - a. have chemotherapy this morning
  - b. have chemotherapy tomorrow morning
  - c. have radiation tomorrow morning

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

---

Idioms and idiomatic expressions are made up of a group of words that have a different meaning from the original meaning of each individual word. Native speakers of the English language use such expressions comfortably and naturally. However, individuals who are new speakers of English or who have studied English for many years may still not be able to use idioms and idiomatic expressions as comfortably or naturally as native speakers. As pharmacy students, pharmacy technicians, and practicing pharmacists, you will hear many different idiomatic expressions. Some of you will understand and know how to use these expressions correctly. At times, however, you may not understand what your professors, colleagues, and patients are saying. This of course can lead to miscommunication, embarrassment, and possibly dangerous mistakes.

To help you improve your knowledge of idioms and idiomatic expressions, carefully read the following idiomatic expressions that contain the word “blood.”

### Idiomatic Expressions using “Blood”

1. **to make one’s blood boil** means to be very angry.  
For example: Patients who say they have insurance, but do not have their insurance cards with them, sometimes **make my blood boil**, especially when we are really busy.
2. **to make one’s blood run cold** means to be frightened or scared.  
For example: Scary movies such as “The Exorcist” and “Friday the 13th” **make my blood run cold**.
3. **to be after one’s blood** means a person hates or wants to harm another person.  
For example: The pharmacist, who was arrested for stealing drugs from cancer patients, is now under police protection because many patients are **after his blood**.
4. **to run in one’s blood** means that a person’s characteristic is passed down by family tradition.  
For example: The parents and their two adult children are pharmacists; it **runs in their blood**.
5. **to get blood from a stone** means it is difficult to get something, such as money, from a person.  
For example: I will never lend her money again; the first time I lent her money it was like **getting blood from a stone** before she repaid me.
6. **blood is thicker than water** means that family relationships are more important than relationships with other people.  
For example: Even though family members often fight with each other, they will always come to the defense of their family members because **blood is thicker than water**.

### Mini Dialogues Listening Exercise

How much did you understand? Listen to the following mini dialogues in the audio files found in Chapter 4 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), read the questions below, and then choose the correct answer.



#### Mini Dialogue #1

1. \_\_\_\_ Don’t let them **make your blood boil** means:
  - a. don’t let them yell at you
  - b. don’t let them make you angry
  - c. don’t let them get angry



#### Mini Dialogue #2

2. \_\_\_\_ **Make my blood run cold** means:
  - a. to stay calm
  - b. to feel cold
  - c. to make me frightened and scared



#### Mini Dialogue #3

3. \_\_\_\_ **Run in your blood** means:
  - a. the blood disease is hereditary
  - b. it’s part of family tradition
  - c. family relationships are very important

**Mini Dialogue #4**

4. \_\_\_\_\_ **Getting blood from a stone** means:
- to bleed because she was hit by a stone
  - her sister will pay her with pennies
  - she will have a difficult time getting the money back from her sister

**Mini Dialogue #5**

5. \_\_\_\_\_ **Blood is thicker than water** means:
- relationships with other people are important
  - relationships with relatives are not important
  - relationships with relatives are more important than relationships with other people

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

---

**POST-ASSESSMENT**

---

**True/False Questions**

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

- \_\_\_\_\_ The idiom **makes my blood boil** means the individual's blood is very hot.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The noun form of **delirium** is delirious.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Another word for windpipe is Adam's apple.
- \_\_\_\_\_ **Diabetic** is both a noun and adjective form.
- \_\_\_\_\_ If a person's **blood runs cold**, the person is scared and frightened.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Another word for trachea is windpipe.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Paleness, bruising, and fatigue are signs of diabetes.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **constipation** is constipated.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Hypothyroidism is one type of thyroid disease.
- \_\_\_\_\_ A goiter is a reduced thyroid gland.
- \_\_\_\_\_ If a person believes **blood is thicker than water**, she believes relationships with friends are more important than relationships with relatives.
- \_\_\_\_\_ If a patient complains his eyes are protruding and that he is experiencing sleepless nights and tremors, he should be tested for Graves disease.
- \_\_\_\_\_ People with type II diabetes are able to use sugar properly.
- \_\_\_\_\_ People with diabetes need to be watchful of fast-healing sores.
- \_\_\_\_\_ If a person is feeling lightheaded, he or she barely has a headache.

**Multiple Choice Questions**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

- \_\_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **tremble** is:
  - trembled
  - trembling
  - trembled, trembling, trembly

2. \_\_\_\_ A person with hypothyroidism will experience:
- cold intolerance
  - heat intolerance
  - incontinence
3. \_\_\_\_ If a person's blood is boiling, he:
- needs a blood transfusion
  - is worried and anxious
  - is very angry
4. \_\_\_\_ A person with type I diabetes cannot:
- produce insulin
  - sweat
  - urinate
5. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "A sign of hypothyroidism is puffiness around the face," the word **puffiness** is:
- an adjective and a noun
  - an adjective
  - a noun
6. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **to metabolize** is:
- metabolizing
  - metabolized
  - metabolizing and metabolized
7. \_\_\_\_ Levoxyl is used to treat:
- hyperthyroidism
  - hypothyroidism
  - hyperglycemia
8. \_\_\_\_ The idiomatic expression that means it is hard to get something, for example, money from a person, is:
- getting blood from a stone
  - to run in one's blood
  - to make one's blood boil
9. \_\_\_\_ NovoLog is used to treat:
- Hodgkin's lymphoma
  - Hashimoto's disease
  - diabetes
10. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "The women complained of stiffness and problems with concentration," the word **stiffness** is:
- an adjective
  - a verb
  - a noun
11. \_\_\_\_ The words **intolerant** and **intolerable** are:
- both a verb and noun
  - adjectives
  - nouns

12. \_\_\_\_\_ Fatigue, anemia, bruises, a rash, and swollen lymph nodes are symptoms of:
- Graves disease
  - leukemia
  - diabetes
13. \_\_\_\_\_ Zofran is used with:
- diabetic patients
  - epileptic patients
  - chemotherapy patients
14. \_\_\_\_\_ The word **tolerated** is:
- both a verb and an adjective
  - a past tense verb only
  - an adjective only
15. \_\_\_\_\_ In the sentence, “The patient complained of unexplained fevers, night sweats, and abdominal discomfort,” the word **abdominal** is:
- an adjective
  - a past tense verb
  - a noun

## Listening and Comprehension Exercises



### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist she needs to get:
  - her prescription for diabetes filled
  - her prescription for her goiter filled
  - her prescription for diabetes changed
- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor is:
  - Dr. Manken
  - Dr. Menken
  - Dr. Menkin
- \_\_\_\_\_ The medication is spelled:
  - Ameryl
  - Emeryl
  - Amaryl
- \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor has ordered the medication in:
  - 2-gram tablets
  - 2-milligram tablets
  - 1-milligram tablets

5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
- Annmarie Jones
  - Ann Marie Jones
  - Anne Marie Jones
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is:
- January 27, 1970
  - January 27, 1977
  - January 20, 1977
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's new address is:
- 64 Robin Circle in Haddonfield
  - 17 Princeton Road in Haddonfield
  - 17 Princeton Road in Maple Shade
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's new insurance plan is:
- Healthy Living
  - Health Now Plan
  - Living Health
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's phone number is:
- 632-1129
  - 623-2911
  - 629-2119
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient told the pharmacist that she:
- didn't have any problems with her insulin injection, except she got hives
  - didn't have any problems with her insulin injection, except she got red and felt a little pain where she gave herself the injection
  - didn't have any problems with her insulin injection, except her eyes turned yellowish
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist told the patient to keep her eyes on the following possible side effects of the tablets:
- redness and pain
  - yellowing of the eyes or skin, dark urine, and stomach pain
  - difficulty breathing only
12. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient needs to take:
- 2 tablets with breakfast
  - 1 tablet with breakfast
  - 1 tablet twice a day with any meal



### **Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient is picking up a prescription for:
  - a. Propylthiouracil
  - b. Protonix
  - c. Propoxyphene
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Eileen Willis
  - b. Ilene Willis
  - c. Ilene Wills
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient has:
  - a. hypothyroidism
  - b. Graves disease
  - c. Hashimoto's disease
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient is allergic to:
  - a. onions only
  - b. onions, wasps, and bees
  - c. wasps and bees
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is:
  - a. April 22, 1952
  - b. April 2, 1952
  - c. April 20, 1952
6. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist told the patient side effects of the medication include:
  - a. a tingling and burning sensation in the hands and feet only
  - b. a tingling and burning sensation in the hands and feet, joint pain, nausea, and upset stomach
  - c. nausea and upset stomach
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient's insurance plan is:
  - a. Mutual Health and Life
  - b. Mutual Health
  - c. Mutual Life
8. \_\_\_\_ The patient has:
  - a. a \$20.00 co-pay
  - b. no co-pay
  - c. a \$25.00 co-pay



### **Dialogue #3**

Listen to Dialogue #3, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The customer is picking up a prescription for:
  - a. his wife
  - b. himself
  - c. his wife and himself
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Christine Gramm
  - b. Christina Gram
  - c. Christina Graham
3. \_\_\_\_ The prescription is for:
  - a. Aricept
  - b. Aranesp
  - c. Arimidex
4. \_\_\_\_ The medication is used:
  - a. in chemotherapy
  - b. to treat cancer
  - c. to treat anemia caused by chemotherapy
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor's name is:
  - a. Ahmed Patel
  - b. Amid Patel
  - c. Amit Patel
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is:
  - a. February 12, 1955
  - b. February 12, 1905
  - c. February 12, 1912
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient's husband is:
  - a. an asthmatic
  - b. a diabetic
  - c. anemic
8. \_\_\_\_ Side effects of the medication include:
  - a. headache, body aches, and diarrhea
  - b. dry mouth
  - c. irritability
9. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the customer that the doctor should be called if she experiences:
  - a. swelling, redness, and weakness in the arms and legs
  - b. weakness in the arms
  - c. swelling in the arms and legs
10. \_\_\_\_ The patient's insurance:
  - a. has changed and has a co-pay
  - b. is the same and has no co-pay
  - c. has changed and has no co-pay

How did you do on the Post-Assessment in Chapter 4? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.



# Chest, Lung, and Respiratory System

# 5

## PRE-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ **Asthma** is a chronic heart condition.
2. \_\_\_\_ **Bronchitis** is a respiratory infection that causes a hacking cough and produces phlegm.
3. \_\_\_\_ **Inhalation** and **inhaler** are noun forms.
4. \_\_\_\_ Some individuals with **pneumonia** will experience a cold, a fever, **shaking chills**, and cough with sputum production.
5. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **perspiring** is perspiration.
6. \_\_\_\_ **Tuberculosis** cannot be treated successfully with antibiotics.
7. \_\_\_\_ The most common cause of **emphysema** is cigarette smoking.
8. \_\_\_\_ People with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) experience **wheezing** and **shortness of breath**.
9. \_\_\_\_ **Pneumothorax** refers to a collapsed lung.
10. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **asthma** is asthmatic.
11. \_\_\_\_ A person with **bronchitis** may experience fatigue, shortness of breath, and itchiness.
12. \_\_\_\_ The most common forms of **COPD** are asthma and tuberculosis.
13. \_\_\_\_ **Pleurisy** is a blood clot in the lung, and a **pulmonary embolism** is fluid in the lung.
14. \_\_\_\_ Allergens such as pet dander, dust mites, molds, and pollen can trigger **asthma**.
15. \_\_\_\_ The word **wheeze** is a noun and an adjective.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ “She was **shouting at the top of her lungs**” means:
  - a. she was speaking very loudly
  - b. the top of her lungs are in a lot of pain
  - c. her lungs had collapsed
2. \_\_\_\_ “**To get something off your chest**” means:
  - a. to remove the heavy pressure on your chest
  - b. to let someone know that something has been annoying or bothering you for a long time
  - c. to be very angry and anxious

3. \_\_\_\_\_ Another word for pertussis is:
  - a. hacking cough
  - b. persistent cough
  - c. whooping cough
4. \_\_\_\_\_ If someone is experiencing shallow breathing, they are:
  - a. breathing heavily
  - b. wheezing
  - c. breathing in small amounts of air
5. \_\_\_\_\_ If a patient complains of **shortness of breath**, wheezing, and fatigue, he or she might have:
  - a. pleurisy
  - b. bronchitis
  - c. tuberculosis
6. \_\_\_\_\_ **Emphysema** is a common problem in:
  - a. children with cystic fibrosis
  - b. asthmatics
  - c. smokers
7. \_\_\_\_\_ **Dyspnea** is another word for:
  - a. wheezing
  - b. shortness of breath
  - c. puffs
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The word **tightness** is:
  - a. a noun
  - b. a verb
  - c. an adjective
9. \_\_\_\_\_ A **hacking cough** is:
  - a. a loud, repeated, painful cough
  - b. a dry cough
  - c. a cough that produces a lot of phlegm
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient complained that she was having shaking chills, a high fever, some chest pain, and that she was coughing with sputum. This could indicate she has:
  - a. a collapsed lung
  - b. pneumonia
  - c. bronchitis

How did you do? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

## MEDICAL VOCABULARY

---

A good understanding of vocabulary words in pharmacy is very important for communication with professors, fellow students, patients, and coworkers. Knowledge and understanding of vocabulary leads to successful communication and success as a pharmacy student, as a pharmacy technician, and as a practicing pharmacist. You may already know many of the vocabulary words in this chapter, but for words that are unfamiliar, pay careful attention to them and make every effort to know their correct spelling, meaning, and pronunciation. It is a good idea to keep a list of new words and to look up these new words in a bilingual dictionary or dictionary in your first language. A good command of pharmacy-related vocabulary and good pronunciation of vocabulary will help to prevent embarrassing mistakes and increase effective verbal communication skills.

## Chest, Lung, and Respiratory System Vocabulary

acute	diphtheria	pertussis
airway	dyspnea	pleurisy
asthma	edema	puffs
blood-streaked	episodic	pulmonary embolism
blood-tinged	exertion	rapid breathing
bluish color	exhale	shaking chills
bronchitis	expectorate	shallow breathing
chills	febrile	sharp pain
chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)	frothy	shivering
clammy	hacking cough	shortness of breath
collapsed lung	influenza	spit
crackles	inhale	tightness
creaking	knife-like pain	walking pneumonia
croup	labored breathing	wheezing
cystic fibrosis	nasal flaring	whooping cough
	persistent cough	
	perspiration	

## PARTS OF SPEECH

A good understanding of parts of speech, such as verbs, nouns, adjectives, and adverbs, is important for successful communication when speaking or writing. It is equally important to know the various forms of words and to use them appropriately.

### Word Forms

The table below lists the main forms of some terms that you will likely encounter in pharmacy practice. Review the table and then do the exercises that follow to assess your understanding.

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v)	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
	—Past Tense		
acuteness		acute	acutely
asthma; asthmatic		asthma; asthmatic	asthmatically
bronchitis; bronchodilator		bronchial; bronchitic; bronchiolar	bronchially
chills	to chill; chilled	chilled; chilly; chilling	
chronicity		chronic	chronically
collapse; collapsibility;	to collapse; collapsed	collapsed; collapsible; collapsable	
creak	to creak; creaked	creaking; creaky	creakingly
croup		croupous; croupy	
diphtheria		diphtheric; diphtheritic; diphtherial	
dyspnea		dyspneic	
edema		edematous	
embolism		embolismic	

(continued)

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v) —Past Tense	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
emphysema; emphysemic		emphysemic; emphysematous	
episode		episodic	episodically
exertion	to exert; exerted	exerted	
exhalation	to exhale; exhaled	exhaled	
exhaustion	to exhaust; exhausted	exhausted; exhausting	
expectorant; expectoration	to expectorate; expectorated		
fever		febrile; fevered; feverish	feverishly
fibrosis		fibrotic	
froth	to froth; frothed	frothy	frothily
influenza		influenzal	
inhalation; inhalant; inhaler	to inhale; inhaled		
persistence	to persist; persisted	persistent	persistently
perspiration	to perspire; perspired	perspiring; perspiratory	
pertussis		pertussal	
pleurisy		pleuritic	
pneumonia		pneumonic pulmonary; pulmonic	
obstruction; obstructor; obstructiveness	to obstruct; obstructed	obstructive; obstructing;	obstructively
shakiness	to shake; shook	shaking; shaky; shaken; shakable	shakily
shallowness		shallow	shallowly
sharpness	to sharpen	sharp; sharpened	sharply
shiver	to shiver; shivered	shivery	
spit	to spit; spit		
tightness	to tighten; tied	tight	
wheezer	to wheeze; wheezed	wheezing; wheezy	wheezingly

### *Word Forms Exercise*

Read the following sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv.

1. A **bronchial** infection can be either sudden or **acute**, which means it will last for a short time, or it can be **chronic**, which means it **recurs** often.

bronchial \_\_\_\_ acute \_\_\_\_ chronic \_\_\_\_ recurs \_\_\_\_

2. Asthma is a respiratory infection that is **triggered** by **allergens** or exercise and results in **labored** breathing, **coughing**, and chest **constriction**.  
triggered \_\_\_\_ allergens \_\_\_\_ labored \_\_\_\_ coughing \_\_\_\_ constriction \_\_\_\_
3. Common symptoms experienced by people with **tuberculosis** include, but are not limited to, **tiredness**, **fever**, night **sweats**, and weight loss.  
tuberculosis \_\_\_\_ tiredness \_\_\_\_ fever \_\_\_\_ sweats \_\_\_\_
4. Various **treatments** for people who **suffer** from **emphysema** include antibiotics, **inhalers**, and **bronchodilators**.  
treatments \_\_\_\_ suffer \_\_\_\_ emphysema \_\_\_\_ inhalers \_\_\_\_ bronchodilators \_\_\_\_
5. Children with **cystic fibrosis**, a lung disease, are **treated** with **breathing** treatments and **chest** percussions.  
cystic fibrosis \_\_\_\_ treated \_\_\_\_ breathing \_\_\_\_ chest \_\_\_\_
6. **Pneumothorax**, or a **collapsed** lung, can be caused by a variety of lung diseases or by injury to the chest as a result of a broken rib, a **stabbing**, or a gunshot **wound**.  
pneumothorax \_\_\_\_ collapsed \_\_\_\_ stabbing \_\_\_\_ wound \_\_\_\_
7. Emphysema, which **affects** smokers, is a lung disease that causes the **air sacs** in the lungs to **burst**, making breathing, coughing, and **expelling** mucus **difficult**.  
affects \_\_\_\_ air sacs \_\_\_\_ burst \_\_\_\_ expelling \_\_\_\_ difficult \_\_\_\_
8. Asthma can cause the **bronchial tubes** to become narrow, **inflamed**, **swollen**, and **irritated**.  
bronchial tubes \_\_\_\_ inflamed \_\_\_\_ swollen \_\_\_\_ irritated \_\_\_\_
9. **Cigarette**, pipe, and cigar **smoking** can cause **lung cancer**.  
cigarette \_\_\_\_ smoking \_\_\_\_ lung cancer \_\_\_\_
10. People with **walking pneumonia** may experience headaches, a dry **cough** without blood or phlegm, a **sore** throat, and **excessive sweating**.  
walking pneumonia \_\_\_\_ cough \_\_\_\_ sore \_\_\_\_ excessive \_\_\_\_ sweating \_\_\_\_
11. Children with **croup** will have a loud, **barking cough** and experience **labored** and noisy breathing as a result of swollen **vocal** chords and a swollen **windpipe**.  
croup \_\_\_\_ barking cough \_\_\_\_ labored \_\_\_\_ vocal \_\_\_\_ windpipe \_\_\_\_
12. An **asthmatic** will experience **tightness** in the chest and **wheezing**, a sound like a whistle, when **inhaling** and **exhaling**.  
asthmatic \_\_\_\_ tightness \_\_\_\_ wheezing \_\_\_\_ inhaling \_\_\_\_ exhaling \_\_\_\_
13. Cystic fibrosis can cause **lung damage**, **infection**, and **inflammation**.  
lung damage \_\_\_\_ infection \_\_\_\_ inflammation \_\_\_\_
14. Bronchitis **affects** the nose, **throat**, and **sinuses**.  
affects \_\_\_\_ throat \_\_\_\_ sinuses \_\_\_\_
15. **Expectorate** means to **cough up** or **spit up** phlegm and mucus.  
expectorate \_\_\_\_ cough up \_\_\_\_ spit up \_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### *Typical Medical Conditions and Patient Complaints*

The sentences below contain vocabulary that describes and explains typical medical conditions, diseases, symptoms, and patient complaints that a pharmacist encounters. Read the sentences carefully.

Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv. Look up words you do not know in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

1. An **expectorant** is a **cough medicine** that will help reduce the thick, **sticky** secretions that you may experience when you have the flu or a **cold**.  
 expectorant \_\_\_\_ cough medicine \_\_\_\_ sticky \_\_\_\_ cold \_\_\_\_
2. The patient complained he was **fatigued**, had no **appetite**, was having night sweats, had a **low-grade** fever, was coughing **frequently**, and sometimes was spitting up blood.  
 fatigued \_\_\_\_ appetite \_\_\_\_ low-grade \_\_\_\_ frequently \_\_\_\_
3. **Chest percussion**, also referred to as chest clapping, is a way to help empty the lungs of unwanted **secretions** that accumulate in the lungs and is often used with patients who **suffer** from cystic fibrosis.  
 chest percussion \_\_\_\_ secretions \_\_\_\_ suffer \_\_\_\_
4. People with **pleurisy**, which is an inflammation of the membrane that surrounds the lungs, will experience a **sharp** pain in the chest when they **cough**, inhale, **exhale**, and **sneeze**.  
 pleurisy \_\_\_\_ sharp \_\_\_\_ cough \_\_\_\_ exhale \_\_\_\_ sneeze \_\_\_\_
5. If you are suffering from chronic bronchitis, your doctor may **prescribe** a **bronchodilator**, which is a medicine that is **breathed** through the mouth to open up the **air passages**, or the **bronchial tubes**, of the lungs.  
 prescribe \_\_\_\_ bronchodilator \_\_\_\_ breathed \_\_\_\_ air passages \_\_\_\_ bronchial tubes \_\_\_\_
6. In addition to **allergens** such as dander, pollen, and mold spores, **triggers** of asthma include respiratory infections and **exercise**.  
 allergens \_\_\_\_ triggers \_\_\_\_ exercise \_\_\_\_
7. Children with cystic fibrosis may develop bronchitis, a collapsed lung, and pneumonia as a result of the **thick** and **sticky** mucus that **clogs** the respiratory system and **allows** bacteria to grow within it.  
 thick \_\_\_\_ sticky \_\_\_\_ clogs \_\_\_\_ allows \_\_\_\_
8. Symptoms of a pulmonary embolism include chest pain, **sudden shortness of breath**, blood-streaked sputum, excessive **perspiration**, and, in **severe** cases, loss of **consciousness**.  
 sudden \_\_\_\_ shortness of breath \_\_\_\_ perspiration \_\_\_\_ severe \_\_\_\_ consciousness \_\_\_\_
9. Early signs of COPD include a **persistent** cough, **respiratory** infections, and shortness of breath with **exertion**.  
 persistent \_\_\_\_ respiratory \_\_\_\_ exertion \_\_\_\_
10. Treatment for people who suffer from emphysema includes **smoking cessation**, drug **therapies**, and **supplemental** oxygen designed for home use.  
 smoking cessation \_\_\_\_ therapies \_\_\_\_ supplemental \_\_\_\_
11. A child with **whooping cough**, which is a contagious respiratory infection also known as **pertussis**, may initially exhibit symptoms such a **runny nose**, **sneezing**, and a **mild** cold.  
 whooping cough \_\_\_\_ pertussis \_\_\_\_ runny nose \_\_\_\_ sneezing \_\_\_\_ mild \_\_\_\_
12. Croup is a respiratory infection that affects the vocal chords of children and infants and causes a loud, **barking**, hoarse, coughing **sound** and is treated by breathing **moist air** or by **medication** to open the airways.  
 barking \_\_\_\_ sound \_\_\_\_ moist \_\_\_\_ air \_\_\_\_ medication \_\_\_\_
13. Some people with **pneumonia** will experience a **sharp** pain when they take deep **breaths**.  
 pneumonia \_\_\_\_ sharp \_\_\_\_ breaths \_\_\_\_



14. Emphysema and **chronic bronchitis** are two examples of **COPD**, or chronic **obstructive pulmonary** disease.  
chronic \_\_\_\_ bronchitis \_\_\_\_ COPD \_\_\_\_ obstructive \_\_\_\_ pulmonary \_\_\_\_
15. Tuberculosis is **highly contagious**, affects the lungs, and is **transmitted** to others through sneezing and **mucus**.  
highly \_\_\_\_ contagious \_\_\_\_ transmitted \_\_\_\_ mucus \_\_\_\_
16. Cystic fibrosis is a **hereditary** disease that affects the pancreas and the respiratory system, causing thick and **sticky mucus**, respiratory infections, and **impaired pancreatic** function.  
hereditary \_\_\_\_ sticky \_\_\_\_ mucus \_\_\_\_ impaired \_\_\_\_ pancreatic \_\_\_\_
17. Chronic bronchitis, which is inflammation and **thickening** of the **airways** inside the lungs, is caused by cigarette **smoke**, allergies, **irritants**, and pollutants.  
thickening \_\_\_\_ airways \_\_\_\_ smoke \_\_\_\_ irritants \_\_\_\_
18. Pneumonia is an infection and inflammation of the lung caused by a **bacterium**, virus, or fungus that **enters** the body through the nose and through **inhalation**.  
bacterium \_\_\_\_ enters \_\_\_\_ inhalation \_\_\_\_
19. **Wheezing** is **experienced** by people who **suffer** from asthma, bronchitis, and emphysema.  
wheezing \_\_\_\_ experienced \_\_\_\_ suffer \_\_\_\_
20. **Nasal flaring refers** to the enlargement of the nostrils during breathing and is a sign of breathing **difficulty** in children who are experiencing croup, asthma, or other airway **obstruction**.  
nasal flaring \_\_\_\_ refers \_\_\_\_ difficulty \_\_\_\_ obstruction \_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## Medical Vocabulary Comprehension

Now that you have read sentences 1 through 20 describing language regarding the chest, lung, and respiratory system, assess your understanding by doing the exercises below.

### *Multiple Choice Questions*

Choose the answer that correctly completes each sentence below.

- \_\_\_\_ A **bronchodilator**:
  - treats croup
  - is prescribed for chronic bronchitis
  - supplies supplemental oxygen
- \_\_\_\_ Patients with **pneumonia** may:
  - feel a sharp pain in the chest when they take deep breaths
  - feel a mild pain when they take shallow breaths
  - have labored breathing
- \_\_\_\_ Thick, sticky mucous secretions caused by the flu or a cold can be reduced by:
  - wheezing
  - taking an expectorant
  - chest percussions
- \_\_\_\_ A **collapsed lung** can be caused by:
  - a stabbing and gunshot wounds only
  - lung diseases only
  - lung diseases and physical injury such as a broken rib cage, a stabbing, or a gunshot wound

5. \_\_\_\_\_ Dyspnea refers to:
  - a. labored breathing
  - b. shortness of breath
  - c. exhalation
6. \_\_\_\_\_ An early sign of **COPD** includes:
  - a. emphysema
  - b. shortness of breath with exertion
  - c. shortness of breath without exertion
7. \_\_\_\_\_ A **chronic infection**:
  - a. is sudden and lasts a short time
  - b. recurs often
  - c. is sudden and lasts a long time
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Pertussis is:
  - a. an infection of the respiratory system
  - b. an inflammation of the bronchial tubes
  - c. another word for wheezing
9. \_\_\_\_\_ **Bronchial tubes** refer to:
  - a. nasal passages
  - b. air passages
  - c. the windpipe
10. \_\_\_\_\_ An example of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease is:
  - a. walking pneumonia
  - b. asthma
  - c. emphysema
11. \_\_\_\_\_ Pertussis is another term for:
  - a. hacking cough
  - b. wheezing
  - c. whooping cough
12. \_\_\_\_\_ Children with **croup**:
  - a. are having an asthma attack
  - b. produce a loud, barking sound
  - c. have suffered a collapsed lung
13. \_\_\_\_\_ **Expectorate** means to:
  - a. swallow
  - b. take a deep breath
  - c. spit up
14. \_\_\_\_\_ Asthma can cause the bronchial tubes to:
  - a. become clogged
  - b. get inflamed and irritated
  - c. collapse
15. \_\_\_\_\_ A treatment for **emphysema** is:
  - a. moist air
  - b. smoking cessation
  - c. lack of oxygen

### *True/False Questions*

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ Chest percussion is a treatment for asthma.
2. \_\_\_\_ A person who has tuberculosis will wheeze.
3. \_\_\_\_ Irritants and pollutants can cause chronic bronchitis.
4. \_\_\_\_ Pneumonia is an infection and inflammation of the lung caused by cigarette smoke.
5. \_\_\_\_ If a child is suffering from croup, the vocal chords are affected, and the child's voice will be hoarse and produce a loud, barking sound.
6. \_\_\_\_ Bacteria, viruses, and fungi cause asthma.
7. \_\_\_\_ The word "asthmatic" is both a noun and an adjective.
8. \_\_\_\_ Whooping cough is not a contagious disease.
9. \_\_\_\_ Symptoms of COPD include a persistent cold, nausea, and shallow breathing.
10. \_\_\_\_ The word "exhausted" is both an adjective and a noun.

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### *Writing Exercise*

An important part of communication is the ability to write about what you read, to write correctly, and to spell correctly. In the exercises below, write your understanding of the meaning of the bolded words.

1. Describe in writing what **asthma**, **emphysema**, and **chronic bronchitis** are.

---



---



---



---

2. Describe in writing what **croup** and **whooping cough** are.

---



---



---



---

3. Describe in writing what **cystic fibrosis**, **tuberculosis**, and **pneumonia** are.

---



---



---



---

Check what you have written with acceptable answers that appear in the Answer Key online.

## LISTENING AND PRONUNCIATION

The ability to listen and understand what is being said and heard, and the ability to pronounce words clearly, is extremely important. A word misheard and a word mispronounced will lead to poor communication and can seriously put both the pharmacist and patient in danger. Therefore, it is very important that one hear clearly what another person has said, and that one speak clearly with correct pronunciation.

Listen carefully to the pharmacy-related words presented in Chapter 5 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), and then pronounce them as accurately as you can. Listen and then repeat. You will listen to each word once and then you will repeat it. You will do this twice for each word. Listening and pronunciation practice will increase your listening and speaking confidence.

Many languages do not produce or emphasize certain sounds produced and emphasized in English, so pay careful attention to the pronunciation of each word.



### Pronunciation Exercise

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 5 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)). Listen and repeat the words. Then say the words aloud for additional practice.

1. acute	ə-kyŋōt'
2. airway	ār'wā'
3. asthma	āz'mə
4. blood-streaked	blūd strēkt
5. blood-tinged	blūd tɪŋd
6. bluish color	blōō'ish kŋl'ər
7. bronchitis	brōn-kɪ'tɪs
8. chills	chɪls
9. chronic obstructive pulmonary disease	krōn'ɪk əb-strŋkt' ɪf pŋl'mə-nēr'ē dɪ-zēz'
10. clammy	klām'ē
11. collapsed lung	kə-lāpst lŋŋ
12. crackles	krāk'əls
13. creaking	krēkŋg
14. croup	krōp
15. cystic fibrosis	sɪs'tɪk fɪ-brō'sɪs
16. diphtheria	dɪpθɪr'ē-
17. dyspnea	dɪsp-nē-
18. edema	ɪ-dē'mə
19. episodic	ēp'ɪ-sōd'ɪk
20. exertion	ɪg-zŋr'shən
21. exhale	ēks-hāl'
22. expectorate	ɪk-spēk'tə-rāt'
23. febrile	fēr'brəl
24. frothy	frōθē
25. hacking cough	hākŋg kōf
26. influenza	ɪn'flō-ēn'zə
27. inhale	ɪn-hāl'
28. knife-like pain	nɪf-lɪk pān
29. labored breathing	lā'bərd brē'thɪŋ
30. nasal flaring	nā'zəl flārŋg
31. persistent cough	pə-rsɪstənt kōf
32. perspiration	pŋr'spə-rā'shən
33. pertussis	pə-r-tŋs'ɪs
34. pleurisy	plōōr'ɪ-sē
35. puffs	pŋfs
36. pulmonary embolism	pŋl'mə-nēr'ē ēm'bə-lɪz'əm
37. rapid breathing	rāp'ɪd brē'thɪŋ
38. shaking chills	shākŋg chɪls
39. shallow breathing	shāl'ō brē'thɪŋ
40. sharp pain	shārp pān
41. shivering	shɪv'ɪŋg
42. shortness of breath	shōrt nēs ōv brēθ
43. spit	spɪt
44. tightness	tɪtēns

45. walking pneumonia	wôkng n <sup>ôô</sup> -m <sup>ôô</sup> n'y <sup>ə</sup>
46. wheezing	w <sup>ē</sup> z ng,
47. whooping cough	w <sup>ôô</sup> 'p'ng kôf

Which words are easy to pronounce? Which are difficult to pronounce? Use the space below to write in the words that you find difficult to pronounce. These are words you should practice saying often.

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 5 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) as many times as you need to increase your pronunciation ability of the difficult words. Pronounce these words with a friend or a colleague who speaks English.

#### English Sounds That Are Difficult for Speakers of Other Languages to Pronounce

##### Spanish

In Spanish, there is no English “v” sound, but the “v” consonant in Spanish is pronounced like the English “b.” The vowel “i” is pronounced like a long “e.” Pay careful attention to the “v” sound in English when pronouncing words that begin with “v.” Also pay careful attention to English words that begin with “s;” do not use the Spanish “es” sound when pronouncing English words that begin with “s.”

For example, in English,

bronchitis is not pronounced bronkeetees  
shivering is not pronounced esheebereeng

##### Vietnamese

In Vietnamese, the “t” consonant is pronounced “s,” but in English the “t” is pronounced “t” and “s” is pronounced “s.” Be careful with English words that begin with “t.” In Vietnamese, the “b” consonant is pronounced “p,” but in English “p” is pronounced “p” and “b” is pronounced “b.”

In Vietnamese, words do not end in “b,” “ch,” “f,” “d,” “j,” “l,” “p,” “r,” “s,” “sh,” “v,” and “z.” In English, words end in these letters. Pay special attention to pronouncing these English sounds. In Vietnamese, there is no “dzh” or “zh” sound, so English words like “judge” (dzh) and rupture (zh) will be hard for Vietnamese speakers to pronounce.

For example, in English,

bronchitis is not pronounced pronchiti  
asthma is not pronounced atma  
pertussis is not pronounced pertussih

##### Gujarati

In Gujarati, “v” is pronounced “w,” “f” is pronounced “p,” “p” is pronounced “f,” and “z” is pronounced “j.” Short “i” is pronounced long “e,” “x” is pronounced “ch,” and “th” is pronounced “s.” In English, “v” is pronounced “v,” “f” is pronounced “f,” “z” is pronounced “z” or

(continued)

“s,” “j” is pronounced “j,” and “x” is pronounced “x.” Pay careful attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

febrile is not pronounced pebrile

croup is not pronounced crouf

spit is not pronounced speet

### **Korean**

In Korean, the “v” consonant is pronounced “b” and the “f” consonant is pronounced “p.” In English, the “v” is pronounced “v,” the “f” is pronounced “f,” and the “p” is pronounced “p.” Pay special attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

febrile is not pronounced peprile

wheezing is not pronounced veezing

### **Chinese**

In Chinese, the “r” consonant is pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are not pronounced at all. Pay careful attention to English words that begin with “r” because the “r” is not pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are pronounced in English.

For example, in English,

breathing is not pronounced bleatin

### **Russian**

The “w” consonant is pronounced like a “v” and the “v” sounds like a “w.” Pay careful attention to the English “th.” It is not pronounced “s.”

For example, in English,

wheezing is not pronounced veezing

## **DICTATION**



### **Listening/Spelling Exercise: Word and Word Pairs**

Listen to the words or word pairs on the audio files found in Chapter 5 on thePoint (thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_

9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_



### Listening/Spelling Exercise: Sentences

Listen to the sentences on the audio files found in Chapter 5 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/gilbert-diaz](http://thePoint.lww.com/gilbert-diaz)) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Now, check your sentences against the correct answers in the Answer Key online. If there are any new words that you do not know or that you spelled incorrectly, make a list of those words and study them for meaning and spelling.

## PHARMACIST/PATIENT DIALOGUES

The ability to orally communicate effectively with your professors, colleagues, and especially with patients is very important. As a pharmacist, you will be counseling patients; patients will come to you for advice. They will have questions about a condition and symptoms they may experience and will ask you to help treat the condition. Therefore, it is extremely important that you understand what they are saying and that you respond to them and their questions appropriately. Your patients will speak differently. For example, some may speak very quickly, others too low, and yet others may speak angrily. To help you improve your listening skills, listen to the following dialogues, or short conversations, between a pharmacist and a patient and between a pharmacy technician and a patient.

## Listening and Comprehension Exercises



### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The prescription the mother brings to the pharmacy is for:
  - a. herself
  - b. her 16-year-old daughter
  - c. her 6-year-old daughter
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The mother tells the pharmacist the prescription is for:
  - a. Endep
  - b. Entex
  - c. Endex
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The mother tells the pharmacist her daughter has:
  - a. broncholilitis
  - b. bronchitis
  - c. a lung infection
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Aurea Cueva
  - b. Area Cuevas
  - c. Aurea Cuevas
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's date of birth is:
  - a. August 19, 1990
  - b. August 9, 1999
  - c. August 19, 1999
6. \_\_\_\_\_ When the patient was younger, she was treated for:
  - a. a ruptured eardrum
  - b. ear infections
  - c. eye infections
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is allergic to:
  - a. bacitracin
  - b. Bactrim
  - c. Benadryl
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's address is:
  - a. 111 Morningside Drive
  - b. 11 Morningside Terrace
  - c. 11 Morningside Road



9. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor's name is:
- Dr. Swee and he has prescribed Entex capsules
  - Dr. Sweat and he has prescribed Entex in liquid form
  - Dr. Sweet and he has prescribed Entex capsules
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient's mother that Entex might make the patient:
- sweaty
  - drowsy
  - alert
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The mother will pay for the medication with:
- cash
  - credit card
  - debit card
12. \_\_\_\_\_ The cost of the prescription is:
- \$30.99
  - \$33.99
  - \$33.09

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### **Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ What is the patient's complaint?
- astigmatism
  - chronic bronchitis
  - asthma
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor has prescribed:
- Allegra tablets
  - an albuterol inhaler
  - albuterol tablets
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
- Johnna Toledo
  - Jonna Toledo
  - Juana Toledo

4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is:
  - a. September 29, 1989
  - b. September 9, 1998
  - c. September 9, 1989
  
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient plays the following sports:
  - a. field hockey and basketball
  - b. basketball and baseball
  - c. field hockey, basketball, and softball
  
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor prescribed the patient:
  - a. inhale 2 to 3 puffs 15 to 30 minutes after exercise
  - b. exhale 2 to 3 puffs 15 to 30 minutes while exercising
  - c. inhale 2 to 3 puffs 15 to 30 minutes before exercise
  
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's home address and phone number are:
  - a. 216 Ardmore Avenue, 551-2020
  - b. 216 Ardmore Avenue, 551-2002
  - c. 216 Ardmore Avenue, 515-2002
  
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist instructs the patient to seek medical help if the inhaler makes her:
  - a. nauseous
  - b. dizzy
  - c. drowsy
  
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient will pay with:
  - a. her mother's Health Now insurance
  - b. her own Health Now insurance
  - c. her father's Health Now insurance
  
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient will pay:
  - a. a \$5.00 co-pay
  - b. a \$10.00 co-pay
  - c. no co-pay

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### ***Dialogue #3***

Listen to Dialogue #3, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's prescription will treat his:
  - a. tuberculosis
  - b. scoliosis
  - c. fibrosis

2. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Joseph Chirag
  - b. Chirag Joseph
  - c. Joe Chirag
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The prescription is for:
  - a. rifampin
  - b. Rifadin
  - c. Rimactane
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is allergic to:
  - a. lidocaine
  - b. Lasix
  - c. latex
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacy that he:
  - a. can swallow pills easily
  - b. has difficulty swallowing pills
  - c. is allergic to pills
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to:
  - a. chew the capsules
  - b. swallow the capsules with a glass of water
  - c. open the capsules and sprinkle it in applesauce
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist instructs the patient to take the capsules:
  - a. 1 to 2 hours before meals
  - b. 1 to 2 hours before or after meals
  - c. 1 to 2 hours after meals
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is:
  - a. May 26, 1981
  - b. May 21, 1986
  - c. May 26, 1926
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient has:
  - a. no medical insurance, but a drug prescription plan
  - b. medical insurance and a drug prescription plan
  - c. no drug prescription plan, but medical insurance
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The cost of the prescription is:
  - a. \$89.00
  - b. \$189.00
  - c. \$108.90

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

Idioms and idiomatic expressions are made up of a group of words that have a different meaning from the original meaning of each individual word. Native speakers of the English language use such expressions comfortably and naturally. However, individuals who are new speakers of English or who have studied English for many years may still not be able to use idioms and idiomatic expressions as comfortably or naturally as native speakers. As pharmacy students, pharmacy technicians, and practicing pharmacists, you will hear many different idiomatic expressions. Some of you will understand and

know how to use these expressions correctly. At times, however, you may not understand what your professors, colleagues, and patients are saying. This of course can lead to miscommunication, embarrassment, and possibly dangerous mistakes.

To help you improve your knowledge of idioms and idiomatic expressions, carefully read the following idiomatic expressions that contain the words chest, lung, and breathe/breath.

### Idiomatic Expressions using “Chest” and “Lung”

1. **to get something off one’s chest** means that the person tells another person what is worrying or bothering them.

For example: After repeatedly being asked by my parents if I had passed the licensing exam, I finally **got it off my chest** and told them I had failed it.

2. **to yell/scream at the top of one’s lungs** means to speak very loudly.

For example: She began **yelling/screaming at the top of her lungs** to get the pharmacist’s attention.

### Idiomatic Expressions using Breathe/Breath

1. **to be able to breathe easy** means to feel relaxed after being very busy or stressed.

For example: The students were **able to breathe easy** after the exams were over.

2. **a breath of fresh air** is a person who brings new ideas or ways of doing things.

For example: Unlike the previous manager, who had eyes like a hawk, the new manager is a **breath of fresh air**.

3. **to breathe down someone’s neck** means to pressure someone to do something or to watch someone very closely.

For example: I really enjoy working at this pharmacy more than the one I used to work in because the pharmacy manager here does not **breathe down my neck** to fill the prescriptions quickly.

4. **to catch one’s breath** means to breathe normally after breathing hard.

For example: I was able **to catch my breath** after running to catch the train.

5. **don’t hold your breath** means don’t wait for something to happen because it won’t happen.

For example: I wouldn’t **hold my breath** if I were you; I heard Jack is going to get the position that you applied for.

6. **to hardly have time to breathe** means to be very busy.

For example: It’s only my first week on the job, and I’ve **hardly had time to breathe**.

7. **to save your breath** means to be quiet and not say anything because it won’t do any good.

For example: I know you’re not happy with the new pharmacy technician, but she’s the manager’s sister, so there’s nothing you can do about it, so just **save your breath**.

8. **to say something under one’s breath** means to speak in a very low voice so that no one hears you.

For example: The unhappy customer **said something under her breath** about the pharmacist.

9. **to wait with bated breath** means to wait anxiously.

For example: The students **waited with bated breath** for the results of their pharmacy exam.

10. **to waste one’s breath** means to waste one’s time talking.

For example: The customer **wasted his breath** as he tried to convince the pharmacist that the prescription for the painkiller was not a fraudulent prescription.

11. **to not breathe a word** means to keep a secret.

For example: You **can’t breathe a word** about Anne’s surprise birthday party!

## Mini Dialogues Listening Exercise

How much did you understand? Listen to the following mini dialogues on the audio files found in Chapter 5 on thePoint (thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert), read the questions below, and then choose the correct answer.



### Mini Dialogue #1

1. \_\_\_\_\_ **Won't breathe a word** means:
- she's quitting because she can't breathe
  - she won't tell anyone her friend is quitting
  - she won't be able to keep her friend's secret



### Mini Dialogue #2

2. \_\_\_\_\_ **Say something under her breath** means:
- she couldn't speak normally
  - she coughed after she spoke
  - she spoke in a low voice so no one could hear her



### Mini Dialogue #3

3. \_\_\_\_\_ **Get it off your chest** means:
- to tell the person what is bothering and upsetting her
  - to annoy others with one's behavior
  - to stay calm



### Mini Dialogue #4

4. \_\_\_\_\_ **Screaming at the top of his lungs** means:
- his lungs collapsed because he screamed
  - he was speaking very loudly
  - he was screaming because he did not want the chocolate candy bar



### Mini Dialogue #5

5. \_\_\_\_\_ **Don't hold your breath** means:
- don't wait for something that's not going to happen
  - relax
  - don't worry



### Mini Dialogue #6

6. \_\_\_\_\_ **Hardly had time to breathe** means:
- to be very busy
  - to breathe during the break
  - to have breathing difficulty

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## POST-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ The idiom **to wait with bated breath** means to have bad breath.
2. \_\_\_\_ Dyspnea is an adjective and dyspneic is a noun.
3. \_\_\_\_ Another word for whooping cough is croup.
4. \_\_\_\_ Febrile is an adjective form of fever.
5. \_\_\_\_ If a person **breathes down your neck**, the person is watching you closely and pressuring you to do something.
6. \_\_\_\_ Bronchodilators are used to treat tuberculosis.
7. \_\_\_\_ Pleurisy is a type of pneumonia.
8. \_\_\_\_ Obstructive, obstruction, and obstructiveness are all noun forms.
9. \_\_\_\_ If the nose is flaring, the nose is clogged with mucus.
10. \_\_\_\_ Pneumothorax is a collapsed lung.
11. \_\_\_\_ If a person **hardly has time to breathe**, he or she is very busy.
12. \_\_\_\_ Moist air is one way to treat croup.
13. \_\_\_\_ A barking cough is a dry cough.
14. \_\_\_\_ Patients with pneumonia experience sharp pain in the chest when they take deep breaths.
15. \_\_\_\_ Shallow breathing means rapid breathing.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ The noun form of **expectorate** is:
  - a. expectorate
  - b. expectoration
  - c. expectorant and expectoration
2. \_\_\_\_ If a child has whooping cough, the child has:
  - a. a hacking cough
  - b. pertussis
  - c. asthma
3. \_\_\_\_ If a person is **out of breath**, the person is:
  - a. unconscious
  - b. breathing hard and fast
  - c. wheezing
4. \_\_\_\_ Asthma is triggered by:
  - a. bronchial tubes
  - b. bronchitis
  - c. allergens and exercise
5. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "An emphysemic will experience difficulty expelling mucus," the word **emphysemic** is:
  - a. an adjective and a noun
  - b. an adjective
  - c. a noun

6. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **bronchitis** is:
- bronchial and bronchitic
  - bronchial, bronchitic, and bronchiolar
  - bronchial only
7. \_\_\_\_ An expectorant is:
- mucus
  - sputum
  - cough medicine
8. \_\_\_\_ If a person is a **breath of fresh air**, he or she:
- is breathing better
  - needs fresh air to breathe
  - has new ideas and ways of doing things
9. \_\_\_\_ Acute bronchitis:
- lasts for a short time
  - recurs
  - does not affect the nose, throat, and sinuses
10. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "Asthma results in labored breathing," the word **labored** is:
- an adjective
  - a verb
  - a noun
11. \_\_\_\_ The word **persistent** is:
- an adjective
  - a verb
  - a noun
12. \_\_\_\_ Another word for **shortness of breath** is:
- diphtheria
  - dyspnea
  - delirium
13. \_\_\_\_ Chest percussion treatment is used with patients who suffer from:
- asthma
  - a collapsed lung
  - cystic fibrosis
14. \_\_\_\_ The word **tightness** is:
- a noun, a verb, and an adjective
  - a noun
  - an adjective
15. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "The patient complained he was fatigued," **fatigued** is:
- an adjective
  - a past tense verb
  - a noun

## Listening and Comprehension Exercises



### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is picking up a prescription to treat her
  - a. chronic bronchitis
  - b. emphysema
  - c. acute bronchitis
  
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The spelling of the patient's first name is
  - a. Felicity
  - b. Felicidad
  - c. Felicita
  
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The spelling of the patient's last name is
  - a. Casstro
  - b. Castro
  - c. Kastro
  
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient lives at
  - a. 23 Pin Road
  - b. 23 Penn Road
  - c. 23 Pen Road
  
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient stated she has
  - a. no insurance
  - b. the same insurance
  - c. new insurance
  
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is
  - a. 1/2/49
  - b. 1/2/09
  - c. 12/5/09
  
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor ordered
  - a. albuterol
  - b. Atrovent
  - c. atropine
  
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor prescribed
  - a. 2 puffs 2 times a day
  - b. 4 puff 2 times a day
  - c. 2 puffs 4 times a day
  
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient told the pharmacist that
  - a. Atrovent gives her dry mouth
  - b. albuterol gives her dry mouth
  - c. both give her dry mouth



10. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist instructs the patient
- to rinse her mouth with water to prevent dry mouth
  - not to rinse her mouth
  - to rinse her inhaler



### **Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

- \_\_\_\_\_ The customer is picking up a prescription for
  - her daughter
  - her son
  - herself
- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is
  - Jeremy Menbeck
  - Jeremy Manback
  - Jeremy Manbeck
- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient has
  - never been to the pharmacy
  - been to the pharmacy once
  - been to the pharmacy many times
- \_\_\_\_\_ The prescription is for
  - Pulmicort
  - promethazine
  - Pulmozyme
- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is
  - 8 years old
  - 8 months old
  - 7 years old
- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is
  - March 3, 1999
  - March 30, 1999
  - March 3, 1990
- \_\_\_\_\_ Pulmozyme is a colorless solution used with
  - an inhaler
  - a vaporizer
  - a nebulizer

8. \_\_\_\_\_ Pulmozyme will
- produce thick, sticky mucus in the lungs
  - clog the lungs with mucus
  - help to break up thick, sticky mucus that clogs the lungs
9. \_\_\_\_\_ A side effect of Pulmozyme is
- shortness of breath
  - hoarseness and laryngitis
  - a scratchy throat
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The co-pay amount is
- \$20.00
  - \$25.00
  - \$5.00



### **Dialogue #3**

Listen to Dialogue #3, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The customer is getting
- two asthma medications for his daughter
  - one asthma medication for his son
  - two asthma medications for his son
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's first name, middle initial, and last name are
- Jamie B. Griffin
  - Jaime B. Griffith
  - Jaime B. Griffin
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient
- has no allergies
  - likes peanut butter
  - is allergic to peanut butter
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is
- November 19, 1998
  - November 9, 1999
  - November 19, 1999
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's address is
- 1124 Moonriver Street
  - 11 Moonriver Court
  - 1124 Moonriver Court

6. \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor has ordered
- Advair only
  - albuterol and Advair
  - albuterol only
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is covered by
- Northeastern Medical
  - Northeast Medical
  - Northern Health Plan
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist explains to the patient's parent that
- Advair and albuterol are bronchodilators
  - Advair is a powder inhaler and albuterol is a bronchodilator
  - albuterol is a an aerosol spray and Advair is a bronchodilator
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient's parent that
- albuterol may cause nausea, headaches, and dizziness
  - Advair might cause hoarseness, throat irritation, and dry mouth
  - both a and b
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The cost for both prescriptions is
- \$50.00
  - \$25.00
  - \$100.00

How did you do on the Post-Assessment in Chapter 5? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.



# Heart and Cardiovascular System

# 6

## PRE-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ Myocardial infarction is another term for **stroke**.
2. \_\_\_\_ Daily activities such as shopping, climbing stairs, and walking are difficult for people with **heart failure**.
3. \_\_\_\_ A warning sign of a **heart attack** is a squeezing sensation and uncomfortable pressure and pain in the center of the chest.
4. \_\_\_\_ Some people with **angina** complain that they have indigestion, heartburn, cramping, and shortness of breath.
5. \_\_\_\_ The adjective forms of **congestion** is congestive and congested.
6. \_\_\_\_ A person who is obese is at risk for peripheral artery disease.
7. \_\_\_\_ Another word for irregular heartbeat is **angina**.
8. \_\_\_\_ Causes of a **stroke** include clogging of the arteries and bleeding within the brain.
9. \_\_\_\_ High cholesterol is not a risk factor for heart disease.
10. \_\_\_\_ The noun form of **obese** is obesity.
11. \_\_\_\_ Cardiovascular accident or **CVA** refers to a stroke.
12. \_\_\_\_ If your **cholesterol** level is 240 or higher, you are not at risk for a heart attack or stroke.
13. \_\_\_\_ Persistent coughing or wheezing, and coughing blood-tinged mucus, can be symptoms of **heart failure**.
14. \_\_\_\_ **TIA** refers to transient ischemic attack.
15. \_\_\_\_ The adjective forms of **failure** are failing and failed.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ An **aneurysm**:
  - a. is a bulge in the eyes
  - b. is a bulge in a blood vessel
  - c. occurs in the brain only
2. \_\_\_\_ **Palpitations** are the result of:
  - a. normal heartbeats
  - b. abnormal heart rhythms
  - c. heartburn

3. \_\_\_\_\_ A **pacemaker** is used to help:
  - a. heart patients walk at a brisk pace
  - b. the patient's heart beat in a regular rhythm
  - c. heart patients pick up the pace
4. \_\_\_\_\_ **Congestive heart failure** will result in the:
  - a. heart's failure to be able to properly pump blood
  - b. heart's failure to be able to beat properly
  - c. inability to sweat
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Weakness and **paralysis** on one side of the body or the other, drooling, and speech problems might indicate the person is experiencing:
  - a. enlargement of the heart
  - b. high blood pressure
  - c. a stroke
6. \_\_\_\_\_ **Angina** is one of the many causes of:
  - a. chest pain
  - b. angioplasty
  - c. stroke
7. \_\_\_\_\_ A **blood pressure** of 140/90 is considered to be:
  - a. normal
  - b. prehypertension
  - c. hypertension
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The word **flutter** is:
  - a. a noun and a verb
  - b. a verb only
  - c. a noun only
9. \_\_\_\_\_ **Congenital heart disease:**
  - a. Is present at birth
  - b. occurs later in life
  - c. is a result of obesity
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The expression "**my heart goes out to you**" means:
  - a. I will donate my heart
  - b. I feel sympathy toward another person
  - c. I feel no sympathy toward another person

How did you do? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

## MEDICAL VOCABULARY

---

A good understanding of vocabulary words in pharmacy is very important for communication with professors, fellow students, patients, and coworkers. Knowledge and understanding of vocabulary leads to successful communication and success as a pharmacy student, as a pharmacy technician, and as a practicing pharmacist. You may already know many of the vocabulary words in this chapter, but for words that are unfamiliar, pay careful attention to them and make every effort to know their correct spelling, meaning, and pronunciation. It is a good idea to keep a list of new words and to look up these new words in a bilingual dictionary or dictionary in your first language. A good command of pharmacy-related vocabulary and good pronunciation of vocabulary will help to prevent embarrassing mistakes and increase effective verbal communication skills.

## Heart and Circulatory System Vocabulary

adrenaline	echocardiogram	nitroglycerin
aneurysm	edema	palpitations
angina	electrocardiogram	paralysis
angioplasty	embolism	peripheral artery disease
anxiety	epinephrine	peripheral vascular disease
arrhythmia	exacerbation	plaque
artery	faint	pump
atherosclerosis	flushed	shining skin
blood clot	fluttering	skipping heart beat
bradycardia	gasping	spasm
cardiac catheterization	hardening	squeezing sensation
cerebral hemorrhage	heartburn	stroke
cerebrovascular accident	heart failure	syncope
cholesterol	high blood pressure	tachycardia
clot	hypertension	thickening
coagulate	intermittent claudication	throbbing
congenital	irregular heartbeat	thrombosis
cramping	ischemia	vein
crushing sensation	mitral valve prolapse	vomiting
diuretics	myocardial infarction	

## PARTS OF SPEECH

A good understanding of parts of speech, such as verbs, nouns, adjectives, and adverbs, is important for successful communication when speaking or writing. It is equally important to know the various forms of words and to use them appropriately.

### Word Forms

The table below lists the main forms of some terms that you will likely encounter in pharmacy practice. Review the table and then do the exercises that follow to assess your understanding.

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v) —Past Tense	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
aneurysm		aneurysmal	
angina		anginal; anginose	
anxiety; anxiousness		anxious	anxiously
aorta		aortal; aortic	
artery		arterial	
atherosclerosis		atherosclerotic	atherosclerotically
a beat	to beat; beat	beaten	
bradycardia		bradycardic	
		cerebral	cerebrally
cholesterol		cholesteric	
circulation	to circulate; circulated	circulatory	
a clot	to clot; clotted		

(continued)

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v) —Past Tense	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
coagulation; coagulability; coagulator	to coagulate; coagulated	coagulable; coagulative	
		congenital	congenitally
cramps	to cramp; cramped	cramped; cramping	
	to crush; crushed	crushing; crushed	
diuretic		diuretic	diuretically
edema		edematous	
embolism		embolismic	
exacerbation	to exacerbate; exacerbated	exacerbated; exacerbating	
faintness; fainter	to faint; fainted	faint	faintly
flushness; flusher	to flush; flushed	flushed	
flutterer	to flutter; fluttered	fluttering; fluttered	fluttery
hardening	to harden; hardened	hard	
hypertension		hypertensive	
intermittence		intermittent	intermittently
		irregular	irregularly
ischemia		ischemic	
palpitation	to palpitate; palpitated	palpitating	
paralysis; paralytic	to paralyze; paralyzed	paralyzed; paralyzing	
		peripheral	peripherally
pulse; pulsation	to pulsate; pulsated	pulsating	
spasm		spastic; spasmodic	
squeezing; squeezer	to squeeze; squeezed	squeezable	
syncope		syncopal; syncopic	
tachycardia; tachycardic		tachycardic	
thickening	to thicken; thickened	thick; thickened	
a throb	to throb; throbbed	throbbing	throbbingly
vein		venial; veined	
vessel		vascular; vasculitis	vascularly
vomit; vomiter	to vomit; vomited		

### *Word Forms Exercise*

Read the following sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv.

- Hardening** and **thickening** of the **arteries**, also called **arteriosclerosis**, causes coronary heart disease.

hardening \_\_\_\_\_ thickening \_\_\_\_\_ arteries \_\_\_\_\_ arteriosclerosis \_\_\_\_\_



2. **Peripheral** artery disease is also called peripheral **vascular disease**.  
peripheral \_\_\_\_\_ vascular \_\_\_\_\_ disease \_\_\_\_\_
3. The most common cause of a **stroke** is **thrombosis**, which is **blockage** of an artery in the brain by a blood **clot**.  
stroke \_\_\_\_\_ thrombosis \_\_\_\_\_ blockage \_\_\_\_\_ clot \_\_\_\_\_
4. Warning signs of a heart attack include **uncomfortable pressure** and **squeezing** in the chest and **discomfort** in other areas of the body such as the neck, arms, legs, stomach, and jaw.  
uncomfortable \_\_\_\_\_ pressure \_\_\_\_\_ squeezing \_\_\_\_\_ discomfort \_\_\_\_\_
5. Patients with type I and type II **diabetes**, **hypertension**, a family history of **atherosclerotic** disease, and who are **obese** are at risk for peripheral artery disease.  
diabetes \_\_\_\_\_ hypertension \_\_\_\_\_ atherosclerotic \_\_\_\_\_ obese \_\_\_\_\_
6. A person with heart failure may experience **palpitations** and feel like the heart is **throbbing** and racing, and may experience **swelling** in the feet, legs, and **abdomen**.  
palpitations \_\_\_\_\_ throbbing \_\_\_\_\_ swelling \_\_\_\_\_ abdomen \_\_\_\_\_
7. **Ischemia** is the term used to describe what happens to the part of the body that is not able to get enough oxygen as a result of a **narrow** or **blocked** artery.  
ischemia \_\_\_\_\_ narrow \_\_\_\_\_ blocked \_\_\_\_\_
8. A **common** symptom of a stroke, which **deprives** the brain of blood and oxygen, is **paralysis** or **weakness** on one side of the body.  
common \_\_\_\_\_ deprives \_\_\_\_\_ paralysis \_\_\_\_\_ weakness \_\_\_\_\_
9. Feelings of **heaviness**, **tightening**, and squeezing pressure or aching across the chest and behind the **breastbone** are possible symptoms of **angina**, also called angina pectoris.  
heaviness \_\_\_\_\_ tightening \_\_\_\_\_ breastbone \_\_\_\_\_ angina \_\_\_\_\_
10. Warning signs of a **stroke**, which is caused by **blockage** of an artery or **rupture** of an artery, include **numbness** on one side of the body, **confusion**, and difficulty talking and walking.  
stroke \_\_\_\_\_ blockage \_\_\_\_\_ rupture \_\_\_\_\_ numbness \_\_\_\_\_ confusion \_\_\_\_\_
11. In addition to atherosclerosis, other **causes** of peripheral vascular disease include blood **clots**, diabetes, **inflammation** of the arteries, and **infection**.  
causes \_\_\_\_\_ clots \_\_\_\_\_ inflammation \_\_\_\_\_ infection \_\_\_\_\_
12. Though not typical and quite rare, it is possible for a patient with peripheral artery disease to develop **gangrene**, ulcers, and open **sores** that will not **heal** as a result of poor **circulation**.  
gangrene \_\_\_\_\_ sores \_\_\_\_\_ heal \_\_\_\_\_ circulation \_\_\_\_\_
13. Diabetes, smoking, **hypertension**, and high **cholesterol** can cause the arteries to **harden** and **thicken**.  
hypertension \_\_\_\_\_ cholesterol \_\_\_\_\_ harden \_\_\_\_\_ thicken \_\_\_\_\_
14. Some symptoms of heart failure include **breathlessness** while sleeping or at **rest**, and feeling **tired** and **restless**.  
breathlessness \_\_\_\_\_ rest \_\_\_\_\_ tired \_\_\_\_\_ restless \_\_\_\_\_
15. Pain from angina can **radiate** to the back, neck, arms, jaw, and teeth, and can give patients **heartburn** and **indigestion**.  
radiate \_\_\_\_\_ heartburn \_\_\_\_\_ indigestion \_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

### *Typical Medical Conditions and Patient Complaints*

The sentences below contain vocabulary that describes and explains typical medical conditions, diseases, symptoms, and patient complaints that a pharmacist encounters. Read the sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv. Look up words you do not know in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

- Before he was diagnosed with heart failure, the patient had complained that he was very **fatigued** and experiencing **dyspnea** while sleeping and that he needed two pillows to rest his head, and that his feet, ankles, and **abdomen** were **swollen**.  
fatigued \_\_\_\_\_ dyspnea \_\_\_\_\_ abdomen \_\_\_\_\_ swollen \_\_\_\_\_
- Clogging** of the arteries in the brain or the **hardening** of the arteries leading to the brain, or an **embolism** from the heart or an artery to the brain, can **cause** a stroke, which is also referred to as CVA or **cerebrovascular** accident.  
clogging \_\_\_\_\_ hardening \_\_\_\_\_ embolism \_\_\_\_\_ cause \_\_\_\_\_ cerebrovascular \_\_\_\_\_
- Individuals with **advanced** atherosclerosis will **suffer** heart attacks and strokes, have **difficulty** walking, and have leg ulcers and **wounds** that will not **heal**.  
advanced \_\_\_\_\_ suffer \_\_\_\_\_ difficulty \_\_\_\_\_ wounds \_\_\_\_\_ heal \_\_\_\_\_
- The term used to describe **pain** while walking or exercising, or pain that causes a person to **limp**, is **claudication**.  
pain \_\_\_\_\_ limp \_\_\_\_\_ claudication \_\_\_\_\_
- Tests conducted after the patient complained that she was having pain in her **lower extremities**, especially her feet, during the night when she was lying down and when her legs were **resting indicated** she had peripheral artery disease, also known as PAD.  
lower \_\_\_\_\_ extremities \_\_\_\_\_ resting \_\_\_\_\_ indicated \_\_\_\_\_
- Congestive heart failure**, also known as CHF, can lead to kidney **failure** and pulmonary **edema**.  
congestive heart failure \_\_\_\_\_ failure \_\_\_\_\_ edema \_\_\_\_\_
- Breaking out in a **sweat**, **feelings** of nausea, and **feeling lightheaded** are **warning** signs of a heart attack.  
sweat \_\_\_\_\_ feelings \_\_\_\_\_ feeling \_\_\_\_\_ lightheaded \_\_\_\_\_ warning \_\_\_\_\_
- A cerebral **hemorrhage**, which is caused by a **vessel** in the brain that **bursts** and **bleeds**, can **deprive** the brain of oxygen and blood and result in a stroke.  
hemorrhage \_\_\_\_\_ vessel \_\_\_\_\_ bursts \_\_\_\_\_ bleeds \_\_\_\_\_ deprive \_\_\_\_\_
- Another name for a **transient ischemic attack**, or TIA, which is a temporary **loss** of blood to the brain, is **mini-stroke**.  
transient \_\_\_\_\_ ischemic \_\_\_\_\_ attack \_\_\_\_\_ loss \_\_\_\_\_ mini-stroke \_\_\_\_\_
- A person with a total **cholesterol level** of 240 or higher is at increased **risk** of having a heart attack or a stroke.  
cholesterol level \_\_\_\_\_ risk \_\_\_\_\_
- Most people do not know that they are experiencing an **aortic** aneurysm, and their symptoms may include **abdominal**, chest, and back pain and a **pulsating** sensation in the **navel**.  
aortic \_\_\_\_\_ abdominal \_\_\_\_\_ pulsating \_\_\_\_\_ navel \_\_\_\_\_
- Atherosclerosis and arteriosclerosis, or hardening of the arteries, are terms that are used **interchangeably** and can **lead** to an aneurysm, TIA, angina, and **circulatory** problems in the arms and legs.  
interchangeably \_\_\_\_\_ lead \_\_\_\_\_ circulatory \_\_\_\_\_

13. A common heart **rhythm** problem is atrial **fibrillation**, which can cause shortness of **breath**, fatigue, **palpitations**, and a stroke.  
rhythm \_\_\_\_\_ fibrillation \_\_\_\_\_ breath \_\_\_\_\_ palpitations \_\_\_\_\_
14. After complaining of suffering from **fatigue**, feeling **faint**, dizzy, and lightheaded, having swelling in the lower extremities, and experiencing breathlessness while at rest or during physical **exertion**, the patient was **diagnosed** with cardiomyopathy, which is a disease of the heart muscle and affects the heart's ability to **pump** blood.  
fatigue \_\_\_\_\_ faint \_\_\_\_\_ exertion \_\_\_\_\_ diagnosed \_\_\_\_\_ pump \_\_\_\_\_
15. Whereas men having a heart attack will experience **shortness** of breath and shoulder pain, and feel a **crushing sensation** in their chest, women might **experience** nausea and jaw and back pain.  
shortness \_\_\_\_\_ crushing \_\_\_\_\_ sensation \_\_\_\_\_ experience \_\_\_\_\_
16. Patients with **severe** heart failure may need to have an **artificial** heart **device** or require a heart **transplantation**.  
severe \_\_\_\_\_ artificial \_\_\_\_\_ device \_\_\_\_\_ transplantation \_\_\_\_\_
17. Another name for mitral valve **prolapse**, which is a **disorder** in which the **valve** in the heart does not close **correctly**, is click-murmur syndrome.  
prolapse \_\_\_\_\_ disorder \_\_\_\_\_ valve \_\_\_\_\_ correctly \_\_\_\_\_
18. A **typical** symptom of pericarditis, which is **swelling** and **irritation** of the membrane that surrounds the heart, is a **sharp, stabbing** pain felt behind the breastbone and in the left shoulder and neck.  
typical \_\_\_\_\_ swelling \_\_\_\_\_ irritation \_\_\_\_\_ sharp \_\_\_\_\_ stabbing \_\_\_\_\_
19. A person experiencing heart failure may **exhibit** a **lack** of appetite and feel **full** because the digestive system is receiving **less** blood.  
exhibit \_\_\_\_\_ lack \_\_\_\_\_ full \_\_\_\_\_ less \_\_\_\_\_
20. Although one cannot control **heredity** as a cause of high cholesterol, **diet, physical** activity, maintaining **appropriate** weight, and treatment can help to **manage** it.  
heredity \_\_\_\_\_ diet \_\_\_\_\_ physical \_\_\_\_\_ appropriate \_\_\_\_\_ manage \_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## Medical Vocabulary Comprehension

Now that you have read sentences 1 through 20 describing language regarding the heart and cardiovascular system, assess your understanding by doing the exercises below.

### *Multiple Choice Questions*

Choose the answer that correctly completes each sentence below.

- \_\_\_\_\_ **Arteriosclerosis** is also called:
  - thrombosis
  - hypertension
  - hardening and thickening of the arteries
- \_\_\_\_\_ A **stroke** can be caused by:
  - palpitations
  - blockage or rupture of an artery
  - blockage or rupture of a vein

3. \_\_\_\_\_ Pain from **angina** can cause:
  - a. heartburn
  - b. heartburn and indigestion
  - c. fatigue
4. \_\_\_\_\_ People with **type I and type II diabetes** are at risk for developing:
  - a. peripheral artery disease
  - b. dyspnea
  - c. congestive heart failure
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Another word for **mini-stroke** is:
  - a. blockage
  - b. click-murmur syndrome
  - c. transient ischemic attack
6. \_\_\_\_\_ A person experiencing **heart failure** may have loss of appetite because:
  - a. he or she is fatigued
  - b. less blood is going into the digestive system
  - c. more blood is going into the digestive system
7. \_\_\_\_\_ **Pericarditis** can cause:
  - a. click-murmur syndrome
  - b. mitral valve prolapse
  - c. a sharp, stabbing pain behind the breastbone
8. \_\_\_\_\_ If a man is experiencing a squeezing sensation and pressure in his chest, and discomfort in his neck, arms, leg, stomach, and jaw, he is most likely having:
  - a. a stroke
  - b. an aneurysm
  - c. a heart attack
9. \_\_\_\_\_ **Ischemia** occurs when the body:
  - a. has high cholesterol
  - b. cannot receive enough oxygen because of a narrow or blocked artery
  - c. starts to palpitate
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Causes of **peripheral vascular disease** include:
  - a. atherosclerosis
  - b. blood clots, diabetes, inflammation of the arteries, and infection
  - c. blockage and rupture of an artery
11. \_\_\_\_\_ **Atrial fibrillation** is a:
  - a. heart failure problem
  - b. heart rhythm problem
  - c. swelling of the membrane that surrounds the heart
12. \_\_\_\_\_ A person with severe **heart failure** may need:
  - a. to lose weight and exercise more
  - b. to lower his or her cholesterol
  - c. an artificial heart device or a heart transplantation
13. \_\_\_\_\_ Fatigue, dizziness, lightheadedness, swelling of the lower extremities, and breathlessness are symptoms of:
  - a. cardiomyopathy

- b. mini-stroke  
c. angina
14. \_\_\_\_ Patients with **peripheral artery disease** can:  
a. develop open sores that won't heal, and gangrene  
b. have TIA  
c. have pulmonary edema
15. \_\_\_\_ Feeling breathless while sleeping or at rest is a symptom of:  
a. heart failure  
b. hypertension  
c. angina

### *True/False Questions*

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ Hardening of the arteries can lead to circulatory problems in the arms and legs.
2. \_\_\_\_ A person diagnosed with atrial fibrillation may experience shortness of breath, palpitations, fatigue, and a stroke.
3. \_\_\_\_ Women who are having a heart attack are more likely than men to experience a crushing sensation in their chest and shortness of breath.
4. \_\_\_\_ Possible symptoms of angina include feelings of heaviness, tightening, and squeezing pressure on the chest and behind the breastbone.
5. \_\_\_\_ Diabetes, high cholesterol, smoking, and hypertension do not cause arteriosclerosis.
6. \_\_\_\_ The word "paralyzed" is both an adjective and a verb.
7. \_\_\_\_ An embolism from the heart or artery to the brain can cause cardiomyopathy.
8. \_\_\_\_ The words "breathlessness" and "breathe" are nouns.
9. \_\_\_\_ As a cause of high cholesterol, heredity can be controlled, but diet and exercise cannot be controlled.
10. \_\_\_\_ Hardening of the arteries causes coronary heart disease.

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### *Writing Exercise*

An important part of communication is the ability to write about what you read, to write correctly, and to spell correctly. In the exercises below, write your understanding of the meaning of the bolded words.

1. Describe in writing what **peripheral artery disease** is.

---



---



---



---

2. Describe in writing what a **stroke** is.

---



---



---



---

3. Describe in writing what **heart attack**, **heart failure**, and **angina** are.

---



---



---



---

4. Describe in writing what **cardiomyopathy** and **atrial fibrillation** are.

---



---



---



---

Check what you have written with acceptable answers that appear in the Answer Key online.

## LISTENING AND PRONUNCIATION

The ability to listen and understand what is being said and heard, and the ability to pronounce words clearly, is extremely important. A word misheard and a word mispronounced will lead to poor communication and can seriously put both the pharmacist and patient in danger. Therefore, it is very important that one hear clearly what another person has said, and that one speak clearly with correct pronunciation.

Listen carefully to the pharmacy-related words presented in the audio files found in Chapter 6 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), and then pronounce them as accurately as you can. Listen and then repeat. You will listen to each word once and then you will repeat it. You will do this twice for each word. Listening and pronunciation practice will increase your listening and speaking confidence. Many languages do not produce or emphasize certain sounds produced and emphasized in English, so pay careful attention to the pronunciation of each word.



### Pronunciation Exercise

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 6 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com-diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com-diaz-gilbert)). Listen and repeat the words. Then say the words aloud for additional practice.

1. adrenaline	ə-drĕn'ə-lĭn
2. aneurism	ān'yə-rĭz'əm
3. angina	ān-jĭ'nə
4. angioplasty	ān'jĕ-plā'stĕ
5. anxiety	āng-zĭ'ĭ-tĕ
6. aorta	ā-ōr'tə
7. arrhythmia	ə-rĭth'mĕə
8. artery	ār'tə-rĕ
9. atherosclerosis	āth'ə-rō-sklə-rō'sĭs
10. atrial fibrillation	ā'trĕ-ə-l fĭbrə-lā'shən
11. blood clot	blūd klōt
12. bradycardia	brād'ĭ-kār'dĕə
13. cardiac catheterization	kār'dĕ-āk' kath'ĕ-ter-ĭ-zā'shŭn
14. cerebral hemorrhage	sĕr'ə-brə-l, s'ə-rĕ'- hĕm'ə-r-ĭj
15. cerebrovascular accident	ser'ĕ-brō-vas'kŭ-lār āk'sĭ-dĕnt
16. cholesterol	kə-lĕs'tə-rōl
17. circulatory	sŭr'kyə-lə-tōr'ĕ
18. coagulate	kō-āg'yə-lā't

19. congenital	kə̃n-jēn'ĩ-tl
20. cramping	krāmpng
21. crushing sensation	krūshng sēn-sā'shə̃n
22. diuretic	dī'ə-rēt'ĩk
23. echocardiogram	ēk'ō-kär'dē-ə-grām'
24. edema	ĩ-dē'mə̃
25. electrocardiogram	ĩ-lēk'trō-kär'dē-ə-grām'
26. embolism	ēm'bə-lĩz'm
27. epinephrine	ēp'ə-nēf'rĩn
28. exacerbation	eg-zas-er-bā'shũn
29. faint	fānt
30. flush	flūsh
31. fluttering	flūt'ərng
32. gasping	gāspng
33. hardening	här'dn-ĩng
34. heart failure	härt fāl'yər
35. heartburn	härt'bũrn'
36. high blood pressure	hĩ blūd prēsh'ər
37. hypertension	hĩ pər-tēn'shə̃n
38. intermittent claudication	ĩn'tər-mĩt'nt klō'dĩ-kā'shə̃n
39. irregular heartbeat	ĩ-rēg'yə-lər härt-bēt
40. ischemia	ĩ-skēmē-ə
41. mitral valve prolapse	mĩ'trəl vālv prō-lāps'
42. myocardial infarction	mĩ-ō-kär'dē-āl ĩn-färk'shə̃n
43. nitroglycerin	nĩ'trō-glĩs'ər-ĩn
44. palpitation	pāl'pĩ-tā'shə̃n
45. paralysis	pə-rāl'ĩ-sĩs
46. peripheral artery disease	pə-rĩf'ər-əl är'tə-rē dĩ-zēz'
47. peripheral vascular disease	pə-rĩf'ər-əl vās'kyə-lər dĩ-zēz'
48. plaque	plāk
49. pulse	pūls
50. pump	pūmp
51. shining skin	shĩnng skĩn
52. skipping heart beat	skĩpng härt bēt
53. spasm	spāz'm
54. squeezing sensation	skwēzng sēn-sā'shə̃n
55. stroke	strōk
56. syncope	sĩn'kə-pē
57. tachycardia	tāk'ĩ-kär'dē-ə
58. thickening	thĩk'ə-nĩng
59. throbbing	thrōbng
60. thrombosis	thrōm-bō'sĩs
61. vein	vān
62. vomiting	vōm'ĩtng

Which words are easy to pronounce? Which are difficult to pronounce? Use the space below to write in the words that you find difficult to pronounce. These are words you should practice saying often.

---



---



---

---



---



---



---

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 6 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) as many times as you need to increase your pronunciation ability of the difficult words. Pronounce these words with a friend or a colleague who speaks English.

### English Sounds That Are Difficult for Speakers of Other Languages to Pronounce

#### Spanish

In Spanish, there is no English “v” sound, but the “v” consonant in Spanish is pronounced like the English “b.” The vowel “i” is pronounced like a long “e.” Pay careful attention to the “v” sound in English when pronouncing words that begin with “v.” Also pay careful attention to English words that begin with “s;” do not use the Spanish “es” sound when pronouncing English words that begin with “s.”

For example, in English,

skipping is not pronounced eskeepeeng  
vein is not pronounced bein

#### Vietnamese

In Vietnamese, the “t” consonant is pronounced “s,” but in English the “t” is pronounced “t” and “s” is pronounced “s.” Be careful with English words that begin with “t.” In Vietnamese, the “b” consonant is pronounced “p,” but in English “p” is pronounced “p” and “b” is pronounced “b.”

In Vietnamese, words do not end in “b,” “ch,” “f,” “d,” “j,” “l,” “p,” “r,” “s,” “sh,” “v,” and “z.” In English, words end in these letters. Pay special attention to pronouncing these English sounds. In Vietnamese, there is no “dzh” or “zh” sound, so English words like “judge” (dzh) and “rupture” (zh) will be hard for Vietnamese speakers to pronounce.

For example, in English,

faint is not pronounced fain  
intermittent is not pronounced intehmihin  
paralysis is not pronounced pahrahlih

#### Gujarati

In Gujarati, “v” is pronounced “w,” “f” is pronounced “p,” “p” is pronounced “f,” and “z” is pronounced “j.” Short “i” is pronounced long “e,” “x” is pronounced “ch,” and “th” is pronounced “s.” In English, “v” is pronounced “v,” “f” is pronounced “f,” “z” is pronounced “z” or “s,” “j” is pronounced “j,” and “x” is pronounced “x.” Pay careful attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

pulse is not pronounced fulse  
faint is not pronounced paint

(continued)



**Korean**

In Korean, the “v” consonant is pronounced “b” and the “f” consonant is pronounced “p.” In English, the “v” is pronounced “v,” the “f” is pronounced “f,” and the “p” is pronounced “p.” Pay special attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

faint is not pronounced paint

**Chinese**

In Chinese, the “r” consonant is pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are not pronounced at all. Pay careful attention to English words that begin with “r” because the “r” is not pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are pronounced in English.

For example, in English,

rash is not pronounced lash

stroke is not pronounced stoke

**Russian**

The “w” consonant is pronounced like a “v” and the “v” sounds like a “w.” Pay careful attention to the English “th.” It is not pronounced “s.”

For example, in English,

thick is not pronounced sick

**DICTATION****Listening/Spelling Exercise: Word and Word Pairs**

Listen to the words or word pairs on the audio files found in Chapter 6 on thePoint (thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_



### Listening/Spelling Exercise: Sentences

Listen to the sentences on the audio files found in Chapter 6 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diazgilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diazgilbert)) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Now, check your sentences against the correct answers in the Answer Key online. If there are any new words that you do not know or that you spelled incorrectly, make a list of those words and study them for meaning and spelling.

## PHARMACIST/PATIENT DIALOGUES

The ability to orally communicate effectively with your professors, colleagues, and especially with patients is very important. As a pharmacist, you will be counseling patients; patients will come to you for advice. They will have questions about a condition and symptoms they may experience and will ask you to help treat the condition. Therefore, it is extremely important that you understand what they are saying and that you respond to them and their questions appropriately. Your patients will speak differently. For example, some may speak very quickly, others too low, and yet others may speak angrily. To help you improve your listening skills, listen to the following dialogues, or short conversations, between a pharmacist and a patient and between a pharmacy technician and a patient.



### Listening and Comprehension Exercises

#### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient is in the pharmacy to:
  - a. pick up a prescription for Lipitor
  - b. get a prescription refill for captopril
  - c. buy over-the-counter multivitamins
2. \_\_\_\_ She has been prescribed this medication because she recently had:
  - a. an asthma attack
  - b. a heart transplant
  - c. a heart attack
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Margaret Peters
  - b. Margaret Peterson
  - c. Margaret Peter
4. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist's name is:
  - a. Sam Morgan
  - b. Samantha Morgan
  - c. Morgan Sam
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist she stopped taking:
  - a. vitamins only
  - b. Lipitor
  - c. captopril
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient is also taking:
  - a. prescription vitamins
  - b. over-the-counter multivitamins with iron and minerals
  - c. over-the-counter vitamins with calcium
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist she stopped taking Lipitor after her heart attack because:
  - a. it didn't prevent her heart attack
  - b. her cholesterol level did not improve
  - c. medicine can be expensive, even with insurance
8. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that:
  - a. captopril made her very dizzy and lightheaded
  - b. captopril still makes her dizzy and lightheaded
  - c. captopril made her feel dizzy and lightheaded when she first took it
9. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist asks the patient if she has:
  - a. had a change in urine and a fast heartbeat
  - b. been dizzy
  - c. been feeling tired
10. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist she wants a refill for captopril because:
  - a. it's not expensive
  - b. it's making her feel better and she wants to continue to feel better
  - c. her doctor told her to get a refill

11. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist refills the prescription for captopril and reminds the patient:
- to take the one pill three times a day on a full stomach
  - to take two pills two times a day 1 hour before eating
  - to take one pill three times a day 1 hour before eating
12. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient must also avoid:
- potassium supplements and salt substitutes
  - potassium supplements only
  - salt substitutes only

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### **Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - Mr. Jack
  - Mr. Jackson
  - Mr. Janson
- \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist's name is:
  - Linda Riley
  - Linda Wiley
  - Lynne Riley
- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient has been diagnosed with:
  - congestion
  - congestive heart failure
  - edema
- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is taking:
  - one medication
  - two medications
  - three medications
- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's medications include:
  - valsartan
  - valsartan, Lotemax, and Lasix
  - Lotemax

6. \_\_\_\_ The patient is taking valsartan:
- for his heart, Lotemax for his edema, and Lasix for his eye
  - for his edema, Lasix for his heart, and Lotemax for his edema
  - for his heart, Lasix for his edema, an Lotemax for his eye
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient had a cataract removed from his:
- right eye
  - left eye
  - both eyes
8. \_\_\_\_ After the pharmacist asked the patient if he is having any problems with his medications, the patient said:
- sometimes he feels dizzy when he gets up after sitting
  - sometimes he feels dizzy when he sits down
  - sometimes he feels dizzy when he gets up from sitting, and he goes to the bathroom a lot
9. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that a common side effect of valsartan:
- is dizziness, and a common side effect Lasix is urinating more frequently
  - and Lasix is dizziness, and a common side effect of Lasix is urinating more frequently
  - is frequent urination and dizziness during the night
10. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist he tries:
- not to take the Lasix pills at night
  - to take the Lasix pills before 4 o'clock in the afternoon
  - to take the Lasix pills after 6 o'clock at night
11. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist asks the patient if he exercises, and the patient replies that:
- he tries to go for walks in the evenings and on weekends if the weather is nice
  - he goes for walks on weekends only
  - he can't go for walks because he has a patch on his eye

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### **Dialogue #3**

Listen to Dialogue #3, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist is speaking to the patient in:
- a pharmacy
  - the hospital
  - the patient's home

2. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist's name is:
  - a. Larry Brand
  - b. Eva Gonzalez
  - c. Eva Branch
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Eva Gonzalez
  - b. Eva Branch
  - c. Eve Gonzalez
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is:
  - a. 50 years old
  - b. 51 years old
  - c. 15 years old
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is in the hospital because:
  - a. she is diabetic
  - b. she is visiting a family member
  - c. she had a stroke
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor has prescribed:
  - a. Aggrenox
  - b. NovoLog
  - c. Aggrastat
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Aggrenox will:
  - a. treat the patient's diabetes
  - b. help to prevent blood clots in the brain and decrease the risk of another stroke
  - c. cause another stroke
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Aggrenox is a:
  - a. tablet that contains aspirin
  - b. capsule that contains dipyridamole
  - c. capsule that contains aspirin and dipyridamole
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Aggrenox can only:
  - a. be chewed
  - b. be swallowed whole
  - c. be crushed first and then swallowed
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacy instructs the patient to drink:
  - a. 1–8 ounces of water with the capsule
  - b. 8 ounces of water with the capsule
  - c. 8 ounces of water after lying down for 30 minutes
11. \_\_\_\_\_ Common side effects of Aggrenox include:
  - a. difficulty breathing
  - b. nausea, dizziness, heartburn, diarrhea, and sleepiness
  - c. nausea and vomiting
12. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient:
  - a. she can take ibuprofen while she's taking Aggrenox
  - b. she can take naproxen while she's taking Aggrenox
  - c. she should not take ibuprofen and naproxen while she's taking Aggrenox

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

Idioms and idiomatic expressions are made up of a group of words that have a different meaning from the original meaning of each individual word. Native speakers of the English language use such expressions comfortably and naturally. However, individuals who are new speakers of English or who have studied English for many years may still not be able to use idioms and idiomatic expressions as comfortably or naturally as native speakers. As pharmacy students, pharmacy technicians, and practicing pharmacists, you will hear many different idiomatic expressions. Some of you will understand and know how to use these expressions correctly. At times, however, you may not understand what your professors, colleagues, and patients are saying. This of course can lead to miscommunication, embarrassment, and possibly dangerous mistakes.

To help you improve your knowledge of idioms and idiomatic expressions, carefully read the following idiomatic expressions that contain the body word heart.



### Idiomatic Expressions using “Heart”

1. **from the bottom of one’s heart** means you say or do something with sincerity and great feeling.  
For example: The patient thanked the pharmacist **from the bottom of her heart** for saving her life after the pharmacist noticed that the doctor had ordered a medication that could have potentially killed her if the medication had interacted with medication she was taking for hypertension.
2. **heart-to-heart** means to speak seriously and freely about a private matter.  
For example: After receiving several complaints from patients about the pharmacy technician’s poor customer service skills, the pharmacy manager had a **heart-to-heart** talk with him.
3. **to have a heart** means to be nice and not be so strict.  
For example: **Have a heart!** I’ve been working 5 straight hours without a break.
4. **to have a heart of gold** means to be kind, generous, and forgiving.  
For example: Patients were saddened to learn that their favorite pharmacist, Sam, who has **a heart of gold**, had been transferred to another pharmacy.
5. **not have the heart to do something** means not be able to say or do something that will hurt another person.  
For example: I **don’t have the heart** to tell her that she did not get the promotion.
6. **heart skips a beat** means a person is very afraid, excited, or surprised.  
For example: Her **heart skipped a beat** when she opened the letter from the pharmacy school announcing that she had been accepted.
7. **to have a heart of stone** means to be mean, cruel, and unsympathetic.  
For example: Many students felt the professor had **a heart of stone** and made all his exams especially difficult.
8. **to have one’s heart in the right place** means the person is kind, well-meaning, or sympathetic even though they don’t appear to be.  
For example: Even though her boss was not happy with her because she was late, his **heart was in the right place** when he advised her that it’s unprofessional to be late for work.
9. **to have a heavy heart** means to be very sad.  
For example: The pharmacy staff worked with **a heavy heart** the day they learned that one of their long-time patients died after her long illness.

10. *to wear one's heart on one's sleeve* means to show one's true feelings openly.  
For example: While some patients are very private and don't discuss many personal matters with their doctors and pharmacists, others will *wear their heart on their sleeve*.
11. *one's heart sank* means to suddenly lose hope and become sad.  
For example: The patient's *heart sank* when the doctor told her that her cancer had returned.
12. *to sing/dance one's heart out* means to sing and dance with a lot of energy.  
For example: The students *danced their hearts* out at their graduation party.

### Mini Dialogues Listening Exercise

How much did you understand? Listen to the following mini dialogues on the audio files found in Chapter 6 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), read the questions below, and then choose the correct answer.



#### Mini Dialogue #1

1. \_\_\_\_ To have *a heart-to-heart* talk means:
- to talk about a heart transplantation
  - to express one's love to another person
  - to speak about a serious matter in private



#### Mini Dialogue #2

2. \_\_\_\_ To have *a heart of stone* means:
- to have a heavy heart
  - to feel cold
  - to be mean and unsympathetic



#### Mini Dialogue #3

3. \_\_\_\_ *My heart sank* means:
- the person is drowning
  - to lose hope and become very sad
  - the heart stopped beating



#### Mini Dialogue #4

4. \_\_\_\_ *Wear my heart on my sleeve* means:
- to wipe my tears on my sleeve
  - to show my true feelings privately
  - to show my true feelings openly



#### Mini Dialogue #5

5. \_\_\_\_ *Heart's in the right place* means:
- relationships with other people are important
  - to be well-meaning
  - to be generous and forgiving



#### Mini Dialogue #6

6. \_\_\_\_ To have *a heart of gold* means:



- a. to wear a gold heart
- b. to be kind and generous
- c. to be excited and surprised

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## POST-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ The idiom **to have a heavy heart** means to be kind and sympathetic.
2. \_\_\_\_ The noun form of **hard** is hardening.
3. \_\_\_\_ Another word for hypertension is arteriosclerosis.
4. \_\_\_\_ Paralytic and paralysis are both nouns.
5. \_\_\_\_ If a person's **heart is made of stone**, the person is scared and frightened.
6. \_\_\_\_ Another word for transient ischemic attack or TIA is mini-stroke.
7. \_\_\_\_ Paralysis or weakness in one side of the body is caused by peripheral artery disease.
8. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **ischemia** is ischemic.
9. \_\_\_\_ Diabetes, smoking, hypertension, and high cholesterol will not cause the arteries to harden.
10. \_\_\_\_ Congestive heart failure occurs when the heart pumps too much blood throughout the body.
11. \_\_\_\_ If a person has a **heart of gold**, he or she is very wealthy and has lots of money.
12. \_\_\_\_ If a patient complains that he gets cramping in his legs or arms while exercising or walking, he may have peripheral artery disease.
13. \_\_\_\_ Warning signs of a stroke include sudden numbness on one side of the body and the inability to speak.
14. \_\_\_\_ Angina is caused by a bulge in the blood vessels to the brain.
15. \_\_\_\_ If a person's **heart skips a beat** after being surprised or excited, it means he or she has arrhythmia.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **anxiety** is:
  - a. anxious
  - b. anxiousness
  - c. anxiously
2. \_\_\_\_ A person with congestive heart failure may:
  - a. feel fatigued and cold
  - b. feel fatigued and have edema of the legs or ankles
  - c. experience loss of coordination
3. \_\_\_\_ If a person has a **heart of stone**, he or she is:
  - a. friendly
  - b. worried and anxious
  - c. mean and unsympathetic

4. \_\_\_\_\_ A person with angina will experience:
- claudication
  - a squeezing sensation in the chest
  - a severe headache
5. \_\_\_\_\_ In the sentence: "Some symptoms of heart failure include breathlessness while sleeping or at rest, and feeling tired and restless," **rest** is:
- a verb and a noun
  - an adjective
  - a noun
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **to crush** is:
- crushing and crushed
  - crush
  - crushed
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Aggrenox is used to:
- decrease strokes
  - help improve paralysis
  - help improve speaking
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The idiomatic expression that means "to be sad" is:
- to wear your heart on your sleeve
  - to have a heavy heart
  - to dance your heart out
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Valsartan is used to treat:
- patients with congestive heart failure
  - patients with cataracts
  - patients with edema
10. \_\_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "Paralysis or weakness in one side of the body is caused by peripheral artery disease," the word **paralysis** is:
- an adjective
  - a verb
  - a noun
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The words pulse and pulsation are:
- both a verb and noun
  - an adjective
  - a noun
12. \_\_\_\_\_ A person with cardiac arrest may experience:
- chest discomfort, shortness of breath, and cold sweats
  - no warning signs, but will experience sudden loss of consciousness and abnormal breathing
  - a squeezing sensation in the chest
13. \_\_\_\_\_ Captopril is used to treat:
- diabetic patients
  - heart attack patients
  - stroke patients
14. \_\_\_\_\_ The word **exacerbated** is:
- both a verb and an adjective
  - a past tense verb only
  - an adjective only

15. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence, “Warning signs of a heart attack include uncomfortable pressure and squeezing in the chest, and discomfort in other areas of the body such as the neck, arms, legs, stomach, and jaw,” **squeezing** is:

- a. an adjective
- b. a past tense verb
- c. a noun

## Listening and Comprehension Exercises



### Dialogue #1

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist’s name is:
  - a. Frederica Cullens
  - b. Frederica Collins
  - c. Frederica Collings
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient’s name is:
  - a. Art Jennings
  - b. Arthur Jennings
  - c. Arthur Jenkins
3. \_\_\_\_ When the pharmacist asks the patient how he’s feeling, the patient states that:
  - a. it’s hard for him to walk and that his back hurts
  - b. it’s hard for him to walk and that his legs hurt
  - c. he’s feeling much better and that his legs do not hurt when he walks
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that his doctor told him:
  - a. he has bad arteries, which are hard
  - b. he has good arteries, which are hard
  - c. he will always have difficulty walking because he has bad arteries
5. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that he has:
  - a. peripheral artery disease
  - b. edema in his legs
  - c. plaque in his arteries due to cholesterol
6. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist explains to the patient that:
  - a. he is having difficulty walking and moving because he is obese
  - b. he is having difficulty walking and moving because the fatty material in his arteries is blocking the blood from flowing
  - c. he is having difficulty walking because his feet are numb

7. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that:
- his legs feel tight, his calf muscles are tired, and the pain is constant
  - his butt hurts and that his legs feel numb, but that his feet don't ache
  - the pain in his tight legs and tired muscles comes and goes, and sometimes his butt hurts, his legs have a numb and tingling feeling, and his feet ache
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient has been prescribed:
- Petal
  - Pletal
  - Pedal
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist explains to the patient that the medication will help:
- him walk faster without pain
  - to reduce his symptoms only
  - to reduce his symptoms, help him walk farther distances with less pain, and improve oxygen and blood flow to his legs
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient needs to take:
- 1 tablet 30 minutes after breakfast or dinner
  - 1 tablet twice a day 30 minutes before breakfast and dinner or 2 hours after breakfast and dinner
  - 1 tablet daily either 30 minutes before breakfast and dinner or 2 hours after breakfast and dinner
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient should start to feel the benefits of the medication:
- after 2 weeks
  - after 4 weeks
  - as early as 2 to 4 weeks or as late as 12 weeks
12. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient not to eat:
- grapes and not to take ibuprofen and naproxen
  - grapefruit and not to take ibuprofen, naproxen, and aspirin
  - grapes and fruit and not to take ibuprofen, naproxen, and aspirin



### **Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
- Brett Long, and the pharmacist's name is Helen Davis
  - Brett Davis, and the pharmacist's name is Helen Long
  - Helen Davis, and the pharmacist's name is Brett Long

2. \_\_\_\_ The patient was hospitalized after suffering:
  - a. heart attack
  - b. angina
  - c. a stroke
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient is:
  - a. a 49-year-old smoker with high cholesterol and high blood pressure
  - b. a 49-year-old nonsmoker with high cholesterol
  - c. a 40-year-old smoker with high blood pressure
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient's angina is being treated with:
  - a. nitroglycerin tablets
  - b. a nitroglycerin patch called Nitro-Dur
  - c. a nitroglycerin patch called Nitrodisc
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient has been:
  - a. using the nitroglycerin patch as prescribed
  - b. removing the patch when she should
  - c. removing the patch when she shouldn't
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient told the pharmacist she:
  - a. removes the patch because it irritates her skin and she removes the patch in the shower
  - b. removes the patch in the shower
  - c. removes the patch because it irritates her skin
7. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist instructs the patient to:
  - a. keep the patch on for 12 to 14 hours, and then wait about 10 to 12 hours before she can put a new patch on
  - b. to keep the patch on for 10 to 12 hours, and then wait about 12 to 14 hours before she can put a new patch on
  - c. keep the patch on for 12 to 14 hours, and then wait about 10 to 12 hours before she can put on the same patch
8. \_\_\_\_ The patient is allergic to:
  - a. sulfa
  - b. ampicillin
  - c. penicillin
9. \_\_\_\_ The patient is taking:
  - a. Zocor once a night every night as prescribed to treat her cholesterol even if she's not at home
  - b. Diovan for her cholesterol but sometimes forgets to take it, especially when she's not at home
  - c. Zocor for her cholesterol but forgets to take it every night, especially when she's not at home
10. \_\_\_\_ The patient does not take:
  - a. Diovan, her blood pressure medication, on a daily basis as she should, even though her doctor adjusted the medication, because it made her itchy and irritated
  - b. Diovan, her blood pressure medication, on a daily basis as she should, even though her doctor adjusted the medication, because it made her lightheaded and dizzy
  - c. Diovan, her blood pressure medication, on a daily basis because she forgets
11. \_\_\_\_ According to the patient's chart, her doctor has also recommended:
  - a. physical activity, weight loss, and smoking cessation
  - b. weight loss, but no physical activity
  - c. weight loss and smoking fewer cigarettes

12. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist explains to the patient that she has:
- COPD
  - angina, caused by coronary heart disease
  - coronary heart disease as a result of not taking her medications as prescribed
13. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist explains to the patient that:
- it's difficult for blood and oxygen to get to her heart
  - as a result of coronary heart disease, it's difficult for the blood and oxygen to get to her heart and that cholesterol has hardened her arteries
  - as a result of not taking her medications, blood and oxygen cannot get to her heart
14. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient was not aware that:
- high blood pressure is the number one killer in women
  - cancer is the number one killer in women
  - heart disease is the number one killer in women
15. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist informs the patient that the hospital offers:
- smoking cessation classes not covered by insurance
  - exercise and smoking cessation classes that some insurance companies cover and that are reasonably priced
  - exercise, weight loss, and smoking cessation classes that are reasonably priced and covered by most insurance companies

How did you do on the Post-Assessment in Chapter 6? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

# The Abdomen and Gastrointestinal System

# 7

## PRE-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ **Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD)** is a chronic stomach condition.
2. \_\_\_\_ **Heartburn** is a burning pain usually felt in the middle of the chest.
3. \_\_\_\_ **Regurgitant** and **regurgitative** are adjective forms.
4. \_\_\_\_ Some individuals with **diverticular disease** may experience bloating, diarrhea, constipation, and cramping.
5. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of rectum is **rectal**.
6. \_\_\_\_ **Fecal impaction** occurs when the stool in the rectum is soft and causes diarrhea.
7. \_\_\_\_ One cause of **abdominal pain** is inflammation.
8. \_\_\_\_ People with **irritable bowel syndrome (IBS)** do not experience **bloating, constipation, flatulence**, abdominal pain, cramping, and diarrhea.
9. \_\_\_\_ Some people suffering from constipation experience **straining** and will not have difficulty passing **stool**.
10. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **esophagus** is esophageal.
11. \_\_\_\_ A person with **diverticulitis**, which occurs when the diverticula in the colon ruptures, experience a fever, **tenderness**, and abdominal pain.
12. \_\_\_\_ A **hiatal hernia** is a protrusion at the opening of the diaphragm where the food pipe meets the stomach that will not allow food to back up into the esophagus.
13. \_\_\_\_ Symptoms of **appendicitis** include abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, and loss of appetite.
14. \_\_\_\_ Long-term GERD can lead to **Barrett's esophagus**, which in turn can lead to esophageal cancer.
15. \_\_\_\_ The word **urgency** is an adjective and the word **urgent** is a noun.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ “It was difficult for the students **to stomach** the poor results on their exams” means:
  - a. it was easy for the students to reject the results
  - b. it was easy for the students to accept the results
  - c. it was difficult for the students to accept the results

2. \_\_\_\_ If a dissection of a fetal pig in your biology class **turns your stomach**, you will:
  - a. experience sharp pains in your stomach
  - b. feel sick and upset
  - c. become hungry
3. \_\_\_\_ Ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease are examples of:
  - a. inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)
  - b. gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD)
  - c. diverticular disease
4. \_\_\_\_ Abdominal pain can be caused by:
  - a. cramping
  - b. loss of blood supply to an organ, distension of an organ, or inflammation
  - c. a diet poor in fiber
5. \_\_\_\_ If a patient complains of a burning sensation in the chest, a sour taste in the mouth, and chest pain when lying down, especially at night, he or she is probably suffering from:
  - a. angina
  - b. GERD
  - c. diverticulitis
6. \_\_\_\_ Another word that means difficulty swallowing is:
  - a. dyspnea
  - b. dysphagia
  - c. reflux
7. \_\_\_\_ Constipation is a digestive condition in which a person will:
  - a. experience severe abdominal pains
  - b. experience inflammation and loss of blood to an organ
  - c. pass hard stool, strain during a bowel movement, or have infrequent bowel movements
8. \_\_\_\_ The word impaction is:
  - a. a noun
  - b. a verb
  - c. an adjective
9. \_\_\_\_ Diarrhea is characterized as:
  - a. hard stool
  - b. tarry stool
  - c. loose stool
10. \_\_\_\_ The patient complained that she was experiencing abdominal cramps, diarrhea, blood in her stool, loss of appetite, and weight loss. This could indicate she has:
  - a. gallstones
  - b. appendicitis
  - c. Crohn's disease

How did you do? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

## MEDICAL VOCABULARY

---

A good understanding of vocabulary words in pharmacy is very important for communication with professors, fellow students, patients, and coworkers. Knowledge and understanding of vocabulary leads to successful communication and success as a pharmacy student, as a pharmacy technician, and as a practicing



pharmacist. You may already know many of the vocabulary words in this chapter, but for words that are unfamiliar, pay careful attention to them and make every effort to know their correct spelling, meaning, and pronunciation. It is a good idea to keep a list of new words and to look up these new words in a bilingual dictionary or dictionary in your first language. A good command of pharmacy-related vocabulary and good pronunciation of vocabulary will help to prevent embarrassing mistakes and increase effective verbal communication skills.

## Abdomen and Gastrointestinal System Vocabulary

abdomen	digestion	indigestion
absorb	diverticula	intestinal tract
anus	diverticulitis	lower esophageal sphincter
appendix	diverticulosis	moderate
backwash	dysphagia	navel
belch	epigastric	obstruction
belly button	erode	occult blood
bile	esophageal	pancreas
bloating	esophagus	peptic ulcer
bout	expel	pouches
bowel	feces	rectum
bowel movement	flare	reflux
burp	flatulence	regurgitation
colon	gallbladder	Schatzki's ring
colostomy	gas	stomach acid
constipation	gastritis	stool
contractions	gastroenteritis	strain
cramping	heartburn	swallow
diaphragm	hemorrhoid	tenderness
diarrhea	hiatal hernia	

## PARTS OF SPEECH

A good understanding of parts of speech, such as verbs, nouns, adjectives, and adverbs, is important for successful communication when speaking or writing. It is equally important to know the various forms of words and to use them appropriately.

### Word Forms

The table below lists the main forms of some terms that you will likely encounter in pharmacy practice. Review the table and then do the exercises that follow to assess your understanding.

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v)	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
	—Past Tense		
abdomen		abdominal	abdominally
absorption; absorptivity	to absorb; absorbed	absorptive	
anus		anal	anally
appendix; appendectomy; appendicitis			

(continued)

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v) —Past Tense	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
belch; belching	to belch; belched		
bellyache; bellyacher	to bellyache; bellyached		
bloating	to bloat; bloated	bloating; bloated	
colon		colonic	
constipation		constipated	
contraction; contract	to contract; contracted		contractually
cramp; cramping	to cramp; cramped		
diaphragm		diaphragmatic	diaphragmatically
diarrhea		diarrheal; diarrheic; diarrhetic	
digestion	to digest; digested	digestive; digestible	
dysphagia		dysphagic	
epigastrium		epigastric	
erodibility	to erode; eroded	erodible	
esophagus		esophageal	
expeller	to expel; expelled	expellable	
feces		fecal	
gas		gaseous	
hemorrhoid		hemorrhoidal	
incontinence		incontinent	
indigestion		indigestible	
intestine		intestinal	intestinally
moderation; moderateness	to moderate; moderated	moderate	moderately
obstruction; obstructor; obstructiveness	to obstruct; obstructed	obstructive; obstructing;	obstructively
pancreas		pancreatic	
rectum		rectal	rectally
regurgitation	to regurgitate; regurgitated	regurgitant; regurgitative	
swallow; swallower	to swallow; swallowed		
tenderness		tender	tenderly

### *Word Forms Exercise*

Read the following sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv.

1. **Heartburn** can be characterized as a **burning** pain in the middle of the chest.  
heartburn \_\_\_\_\_ burning \_\_\_\_\_
2. A patient with **diverticulosis** has **bulging pouches**, known as **diverticula**, in the **digestive** tract including the stomach, esophagus, and the large and small intestine.  
diverticulosis \_\_\_\_\_ bulging \_\_\_\_\_ pouches \_\_\_\_\_ diverticula \_\_\_\_\_ digestive \_\_\_\_\_
3. Heartburn and chest pain can be caused by a large **hiatal hernia**, which **allows** food and **acid** to **back up** into the esophagus.  
hiatal hernia \_\_\_\_\_ allows \_\_\_\_\_ acid \_\_\_\_\_ back up \_\_\_\_\_
4. People who are **constipated** will either **strain** during a **bowel movement**, pass hard **stool**, or have **infrequent** bowel movements.  
constipated \_\_\_\_\_ strain \_\_\_\_\_ bowel movement \_\_\_\_\_ stool \_\_\_\_\_ infrequent \_\_\_\_\_
5. A **clogged** and **obstructed** appendix can **burst** if it becomes **inflamed** and filled with **pus**.  
clogged \_\_\_\_\_ obstructed \_\_\_\_\_ burst \_\_\_\_\_ inflamed \_\_\_\_\_ pus \_\_\_\_\_
6. Patients with **GERD** experience **constant backwash** of food and **bile** into their esophagus and this can lead to **irritation** and inflammation of the esophagus.  
GERD \_\_\_\_\_ constant \_\_\_\_\_ backwash \_\_\_\_\_ bile \_\_\_\_\_ irritation \_\_\_\_\_
7. Symptoms of **irritable** bowel syndrome (IBS) include abdominal **cramps**, **bloating**, **constipation**, **diarrhea**, and **gas**.  
irritable \_\_\_\_\_ cramps \_\_\_\_\_ bloating \_\_\_\_\_ constipation \_\_\_\_\_ gas \_\_\_\_\_
8. **Peptic ulcers** are **open sores** in the **lining** of the stomach or the esophagus and can be caused by **bacterial** infection or certain medications.  
peptic ulcers \_\_\_\_\_ open \_\_\_\_\_ sores \_\_\_\_\_ lining \_\_\_\_\_ bacterial \_\_\_\_\_
9. Long-term GERD can lead to **Barrett's esophagus**, a **condition** that can lead to **esophageal** cancer.  
Barrett's esophagus \_\_\_\_\_ condition \_\_\_\_\_ esophageal \_\_\_\_\_
10. The **inability** to control one's bowel movement, thus causing **feces** to suddenly **leak** from the **rectum**, is referred to as fecal or bowel **incontinence**.  
inability \_\_\_\_\_ feces \_\_\_\_\_ leak \_\_\_\_\_ rectum \_\_\_\_\_ incontinence \_\_\_\_\_
11. One way to **expel excessive gas** from the stomach, which can be caused by **carbonated** drinks, eating too fast, or talking while eating, is to **belch**.  
expel \_\_\_\_\_ excessive \_\_\_\_\_ gas \_\_\_\_\_ carbonated \_\_\_\_\_ belch \_\_\_\_\_
12. **Bloating**, which is the **buildup** of gas in the stomach or intestines, causes the **abdomen** to **swell** and **increase** in size.  
bloating \_\_\_\_\_ buildup \_\_\_\_\_ abdomen \_\_\_\_\_ swell \_\_\_\_\_ increase \_\_\_\_\_
13. Patients with Crohn's disease and **ulcerative** colitis, both of which are **inflammatory** bowel diseases, can suffer **severe** abdominal pain and **bouts** of **watery** or bloody stool.  
ulcerative \_\_\_\_\_ inflammatory \_\_\_\_\_ severe \_\_\_\_\_ bouts \_\_\_\_\_ watery \_\_\_\_\_
14. Patient's with celiac disease are not able to **tolerate gluten**, which is found in foods such as pizza, breads, cookies, and much more and that can **damage** the small **intestine**.  
tolerate \_\_\_\_\_ gluten \_\_\_\_\_ damage \_\_\_\_\_ intestine \_\_\_\_\_
15. **Fecal impaction**, which is the result of **chronic** constipation, results in fecal matter being **manually** removed.  
fecal \_\_\_\_\_ impaction \_\_\_\_\_ chronic \_\_\_\_\_ manually \_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### *Typical Medical Conditions and Patient Complaints*

The sentences below contain vocabulary that describes and explains typical medical conditions, diseases, symptoms, and patient complaints that a pharmacist encounters. Read the sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv. Look up words you do not know in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

- In addition to **heartburn**, people with GERD can also experience chest pain, especially at night and when they lie down, and experience **dysphagia** and **regurgitation** of food and **liquids**.  
heartburn \_\_\_\_\_ dysphagia \_\_\_\_\_ regurgitation \_\_\_\_\_ liquids \_\_\_\_\_
- Pain in the **epigastric area**, or the upper middle part of the abdomen, may **indicate** a problem with the stomach, the gallbladder, the **upper** small intestine, or the pancreas.  
epigastric \_\_\_\_\_ area \_\_\_\_\_ indicate \_\_\_\_\_ upper \_\_\_\_\_
- The **burning** pain experienced by patients with peptic **ulcers** is caused when stomach **acid** comes in contact with the **ulcerated** area.  
burning \_\_\_\_\_ ulcers \_\_\_\_\_ acid \_\_\_\_\_ ulcerated \_\_\_\_\_
- Eating a high-fiber diet and drinking plenty of **fluids** can help **prevent** diverticulitis **attacks** because the **fiber** and water will help to **soften waste** and prevent constipation.  
fluids \_\_\_\_\_ prevent \_\_\_\_\_ attacks \_\_\_\_\_ fiber \_\_\_\_\_ soften \_\_\_\_\_ waste \_\_\_\_\_
- Hemorrhoids, which are **inflamed** veins in the rectum and **anus**, can occur as a result of **straining** during a bowel movement and can **bleed** and cause **itchiness** and irritation.  
inflamed \_\_\_\_\_ anus \_\_\_\_\_ straining \_\_\_\_\_ bleed \_\_\_\_\_ itchiness \_\_\_\_\_
- Large hiatal hernias can cause **belching**, stomach acid to back up into the esophagus, chest pain, and **difficulty swallowing**, and moreso while **straining**, lying down, or lifting heavy objects.  
belching \_\_\_\_\_ difficulty \_\_\_\_\_ swallowing \_\_\_\_\_ straining \_\_\_\_\_
- Patients with ulcerative colitis can experience a **range** of symptoms that include **rectal bleeding**, the inability to move their **bowels** despite the **urge** to do so, abdominal **cramping**, bloody diarrhea, weight loss, and even night sweats.  
range \_\_\_\_\_ rectal \_\_\_\_\_ bleeding \_\_\_\_\_ bowels \_\_\_\_\_ urge \_\_\_\_\_ cramping \_\_\_\_\_
- In some patients, **gastroesophageal** reflux disease can cause **esophagitis**, which is **inflammation** of the **esophagus**; whereas in other patients, GERD may affect the throat and larynx and cause **hoarseness**, coughing, and a sore throat.  
gastroesophageal \_\_\_\_\_ esophagitis \_\_\_\_\_ inflammation \_\_\_\_\_ esophagus \_\_\_\_\_ hoarseness \_\_\_\_\_
- Irritable bowel syndrome is a **chronic** condition whose symptoms vary from person to person but can be **disabling**, including **bouts** of both diarrhea and constipation, a feeling of being **bloated**, abdominal cramping, **flatulence**, and **mucus** in the stool.  
chronic \_\_\_\_\_ disabling \_\_\_\_\_ bouts \_\_\_\_\_ bloated \_\_\_\_\_ flatulence \_\_\_\_\_ mucus \_\_\_\_\_
- Indigestion** is a **feeling of discomfort** in the upper abdomen characterized by **various** symptoms, including bloating, belching, nausea, and a **burning** sensation.  
indigestion \_\_\_\_\_ feeling \_\_\_\_\_ discomfort \_\_\_\_\_ various \_\_\_\_\_ burning \_\_\_\_\_
- Factors such as age, a diet **low** in fiber, **living a sedentary** life, **inadequate** fluid **intake**, and pregnancy can **contribute** to constipation.  
low \_\_\_\_\_ living \_\_\_\_\_ sedentary \_\_\_\_\_ inadequate \_\_\_\_\_ intake \_\_\_\_\_ contribute \_\_\_\_\_
- A person with **gastroenteritis**, also called stomach **flu** because it is caused by a **viral** infection in the **lining** of the stomach, may experience **vomiting**, nausea, diarrhea, and indigestion.  
gastroenteritis \_\_\_\_\_ flu \_\_\_\_\_ viral \_\_\_\_\_ lining \_\_\_\_\_ vomiting \_\_\_\_\_

13. **Gastritis** is inflammation of the stomach caused by **bacterium** and can cause nausea, **bloating**, belching, and a burning **sensation** in the upper abdomen.  
gastritis \_\_\_\_\_ bacterium \_\_\_\_\_ bloating \_\_\_\_\_ sensation \_\_\_\_\_
14. People who have a **Schatzki's ring**, also known as a lower **esophageal** ring because **abnormal** tissue forms where the lower esophagus meets the stomach, will experience difficulty **swallowing** and pain under the **sternum**, also known as the breastbone.  
Schatzki's ring \_\_\_\_\_ esophageal \_\_\_\_\_ abnormal \_\_\_\_\_ swallowing \_\_\_\_\_ sternum \_\_\_\_\_
15. Constipation, diarrhea, **rectal** bleeding, **blood** in the stool, abdominal **pain** during a bowel movement, and **weight loss** are some symptoms associated with **colon** cancer.  
rectal \_\_\_\_\_ blood \_\_\_\_\_ pain \_\_\_\_\_ weight loss \_\_\_\_\_ colon \_\_\_\_\_
16. **Fecal** incontinence can affect **diabetics**, women after giving **birth**, patient's with Alzheimer's disease, and some patients who have become **physically disabled**.  
fecal \_\_\_\_\_ diabetics \_\_\_\_\_ birth \_\_\_\_\_ physically \_\_\_\_\_ disabled \_\_\_\_\_
17. **Eating** too much **fatty** or **spicy** food can lead to **indigestion**.  
eating \_\_\_\_\_ fatty \_\_\_\_\_ spicy \_\_\_\_\_ indigestion \_\_\_\_\_
18. A **gastric** ulcer, which is a peptic ulcer that can be found in the lining of the stomach, and a **duodenal** ulcer, also a peptic ulcer found in the **first** part of the small intestine, can be caused by pain **relievers**, the *Helicobacter pylori* bacteria, nicotine, **excessive** alcohol **consumption**, and stress.  
gastric \_\_\_\_\_ duodenal \_\_\_\_\_ first \_\_\_\_\_ relievers \_\_\_\_\_ excessive \_\_\_\_\_ consumption \_\_\_\_\_
19. Because people with celiac disease are not able to **absorb** certain **nutrients** from the foods they eat, they may have **fatty, oily** stool that is **grayish** in color, and they may experience weight loss.  
absorb \_\_\_\_\_ nutrients \_\_\_\_\_ fatty \_\_\_\_\_ oily \_\_\_\_\_ grayish \_\_\_\_\_
20. Crohn's disease, which begins with small **sores** on the **surface** of the intestine, and that can become large ulcers, can also affect a person's **appetite** and the ability to **digest** and **absorb** food.  
sores \_\_\_\_\_ surface \_\_\_\_\_ appetite \_\_\_\_\_ digest \_\_\_\_\_ absorb \_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## Medical Vocabulary Comprehension

Now that you have read sentences 1 through 20 describing language regarding the abdomen and gastrointestinal system, assess your understanding by doing the exercises below.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the answer that correctly completes each sentence below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ **Diverticula** are:
  - a. bulging pouches in the digestive tract
  - b. peptic ulcer sores
  - c. bulging pouches that cause bloating
2. \_\_\_\_\_ **Dysphagia** means:
  - a. regurgitation
  - b. difficulty swallowing
  - c. backwash

3. \_\_\_\_\_ **Fecal impaction** is the result of:
  - a. diarrhea
  - b. loose stool
  - c. chronic constipation
4. \_\_\_\_\_ **GERD** can cause:
  - a. heartburn only
  - b. dysphagia, regurgitation, and heartburn
  - c. inflammation of the small intestine
5. \_\_\_\_\_ **Hemorrhoids** can be caused by:
  - a. belching
  - b. straining during a bowel movement
  - c. bloody stool
6. \_\_\_\_\_ A person with a **Schatzki's ring** may experience:
  - a. pain behind the breastbone and dysphagia
  - b. weight loss
  - c. belching and bloating
7. \_\_\_\_\_ People with **celiac disease**:
  - a. can tolerate gluten
  - b. are able to eat food such as pizza and bread
  - c. cannot tolerate gluten
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Symptoms found in **ulcerative colitis** include:
  - a. rectal bleeding, hemorrhoids, and weight gain
  - b. rectal bleeding, abdominal cramping, weight loss, and the inability to have a bowel movement
  - c. belching, weight loss, and indigestion
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Factors such as a sedentary lifestyle and a low-fiber diet can contribute to:
  - a. hemorrhoids
  - b. constipation
  - c. GERD
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Another term for **gastroenteritis** is:
  - a. stomach flu
  - b. abdominal cramps
  - c. indigestion
11. \_\_\_\_\_ An example of a **peptic ulcer** includes:
  - a. a gastric ulcer only
  - b. a duodenal ulcer only
  - c. a gastric ulcer and a duodenal ulcer
12. \_\_\_\_\_ Crohn's disease can affect a person's:
  - a. indigestion
  - b. hiatal hernia
  - c. appetite and ability to digest and absorb food
13. \_\_\_\_\_ Fatty and spicy foods can lead to:
  - a. indigestion
  - b. gastric ulcers
  - c. bouts of constipation and diarrhea

14. \_\_\_\_ **Irritable bowel syndrome** symptoms include:
- bouts of diarrhea and constipation only
  - feeling bloated, abdominal cramping, and bouts of diarrhea and constipation
  - belching, nausea, and a burning sensation
15. \_\_\_\_ Symptoms associated with **colon cancer** include:
- rectal bleeding and hemorrhoids
  - rectal bleeding, blood in the stool, and abdominal pain during a bowel movement
  - constipation and diarrhea only

### ***True/False Questions***

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

- \_\_\_\_ Heartburn can be characterized as a burning sensation behind the sternum.
- \_\_\_\_ Peptic ulcers are open sores in the lining of the stomach or esophagus.
- \_\_\_\_ Barrett's esophagus is a condition that can lead to colon cancer.
- \_\_\_\_ Pain in the epigastric area may indicate a problem with the stomach, gallbladder, the upper intestines, or the pancreas.
- \_\_\_\_ Esophagitis is inflammation of the esophagus.
- \_\_\_\_ Gastritis is caused by a viral infection in the lining of the stomach.
- \_\_\_\_ The word "indigestible" is a noun.
- \_\_\_\_ Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis are inflammatory bowel diseases.
- \_\_\_\_ One way to expel excessive gas from the stomach is to belch.
- \_\_\_\_ Bloating, which is the reduction of gas in the stomach or intestines, causes the abdomen to decrease in size.

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### ***Writing Exercise***

An important part of communication is the ability to write about what you read, to write correctly, and to spell correctly. In the exercises below, write your understanding of the meaning of the bolded words.

- Describe in writing what **gastroesophageal reflux disease** is.

---



---



---



---

- Describe in writing what **constipation** and **fecal impaction** are.

---



---



---



---

- Describe in writing what **bloating** and **belching** are.

---



---



---



---

4. Describe in writing what **celiac disease**, **ulcerative colitis**, and **irritable bowel syndrome** are.

---



---



---



---

5. Describe in writing what **gastritis**, **gastroenteritis**, and **indigestion** are.

---



---



---



---

Check what you have written with acceptable answers that appear in the Answer Key online.

## LISTENING AND PRONUNCIATION

The ability to listen and understand what is being said and heard, and the ability to pronounce words clearly, is extremely important. A word misheard and a word mispronounced will lead to poor communication and can seriously put both the pharmacist and patient in danger. Therefore, it is very important that one hear clearly what another person has said, and that one speak clearly with correct pronunciation.

Listen carefully to the pharmacy-related words presented in the audio files found in Chapter 7 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), and then pronounce them as accurately as you can. Listen and then repeat. You will listen to each word once and then you will repeat it. You will do this twice for each word. Listening and pronunciation practice will increase your listening and speaking confidence. Many languages do not produce or emphasize certain sounds produced and emphasized in English, so pay careful attention to the pronunciation of each word.



### Pronunciation Exercise

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 7 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)). Listen and repeat the words. Then say the words aloud for additional practice.

1. abdominal	ãb-dõm'ə-nə]
2. absorption	əb-sôrp'shə]
3. anus	ã'nəs
4. appendix	ə-pĕn'dĭks
5. backwash	bãk'wôsh'
6. belch	bĕlch
7. bellyache	bĕl'ĕ-āk'
8. belly button	bĕl'ĕ bŭt'n
9. bile	bĭl
10. bloating	blōtng
11. bout	bout
12. bowel	bou'ə]
13. bowel movement	bou'ə] mōv'mənt
14. burp	bŭrp
15. colon	kō'lən
16. colostomy	kə-lōs'tə-mĕ
17. constipation	kōn'stə-pā'shə]
18. contractions	kən-trãk'shəns



19. cramping	krãmp ng
20. diaphragm	dī'ə-frãm'
21. diarrhea	dī'ə-rē'ə
22. digestion	dī-jēs'chən
23. diverticula	dī'vûr-tĭk'yə-lə
24. diverticulitis	dī'vûr-tĭk'yə-lĭ'tĭs
25. diverticulosis	dī'vûr-tĭk'yə-lĭ'ō'sĭs
26. dysphagia	dĭs-fā'jē-ə
27. epigastric	ēp'ĭ-gās trĭk
28. erode	ĭ-rōd'
29. esophageal	ĭ-sōf'ə jē'əl
30. esophagus	ĭ-sōf'ə-gəs
31. expel	ĭk-spĕl'
32. feces	fē'sēz
33. flare	flâr
34. flatulence	flãch'ə-ləns
35. gallbladder	gôl blãd'ər
36. gas	gās
37. gastric ulcer	gã-strĭ'tĭs ũl'sər
38. gastritis	gã-strĭ'tĭs
39. gastroenteritis	gãs'trō-ĕn'tə-rĭ'tĭs
40. heartburn	hãrt'bûrn'
41. hemorrhoid	hēm'ə-roid'
42. hiatal hernia	hĭ-ã'tãl hûr'nē-ə
43. incontinence	ĭn-kōn'tə-nəns
44. indigestion	ĭn'dĭ-jēs'chən
45. intestinal tract	ĭn-tĕs'tə-nəl trãkt
46. lower esophageal sphincter	lō'ər ĭ-sōf'ə jē'əl sfĭngk'tər
47. moderate	mōd'ə-rãt
48. navel	nã'vəl
49. obstruction	əb-strŭk'shən
50. occult blood	ə-kŭlt blŭd
51. pancreas	pãng'krē-əs
52. peptic ulcer	pĕp'tĭk ũl'sər
53. pouch	pouch
54. rectum	rĕk'təm
55. reflux	rĕ'flŭks
56. regurgitation	rĕ-ger'ji-tã'-shŭn
57. Schatzki's ring	shãt'skez rĭng
58. stomach acid	stŭm'ək ăs'ĭd
59. stool	stōl
60. strain	strãn
61. swallow	swŏl'ŏ
62. tender	tĕn'dər

Which words are easy to pronounce? Which are difficult to pronounce? Use the space below to write in the words that you find difficult to pronounce. These are words you should practice saying often.

---



---



---

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 7 on thePoint ([thePoint.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.com/diaz-gilbert)) as many times as you need to increase your pronunciation ability of the difficult words. Pronounce these words with a friend or a colleague who speaks English.

### English Sounds That Are Difficult for Speakers of Other Languages to Pronounce

#### Spanish

In Spanish, there is no English “v” sound, but the “v” consonant in Spanish is pronounced like the English “b.” The vowel “i” is pronounced like a long “e.” Pay careful attention to the “v” sound in English when pronouncing words that begin with “v.” Also pay careful attention to English words that begin with “s;” do not use the Spanish “es” sound when pronouncing English words that begin with “s.”

For example, in English,

swallow is not pronounced eswallow

#### Vietnamese

In Vietnamese, the “t” consonant is pronounced “s,” but in English the “t” is pronounced “t” and “s” is pronounced “s.” Be careful with English words that begin with “t.” In Vietnamese, the “b” consonant is pronounced “p,” but in English “p” is pronounced “p” and “b” is pronounced “b.”

In Vietnamese, words do not end in “b,” “ch,” “f,” “d,” “j,” “l,” “p,” “r,” “s,” “sh,” “v,” and “z.” In English, words end in these letters. Pay special attention to pronouncing these English sounds. In Vietnamese, there is no “dzh” or “zh” sound, so English words like “judge” (dzh) and “rupture” (zh) will be hard for Vietnamese speakers to pronounce.

For example, in English,

bowel movement is not pronounced pow momen

esophagus is not pronounced ehfaguh

tenderness is not pronounced tenerneh

#### Gujarati

In Gujarati, “v” is pronounced “w,” “f” is pronounced “p,” “p” is pronounced “f,” and “z” is pronounced “j.” Short “i” is pronounced long “e,” “x” is pronounced “ch,” and “th” is pronounced “s.” In English, “v” is pronounced “v,” “f” is pronounced “f,” “z” is pronounced “z” or “s,” “j” is pronounced “j,” and “x” is pronounced “x.” Pay careful attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

feces is not pronounced peces

peptic is not pronounced fepteek

(continued)

**Korean**

In Korean, the “v” consonant is pronounced “b” and the “f” consonant is pronounced “p.” In English, the “v” is pronounced “v,” the “f” is pronounced “f,” and the “p” is pronounced “p.” Pay special attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

febrile is not pronounced peprile  
wheezing is not pronounced veezing

**Chinese**

In Chinese, the “r” consonant is pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are not pronounced at all. Pay careful attention to English words that begin with “r” because the “r” is not pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are pronounced in English.

For example, in English,

diarrhea is not pronounced dialeeah  
cramp is not pronounced clamp

**Russian**

The “w” consonant is pronounced like a “v” and the “v” sound like a “w.” Pay careful attention to the English “th.” It is not pronounced “s.”

For example, in English,

swallow is not pronounced sallow

**DICTION****Listening/Spelling Exercise: Word and Word Pairs**

Listen to the words or word pairs on the audio files found in Chapter 7 on thePoint (thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert), and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_



### Listening/Spelling Exercise: Sentences

Listen to the sentences on the audio files found in Chapter 7 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diazgilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diazgilbert)), and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Now, check your sentences against the correct answers in the Answer Key online. If there are any new words that you do not know or that you spelled incorrectly, make a list of those words and study them for meaning and spelling.

## PHARMACIST/PATIENT DIALOGUES

The ability to orally communicate effectively with your professors, colleagues, and especially with patients is very important. As a pharmacist, you will be counseling patients; patients will come to you for advice. They will have questions about a condition and symptoms they may experience and will ask you to help treat the condition. Therefore, it is extremely important that you understand what they are saying and that you respond to them and their questions appropriately. Your patients will speak differently. For example, some may speak very quickly, others too low, and yet others may speak angrily. To help you improve your listening skills, listen to the following dialogues, or short conversations, between a pharmacist and a patient and between a pharmacy technician and a patient.



### Listening and Comprehension Exercises

#### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor is:
  - a. Chris Meloni, and the patient's pharmacist is Gary Lubin
  - b. Gary Lubin, and the patient's pharmacist is Chris Meloni
  - c. Chris Lubin, and the patients' pharmacist is Gary Meloni
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Amanda Adam
  - b. Adam Amanda
  - c. Amanda Adams
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient's medical condition is:
  - a. conjunctivitis
  - b. dysphagia
  - c. GERD
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient noticed she was:
  - a. having heartburn about 3 months ago
  - b. choking on her food about 3 months ago
  - c. having heartburn about 2 weeks ago
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient stated she:
  - a. eats spicy food
  - b. does not eat spicy food
  - c. eats spicy foods sometimes
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient took:
  - a. Mylanta, Maalox, and Tums for her GERD
  - b. Mylanta, Maalox, and Tums for heartburn
  - c. Mylanta, Maalox, and Tums to prevent choking
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient's husband took her to the:
  - a. emergency room about 2 weeks ago because she was choking and gagging on her food
  - b. emergency room about 3 months ago because she was choking and gagging on her food
  - c. doctor about 2 weeks ago because she was choking and gagging on her food
8. \_\_\_\_ The hospital referred the patient to:
  - a. a gastroenterologist
  - b. an endocrinologist
  - c. a gastrologist
9. \_\_\_\_ The doctor performed:
  - a. a colonoscopy 3 days ago and found an inflamed esophagus
  - b. an endoscopy 3 weeks ago and found a hiatal hernia
  - c. an endoscopy 3 days ago and found a hiatal hernia and an inflamed esophagus
10. \_\_\_\_ At the patient's request, the doctor prescribed:
  - a. Zantac because it's a generic drug and the patient refuses to buy brand-name drugs
  - b. ranitidine because it's a brand-name drug and the patient refuses to buy generic drugs
  - c. ranitidine because it's a generic drug and the patient refuses to buy a brand-name drug
11. \_\_\_\_ Since the endoscopy, the patient has been:
  - a. eating Jell-O and soup, has had a sore throat, and is starting to feel better
  - b. eating Jell-O, has had a sore throat, and is feeling worse
  - c. choking on food and has been having difficulty swallowing

12. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that the medication:
- reduces the amount of stomach acid and the inflammation in the esophagus
  - will decrease the size of her hiatal hernia
  - will stop her from choking and gagging
13. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to take:
- a capsule in the morning and a capsule in the evening with food
  - a teaspoon in the morning with food and a teaspoon in the evening without food
  - a teaspoon in the morning and a teaspoon in the evening with or without food
14. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that about:
- 2 weeks ago she was taking Tobramycin for her pink eye and that it hasn't cleared up
  - 1 week ago she was taking Tobramycin for her pink eye and that it has cleared up
  - 2 weeks ago she was taking Tobramycin for her pink eye and that it has cleared up
15. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist told the patient that:
- although unlikely, ranitidine may cause dizziness, constipation, and headaches
  - although unlikely, ranitidine may cause swelling, difficulty breathing, and a rash
  - ranitidine may cause swelling, dizziness, and headaches
16. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that when she was a:
- college student she almost died during a CAT scan because she's allergic to Benadryl
  - high school student she almost died during a CAT scan because she was allergic to iodine
  - college student she almost died during a CAT scan because she was allergic to iodine

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### ***Dialogue #2***

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
- Gerry Wade, and the pharmacist's name is Alex Hardy
  - Gary Hardy, and the pharmacist's name is Alex Wade
  - Alex Hardy, and the pharmacist's name is Gerry Wade
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor's name is:
- Dr. Fink, and he prescribed Asacol
  - Dr. Finko, and he prescribed albuterol
  - Dr. Finkel, and he prescribed Asacol

3. \_\_\_\_ The patient's medical condition is:
  - a. gastric ulcer
  - b. peptic ulcer
  - c. ulcerative colitis
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist he has:
  - a. abdominal swelling and diarrhea
  - b. diarrhea and rectal bleeding and is always going to the bathroom
  - c. diarrhea and rectal bleeding and sometimes can't go to the bathroom even though he feels he has to
5. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist explains to the patient that he has:
  - a. ulcerative colitis, which causes inflammation of the rectum and difficulty moving his bowels
  - b. ulcerative colitis, which causes inflammation of the colon and difficulty moving his bowels
  - c. ulcerative colitis, which causes inflammation of the intestine and diarrhea
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient:
  - a. has a history of ulcerative colitis
  - b. is experiencing ulcerative colitis for the first time
  - c. has had bouts of ulcerative colitis
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is:
  - a. December 12, 1961
  - b. December 2, 1961
  - c. December 1, 1961
8. \_\_\_\_ The patient is allergic to:
  - a. ampicillin
  - b. penicillin
  - c. Nizoral
9. \_\_\_\_ According to the patient's chart, the patient has had a problem with:
  - a. fungal infection of the toe that has not cleared up
  - b. jock itch, a fungal infection, in his groin area, arms, and legs, which has cleared up
  - c. jock itch, a fungal infection, which did not clear up
10. \_\_\_\_ For his fungal infection, the patient:
  - a. took Nizoral, which cleared it up about 3 weeks after he started taking it, and he is no longer taking it
  - b. took Nizatine, which cleared it up about 2 weeks after he started taking it, and he is still taking it
  - c. is still taking Nix because the fungal infection has not cleared up
11. \_\_\_\_ The doctor has prescribed the patient to take:
  - a. three Asacol tablets twice a day with food
  - b. two Asacol tablets three times a day, unchewed and uncrushed, with or without food
  - c. one crushed Asacol tablet a day with food
12. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist explains to the patient that the possible side effects of Asacol include:
  - a. flu-like symptoms, abdominal and back pain, and gas, but that if he experiences very bad stomach and abdominal pain, worsening bloody diarrhea or constipation, or a fever he should call the doctor
  - b. very bad stomach and abdominal pain, worsening bloody diarrhea or constipation, or a fever, but that if he experiences flu-like symptoms and abdominal and back pain, he should call the doctor
  - c. worsening diarrhea or constipation, but that if he experiences flu-like symptoms and gas, he should call the doctor

13. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
- a. it's possible to see part of or the whole tablet in his stool
  - b. Asacol will cure his ulcerative colitis
  - c. it's okay to have a beer once in a while
14. \_\_\_\_\_ If the patient misses a dose, the patient should:
- a. double up the next time he is scheduled to take his medicine
  - b. skip the dose
  - c. try to take it as soon as he remembers, but if he remembers right as he's coming to his next dose, he should skip the dose he forgot

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### **Dialogue #3**

Listen to Dialogue #3, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
- a. Lily Oliver, and the pharmacist's name is Chaz Soto
  - b. Lily Soto, and the pharmacist's name is Chaz Oliver
  - c. Chaz Oliver, and the pharmacist's name is Lily Soto
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist is reviewing the patient's:
- a. chart
  - b. chart and reviewing her new prescription
  - c. complaints
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's states the new prescription is for her:
- a. high blood pressure
  - b. pregnancy
  - c. constipation
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist:
- a. she feels bloated, her pants don't fit, and she's pregnant
  - b. she feels bloated, her pants don't fit, and she feels like she's pregnant
  - c. she's tearing her hair out because she's pregnant
5. \_\_\_\_\_ According to the chart, the patient was in the clinic:
- a. 4 weeks ago for her blood pressure medicine refill
  - b. 4 weeks ago for a prescription for constipation
  - c. 4 weeks ago because she was bloated



6. \_\_\_\_ The patient states she can't take it any more because:
  - a. she has diarrhea
  - b. she tore out her hair
  - c. she has not had a bowel movement
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient is taking:
  - a. Dulcolax for her high blood pressure
  - b. Telmisartan for her high blood pressure
  - c. Temazepam for anxiety
8. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that:
  - a. high blood pressure runs in her family
  - b. high blood pressure does not run in her family, but that constipation does
  - c. high blood pressure and constipation run in her family
9. \_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor:
  - a. has prescribed Dulcolax pills for her constipation
  - b. has prescribed Dulcolax capsules for her constipation
  - c. has prescribed Dulcolax suppositories for her constipation
10. \_\_\_\_ The patient has:
  - a. never used suppositories
  - b. used suppositories in the past to treat constipation
  - c. used suppositories in the past to treat hemorrhoids
11. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist instructs the patient:
  - a. not to have a bowel movement 10 to 15 minutes before she inserts the suppository
  - b. to have a bowel movement 10 to 15 minutes after she inserts the suppository
  - c. not to have a bowel movement 5 to 10 minutes before she inserts the suppository
12. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to:
  - a. insert one suppository in the morning before breakfast or bedtime
  - b. insert one suppository in the morning before breakfast and one before bedtime
  - c. insert one suppository at bedtime only
13. \_\_\_\_ The patient needs to call the doctor:
  - a. if she is no longer experiencing constipation
  - b. if she has a bowel movement immediately
  - c. immediately if she does not have a bowel movement after taking the suppositories
14. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist explains to the patient that:
  - a. she cannot continue taking her blood pressure medication
  - b. that she can continue taking her blood pressure medication after she is no longer constipated
  - c. she can continue taking her blood pressure medication
15. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient she may experience:
  - a. irritation in her rectal area and watery diarrhea
  - b. irritation in her rectal area and bloody diarrhea
  - c. irritation in her rectal area, cramping, and diarrhea

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

Idioms and idiomatic expressions are made up of a group of words that have a different meaning from the original meaning of each individual word. Native speakers of the English language use such expressions comfortably and naturally. However, individuals who are new speakers of English or who have studied English for many years may still not be able to use idioms and idiomatic expressions as comfortably or naturally as native speakers. As pharmacy students, pharmacy technicians, and practicing pharmacists, you will hear many different idiomatic expressions. Some of you will understand and know how to use these expressions correctly. At times, however, you may not understand what your professors, colleagues, and patients are saying. This of course can lead to miscommunication, embarrassment, and possibly dangerous mistakes.

To help you improve your knowledge of idioms and idiomatic expressions, carefully read the following idiomatic expressions that contain the word stomach.

### Idiomatic expressions using “stomach”

1. ***hard to stomach*** means that the person dislikes something or someone else very much.  
For example: I really ***can't stomach*** my new boss.
2. ***to have butterflies in one's stomach*** means to have anxiety and feelings of fear.  
For example: The patient ***had butterflies in her stomach*** as she waited for the doctor to give her the results of her endoscopy.
3. ***to be difficult to stomach*** means to be unable to accept someone or endure something that is unpleasant or wrong.  
For example: Sometimes it's ***difficult to stomach*** patients who demand that their prescription be filled immediately and who think they are the only patients waiting for their prescriptions.
4. ***turn one's stomach*** means to disgust someone or to make one feel sick.  
For example: The film of the war on the TV nightly news really ***turns my stomach***.
5. ***eyes are bigger than one's stomach*** means to eat more food than one can eat.  
For example: My ***eyes were bigger than my stomach*** when I put so much food on my plate.
6. ***not have the stomach for*** means the person has no desire for something he or she feels is wrong or unpleasant.  
For example: She ***doesn't have the stomach*** to listen to her roommate talk about her boyfriend problems.
7. ***can't stomach*** means to dislike someone or something very much.  
For example: Most patients ***can't stomach*** the increasing cost of prescription medicines.

### Mini Dialogues Listening Exercise

How much did you understand? Listen to the following mini dialogues on the audio files found in Chapter 7 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), read the questions below, and then choose the correct answer.



#### Mini Dialogue #1

1. \_\_\_\_\_ ***Butterflies in my stomach*** means:
  - a. to be happy
  - b. to be anxious
  - c. to be disgusted

**Mini Dialogue #2**

2. \_\_\_\_\_ *Can't stomach them* means:
- can't digest them
  - can't accept them
  - to like them very much

**Mini Dialogue #3**

3. \_\_\_\_\_ *Don't have the stomach* for means:
- to feel nauseous
  - to have no desire
  - to have an upset stomach

**Mini Dialogue #4**

4. \_\_\_\_\_ *Turned my stomach* means:
- to turn the intestines
  - to disgust
  - to make someone scream

**Mini Dialogue #5**

5. \_\_\_\_\_ *Difficult to stomach* means:
- unable to accept
  - unable to eat
  - unable to digest

**Mini Dialogue #6**

6. \_\_\_\_\_ *Hard to stomach* means:
- to accept behavior that is wrong
  - difficult to digest
  - unable to accept

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

---

**POST-ASSESSMENT**

---

**True/False Questions**

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

- \_\_\_\_\_ The idiom **to turn one's stomach** means to have indigestion.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Esophageal is an adjective and esophagus is a noun.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Another word for difficulty swallowing is regurgitation.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Tender is an adjective form of tenderness.
- \_\_\_\_\_ If a person's **eyes are bigger than his or her stomach**, the person is still very hungry and needs to eat more.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Spicy foods can help treat indigestion.

7. \_\_\_\_ Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis are both inflammatory bowel diseases.
8. \_\_\_\_ Regurgitant and regurgitative are adjective forms.
9. \_\_\_\_ An appendix clogged with pus will not burst.
10. \_\_\_\_ Peptic ulcers are caused by viral infection.
11. \_\_\_\_ If a person **has butterflies in the stomach**, they are very hungry.
12. \_\_\_\_ Fiber and water can help to soften waste and prevent constipation.
13. \_\_\_\_ People with celiac disease are able to eat gluten.
14. \_\_\_\_ Patients with GERD can experience dysphagia and dyspnea.
15. \_\_\_\_ Hemorrhoids are inflamed veins in the rectum and anus.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **digestion** is:
  - a. digestible
  - b. digestive
  - c. digestible and digestive
2. \_\_\_\_ If a person is constipated, he or she has:
  - a. watery stool
  - b. bloody stool
  - c. difficulty having a bowel movement
3. \_\_\_\_ If a person **can't stomach someone or something**, the person:
  - a. likes another person or thing
  - b. dislikes another person or thing
  - c. has a feeling of anxiety
4. \_\_\_\_ Stress and diet can trigger:
  - a. irritable bowel syndrome
  - b. gas
  - c. belching
5. \_\_\_\_ In this sentence, "Fecal impaction is the result of chronic constipation," the word **fecal** is:
  - a. an adjective and a noun
  - b. an adjective
  - c. a noun
6. \_\_\_\_ Dulcolax is used to treat:
  - a. constipation
  - b. blood pressure
  - c. GERD
7. \_\_\_\_ Bloating is the buildup of:
  - a. mucus
  - b. sputum
  - c. gas
8. \_\_\_\_ If a person is **difficult to stomach**, he or she:
  - a. has dysphagia
  - b. is nervous
  - c. is hard for others to accept

9. \_\_\_\_ Another term for lower esophageal ring is:
- Schatzki's ring
  - peptic ring
  - diverticula
10. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "Rectal bleeding is associated with colon cancer," the word **rectal** is:
- an adjective
  - a verb
  - a noun
11. \_\_\_\_ The word **gastric** is:
- an adjective
  - a verb
  - a noun
12. \_\_\_\_ Another word for difficulty swallowing is:
- dysphagia
  - dyspnea
  - delirium
13. \_\_\_\_ A diet low in fiber and with inadequate fluid intake can lead to:
- belching
  - GERD
  - constipation
14. \_\_\_\_ Ranitidine is used to treat:
- GERD
  - ulcerative colitis
  - constipation
15. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "The patient complained he was bloated," the word **bloated** is:
- an adjective
  - a past tense verb
  - a noun

## Listening and Comprehension Exercises



### Dialogue #1

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient is embarrassed because she:
- forgot her prescription
  - is constipated
  - has hemorrhoids

2. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient:
  - a. she needs a prescription
  - b. she can get over-the-counter treatment
  - c. she needs to see her doctor
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient is allergic to:
  - a. birth control pills
  - b. milk
  - c. milk and onions
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient states she has been constipated for:
  - a. 3 days
  - b. about 3 months
  - c. about 3 weeks
5. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist recommends:
  - a. Sani-Supp glycerin suppositories to treat hemorrhoids
  - b. Sani-Supp glycerin suppositories that should be moistened with lukewarm water before use to treat her constipation
  - c. Preparation H glycerin suppositories to treat her hemorrhoids
6. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist also recommends:
  - a. Metamucil or Citrucel for her constipation
  - b. Citrucel only for her constipation
  - c. Preparation H for her constipation
7. \_\_\_\_ Metamucil and Citrucel are:
  - a. pills that must be chewed
  - b. fiber laxatives that increase the amount of water in the stool, and harden it
  - c. fiber laxatives that increase the amount of water in the stool, and soften it
8. \_\_\_\_ The suppositories:
  - a. can be used until the patient gets relief
  - b. should not be used for more than a week
  - c. should not be used for more than a month
9. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that she:
  - a. feels bloated
  - b. feels crampy
  - c. had abdominal pain
10. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist also recommends that the patient:
  - a. drink 4 to 6 glasses of water every day and eat fiber and roughage
  - b. drink 46 glasses of water daily
  - c. mix 4 to 6 glasses of water with fiber and drink them daily
11. \_\_\_\_ To treat her constipation and her hemorrhoids, the patient purchases:
  - a. Citrucel powder, Metamucil tablets, and Preparation H
  - b. Sani-Supp, Citrucel powder, Metamucil wafers, and Preparation H
  - c. Sani-Supp, Metamucil tablets, and Preparation H

### ***Dialogue #2***

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Samuel Torres, and the pharmacist's name is Erin Farrell
  - b. Samuel Farrell, and the pharmacist's name is Erin Torres
  - c. Erin Farrell, and the pharmacist's name is Samuel Torres
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's prescription will treat:
  - a. his gastric ulcer
  - b. his colitis
  - c. his peptic ulcer
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that he's been having a burning pain:
  - a. in his chest
  - b. around his belly button and breastbone
  - c. in his stomach
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The burning pain:
  - a. flares up during the day
  - b. comes and goes, but flares up during the night and he can't sleep
  - c. is persistent and flares up at night
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Before the patient saw:
  - a. Dr. B. J. Lewis, he was taking Pepto-Bismol, Mylanta, and Maalox
  - b. Dr. B. J. Lewis, he was taking Metamucil, Mylanta, and Maalox
  - c. Dr. B. J. Lewis, he was taking Pepto-Bismol, Mylanta, and Metamucil
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Other medications the patient is taking include:
  - a. Motrin and vitamins
  - b. Tylenol and vitamins
  - c. vitamins only
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient:
  - a. is allergic to penicillin
  - b. is allergic to all antibiotics
  - c. is not allergic to penicillin or any antibiotic
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor prescribed:
  - a. Prevacid, which will stop bacteria from growing and reduce stomach acid
  - b. Prevpac, which contains medicine to help block stomach acid and antibiotics to help stop bacteria from growing
  - c. Prevpac, which will block stomach acid and stop bleeding in the stomach
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist instructs the patient to:
  - a. take one tablet in the morning and one tablet in the evening for 14 days
  - b. take two tablets in the morning for 14 days
  - c. take a total of 14 tablets during 14 days

10. \_\_\_\_ The patient must take the tablets:
  - a. with food
  - b. before a meal
  - c. with water only
  
11. \_\_\_\_ Side effects of the medication include:
  - a. a headache and an abnormal taste in the mouth
  - b. dizziness and a tingling sensation in the tongue
  - c. bleeding in the stomach
  
12. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist advises the patient:
  - a. who does not smoke, not to smoke, not to drink excessively, and to avoid Motrin and Aleve
  - b. who is trying to quit smoking and drinks beer once in while, not to smoke because smoking can increase stomach acid, and not to drink excessively because alcohol can cause the stomach to bleed
  - c. that he should avoid Tylenol, and take Motrin or Aleve when he needs to

How did you do on the Post-Assessment in Chapter 7? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.



# The Musculoskeletal System

# 8

## PRE-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ **Rheumatoid arthritis** results from wear and tear on the joints.
2. \_\_\_\_ An accumulation of urate crystals causes **gout**, or inflammation of a joint, usually in the big toe.
3. \_\_\_\_ Another word for degenerative joint disease is **osteoporosis**.
4. \_\_\_\_ **Sjögren's syndrome** is a disorder of the immune system that affects the tendons.
5. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of arthritis is **arthritic**.
6. \_\_\_\_ A risk factor for developing **lupus**, a chronic inflammatory disease, is pregnancy.
7. \_\_\_\_ **Osteoporosis**, which means porous bones, causes bones to be strong and brittle.
8. \_\_\_\_ **Tendonitis**, which is inflammation of the tendon, affects only the wrist and elbow.
9. \_\_\_\_ **Bursitis**, which is inflammation of the fluid that lubricates joints and muscle tendons, can be caused by overuse, infection, arthritis, and gout.
10. \_\_\_\_ The noun form of **stiff** is stiffness and stiff.
11. \_\_\_\_ Osteomyelitis refers to infection of the bone.
12. \_\_\_\_ Symptoms of **Paget's disease**, which is a disease of the bone, includes bowlegs and an enlarged head size.
13. \_\_\_\_ People with **Marfan syndrome** have scoliosis, very loose and flexible joints, and a breast-bone that protrudes outward or is concave.
14. \_\_\_\_ **Scleroderma** is an arthritic condition and a connective tissue disease.
15. \_\_\_\_ The adjective forms of **deteriorate** are deteriorated and deteriorating.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ Over time, **arthritis** can lead to:
  - a. deformity of the joints
  - b. weak and brittle bones
  - c. bone infection
2. \_\_\_\_ A risk factor for developing **gout** is:
  - a. malnutrition
  - b. excessive urination
  - c. excess consumption of alcohol

3. \_\_\_\_\_ The disorder of the immune system that includes symptoms of dry eyes and dry mouth is:
  - a. scleroderma
  - b. Sjögren's syndrome
  - c. Marfan syndrome
4. \_\_\_\_\_ **Lupus** is a chronic autoimmune inflammatory disease that can affect the:
  - a. lungs, heart, skin, joints, kidneys, and blood cells
  - b. skin and joints only
  - c. skin only
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Digestive problems can occur in patients with:
  - a. localized scleroderma
  - b. systemic scleroderma
  - c. osteoarthritis
6. \_\_\_\_\_ **Fibromyalgia** is a chronic condition that affects the:
  - a. bone marrow
  - b. muscles
  - c. tendons
7. \_\_\_\_\_ A chronic form of inflammation of the spine is:
  - a. amyloidosis
  - b. ankylosing spondylitis
  - c. osteoarthritis
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The word **mobility** is:
  - a. a noun and a verb
  - b. a verb only
  - c. a noun only
9. \_\_\_\_\_ People with **osteoporosis** will experience:
  - a. sensitivity to sun
  - b. a rash on their face
  - c. fractures
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The expression "**I can feel it in my bones**" means:
  - a. you are having bone pain
  - b. you feel something will happen, even though you are not sure it will
  - c. you are very cold

How did you do? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

## MEDICAL VOCABULARY

---

A good understanding of vocabulary words in pharmacy is very important for communication with professors, fellow students, patients, and coworkers. Knowledge and understanding of vocabulary leads to successful communication and success as a pharmacy student, as a pharmacy technician, and as a practicing pharmacist. You may already know many of the vocabulary words in this chapter, but for words that are unfamiliar, pay careful attention to them and make every effort to know their correct spelling, meaning, and pronunciation. It is a good idea to keep a list of new words and to look up these new words in a bilingual dictionary or dictionary in your first language. A good command of pharmacy-related vocabulary and good pronunciation of vocabulary will help to prevent embarrassing mistakes and increase effective verbal communication skills.

## Musculoskeletal System Vocabulary

aching	flexibility	rheumatism
ankylosing spondylitis	fracture	scleroderma
arthritis	fusion	Sjögren's syndrome
autoimmune	gout	spine
bony lumps	immune	stiffness
brittle	joints	stooped posture
bursitis	knuckles	stress
carpal tunnel syndrome	ligaments	stretch
cartilage	lupus	subside
collagen	mobility	susceptible
connective tissue	nodes	synovitis
debilitating	osteoarthritis	temporomandibular joint
deformity	osteoporosis	tendonitis
degenerative	photosensitivity	urate crystals
erythrocyte	range of motion	vertebrae
sedimentation rate	relapse	wear and tear
fibromyalgia	remission	

## PARTS OF SPEECH

A good understanding of parts of speech, such as verbs, nouns, adjectives, and adverbs, is important for successful communication when speaking or writing. It is equally important to know the various forms of words and to use them appropriately.

## Word Forms

The table below lists the main forms of some terms that you will likely encounter in pharmacy practice. Review the table and then do the exercises that follow to assess your understanding.

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v) —Past Tense	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
ache; aching	to ache; ached	aching	achingly
arthritis; arthritic		arthritic	arthritically
brittleness	to brittle; brittled	brittle	brittly
collagen		collagenous; collagenic	
debilitation	to debilitate; debilitated	debilitating; debilitative	
deformity		deformed	
degeneration	to degenerate; degenerated	degenerative	
flexibility; flexibility	to flex; flexed	flexible	flexibly
fracture	to fracture; fractured		
fusion	to fuse; fused		
gout; goutiness		gouty	
immunization	to immunize; immunized	immune	

(continued)

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v) —Past Tense	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
joint	to join; joined	jointed	jointly
knuckle	to knuckle; knuckled		
ligament		ligamental; ligamentary; ligamentous	
mobility; mobilization	to mobilize; mobilized	mobile	
osteoarthritis		osteoarthritic	
osteoporosis		osteoporotic	
photosensitivity		photosensitive	
posture; posturer	to posture; postured	postural	
rheumatism		rheumatoid	rheumatoidally
spine		spinal	
stiffness; a stiff	to stiff; stiffed	stiff; stiffish	stiffly
stress	to stress; stressed	stressful	
stretchability	to stretch; stretched	stretchable	
susceptibility		susceptible	susceptibly
synovitis; synovium; synovia		synovial	

### Word Forms Exercise

Read the following sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv.

- Symptoms of **rheumatoid** arthritis include swelling and **deformity** in the **joints** of the hand and feet, loss of **motion** in the joints, and a loss of **strength** in the muscles attached to the joints.  
rheumatoid \_\_\_\_ deformity \_\_\_\_ joints \_\_\_\_ motion \_\_\_\_ strength \_\_\_\_
- Gouty arthritis**, also known as **gout**, is a form of arthritis that causes an **intolerable** hot, **tender**, and **swollen** sensation in the big toe.  
gouty \_\_\_\_ arthritis \_\_\_\_ gout \_\_\_\_ intolerable \_\_\_\_ tender \_\_\_\_ swollen \_\_\_\_
- Osteoarthritis**, also known as **degenerative** bone disease, is a **common** form of arthritis that results in the **breakdown** of joint **cartilage**.  
osteoarthritis \_\_\_\_ degenerative \_\_\_\_ common \_\_\_\_ breakdown \_\_\_\_ cartilage \_\_\_\_
- People with Sjögren's **syndrome**, an **autoimmune disorder**, will **experience** dry eyes and dry mouth.  
syndrome \_\_\_\_ autoimmune \_\_\_\_ disorder \_\_\_\_ experience \_\_\_\_
- People with **osteoporosis**, which causes bones to become **brittle** and weak, are likely to have bone loss, **fractures**, and a **stooped posture**.  
osteoporosis \_\_\_\_ brittle \_\_\_\_ fractures \_\_\_\_ stooped \_\_\_\_ posture \_\_\_\_
- Sensitivity** to sunlight is a **typical** symptom of **lupus**, a chronic inflammatory disease that develops when an individual's **immune** system **attacks** its organs and tissues.  
sensitivity \_\_\_\_ typical \_\_\_\_ lupus \_\_\_\_ immune \_\_\_\_ attacks \_\_\_\_

7. Ankylosing spondylitis is a form of **inflammatory** arthritis that causes **inflammation** of the joints between the **vertebrae** of the **spine** and of the joints between the spine and pelvis.  
inflammatory \_\_\_\_ inflammation \_\_\_\_ vertebrae \_\_\_\_ spine \_\_\_\_
8. **Scleroderma**, which means “**hard** skin,” is a **connective** tissue disease that leads to **hardening** of the skin as a result of inflammation and the **overproduction** of **collagen**, and can affect other organs in the body.  
scleroderma \_\_\_\_ hard \_\_\_\_ connective \_\_\_\_ hardening \_\_\_\_ overproduction \_\_\_\_ collagen \_\_\_\_
9. Pain throughout the body, fatigue, **interrupted** sleep, headaches, **facial** pain, irritable bowel syndrome, and sensitivity to **bright** lights, noise, **touch**, and odors are some of the signs and symptoms of **fibromyalgia**.  
interrupted \_\_\_\_ facial \_\_\_\_ bright \_\_\_\_ touch \_\_\_\_ fibromyalgia \_\_\_\_
10. It is typical for **arthritic** patients to experience severe fatigue during a **flare-up** and to have **stiff** and **achy** joints and muscles, especially after **periods** of **rest** and sleep.  
arthritic \_\_\_\_ flare-up \_\_\_\_ stiff \_\_\_\_ achy \_\_\_\_ periods \_\_\_\_ rest \_\_\_\_
11. In addition to experiencing **intense** joint pain and a red, swollen, and **tender** big toe, **sufferers** of gout may experience **similar** pain and **discomfort** in their hands, wrists, feet, and ankles.  
intense \_\_\_\_ tender \_\_\_\_ sufferers \_\_\_\_ similar \_\_\_\_ discomfort \_\_\_\_
12. Fingers affected by osteoarthritis can develop **nodes**, or **bony** knobs, and the **bones** along the spine affected by osteoarthritis can **deteriorate**, **leading** to neck pain and **stiffness**.  
nodes \_\_\_\_ bony \_\_\_\_ bones \_\_\_\_ deteriorate \_\_\_\_ lead \_\_\_\_ stiffness \_\_\_\_
13. In addition to dry eyes and dry mouth, symptoms of Sjögren’s syndrome include, but are not limited to, a dry **cough** without sputum, **difficulty** chewing and swallowing, fatigue, **dental cavities**, and swollen and **stiff** joints.  
cough \_\_\_\_ difficulty \_\_\_\_ dental \_\_\_\_ cavities \_\_\_\_ stiff \_\_\_\_
14. Inflammation in the joints in an **arthritic** person occurs when red blood cells attack the **synovial** membrane that **lines** the **movable** joints, which becomes **inflamed**.  
arthritic \_\_\_\_ synovial \_\_\_\_ lines \_\_\_\_ movable \_\_\_\_ inflamed \_\_\_\_
15. Medications and **lifestyle** changes such as weight **reduction**, limiting alcohol intake, which can prevent the **excretion** of uric acid, and drinking plenty of water to **dilute** uric acid in the body can help reduce **attacks** of gout.  
lifestyle \_\_\_\_ reduction \_\_\_\_ excretion \_\_\_\_ dilute \_\_\_\_ attacks \_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### ***Typical Medical Conditions and Patient Complaints***

The sentences below contain vocabulary that describes and explains typical medical conditions, diseases, symptoms, and patient complaints that a pharmacist encounters. Read the sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv. Look up words you do not know in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

- Before she was **diagnosed** with lupus, the patient had **complained** of a rash that developed across the cheeks and bridge of her nose, of pain and **stiffness** in her wrists, hips, and knees, of **swelling** in her fingers, and that she could not **tolerate** the sun.  
diagnosed \_\_\_\_ complained \_\_\_\_ stiffness \_\_\_\_ swelling \_\_\_\_ tolerate \_\_\_\_
- Sufferers** of ankylosing spondylitis, which can affect other parts of the body such as the joints between the ribs and the **spine**, the joints in the feet, knees, shoulders, and hips, and the

tendons and **ligaments**, may also develop **chronic stooping**, a stiff, **inflexible** spine, and bowel inflammation.

sufferers \_\_\_\_ spine \_\_\_\_ ligaments \_\_\_\_ chronic \_\_\_\_ stooping \_\_\_\_ inflexible \_\_\_\_

3. Scleroderma, which is caused when the body **attacks** itself and **produces** too much collagen, is classified into **localized** scleroderma, a disease that **affects** only the skin, and **systemic** scleroderma, which affects the skin, blood vessels, and **major** organs.

attacks \_\_\_\_ produces \_\_\_\_ localized \_\_\_\_ affects \_\_\_\_ systemic \_\_\_\_ major \_\_\_\_

4. People who **suffer** from fibromyalgia need to reduce **stress** and **avoid overexertion**, get enough sleep to help reduce the fatigue **typical** of fibromyalgia, **exercise**, learn relaxation techniques, and eat healthy foods.

suffer \_\_\_\_ stress \_\_\_\_ avoid \_\_\_\_ overexertion \_\_\_\_ typical \_\_\_\_ exercise \_\_\_\_

5. Arthritis, which comes in many **forms**, is a joint **disorder** accompanied by inflammation and ranges from **rheumatoid** arthritis, which is inflammation from an **overactive** immune system, to osteoarthritis, which is the **wear and tear** of cartilage.

forms \_\_\_\_ disorder \_\_\_\_ rheumatoid \_\_\_\_ overactive \_\_\_\_ wear and tear \_\_\_\_

6. **Aging**, heredity, and injury can cause **osteoarthritis**, also known as **degenerative** arthritis, which is the loss and **degeneration** of cartilage **caused** by inflammation.

aging \_\_\_\_ osteoarthritis \_\_\_\_ degenerative \_\_\_\_ degeneration \_\_\_\_ caused \_\_\_\_

7. Patients with Sjögren's syndrome, an **autoimmune** disease that affects the glands that produce **tears** and saliva and causes dry eye and dry mouth, can be treated with **artificial** tears and eye **lubricant** ointments, plenty of fluids, and **humidifying** air.

autoimmune \_\_\_\_ tears \_\_\_\_ artificial \_\_\_\_ lubricant \_\_\_\_ humidifying \_\_\_\_

8. Quitting smoking, **reducing** alcohol **consumption**, exercising, and eating foods with calcium and vitamin D can help treat the **loss** of bone and loss of bone **strength** caused by osteoporosis, which results in bone **fractures**.

reducing \_\_\_\_ consumption \_\_\_\_ loss \_\_\_\_ strength \_\_\_\_ fractures \_\_\_\_

9. Kidney stones and **decreased** kidney **function** can result from gout, a form of arthritis that is caused by very **high** levels of **uric acid** in the blood.

decreased \_\_\_\_ function \_\_\_\_ high \_\_\_\_ uric \_\_\_\_ acid \_\_\_\_

10. Ankylosing spondylitis, which is **chronic** inflammation of the **spine** and the **sacroiliac** joints that causes **stiffness**, pain, and the loss of **mobility** of the spine, can also **affect** other tissue and organs in the body.

chronic \_\_\_\_ spine \_\_\_\_ sacroiliac \_\_\_\_ stiffness \_\_\_\_ mobility \_\_\_\_ affect \_\_\_\_

11. People suffering from fibromyalgia, a chronic condition that is aggravated by weather **change**, **emotional** stress, and noise, are **sensitive** to various stimuli, feel pain, stiffness, and **tenderness** throughout their body and may experience sleep **disturbances**, anxiety, depression, fatigue, and irritable bowel syndrome.

change \_\_\_\_ emotional \_\_\_\_ sensitive \_\_\_\_ tenderness \_\_\_\_ disturbances \_\_\_\_

12. Some people with rheumatoid arthritis, which is an autoimmune disease that **causes** the joints to **inflare**, will experience **remission** for weeks, months, or years during which symptoms such as joint pain, fatigue, swelling, stiffness, and muscle and joint **aches disappear**.

causes \_\_\_\_ inflame \_\_\_\_ remission \_\_\_\_ aches \_\_\_\_ disappear \_\_\_\_

13. Scleroderma can be classified into **diffused** scleroderma, which causes **thickening** of the skin on the face, **extremities**, and in **major** organs such as the esophagus, lungs, kidneys, bowels, and heart, and **limited** scleroderma, which affects the skin and fingers.

diffused \_\_\_\_ thickening \_\_\_\_ extremities \_\_\_\_ major \_\_\_\_ limited \_\_\_\_

14. People with discoid lupus will have a **painless** and **itchless** skin rash on their face and scalp, whereas people with systemic lupus, which seriously affects other organs such as the brain, kidney, lungs, and heart, will **complain** of fatigue, a butterfly rash on their face, joint pain, muscle aches, **loss** of appetite, and **photosensitivity**.  
painless \_\_\_\_ itchless \_\_\_\_ complain \_\_\_\_ loss \_\_\_\_ photosensitivity \_\_\_\_
15. Because the **elderly** have **porous** bones, they are at a greater risk for developing osteoporosis and having hip and spine fractures, **severe** back pain, and loss of **height** or a **stooped, hunched-back** appearance.  
elderly \_\_\_\_ porous \_\_\_\_ severe \_\_\_\_ height \_\_\_\_ stooped \_\_\_\_ hunched-back \_\_\_\_
16. Osteoarthritis that is caused by **factors** other than aging and heredity, such as obesity, trauma, diabetes, and gout, is referred to as **secondary** osteoarthritis, whereas osteoarthritis that is caused by aging, heredity, and **repetitive use** of the joints over time is referred to as **primary** osteoarthritis.  
factors \_\_\_\_ secondary \_\_\_\_ repetitive \_\_\_\_ use \_\_\_\_ primary \_\_\_\_
17. A good way to **manage** rheumatoid arthritis is to exercise **regularly**, to **control weight**, and to **apply** heat to painful joints and muscles  
manage \_\_\_\_ regularly \_\_\_\_ control \_\_\_\_ weight \_\_\_\_ apply \_\_\_\_
18. It is important for people who smoke and who have ankylosing spondylitis to **quit** because **smoking** can affect the **mobility** of the rib cage and can **complicate** the **ability** to **breathe**.  
quit \_\_\_\_ smoking \_\_\_\_ mobility \_\_\_\_ complicate \_\_\_\_ ability \_\_\_\_ breathe \_\_\_\_
19. It is important for patients with scleroderma to keep their body **flexible** to improve **circulation** and **relieve** stiffness, to quit smoking, to **protect** themselves from **cold** temperatures, and to **avoid** foods that cause heartburn or gas.  
flexible \_\_\_\_ circulation \_\_\_\_ relieve \_\_\_\_ protect \_\_\_\_ cold \_\_\_\_ avoid \_\_\_\_
20. To manage fibromyalgia, patients **need** to get **enough** sleep to reduce fatigue, avoid **overexertion**, learn to **meditate**, exercise regularly, and **maintain** a healthy lifestyle.  
need \_\_\_\_ enough \_\_\_\_ overexertion \_\_\_\_ meditate \_\_\_\_ maintain \_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## Medical Vocabulary Comprehension

Now that you have read sentences 1 through 20 describing language regarding the musculoskeletal system, assess your understanding by doing the exercises below.

### *Multiple Choice Questions*

Choose the answer that correctly completes each sentence below.

1. \_\_\_\_ **Osteoarthritis** is also called:
  - a. osteoporosis
  - b. rheumatoid arthritis
  - c. degenerative bone disease
2. \_\_\_\_ **Scleroderma** is the result of:
  - a. inflammation and bony knobs
  - b. overproduction of collagen and inflammation
  - c. stooping

3. \_\_\_\_ Decreased kidney function can result from:
  - a. fibromyalgia
  - b. ankylosing spondylitis
  - c. gout
4. \_\_\_\_ **Osteoporosis** can cause:
  - a. fractures, severe back pain, loss of height, and a stooped appearance
  - b. an increase in mobility
  - c. chronic inflammation of the spine
5. \_\_\_\_ Another term for **scleroderma** is:
  - a. autoimmune disorder
  - b. hard skin
  - c. collagen
6. \_\_\_\_ A person experiencing dry eyes and a dry mouth should be tested for:
  - a. gout
  - b. lupus
  - c. Sjögren's syndrome
7. \_\_\_\_ Inflammation from an overactive immune system describes:
  - a. fibromyalgia
  - b. rheumatoid arthritis
  - c. osteoarthritis
8. \_\_\_\_ If a person is sensitive to sunlight, has joint pain, and a butterfly rash on the face, he or she may have:
  - a. gout
  - b. lupus
  - c. rheumatoid arthritis
9. \_\_\_\_ It is important that patients with ankylosing spondylitis not smoke because smoking:
  - a. will cause fatigue
  - b. will put stress on the spine
  - c. can affect the mobility of the rib cage and complicate the ability to breathe
10. \_\_\_\_ Symptoms of **rheumatoid arthritis** include:
  - a. swelling, deformity in the joints of the hands and feet, and loss of motion in the joints
  - b. a hot and swollen sensation in the hands
  - c. inflammation between the spine and pelvis
11. \_\_\_\_ **Gout** is:
  - a. a common form of arthritis that results in the breakdown of joint cartilage
  - b. a form of arthritis that causes an intolerable hot, tender, and swollen sensation in the big toe
  - c. a form of secondary osteoarthritis
12. \_\_\_\_ A person who is sensitive to bright lights, noise, touch, and odor and has pain throughout the body may have:
  - a. lupus
  - b. fibromyalgia
  - c. Sjögren's syndrome
13. \_\_\_\_ Difficulty swallowing and chewing, fatigue, dental cavities, and swollen and stiff joints are symptoms of:



- a. Sjögren's syndrome
  - b. primary osteoarthritis
  - c. osteoporosis
14. \_\_\_\_ Patients with **osteoporosis** have:
- a. brittle and strong bones
  - b. brittle and weak bones and may develop a stooped posture
  - c. poor cartilage
15. \_\_\_\_ Systemic lupus affects:
- a. the skin only
  - b. major organs only
  - c. the skin, blood vessels, and major organs

### *True/False Questions*

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ Hardening of the skin as a result of overproduction of collagen is called Sjögren's syndrome.
2. \_\_\_\_ A person who has ankylosing spondylitis suffers from degenerative bone loss.
3. \_\_\_\_ People who suffer from fibromyalgia should reduce stress, avoid overexertion, and learn relaxation techniques.
4. \_\_\_\_ Rheumatoid arthritis is inflammation from an overactive immune system, and osteoarthritis results from wear and tear of cartilage.
5. \_\_\_\_ People with Sjögren's syndrome should not be treated with artificial tears and eye lubricant ointments.
6. \_\_\_\_ The word "stressed" is both an adjective and a verb.
7. \_\_\_\_ Only reducing alcohol consumption and quitting smoking can help treat osteoporosis.
8. \_\_\_\_ The word "arthritic" is an adjective only.
9. \_\_\_\_ Patients with scleroderma need to keep their body flexible to improve circulation and relieve stiffness.
10. \_\_\_\_ If a patient with rheumatoid arthritis is in remission, the joint pain, swelling, and stiffness have returned.

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### *Writing Exercise*

An important part of communication is the ability to write about what you read, to write correctly, and to spell correctly. In the exercises below, write your understanding of the meaning of the bolded words.

1. Describe in writing what **rheumatoid arthritis** is.

---



---



---



---

2. Describe in writing what **osteoporosis** and **osteoarthritis** are.

---



---



---



---

3. Describe in writing what **scleroderma** and **lupus** are.

---



---



---



---

4. Describe in writing what **ankylosing spondylitis** is.

---



---



---



---

5. Describe in writing what **gout**, **fibromyalgia**, and **Sjögren's syndrome** are.

---



---



---



---

Check what you have written with acceptable answers that appear in the Answer Key online.

## LISTENING AND PRONUNCIATION

The ability to listen and understand what is being said and heard, and the ability to pronounce words clearly, is extremely important. A word misheard and a word mispronounced will lead to poor communication and can seriously put both the pharmacist and patient in danger. Therefore, it is very important that one hear clearly what another person has said, and that one speak clearly with correct pronunciation.

Listen carefully to the pharmacy-related words presented in the audio files found in Chapter 8 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), and then pronounce them as accurately as you can. Listen and then repeat. You will listen to each word once and then you will repeat it. You will do this twice for each word. Listening and pronunciation practice will increase your listening and speaking confidence. Many languages do not produce or emphasize certain sounds produced and emphasized in English, so pay careful attention to the pronunciation of each word.



### Pronunciation Exercise

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 8 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)). Listen and repeat the words. Then say the words aloud for additional practice.

- |                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. aching                 | ā'kɪŋg                   |
| 2. ankylosing spondylitis | əŋkəloʒɪŋ spɒn'dl-ɪ'tɪs  |
| 3. arthritis              | ər-thrɪ'tɪs              |
| 4. autoimmune             | ɔ'tɪm-ɪ-myoo'n'          |
| 5. bony lump              | bɒ'nē lʊmp               |
| 6. brittle                | brɪ'tl                   |
| 7. bursitis               | bɜr-sɪ'tɪs               |
| 8. carpal tunnel syndrome | kɑr'pəl tʊn'əl sɪn'drɒm' |
| 9. cartilage              | kɑr'tl-ɪj                |
| 10. collagen              | kɒl'ə-jən                |
| 11. connective tissue     | kə-nɛk'tɪv tɪʃh'oo       |

12. debilitation	dĭ-bĭl'ĭ-tā't'
13. deformity	dĭ-fôr'mĭ-tĕ
14. degenerative	dĭ-jĕn'ə-r-ə-tĭv
15. erythrocyte sedimentation rate	ĭ-rĭth'rə-sĭt' sĕd'ə-mən-tā'shən rāt
16. fibromyalgia	fĭ'brō-mĭ-āl'jĕ-ə
17. flexibility	flĕk'sə-bəl'ĭ-tĕ
18. fracture	frāk'chə'r
19. fuse	fyŭz
20. gout	gout
21. immune	ĭ-myŭn'
22. joint	joint
23. knuckles	nŭk'əls
24. ligament	lĭg'ə-mənt
25. lupus	lŭp'əs
26. mobility	mŏ-bĭl'ĭ-tĕ
27. node	nŏd
28. osteoarthritis	ŏs'tĕ-ŏ-är-thrĭ'tĭs
29. osteoporosis	ŏs'tĕ-ŏ-pə-rŏ'sĭs
30. photosensitivity	fŏ'tŏ-sĕn'sĭ-tĭv'ĭ-tĕ
31. range of motion	rānj' ŭv mŏ'shən
32. relapse	rĭ-lāps
33. remission	rĭ-mĭsh'ən
34. rheumatism	rŏ'mə-tĭz'əm
35. scleroderma	sklĭr'ə-dŭr'mə
36. Sjögren's syndrome	shŏ'grənz sĭn'drŏm'
37. spine	spĭn
38. stiff	stĭf
39. stooped posture	stŏpt pŏs'chə'r
40. stress	strĕs
41. stretch	strĕch
42. subside	səb-sĭd'
43. susceptible	sə-sĕp'tə-bəl
44. synovitis	sĭnə-vĭ'tĭs
45. temporomandibular joint	tĕm'pə-rŏ-mān-dĭb'yə-lər joint
46. tendonitis	tĕn'də-nĭ'tĭs
47. urate crystals	yŭr'āt' krĭs'təls
48. vertebrae	vŭr'tə brā
49. wear and tear	wâr ənd târ

Which words are easy to pronounce? Which are difficult to pronounce? Use the space below to write in the words that you find difficult to pronounce. These are words you should practice saying often.

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

Listen to the audiofiles found in Chapter 8 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) as many times as you need to increase your pronunciation ability of the difficult words. Pronounce these words with a friend or a colleague who speaks English.

### English Sounds That Are Difficult for Speakers of Other Languages to Pronounce

#### Spanish

In Spanish, there is no English “v” sound, but the “v” consonant in Spanish is pronounced like the English “b.” The vowel “i” is pronounced like a long “e.” Pay careful attention to the “v” sound in English when pronouncing words that begin with “v.” Also pay careful attention to English words that begin with “s;” do not use the Spanish “es” sound when pronouncing English words that begin with “s.”

For example, in English,

arthritis is not pronounced artreetees

#### Vietnamese

In Vietnamese, the “t” consonant is pronounced “s,” but in English the “t” is pronounced “t” and “s” is pronounced “s.” Be careful with English words that begin with “t.” In Vietnamese, the “b” consonant is pronounced “p,” but in English “p” is pronounced “p” and “b” is pronounced “b.”

In Vietnamese, words do not end in “b,” “ch,” “f,” “d,” “j,” “l,” “p,” “r,” “s,” “sh,” “v,” and “z.” In English, words end in these letters. Pay special attention to pronouncing these English sounds. In Vietnamese, there is no “dzh” or “zh” sound, so English words like “judge” (dzh) and “rupture” (zh) will be hard for Vietnamese speakers to pronounce.

For example, in English,

joint is not pronounced join

#### Gujarati

In Gujarati, “v” is pronounced “w,” “f” is pronounced “p,” “p” is pronounced “f,” and “z” is pronounced “j.” Short “i” is pronounced long “e,” “x” is pronounced “ch,” and “th” is pronounced “s.” In English, “v” is pronounced “v,” “f” is pronounced “f,” “z” is pronounced “z” or “s,” “j” is pronounced “j,” and “x” is pronounced “x.” Pay careful attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

flexibility is not pronounced plexeebeelettee

vertebrae is not pronounced wertebrae

#### Korean

In Korean, the “v” consonant is pronounced “b” and the “f” consonant is pronounced “p.” In English, the “v” is pronounced “v,” the “f” is pronounced “f,” and the “p” is pronounced “p.” Pay special attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

fibromyalgia is not pronounced pibromyalgia

*(continued)*

**Chinese**

In Chinese, the “r” consonant is pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are not pronounced at all. Pay careful attention to English words that begin with “r” because the “r” is not pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are pronounced in English.

For example, in English,

relapse is not pronounced relap

**Russian**

The “w” consonant is pronounced like a “v” and the “v” sounds like a “w.” Pay careful attention to the English “th.” It is not pronounced “s.”

For example, in English,

“wear and tear” is not pronounced “vear and tear”

**DICTION****Listening/Spelling Exercise: Word and Word Pairs**

Listen to the words or word pairs on the audio files found in Chapter 8 on thePoint (thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_

**Listening/Spelling Exercise: Sentences**

Listen to the sentences on the audio files found in Chapter 8 on thePoint (thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Now, check your sentences against the correct answers in the Answer Key online. If there are any new words that you do not know or that you spelled incorrectly, make a list of those words and study them for meaning and spelling.

## PHARMACIST/PATIENT DIALOGUES

---

The ability to orally communicate effectively with your professors, colleagues, and especially with patients is very important. As a pharmacist, you will be counseling patients; patients will come to you for advice. They will have questions about a condition and symptoms they may experience and will ask you to help treat the condition. Therefore, it is extremely important that you understand what they are saying and that you respond to them and their questions appropriately. Your patients will speak differently. For example, some may speak very quickly, others too low, and yet others may speak angrily. To help you improve your listening skills, listen to the following dialogues, or short conversations, between a pharmacist and a patient and between a pharmacy technician and a patient.

### Listening and Comprehension Exercises



#### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist's name is:
  - a. Walter Lipton, and the patient's name is Rachel Cronin
  - b. Rachel Lipton, and the patient's name is Walter Lipton
  - c. Walter Cronin, and the patient's name is Rachel Lipton

2. \_\_\_\_ The patient has been prescribed:
  - a. sulfasalazine for her body stiffness
  - b. sulfasalazine for her rheumatoid arthritis
  - c. sulfasalazine for her deformed joints
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor's name is:
  - a. Dr. Sal Mann
  - b. Dr. Solomon
  - c. Dr. Sullyman
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that her:
  - a. rheumatoid arthritis is getting better and that she does not have swelling or pain
  - b. rheumatoid arthritis pain and swelling is getting worse, that her fingers are curling and becoming deformed, and that only her knees are stiff
  - c. rheumatoid arthritis pain and swelling is getting worse, that her fingers are curling and becoming deformed, and that her knees, hips, and feet are stiff
5. \_\_\_\_ When the patient tells the pharmacist, "It's so painful, but I try to keep a stiff upper lip," **keep a stiff upper lip** means:
  - a. the patient's upper lip is also stiff
  - b. the patient is trying to be strong even though she is suffering with pain
  - c. because the patient is in pain, the upper lip is stiff
6. \_\_\_\_ Other medications that the patient tells the pharmacist have not worked are:
  - a. Aleve only
  - b. Aleve and prednisone
  - c. Aleve, prednisone, and Vioxx
7. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that sulfasalazine:
  - a. will help to reduce the joint pain and swelling and stiffness, and will help to slow down the progression of the disease and prevent further joint damage
  - b. will help to reduce the joint pain, swelling, and stiffness but will not help to slow down the progression of the disease and will not prevent further joint damage
  - c. will slow down the progression of the disease and prevent further joint damage, but will not reduce joint pain, swelling, and stiffness
8. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that the doctor wants her to take:
  - a. sulfasalazine with prednisone
  - b. sulfasalazine with prednisone and Aleve
  - c. sulfasalazine with Aleve
9. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist explains to the patients that sulfasalazine is a:
  - a. yellow, delayed-release 5-milligram tablet that should not be chewed, crushed, or broken because doing so can cause an upset stomach
  - b. gold, delayed-release 50-milligram tablet that can be chewed, crushed, or broken because doing so will not cause an upset stomach
  - c. gold, delayed-release 500-milligram tablet that should not be chewed, crushed, or broken because doing so can cause an upset stomach
10. \_\_\_\_ Side effects of sulfasalazine include:
  - a. nausea, headache, vomiting, ringing in the ears, painful urination, and difficulty breathing, and patients should avoid staying in the sun for extended periods and use sunscreen
  - b. nausea, headache, vomiting, ringing in the ears, painful urination, and difficulty breathing, but it is not necessary for patients to avoid the sun
  - c. headaches, vomiting, and sensitivity to sun only

11. \_\_\_\_\_ When the patient tells the pharmacist, “Sometimes I just want to yell at the top of my lungs, it hurts so bad,” **yell at the top of my lungs** means:
- the patient’s lungs are in a lot of pain
  - the patient wants to express how painful she’s feeling by yelling
  - the patient is able to yell loudly because she has good lungs
12. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that she should be feeling better:
- 1 to 3 weeks after taking the medication
  - 1 to 3 days after taking the medication
  - 1 to 3 months after taking the medication
13. \_\_\_\_\_ When the patient tells the pharmacist, “That long? I’ll be tearing my hair out,” **tearing my hair out** means:
- the patient will lose her hair
  - the patient will become anxious and worried
  - the patient will remain calm
14. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells that patient that along with taking the medications, she should:
- exercise
  - exercise, have physical therapy, and watch her weight
  - live a sedentary lifestyle
15. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that:
- sometimes she wraps hot pads around her fingers, puts hot pads on her stiff knees, feet, and muscles, and that Mr. Lipton massages her, and the pharmacist recommends that she also use cold packs
  - sometimes she puts ice packs on her fingers and stiff knees, feet, and muscles and the pharmacist also recommends that she try hot pads
  - she gets relieve only when Mr. Lipton massages her

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### **Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient’s name is:
- Steven Washington
  - Steven Brady
  - Brady Washington



2. \_\_\_\_ The patient first saw the pharmacist when he was diagnosed with:
  - a. COPD
  - b. ankylosing spondylitis
  - c. rheumatoid arthritis
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient has a prescription for:
  - a. Atrovent
  - b. Rheumatrex
  - c. Azulfidine
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient's has been recently diagnosed with:
  - a. chronic bronchitis
  - b. COPD and ankylosing spondylitis
  - c. ankylosing spondylitis
5. \_\_\_\_ Dr. Anderson prescribed:
  - a. Rheumatrex only
  - b. Rheumatrex, but methotrexate can also be used
  - c. Methotrexate only
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient told the pharmacist he was having:
  - a. soreness in his lower back, and pain and tenderness in his spine, rib cage, and shoulders
  - b. tenderness in his spine and rib cage
  - c. soreness in his rib cage and shoulders
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient told the pharmacist, "He gave me some blood tests and an MRI and then he told me I had AS. I really got "hit between the eyes." **Hit between the eyes** means the patient:
  - a. got punched between the eyes
  - b. was not surprised he was diagnosed with ankylosing spondylitis
  - c. received some surprising and shocking news
8. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that ankylosing spondylitis can cause:
  - a. the rib cage to stiffen and expand lung capacity and function
  - b. the rib cage to stiffen and restrict lung capacity and function
  - c. the rib cage to break and collapse the lungs
9. \_\_\_\_ The patient told the pharmacist that:
  - a. Dr. Anderson also told him he will have difficulty walking and standing and be hunched and stooped over when the joints begin to fuse
  - b. Dr. Anderson also told him he will have difficulty walking and standing, but will not be hunched and stooped over
  - c. Dr. Posner also told him he will have difficulty walking and standing, and be hunched and stooped over when the joints begin to fuse
10. \_\_\_\_ The patient is:
  - a. experiencing breathing difficulty
  - b. is not really experiencing breathing difficulty
  - c. experiencing severe breathing difficulty
11. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist recommends:
  - a. physical therapy because it will help relieve pain and give the patient physical strength and flexibility
  - b. that the patient go for walks on weekends only
  - c. that the patient avoid walking and exercising as the disease progresses and the patient develops a stooped posture

12. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
- Rheumatrex is not a strong medication that needs to be taken once a week so it doesn't need to be taken with food or water
  - Rheumatrex is a potent medication that should only be taken once a month
  - Rheumatrex is a potent medication that is taken once a week and should be taken with plenty of fluids
13. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to “keep an eye out” for possible side effects. **Keep an eye out** means:
- to look for, watch for, or notice side effects
  - to make sure the medication has no effect on the eyes
  - the eyes will definitely be affected by the medication
14. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that some of the side effects of Rheumatrex include:
- sensitivity to sun only
  - mouth sores and a dry cough
  - mouth sores, a persistent cough, and black stools
15. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient:
- has a new address, has no new allergies, and will only be taking Rheumatrex
  - has the same address, has no new allergies, and will not be taking any other medications in addition to Atrovent and Rheumatrex
  - has a new address, has no allergies, and will not be taking any other medications in addition to Atrovent and Rheumatrex

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

---

Idioms and idiomatic expressions are made up of a group of words that have a different meaning from the original meaning of each individual word. Native speakers of the English language use such expressions comfortably and naturally. However, individuals who are new speakers of English or who have studied English for many years may still not be able to use idioms and idiomatic expressions as comfortably or naturally as native speakers. As pharmacy students, pharmacy technicians, and practicing pharmacists, you will hear many different idiomatic expressions. Some of you will understand and know how to use these expressions correctly. At times, however, you may not understand what your professors, colleagues, and patients are saying. This of course can lead to miscommunication, embarrassment, and possibly dangerous mistakes.

To help you improve your knowledge of idioms and idiomatic expressions, carefully read the following idiomatic expressions that contain the body words joint, muscle, spine, stiff, bone and back.

### Idiomatic Expressions using “Joint,” “Muscle” and “Spine”

- to put one's nose out of joint** means to be upset about something.  
For example: Her **nose is out of joint** because we didn't invite her to the party.
- muscle one's way in** means to use one's strength to get where you want to go.  
For example: About 10 students tried **to muscle their way in** to the dance club right as the door was closing and not letting in any more customers.
- to send chills/shivers up/down one's spine** means to cause someone to feel frightened or excited.  
For example: News that she had received a full scholarship to pharmacy school just **sends shivers up her spine** with excitement.

## Idiomatic Expressions using “Stiff”

1. **to be bored stiff** means to be extremely bored.  
For example: The children **became bored stiff** after being home for 3 days because of the snowstorm.
2. **to be scared stiff** means to be extremely scared.  
For example: When the robber came in to the pharmacy with a gun demanding money, I thought I was going to drop dead from a heart attack. **I was scared stiff.**
3. **a stiff** means a dead body.  
For example: Some professions such as law enforcement and medicine sometimes use the slang term **stiff** to refer to a dead body.
4. **to be stiff-necked** means to be stubborn and to refuse to change or obey.  
For example: **She’s so stiff-necked** and refuses to follow the exercises the physical therapist has told her to do.
5. **to be stiffed** means someone is not paid the money they are expected to receive.  
For example: I’ll never lend my roommate money again; I loaned her twenty dollars and **she stiffed me.**

## Idiomatic Expressions using “Bone”

1. **a bone of contention** refers to something that people disagree about.  
For example: His salary became **a bone of contention** with his boss.
2. **to feel something in one’s bones** means to be sure about something even though you have no proof.  
For example: I just know that I’m going pass my licensing exam; I can **feel it in my bones.**
3. **to make no bones about something** means to not feel ashamed or nervous about saying or doing something.  
For example: The patient **made no bones about** how he felt about the pharmacist, who was rude and unpleasant.
4. **work one’s fingers to the bone** means to work very hard.  
For example: She really **works her fingers to the bone**, but she is rarely appreciated by her boss.
5. **to have a bone to pick** means to you want to talk to the person who is annoying you.  
For example: **I have a bone to pick** with you! Why did you change my schedule without telling me? I don’t want to work this weekend!

## Idiomatic Expressions using “Back”

1. **behind one’s back** means to say or do something secretly.  
For example: I don’t appreciate people who talk about me behind my back.
2. **to get off one’s back** means to tell someone to stop criticizing, nagging, or telling them what to do.  
For example: Stop telling me that we’re very busy. I’ll take care of the patients as soon as I can. Just **get off my back!**
3. **to break one’s back** means to work very hard on something.  
For example: **He broke his back** trying to finish his research paper on time.
4. **to give someone a pat on the back** means to congratulate and praise someone.  
For example: You’ve done nice work this month. Our sales are up. You definitely deserve **a pat on the back.**
5. **to stab someone in the back** means to betray and do something bad to a person who trusts you.  
For example: **She stabbed her roommate in the back** when she cheated with her roommate’s boyfriend.

## Mini Dialogues Listening Exercise

How much did you understand? Listen to the following mini dialogues on the audio files found in Chapter 8 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), read the questions below, and then choose the correct answer.



### Mini Dialogue #1

1. \_\_\_\_ Her ***nose is out of joint*** means:
  - a. she needs nose surgery
  - b. her nose is tender and sore
  - c. she is upset



### Mini Dialogue #2

2. \_\_\_\_ ***To get off your back*** means:
  - a. to stop working so hard
  - b. to stop criticizing
  - c. to work very hard



### Mini Dialogue #3

3. \_\_\_\_ ***Bored stiff*** means:
  - a. to be extremely bored
  - b. to become bored because of stiffness in the body
  - c. to be scared



### Mini Dialogue #4

4. \_\_\_\_ ***Muscle their way in*** means:
  - a. they couldn't get in because their muscles were too big
  - b. they tried to use their strength to get in
  - c. they didn't use their strength to get in



### Mini Dialogue #5

5. \_\_\_\_ ***Broke my back*** means:
  - a. writing the research paper caused him to break his back
  - b. receiving a C+ caused the back to break
  - c. he worked very hard to write the research paper



### Mini Dialogue #6

6. \_\_\_\_ ***Work your fingers to the bone*** means:
  - a. the person's bones are sore from working too hard
  - b. the person works very hard
  - c. the person's fingers and bones are inflamed from working too much

**Mini Dialogue #7**

7. \_\_\_\_\_ He *stiffed me* means:
- he paid back the money he borrowed
  - he will pay back the money he borrowed
  - he did not pay back the money he borrowed

**Mini Dialogue #8**

8. \_\_\_\_\_ *Send chills up my spine* means
- the person is very excited
  - the person's spine is cold
  - the person is feeling very cold

**Mini Dialogue #9**

9. \_\_\_\_\_ *Stabbed me in the back* means:
- I was betrayed
  - I have loyal friends
  - they stabbed me in the back with a knife

**Mini Dialogue #10**

10. \_\_\_\_\_ *A stiff-neck* means:
- the neck is unable to move
  - the person is unable to move
  - the person is stubborn and refuses to change

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## POST-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

- \_\_\_\_\_ The idiom **to break one's back** means to talk about someone secretly.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The noun and adjective form of the word **synovitis** is synovial.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Lupus means "hard skin."
- \_\_\_\_\_ Arthritic and arthritis are both nouns.
- \_\_\_\_\_ If a person receives a **pat on the back**, he or she receives praise and encouragement.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Osteoarthritis caused by aging and repetitive use of the joints over time is called primary osteoarthritis.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Discoid lupus affects organs such as the brain, heart, lungs, and heart.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The verb form of the word **deterioration** is deteriorate.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Losing weight and reducing alcohol consumption will not decrease a gout attack.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Scleroderma is caused by an underproduction of collagen.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The idiom **to put someone's nose out of joint** means the person is upset about something.
- \_\_\_\_\_ If a patient complains that she has dry eyes, dry mouth, fatigue, and swollen and stiff joints, he or she could have ankylosing spondylitis.

13. \_\_\_\_\_ Rheumatoid arthritis is inflammation caused by wear and tear of cartilage.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ Kidney stones and decreased kidney function can result from gout.
15. \_\_\_\_\_ If a person is **stiff necked**, he or she cannot move the neck.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Stooped is:
  - a. an adjective and verb
  - b. an adjective only
  - c. a verb only
2. \_\_\_\_\_ A person with scleroderma will experience:
  - a. hardening of the skin
  - b. inflammation of the spine
  - c. dry eyes and dry mouth
3. \_\_\_\_\_ If a person is **scared stiff**, he or she is:
  - a. afraid to get stiff
  - b. extremely scared
  - c. mean and unsympathetic
4. \_\_\_\_\_ A person with gout will experience:
  - a. wear and tear on the big toe
  - b. bony knobs, or nodes, on his or her toes
  - c. a very hot, tender, and swollen sensation in the big toe
5. \_\_\_\_\_ In this sentence, "Patients with Sjögren's syndrome can treat their dry eyes with artificial tears and lubricant ointments," the word **lubricant** is:
  - a. a verb and a noun
  - b. an adjective
  - c. a noun
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **debilitation** is:
  - a. debilitated, debilitating, debilitative
  - b. debilitated
  - c. debilitating
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Sulfasalazine is used to:
  - a. reduce collagen production
  - b. reduce swelling, inflammation, and joint pain
  - c. increase tear production
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The idiomatic expression that means to be sure about something even though you have no proof is:
  - a. a bone of contention
  - b. to feel something in one's bones
  - c. to make no bones about something
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Methotrexate is used to treat:
  - a. rheumatoid arthritis and ankylosing spondylitis
  - b. scleroderma
  - c. fibromyalgia

10. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence, “Sufferers of ankylosing spondylitis can potentially develop chronic stooping and a stiff and inflexible spine,” the word **inflexible** is:
- an adjective
  - a verb
  - a noun
11. \_\_\_\_ The words **mobility** and **mobilization** are:
- both a verb and noun
  - an adjective
  - a noun
12. \_\_\_\_ A person with fibromyalgia may experience:
- sensitivity to sun
  - fractures
  - fatigue, emotional stress, and sleep disturbances
13. \_\_\_\_ A person who works very hard:
- works his fingers to the bone
  - breaks his back
  - both a and b
14. \_\_\_\_ The word **posture** is:
- a verb
  - a noun
  - an adjective only
15. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence, “Osteoarthritis is also known as degenerative bone disease,” the word **degenerative** is:
- an adjective
  - a past tense verb
  - a noun

## Listening and Comprehension Exercises



### Dialogue #1

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

- \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist's name is:
  - Elizabeth New, and the patient's name is Eric Gallagher
  - Eric Gallagher, and the patient's name is Elizabeth New
  - Elizabeth Gallagher, and the patient's name is Eric New
- \_\_\_\_ The patient complains that:
  - his left toe is inflamed
  - his right toe is inflamed and burning
  - both toes are inflamed and swollen

3. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that he has:
  - a. gout, and that he's had it for about 5 years
  - b. gout, and that this is his first real big flare-up
  - c. gout, and that he's had it about 10 years
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that he:
  - a. went to the emergency room 3 hours ago and received a cortisone shot
  - b. went to the emergency room 3 days ago and the doctor gave him a prescription for probenecid
  - c. went to the emergency room 3 weeks ago and did not receive a cortisone shot
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that he had:
  - a. a gout attack about 1 year ago and his doctor prescribed Aleve
  - b. a gout attack about 1 month ago and his doctor prescribed Probenecid
  - c. a gout attack about 1 year ago and his doctor gave him a cortisone shot and Probenecid
6. \_\_\_\_ The ER doctor gave the patient:
  - a. a cortisone shot and a prescription for Aleve
  - b. a cortisone shot and a prescription for probenecid
  - c. a prescription for probenecid and over-the-counter Aleve
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient:
  - a. is visiting the clinic for the first time
  - b. is a returning clinic patient
  - c. has visited the clinic twice in the past
8. \_\_\_\_ The patient:
  - a. is 55 years old, and has a history of swimmer's ear that was treated with Cortisporin
  - b. is 53 years old, and has a history of a ruptured eardrum that was treated with Neosporin
  - c. is 53 years old, and has a history of swimmer's ear that was treated with Cortisporin
9. \_\_\_\_ The patient currently takes:
  - a. multivitamins and Citrucel for diarrhea
  - b. multivitamins and Metamucil for constipation
  - c. multivitamins and Cortisporin
10. \_\_\_\_ The patient's medical history:
  - a. includes an appendectomy 1 year ago and right knee surgery 2 years ago, and a family history of gout
  - b. includes an appendectomy about 10 years ago and left knee surgery about 15 years ago, and a family history of gout
  - c. includes an appendectomy 15 years ago and knee surgery on both needs about 10 years ago, and no family history of gout
11. \_\_\_\_ The patient:
  - a. smokes two packs of cigarettes a day and is allergic to iodine
  - b. used to smoke two packs of cigarettes a day and has no allergies
  - c. quit smoking two packs of cigarettes a day about 3 years ago after his friend died from lung cancer, and is allergic to iodine
12. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that Probenecid:
  - a. will help to reduce the uric acid in his body and that it is not a pain reliever
  - b. will relieve the swelling in his right toe
  - c. is a pain reliever that will help to reduce uric acid in his body



13. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist warns the patient that:
- it's possible that he may experience more gout attacks in next month while the Probenecid helps the body remove the extra uric acid in his body, and that he should not stop taking Probenecid if he has another gout attack
  - it's possible that he may experience more gout attacks in the next month while the Probenecid helps the body remove the extra uric acid in his body, and that he should stop taking Probenecid if he has another gout attack
  - that he will definitely experience another gout attack while on Probenecid and that he should discontinue using it immediately
14. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient he needs to take Probenecid:
- twice a day without food or water
  - twice a day with food and water, and that he should drink eight 8-ounce glasses of fluids during the day
  - once a day with one 8-ounce glass of water
15. \_\_\_\_ When the patient tells the doctor, "This gout is really difficult to stomach," he means:
- he doesn't know how much longer he can take the medication
  - that the gout causes an upset stomach
  - that it's difficult to endure gout attacks
16. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist recommends that the patient:
- avoid or limit alcohol, maintain a good weight, and drink plenty of fluids
  - avoid or limit alcohol to only two drinks per day
  - maintain a good weight and drink plenty of fluids



### **Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

- \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - Anthony Vo, and the pharmacist's name is Vicky Gonzalez
  - Anthony Gonzalez, and the pharmacist's name is Vicky Vo
  - Vicky Vo, and the pharmacist's name is Anthony Gonzalez
- \_\_\_\_ The patient is visiting the clinic:
  - after being diagnosed with osteoarthritis
  - after being diagnosed with osteoporosis
  - after being diagnosed with osteomalacia
- \_\_\_\_ The patient had:
  - a cataract removed on October 6, 2005
  - a cataract removed in each eye on October 5, 2006
  - a cataract removed in each eye on October 6, 2005

4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's eye doctor is:
- Dr. Wu
  - Dr. Woo
  - Dr. Jones
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient was prescribed:
- Lotemax to treat inflammation after cataract surgery
  - Lotemax to treat her osteoarthritis
  - Fosamax to treat inflammation after cataract surgery
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to:
- take two Fosamax tablets with her first meal of the day
  - take one Fosamax tablet a day after she gets up in the morning and after she has her first meal of the day and before she has her first drink
  - take one Fosamax tablet a day after she gets up in the morning and before she eats her first meal of the day, has her first drink—for example, tea—and before she takes any other medications she may be on
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist instructs the patient:
- to chew the tablet and drink water
  - not to chew or suck the tablet and to drink a full glass of water
  - to suck the tablet and then drink a full glass of water
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist instructs the patient:
- not to lie down after taking Fosamax. Her body must be upright so she should sit on a chair, stand, or walk for 30 minutes. After 30 minutes, she can eat her meal and drink her tea, coffee, or juice; she cannot drink water
  - not to lie down after taking Fosamax. Her body must be upright so she should sit on a chair, stand, or walk for 20 minutes. After 20 minutes she can eat her meal and drink her tea, coffee, juice, or water
  - not to lie down after taking Fosamax. Her body must be upright so she should sit on a chair, stand, or walk for 30 minutes. After 30 minutes, she can eat her meal and drink her tea, coffee, juice, or water
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
- a side effect of Fosamax is stomach pain
  - a side effect of Fosamax is stomach pain, and that he will give her a patient information leaflet to read carefully
  - all the side effects are listed in the patient information leaflet
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is allergic to:
- citrus fruit and tomatoes
  - citrus fruit and bees
  - bees
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to avoid eating or drinking:
- tea, coffee, tomatoes, and citrus fruit
  - coffee, chocolate, soda, peppermint, pepper, citrus fruit, tomatoes, and tomato sauce
  - honey and citrus fruit
12. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient speaks Vietnamese:
- but has no one to help her read the patient information leaflet
  - and will use her Vietnamese dictionary and her son to help her read the patient information leaflet carefully
  - and does not need a dictionary to help her understand the patient information leaflet

How did you do on the Post-Assessment in Chapter 8? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

# Neurologic System and Mental Health

# 9

## PRE-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ Symptoms of **epilepsy** include a staring spell and uncontrollable jerking of the legs and arms.
2. \_\_\_\_ **Multiple sclerosis** is an autoimmune disease that does not affect the central nervous system.
3. \_\_\_\_ **Dementia** and **demented** are both adjectives.
4. \_\_\_\_ Some individuals with **Parkinson's disease** may experience memory loss, confusion, and mental impairment.
5. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **disorientation** is disoriented and disorienting.
6. \_\_\_\_ Muscle twitching and slurred speech are early signs of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS).
7. \_\_\_\_ Causes of **generalized anxiety disorder (GAD)** include certain medical disorders, stress, and heredity.
8. \_\_\_\_ People suffering from **depression** do not experience sadness, hopelessness, or loss of interest in activities that they normally enjoy.
9. \_\_\_\_ Some people suffering from **Alzheimer's disease** experience forgetfulness, misplace things, and have a difficult time expressing their thoughts.
10. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **agitation** is agitated and agitating.
11. \_\_\_\_ A person with **seasonal affective disorder (SAD)** is always sad.
12. \_\_\_\_ A person experiencing a **grand mal seizure** will experience loss of consciousness, tongue biting, and body stiffening and shaking.
13. \_\_\_\_ Symptoms of **multiple sclerosis** include numbness and weakness in one or more limbs and vision problems, such as loss of vision, double vision, or blurred vision.
14. \_\_\_\_ Complications of Parkinson's disease include difficulty swallowing and chewing.
15. \_\_\_\_ The word **dexterity** is an adjective and the word **dexterous** is a noun.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence "Many of the questions on the final exam left the students scratching their heads," **scratching their heads** means:
  - a. the students' heads were itchy
  - b. it was easy for the students to answer the questions
  - c. it was not easy for the students to answer the questions

2. \_\_\_\_ The idiomatic expression “**to have a good head on your shoulders**” means:
  - a. one’s head is in proportion to their shoulders
  - b. to be sensible and smart
  - c. to be difficult
3. \_\_\_\_ Partial seizures and generalized seizures can occur in people with:
  - a. Parkinson’s disease
  - b. epilepsy
  - c. generalized anxiety disorder
4. \_\_\_\_ Feelings of depression, lethargy, fatigue, and irritability are symptoms likely found in patients with:
  - a. multiple sclerosis
  - b. amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
  - c. seasonal affective disorder
5. \_\_\_\_ An unsteady gait, lack of coordination, and tremors can be seen in patients with:
  - a. Parkinson’s disease and multiple sclerosis
  - b. Alzheimer’s disease and Parkinson’s disease
  - c. multiple sclerosis and Alzheimer’s disease
6. \_\_\_\_ Seasonal affective disorder can affect people:
  - a. in the winter only
  - b. in the spring only
  - c. in the winter and spring
7. \_\_\_\_ If a person experiences recurrent episodes of depression and elation, he or she likely suffers from:
  - a. bipolar disorder
  - b. adjustment disorder
  - c. general anxiety disorder
8. \_\_\_\_ The word **impaired** is:
  - a. a noun
  - b. a verb
  - c. an adjective and a verb
9. \_\_\_\_ Staring blankly is characteristic of patients who suffer from:
  - a. epilepsy
  - b. seasonal affective disorder
  - c. general anxiety disorder
10. \_\_\_\_ The patient complained that she was experiencing twitching and muscle cramps in her arms, slurred speech, and weakness in her feet and ankles. This could indicate she has:
  - a. Parkinson’s disease
  - b. amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
  - c. multiple sclerosis

How did you do? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

## MEDICAL VOCABULARY

---

A good understanding of vocabulary words in pharmacy is very important for communication with professors, fellow students, patients, and coworkers. Knowledge and understanding of vocabulary leads to successful communication and success as a pharmacy student, as a pharmacy technician, and as a practicing

pharmacist. You may already know many of the vocabulary words in this chapter, but for words that are unfamiliar, pay careful attention to them and make every effort to know their correct spelling, meaning, and pronunciation. It is a good idea to keep a list of new words and to look up these new words in a bilingual dictionary or dictionary in your first language. A good command of pharmacy-related vocabulary and good pronunciation of vocabulary will help to prevent embarrassing mistakes and increase effective verbal communication skills.

## Neurologic System and Mental Health Vocabulary

Alzheimer's disease	forgetfulness	phobias
amyotrophic lateral sclerosis	gait	pill rolling
aspirate	irreversible	progressive
atonic	isolation	rigid
atrophy	jerking movements	rouse
balance	lapse	seizure
bipolar disorder	light therapy	shuffling walk
dementia	mental impairment	slurred speech
depression	multiple sclerosis	spinal tap
dexterity	mumbling speech	staring spells
disorientation	myelin sheath	suicide
distracted	myoclonic	tremor
electric shock	neurology	twitch
epilepsy	obsessive-compulsive disorder	unsteady
episode	onset	voluntary muscles
exacerbation	panic attack	wandering

## PARTS OF SPEECH

A good understanding of parts of speech, such as verbs, nouns, adjectives, and adverbs, is important for successful communication when speaking or writing. It is equally important to know the various forms of words and to use them appropriately.

### Word Forms

The table below lists the main forms of some terms that you will likely encounter in pharmacy practice. Review the table and then do the exercises that follow to assess your understanding.

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v)— Past Tense	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
aspiration	to aspirate; aspirated		
atonicity		atonic	
atrophy	to atrophy; atrophied	atrophic	
balance	to balance; balanced	balanced; balanceable	
compulsion; compulsivity		compulsive	compulsively
demented		demented; demential	
depression	to depress; depressed	depressed; depressing; depressive	depressingly

(continued)

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v)— Past Tense	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
dexterity		dexterous	
disorientation	to disorient; disoriented	disoriented; disorienting	
distraction	to distract; distracted	distracted; distracting	
epilepsy; epileptic		epileptic	
forgetfulness	to forget; forgot	forgettable; forgotten	
impairment	to impair; impaired	impaired	
irreversibility; irreversibleness		irreversible	irreversibly
isolation	to isolate; isolated	isolated	
lapse	to lapse; lapsed	lapsed	
mumbler	to mumble; mumbled	mumbling	mumbly
neurology; neurologist; neuron		neurologic; neurological	neurologically
obsession	to obsess; obsessed	obsessive	obsessively
panic	to panic; panicked	panicky	
phobia		phobic	
progress	to progress; progressed	progressive	progressively
rigidity		rigid	
slur; slurring	to slur; slurred	slurred	
stare	to stare; stared	staring	
suicide		suicidal	
therapy		therapeutic	therapeutically
twitch; twitching	to twitch; twitched	twitching	twitchingly
unsteadiness		unsteady	unsteadily
volunteer; voluntariness	to volunteer; volunteered		voluntarily
wanderer	to wander; wandered		wanderingly

### ***Word Forms Exercise***

Read the following sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv.

1. An **epileptic seizure** can cause **uncontrollable jerking** movements of the legs and arms.  
epileptic \_\_\_\_\_ seizure \_\_\_\_\_ uncontrollable \_\_\_\_\_ jerking \_\_\_\_\_
2. Patients with Alzheimer's disease will **develop dementia** as a result of the **degeneration** of **healthy** brain **tissue**.  
develop \_\_\_\_\_ dementia \_\_\_\_\_ degeneration \_\_\_\_\_ healthy \_\_\_\_\_ tissue \_\_\_\_\_

3. **Trembling, difficulty** walking, and muscle **rigidity** are typical symptoms **found** in Parkinson's disease.  
trembling \_\_\_\_\_ difficulty \_\_\_\_\_ rigidity \_\_\_\_\_ found \_\_\_\_\_
4. **Slurring of speech**, arm or leg weakness, and muscle **twitching** are symptoms of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, also known as **ALS**.  
slurring \_\_\_\_\_ speech \_\_\_\_\_ twitching \_\_\_\_\_ ALS \_\_\_\_\_
5. A person suffering from **generalized anxiety** disorder, also known as GAD, often feels **anxious** and very **worried** without a **reason**.  
generalized \_\_\_\_\_ anxiety \_\_\_\_\_ anxious \_\_\_\_\_ worried \_\_\_\_\_ reason \_\_\_\_\_
6. Crying **spells**, sadness, **hopelessness**, and losing **interest** in **normal** activities are usually signs of **depression**.  
spells \_\_\_\_\_ hopelessness \_\_\_\_\_ interest \_\_\_\_\_ normal \_\_\_\_\_ depression \_\_\_\_\_
7. Seasonal **affective** disorder, also known as SAD, is a type of **depressive** disorder believed to be **caused** by **decreased** daylight in the winter months, and can cause **depression**, lethargy, and fatigue.  
affective \_\_\_\_\_ depressive \_\_\_\_\_ caused \_\_\_\_\_ decreased \_\_\_\_\_ depression \_\_\_\_\_
8. **Epileptic** seizures that are the result of **abnormal** activity in one part of the brain are called **partial** or focal seizures, and epileptic seizures that **affect** the **whole** brain are called **generalized** seizures.  
epileptic \_\_\_\_\_ abnormal \_\_\_\_\_ partial \_\_\_\_\_ affect \_\_\_\_\_ whole \_\_\_\_\_  
generalized \_\_\_\_\_
9. Alzheimer's disease is a **progressive**, degenerative disease that **leads** to **irreversible mental impairment**.  
progressive \_\_\_\_\_ leads \_\_\_\_\_ irreversible \_\_\_\_\_ mental \_\_\_\_\_ impairment \_\_\_\_\_
10. People with multiple sclerosis, also known as **MS**, a **chronic** and potentially **debilitating** disease that affects the central nervous system, will experience **numbness** and **weakness** in their body.  
MS \_\_\_\_\_ chronic \_\_\_\_\_ debilitating \_\_\_\_\_ numbness \_\_\_\_\_ weakness \_\_\_\_\_
11. A **stooped** posture, a slow, **shuffling walk**, and an **unsteady gait** are characteristic of patients with Parkinson's disease.  
stooped \_\_\_\_\_ shuffling \_\_\_\_\_ walk \_\_\_\_\_ unsteady \_\_\_\_\_ gait \_\_\_\_\_
12. Symptoms of ALS, a **neurologic** disease that **attacks** the nerve cells that **control** voluntary muscles, include hand weakness, **clumsiness**, and **slurred** speech.  
neurologic \_\_\_\_\_ attacks \_\_\_\_\_ control \_\_\_\_\_ clumsiness \_\_\_\_\_ slurred \_\_\_\_\_
13. Patients with generalized **anxiety** disorder will experience a **variety** of symptoms such as **irritability**, restlessness, muscle **tension**, and difficulty concentrating.  
anxiety \_\_\_\_\_ variety \_\_\_\_\_ irritability \_\_\_\_\_ tension \_\_\_\_\_
14. People who have bipolar disorder, also known as **manic-depressive** disorder, have recurrent **episodes of depression** and **elation**.  
manic \_\_\_\_\_ depressive \_\_\_\_\_ episodes \_\_\_\_\_ depression \_\_\_\_\_ elation \_\_\_\_\_
15. Because some patients with multiple sclerosis will experience **extreme** muscle weakness resulting from exposure to extreme **heat** such as a sauna, a **hot** bath, or shower, it's recommended that they take **tepid showers** or baths.  
extreme \_\_\_\_\_ heat \_\_\_\_\_ hot \_\_\_\_\_ tepid \_\_\_\_\_ showers \_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### *Typical Medical Conditions and Patient Complaints*

The sentences below contain vocabulary that describes and explains typical medical conditions, diseases, symptoms, and patient complaints that a pharmacist encounters. Read the sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv. Look up words you do not know in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

1. **Epileptics** who experience simple **partial** seizures will not lose consciousness, but those who experience **complex** partial seizures will lose consciousness for a short **period** of time and experience lip **smacking**, hand rubbing, and swallowing.  
epileptics \_\_\_\_\_ partial \_\_\_\_\_ complex \_\_\_\_\_ period \_\_\_\_\_ smacking \_\_\_\_\_
2. Difficulty **recognizing** numbers, finding the right words to **express** thoughts, following conversations, feeling **disoriented**, and becoming **lost** in **familiar** places are symptoms experienced by Alzheimer's patients.  
recognizing \_\_\_\_\_ express \_\_\_\_\_ disoriented \_\_\_\_\_ lost \_\_\_\_\_ familiar \_\_\_\_\_
3. It is important for patients with Parkinson's disease to **improve** their **balance**, **range** of motion, and **mobility** with **regular** exercise.  
improve \_\_\_\_\_ balance \_\_\_\_\_ range \_\_\_\_\_ mobility \_\_\_\_\_ regular \_\_\_\_\_
4. In patients with ALS, the motor neurons in the brain and spine no longer **control** **voluntary** muscles that would **normally** move the arms, legs, neck, face, and torso or the muscles to talk, chew, and swallow, and as a result the muscles become **weak** and **atrophy**.  
control \_\_\_\_\_ voluntary \_\_\_\_\_ normally \_\_\_\_\_ weak \_\_\_\_\_ atrophy \_\_\_\_\_
5. Multiple sclerosis, which is an **autoimmune** disease, **results** in slowing or blocking nerve **signals** that **control** strength, sensation, muscle **coordination**, and vision.  
autoimmune \_\_\_\_\_ results \_\_\_\_\_ signals \_\_\_\_\_ control \_\_\_\_\_ coordination \_\_\_\_\_
6. **Certain** medical conditions, coping with and worrying about the medical condition, a **stressful** life, heredity, and an individual's personality **type** can **cause** generalized anxiety disorder.  
certain \_\_\_\_\_ coping \_\_\_\_\_ stressful \_\_\_\_\_ type \_\_\_\_\_ cause \_\_\_\_\_
7. Patients with depression may not only have **negative** thoughts, **behaviors**, and moods but also develop **irregular** eating **habits**, have difficulty sleeping, and experience **crying spells** and a decreased libido.  
negative \_\_\_\_\_ behaviors \_\_\_\_\_ irregular \_\_\_\_\_ habits \_\_\_\_\_ crying spells \_\_\_\_\_
8. The symptoms of people affected by seasonal **affective** disorder in the fall and winter include **trouble** concentrating, **overeating**, fatigue, depression, and crying spells, and the symptoms of people affected by seasonal affective disorder in the spring and summer include poor **appetite**, weight loss, **insomnia**, and crying spells.  
affective \_\_\_\_\_ trouble \_\_\_\_\_ overeating \_\_\_\_\_ appetite \_\_\_\_\_ insomnia \_\_\_\_\_
9. A person with epilepsy who experiences a petit mal **seizure**, also known as an absence seizure, will **stare**, experience **subtle** body movements, and **brief lapses** of **awareness**.  
seizure \_\_\_\_\_ stare \_\_\_\_\_ subtle \_\_\_\_\_ brief \_\_\_\_\_ lapses \_\_\_\_\_ awareness \_\_\_\_\_
10. **Feeling** tired, feeling **shaky**, having difficulty getting up after sitting, **speaking** softly, being unable to **speak** words, and feeling **depressed** for no reason are early symptoms of Parkinson's disease, a disorder that affects nerve cells in the part of the brain that control muscle movement.  
feeling \_\_\_\_\_ shaky \_\_\_\_\_ speaking \_\_\_\_\_ speak \_\_\_\_\_ depressed \_\_\_\_\_
11. ALS, also known as Lou Gehrig's disease after the New York Yankee baseball player who died from the motor **neuron** disease, **causes** **progressive** muscle **wasting** or atrophy, and is a **fatal** disease.  
neuron \_\_\_\_\_ causes \_\_\_\_\_ progressive \_\_\_\_\_ wasting \_\_\_\_\_ fatal \_\_\_\_\_



12. Multiple sclerosis is characterized by seven different patterns of which the most common pattern is relapsing-remitting (RR) MS, in which patients experience a series of attacks followed by **periods** of **remission** when the symptoms **disappear**, until a **relapse** occurs, when the symptoms **reappear**.  
 periods \_\_\_\_\_ remission \_\_\_\_\_ disappear \_\_\_\_\_ relapse \_\_\_\_\_ reappear \_\_\_\_\_
13. Seasonal affective disorder, which is also referred to as the **winter blues** and winter depression, **causes** some people to **crave sweets** and **starches**.  
 winter blues \_\_\_\_\_ causes \_\_\_\_\_ crave \_\_\_\_\_ sweets \_\_\_\_\_ starches \_\_\_\_\_
14. **Factors** such as stress, illness, **postpartum** depression, **certain** medications, hormones, and alcohol and drug **abuse** can **contribute** to depression.  
 factors \_\_\_\_\_ postpartum \_\_\_\_\_ certain \_\_\_\_\_ abuse \_\_\_\_\_ contribute \_\_\_\_\_
15. Patients suffering from ALS, an **irreversible** disease, will require physical therapy to help them with muscle **strength**, speech therapy to help them communicate more **clearly** as the speech muscles begin to **deteriorate**, and breathing assistance as the muscles needed to breathe become **weakened**.  
 irreversible \_\_\_\_\_ strength \_\_\_\_\_ clearly \_\_\_\_\_ deteriorate \_\_\_\_\_ weakened \_\_\_\_\_
16. **Dementia** and the **inability** to concentrate, remember, think, and **reason** can also **occur** in Parkinson's patients as the disease **progresses**.  
 dementia \_\_\_\_\_ inability \_\_\_\_\_ reason \_\_\_\_\_ occur \_\_\_\_\_ progresses \_\_\_\_\_
17. **Strengthening exercises** and learning how to use **devices** such as a walking cane, a **motorized** scooter, or a wheelchair can help MS patients maintain their **independence**.  
 strengthening \_\_\_\_\_ exercises \_\_\_\_\_ devices \_\_\_\_\_ motorized \_\_\_\_\_ independence \_\_\_\_\_
18. Patients with **advanced** Alzheimer's disease can develop pneumonia as a result of inhaling food and drink into the lungs, **urinary incontinence** and urinary tract infections, and increase their **risk** of falling and **fractures**.  
 advanced \_\_\_\_\_ urinary \_\_\_\_\_ incontinence \_\_\_\_\_ risk \_\_\_\_\_ fractures \_\_\_\_\_
19. **Complications** and **dangers** from epilepsy include receiving a head **injury** and drowning as a result of a seizure and **losing** control and **awareness** while driving.  
 complications \_\_\_\_\_ dangers \_\_\_\_\_ injury \_\_\_\_\_ losing \_\_\_\_\_ awareness \_\_\_\_\_
20. Depression is a **serious** illness that can **disable** some people and cause **others** to become **suicidal**.  
 serious \_\_\_\_\_ disable \_\_\_\_\_ others \_\_\_\_\_ suicidal \_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## Medical Vocabulary Comprehension

Now that you have read sentences 1 through 20 describing language regarding the neurologic system, assess your understanding by doing the exercises below.

### *Multiple Choice Questions*

Choose the answer that correctly completes each sentence below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ ALS is:
  - a. a fatal neurologic disease
  - b. an autoimmune disease
  - c. a depressive disorder

2. \_\_\_\_\_ **Dementia** develops as the result of:
  - a. slurred speech
  - b. manic-depression
  - c. degeneration of healthy brain tissue
3. \_\_\_\_\_ **Seasonal affective disorder** is caused by:
  - a. sensitivity to sun
  - b. decreased sunlight
  - c. crying spells
4. \_\_\_\_\_ **MS**:
  - a. affects the central nervous system
  - b. leads to irreversible mental impairment
  - c. causes petit mal seizures
5. \_\_\_\_\_ A person with **generalized anxiety disorder**:
  - a. will slur his or her speech
  - b. will experience muscle weakness from exposure to extreme heat
  - c. feels worried and anxious
6. \_\_\_\_\_ A person suffering from **Parkinson's disease** may experience:
  - a. trembling and muscle rigidity
  - b. numbness in the body
  - c. loss of consciousness
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Some people with **depression**:
  - a. have crying spells
  - b. are always elated
  - c. have uncontrollable muscle twitching
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Symptoms of **ALS** include:
  - a. a stooped posture and trembling
  - b. muscle twitching and slurring of speech
  - c. dementia
9. \_\_\_\_\_ **Epileptic seizures** that affect the whole body are called:
  - a. focal seizures
  - b. unsteady seizures
  - c. generalized seizures
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Another term for **muscle wasting** is:
  - a. atrophy
  - b. voluntary muscle
  - c. muscle twitching
11. \_\_\_\_\_ **MS** blocks nerve signals that:
  - a. improve balance
  - b. control strength, sensation, and muscle coordination
  - c. control voluntary muscles
12. \_\_\_\_\_ A shuffling walk and unsteady gait are characteristics of:
  - a. Parkinson's disease
  - b. ALS
  - c. epilepsy

13. \_\_\_\_ Symptoms of **SAD** in the spring and summer include:
- poor appetite and insomnia
  - feeling shaky and speaking softly
  - overeating
14. \_\_\_\_ **GAD** can be caused by:
- a stressful life, worrying about a medical condition, or heredity
  - lethargy and fatigue
  - suicidal thoughts
15. \_\_\_\_ Patients who tend to stare during an attack of their disease are:
- epilepsy patients
  - ALS patients
  - MS patients

### ***True/False Questions***

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

- \_\_\_\_ Early symptoms of Parkinson's disease include feeling tired and shaky and having difficulty getting up after sitting.
- \_\_\_\_ Multiple sclerosis is a progressive and fatal neurologic disease.
- \_\_\_\_ Feeling disoriented and becoming lost in familiar places are symptoms of GAD.
- \_\_\_\_ ALS is also known as Lou Gehrig's disease.
- \_\_\_\_ Factors such as stress, postpartum depression, and alcohol and drug abuse do not contribute to depression.
- \_\_\_\_ The word "irreversible" is a noun.
- \_\_\_\_ A person who experiences a petit mal seizure will stare and will experience subtle body movements and brief lapses of awareness.
- \_\_\_\_ People with bipolar disorder will experience recurrent episodes of depression and elation.
- \_\_\_\_ Patients with GAD will not experience irritability, restlessness, or difficulty concentrating.
- \_\_\_\_ Regular exercise can help patients with Parkinson's disease to improve their balance, range of motion, and mobility.

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### ***Writing Exercise***

An important part of communication is the ability to write about what you read, to write correctly, and to spell correctly. In the exercises below, write your understanding of the meaning of the bolded words.

1. Describe in writing what **epilepsy** is.

---

---

---

---

2. Describe in writing what **multiple sclerosis** is.

---

---

---

---

3. Describe in writing what **Parkinson's disease** is.

---



---



---



---

4. Describe what **amyotrophic lateral sclerosis** and **Alzheimer's disease** are.

---



---



---



---

5. Describe what **GAD** and **SAD** are.

---



---



---



---

Check what you have written with acceptable answers that appear in the Answer Key online.

## LISTENING AND PRONUNCIATION

The ability to listen and understand what is being said and heard, and the ability to pronounce words clearly, is extremely important. A word misheard and a word mispronounced will lead to poor communication and can seriously put both the pharmacist and patient in danger. Therefore, it is very important that one hear clearly what another person has said, and that one speak clearly with correct pronunciation.

Listen carefully to the pharmacy-related words presented in the audio files found in Chapter 9 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), and then pronounce them as accurately as you can. Listen and then repeat. You will listen to each word once and then you will repeat it. You will do this twice for each word. Listening and pronunciation practice will increase your listening and speaking confidence. Many languages do not produce or emphasize certain sounds produced and emphasized in English, so pay careful attention to the pronunciation of each word.



### Pronunciation Exercise

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 9 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)). Listen and repeat the words. Then say the words aloud for additional practice.

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Alzheimer's disease           | ãlts' hī-mərz dī-zēz                   |
| 2. amyotrophic lateral sclerosis | ã'mī-ə-trō'fīk lã't'ə-r-əl sklə-rō'sīs |
| 3. aspirate                      | ãs'pə-rãt'                             |
| 4. atonic                        | ã-tōn'īk                               |
| 5. balance                       | bãl'əns                                |
| 6. bipolar disorder              | bī-pō'lər dīs-ôr'dər                   |
| 7. dementia                      | dī-mēn'shə                             |
| 8. depression                    | dī-prēsh'ən                            |
| 9. dexterity                     | dēk-stēr'ī-tē                          |
| 10. disorientation               | dīs-ôr'ē-ēn-tā'shən                    |
| 11. distracted                   | dī-strãk'tīd                           |
| 12. electric shock               | ī-lēk'trīk shōk                        |

13. epilepsy	ẽp'ə-lẽp'sẽ
14. exacerbation	eg-zas-er-bā'shũn
15. forgetfulness	fə-r-gẽt fõõl nẽs
16. gait	gā̃t
17. irreversible	ĩr'ĩ-vũr'sə-bəl
18. isolation	ĩ'sə-lā'shən
19. jerking movements	jũrking mõõv'mənt s
20. lapse	lā̃ps
21. light therapy	lĩt thẽr'ə-pẽ
22. mental impairment	mẽn'tl im-pār'ment
23. multiple sclerosis	mũl'tə-pəl sklə-rõ'sĩs
24. mumbling speech	mũm'blŋ spẽch
25. myelin sheath	mĩ'ə-lĩn shẽth
26. myoclonic	mĩ-õ-klon'ik
27. neurology	nõõ-rõl'ə-jẽ
28. obsessive-compulsive disorder	õb-sẽs'ĩv kəm-pũl'sĩv dĩs-õr'dər
29. onset	õn'sẽt
30. panic attack	pā̃n'ĩk ə-tāk'
31. phobias	fõ'bẽ-əs
32. pill rolling	pil'rõl'ing
33. progressive	prə-grẽs'ĩv
34. rigid	rĩj'ĩd
35. rouse	rouz
36. seizure	sẽ'zhər
37. shuffling walk	shũf'lng wòk
38. slurred speech	slũrd spẽch
39. spinal tap	spĩ'nəl tāp
40. staring spells	stārng spẽls
41. suicide	sõõ'ĩ-sĩd'
42. tremor	trẽm'ər
43. twitch	twĩch
44. unsteady	ũn-stẽd'ẽ
45. voluntary muscles	võl'ən-tẽr'ẽ mũs'əls
46. wandering	wõn'dərng

Which words are easy to pronounce? Which are difficult to pronounce? Use the space below to write in the words that you find difficult to pronounce. These are words you should practice saying often.

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 9 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) as many times as you need to increase your pronunciation ability of the difficult words. Pronounce these words with a friend or a colleague who speaks English.

### English Sounds That are Difficult for Speakers of Other Languages to Pronounce

#### Spanish

In Spanish, there is no English “v” sound, but the “v” consonant in Spanish is pronounced like the English “b.” The vowel “i” is pronounced like a long “e.” Pay careful attention to the “v” sound in English when pronouncing words that begin with “v.” Also pay careful attention to English words that begin with “s;” do not use the Spanish “es” sound when pronouncing English words that begin with “s.”

For example, in English,

chronic is not pronounced crohneek

#### Vietnamese

In Vietnamese, the “t” consonant is pronounced “s,” but in English the “t” is pronounced “t” and “s” is pronounced “s.” Be careful with English words that begin with “t.” In Vietnamese, the “b” consonant is pronounced “p,” but in English “p” is pronounced “p” and “b” is pronounced “b.”

In Vietnamese, words do not end in “b,” “ch,” “f,” “d,” “j,” “l,” “p,” “r,” “s,” “sh,” “v,” and “z.” In English, words end in these letters. Pay special attention to pronouncing these English sounds. In Vietnamese, there is no “dzh” or “zh” sound, so English words like “judge” (dzh) and “rupture” (zh) will be hard for Vietnamese speakers to pronounce.

For example, in English,

numbness is not pronounced numneh

#### Korean

In Korean, the “v” consonant is pronounced “b” and the “f” consonant is pronounced “p.” In English, the “v” is pronounced “v,” the “f” is pronounced “f,” and the “p” is pronounced “p.” Pay special attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

forgetfulness is not pronounced porgetpulses

#### Gujarati

In Gujarati, “v” is pronounced “w,” “f” is pronounced “p,” “p” is pronounced “f,” and “z” is pronounced “j.” Short “i” is pronounced long “e,” “x” is pronounced “ch,” and “th” is pronounced “s.” In English, “v” is pronounced “v,” “f” is pronounced “f,” “z” is pronounced “z” or “s,” “j” is pronounced “j,” and “x” is pronounced “x.” Pay careful attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

voluntary is not pronounced woluntary

#### Chinese

In Chinese, the “r” consonant is pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are not pronounced at all. Pay careful attention to English words that begin with “r” because the “r” is not pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are pronounced in English.

For example, in English,

rigid is not pronounced ligih

disoriented is not pronounced disolienteh

#### Russian

The “w” consonant is pronounced like a “v” and the “v” sound like a “w.” Pay careful attention to the English “th.” It is not pronounced “s.”

For example, in English,

voluntary is not pronounced woluntary

---

## DICTATION

---



### Listening/Spelling Exercise: Word and Word Pairs

Listen to the words or word pairs on the audio files found in Chapter 9 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_



### Listening/Spelling Exercise: Sentences

Listen to the sentences on the audio files found in Chapter 9 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Now, check your sentences against the correct answers in the Answer Key online. If there are any new words that you do not know or that you spelled incorrectly, make a list of those words and study them for meaning and spelling.

## PHARMACIST/PATIENT DIALOGUES

---

The ability to orally communicate effectively with your professors, colleagues, and especially with patients is very important. As a pharmacist, you will be counseling patients; patients will come to you for advice. They will have questions about a condition and symptoms they may experience and will ask you to help treat the condition. Therefore, it is extremely important that you understand what they are saying and that you respond to them and their questions appropriately. Your patients will speak differently. For example, some may speak very quickly, others too low, and yet others may speak angrily. To help you improve your listening skills, listen to the following dialogues, or short conversations, between a pharmacist and a patient and between a pharmacy technician and a patient.

### Listening and Comprehension Exercises



#### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Ari Snow
  - b. Ariana Snow
  - c. Arianne Snow
2. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist name is:
  - a. Richard Mendez and the doctor's name is Gabby Lucas
  - b. Gabby Lucas and the doctor's name is Richard Mendez
  - c. Richard Lucas and the doctor's name is Gabby Mendez
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient is being discharged from the:
  - a. emergency room
  - b. clinic
  - c. hospital
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient has been diagnosed with:
  - a. epilepsy
  - b. unexplained seizures
  - c. two seizures
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient has been prescribed:
  - a. tegaserod
  - b. Tegrin
  - c. Tegretol



6. \_\_\_\_ The medication will help treat:
  - a. her petit mal seizures
  - b. her grand mal seizures
  - c. both kinds of seizures
7. \_\_\_\_ The form of medication the doctor has prescribed:
  - a. is a chewable red-speckled pink tablet whose generic name is carbamazepine
  - b. is a liquid whose generic name is carbamazepine
  - c. is a chewable pink-speckled red tablet that has no generic
8. \_\_\_\_ The patient has a history of:
  - a. recurrent ear infections that were treated successfully with Ceclor
  - b. recurrent eye infections
  - c. recurrent ear infections when she was young and is allergic to Ceclor
9. \_\_\_\_ Serious side effects of Tegretol include:
  - a. diarrhea and a rash
  - b. chest pain, swollen ankles, and problems with speech and coordination
  - c. vomiting, nausea, and swollen ankles
10. \_\_\_\_ The patient is also allergic to:
  - a. cats and dogs, and has had stitches as a result of a dog bite and wears contacts
  - b. cats and latex, and has had stitches on her head and chin, has broken her arm, and wears contacts
  - c. cats and latex, and has broken both arms and wears contacts
11. \_\_\_\_ The patient:
  - a. plays softball, and the pharmacist told she can continue to play but that she should talk to her doctor and continue to take her medication
  - b. plays softball, and the pharmacist told her she should stop playing sports
  - c. plays softball, and the pharmacist told her she should always wear a helmet when she's pitching
12. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
  - a. she should wear a medical alert bracelet and that she can swim alone
  - b. she should wear a medical alert bracelet and that she should never swim again
  - c. she should wear a helmet when participating in recreational activities with a high risk of head injury and wear a medical alert bracelet, and that she never swim alone
13. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient and her mother that when she has a seizure:
  - a. she should be rolled over and a pillow placed under her head, that no one should put their fingers in her mouth, and that she should not be shaken or yelled at during a seizure
  - b. she should be aroused and shaken
  - c. she should not be rolled over and no one should put their fingers in her mouth
14. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
  - a. people with epilepsy will have seizures for life
  - b. more than half of children with seizures eventually become seizure-free and no longer need to take medication
  - c. the seizures will get progressively worse
15. \_\_\_\_ When the patient's mother says the patient is "tough as nails," she means that:
  - a. the patient is strong and determined
  - b. the patient only appears to be strong and determined but is not
  - c. the patient is strong and determined only when she is having a seizure

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### **Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Lucas Page, and the pharmacist's name is Susan Wilson
  - b. Susan Page, and the pharmacist's name is Lucas Wilson
  - c. Susan Wilson, and the pharmacist's name is Lucas Page
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor's name is:
  - a. Lena Kasporova, and she prescribed Betaseron
  - b. Rina Kasporova, and she prescribed Betadine
  - c. Lena Casper, and she prescribed Betaseron
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient has been diagnosed with:
  - a. relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis
  - b. relapsing multiple sclerosis
  - c. progressive relapsing multiple sclerosis
4. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist explains to the patient that the medication:
  - a. is interferon and it will cure her MS
  - b. is interferon and it will help to reduce the number of flare-ups and attacks that make her weak, but it will not cure her MS
  - c. is interferon and it will not slow down the disease
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient:
  - a. is 44 years old, was born on May 21, 1964, and is allergic to penicillin and latex
  - b. is 44 years old, was born on May 20, 1964, and is allergic to cats and penicillin
  - c. is 44 years old, was born on May 21, 1964, and is allergic to wasps and penicillin
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient:
  - a. is pregnant and has a current history of migraine headaches
  - b. is not pregnant and used to be on medication 10 years ago for migraine headaches
  - c. is not pregnant and has no history of migraine headaches
7. \_\_\_\_ Currently the patient:
  - a. does not work, but has children
  - b. works as a freelance writer and has no children
  - c. works as a freelance writer and has children

8. \_\_\_\_ The medication prescribed is:
- a chewable tablet to be taken in the morning
  - an injection to be injected in the evening in the same part of the body every day
  - an injection to be injected in the evening in a different part of the body every other day
9. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
- it's not uncommon for this medication to make patients feel like they have the flu and experience achy muscles, a fever, chills, and feel tired, and to take Tylenol or Motrin before each dose
  - it is not common for this medication to make patients feel like they have the flu or experience achy muscles, a fever, chills, and feel tired
  - it is extremely rare for patients to have flu-like symptoms
10. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist advises the patient to:
- inject the medication in a different part of the body such as the buttocks, the upper arms, the thighs, or the abdomen to avoid any skin problems at the injection site
  - inject the medication in the abdomen and buttocks only to avoid any skin problems at the injection site
  - inject the medication in the upper arm only to avoid any problems at the injection site
11. \_\_\_\_ Other side effects of the injection include:
- pain and swelling at the injection site only
  - pain and swelling at the injection site and diarrhea, constipation, and abdominal pain
  - diarrhea, constipation, and abdominal pain
12. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient:
- that she should shake the vial before she uses it and that it's okay to miss a dose
  - she should not shake the vial before she uses it, and that if she misses a dose to take it as soon as possible and call her doctor, and not to double up on the dose to catch up
  - she should not shake the vial before she uses it, and that it's okay to double up on the dose if she misses it
13. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
- she should get plenty of sleep and that she should decrease her number of activities
  - she should get plenty of sleep and not exercise as much
  - she should get plenty of sleep and continue to exercise
14. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient:
- to try swimming, which is good exercise, if the heat bothers her
  - to avoid swimming because it will cause her to get hot, and heat bothers her
  - to swim only if the water is really cold
15. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist suggests that:
- the patient join the hospital support group
  - the patient start her own support group
  - the patient continue to do her normal activities and join the hospital support group

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

Idioms and idiomatic expressions are made up of a group of words that have a different meaning from the original meaning of each individual word. Native speakers of the English language use such expressions comfortably and naturally. However, individuals who are new speakers of English or who have studied English

for many years may still not be able to use idioms and idiomatic expressions as comfortably or naturally as native speakers. As pharmacy students, pharmacy technicians, and practicing pharmacists, you will hear many different idiomatic expressions. Some of you will understand and know how to use these expressions correctly. At times, however, you may not understand what your professors, colleagues, and patients are saying. This of course can lead to miscommunication, embarrassment, and possibly dangerous mistakes.

To help you improve your knowledge of idioms and idiomatic expressions, carefully read the following idiomatic expressions that contain the body words of head, mind, and brain.

### Idiomatic Expressions using “Head”

1. **to bite someone’s head off** is to be very angry at someone.

For example: I never know if the patients are going to be nice to me or if they’re going to **bite my head off** if they have to wait a long time for their prescription.

2. **to hang one’s head** means to be embarrassed and ashamed.

For example: After being found responsible for cheating on the exam, the student **hung his head** and left the professor’s office.

3. **to keep your head above water** means to have a difficult time surviving because of money and other problems.

For example: Since losing his job it’s been difficult for him to **keep his head above water**.

4. **to lose one’s head** means to be unable to stay calm.

For example: After being told to work faster, the pharmacy technician **lost his head** and began yelling at the pharmacist.

5. **to keep one’s head** means to remain calm.

For example: Despite the angry and impatient patients who waited a long time for their prescriptions, the pharmacy staff **kept their heads**.

### Idiomatic Expressions using “Mind”

1. **give someone a piece of one’s mind** means to tell someone how angry you are.

For example: The patient gave her doctor **a piece of her mind** after she waited two hours in the waiting room for her appointment.

2. **one’s mind goes blank** means the person cannot remember something.

For example: When the pharmacist asked me for my phone number, **my mind went blank**.

3. **boggles the mind** means that something is confusing and difficult to accept or imagine.

For example: Why he would cheat on the final exam and risk getting expelled from the university really **boggles the mind**.

4. **peace of mind** means a feeling of calm and no worries.

For example: The good results of my blood test gave me **peace of mind**.

5. **mind-numbing** means to be extremely boring.

For example: The lecture and the professor were both **mind-numbing**.

### Idiomatic Expressions using “Brain”

1. **to pick someone’s brain** means to ask someone who knows a lot about something for advice and information.

For example: She really **picked the pharmacy owner’s brain** about how to open her own community pharmacy.

2. **to rack/beat one’s brains** means to think very hard and long about something.

For example: She really **racked/beat her brains** before deciding to accept a job on the East Coast instead of on the West Coast.

## Mini Dialogues Listening Exercise

How much did you understand? Listen to the following mini dialogues on the audio files found in Chapter 9 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), read the questions below, and then choose the correct answer.



### Mini Dialogue #1

1. \_\_\_\_\_ *My mind went blank* means:
- I could remember everything
  - I couldn't remember some things
  - I had dementia



### Mini Dialogue #2

2. \_\_\_\_\_ *Bit my head off* means:
- the patient bit my head
  - the patient gave me a headache
  - the patient was very angry



### Mini Dialogue #3

3. \_\_\_\_\_ *Giving her a piece of my mind* means:
- having an intellectual conversation with her
  - sharing information with her
  - telling her how angry you are



### Mini Dialogue #4

4. \_\_\_\_\_ *Keep my head above water* means:
- I will not drown in debt
  - I will have a difficult time surviving because of my money problems
  - I will drown in debt



### Mini Dialogue #5

5. \_\_\_\_\_ *Boggles the mind* means:
- difficult to accept
  - difficult to think
  - difficult to remember



### Mini Dialogue #6

6. \_\_\_\_\_ *To pick Ed's brain* means:
- to exam his head carefully
  - to think about him for a long time
  - to ask him for advice and information

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## POST-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ The idiom **to bite one's head off** means to be very hungry.
2. \_\_\_\_ Epileptic and epilepsy are noun forms.
3. \_\_\_\_ Atrophy means the muscles become strong.
4. \_\_\_\_ Disorientation is an adjective form of disoriented.
5. \_\_\_\_ If a person **loses his head**, the person is very confused.
6. \_\_\_\_ Heat, such as a very hot bath, will help a person with MS feel better.
7. \_\_\_\_ Partial seizures and generalized seizures are two kinds of epileptic seizures.
8. \_\_\_\_ Neurologically and neurologic are adjective forms.
9. \_\_\_\_ ALS is a disease that affects the spine.
10. \_\_\_\_ Bipolar disorder is a symptom of SAD.
11. \_\_\_\_ If a person **gives another person a piece of their mind**, they are very calm.
12. \_\_\_\_ Regular exercise to help improve balance and mobility is important for patients with Parkinson's disease.
13. \_\_\_\_ People with GAD are glad more than they are sad.
14. \_\_\_\_ Another name for seasonal affective disorder is winter blues.
15. \_\_\_\_ Lou Gehrig's disease is another name for Parkinson's disease.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **panic** is:
  - a. panicked
  - b. panicky
  - c. panicked and panicky
2. \_\_\_\_ Numbness and weakness in the body are symptoms of:
  - a. SAD
  - b. GAD
  - c. MS
3. \_\_\_\_ To **pick another person's brain** means to:
  - a. think long and hard about something
  - b. to ask for advice and information
  - c. to be very angry
4. \_\_\_\_ A stooped posture and a shuffling walk are characteristic of patients with:
  - a. Parkinson's disease
  - b. MS
  - c. ALS
5. \_\_\_\_ In this sentence, "Alzheimer's disease is a degenerative disease that leads to irreversible mental impairment," the word **degenerative** is:
  - a. an adjective and the word irreversible is a noun
  - b. an adjective and the word irreversible is an adjective
  - c. a noun and the word irreversible is an adjective
6. \_\_\_\_ Betaseron is used to treat:
  - a. ALS

- b. MS  
c. SAD
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Another term for manic-depression is:  
a. GAD  
b. bipolar disorder  
c. SAD
8. \_\_\_\_\_ If a person **hangs their head**, they are:  
a. embarrassed or ashamed  
b. angry  
c. calm
9. \_\_\_\_\_ SAD can be triggered by:  
a. too much light  
b. decreased daylight in the winter time  
c. photosensitivity
10. \_\_\_\_\_ In the sentence, “Depression is a serious illness that can disable some people and cause others to become suicidal,” the word **disable** is:  
a. a verb and the word suicidal is an adjective  
b. a verb and the word suicidal is a noun  
c. a noun and the word suicidal is an adjective
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The word **coordinated** is:  
a. an adjective and a verb  
b. a verb  
c. a noun
12. \_\_\_\_\_ Seasonal affective disorder affects people:  
a. only in the fall and winter  
b. only in the spring and summer  
c. in the fall, winter, spring, and summer
13. \_\_\_\_\_ Complications and dangers from epilepsy include:  
a. swallowing the tongue  
b. head injury and drowning  
c. permanent staring
14. \_\_\_\_\_ Tegretol is used to treat:  
a. certain kinds of epilepsy  
b. certain kinds of MS  
c. certain kinds of depression
15. \_\_\_\_\_ In the sentence, “Trembling, difficulty walking, and muscle rigidity are typical symptoms found in Parkinson’s disease,” the word **rigidity** is:  
a. a noun  
b. a verb  
c. an adjective

## Listening and Comprehension Exercises



### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes

---

---

---

---

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Joseph Thompson, and the pharmacist's name is Andrea Caruso
  - b. Joseph Caruso, and the pharmacist's name is Andrea Thompson
  - c. Andrea Thompson, and the pharmacist's name is Joseph Caruso
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient has been diagnosed with:
  - a. Alzheimer's disease
  - b. Parkinson's disease
  - c. ALS
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist he has been:
  - a. shaky, trembling, and has muscle stiffness
  - b. shaky, trembling, and has muscle weakness
  - c. shaky, trembling, and cannot walk
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient has a history of:
  - a. diabetes, high cholesterol, and constipation
  - b. diabetes and high cholesterol
  - c. high cholesterol and constipation
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's cholesterol level:
  - a. was 268 and was lowered to 168 with Lipitor 2 years ago
  - b. was 268 and was lowered to 168 with Lipitor 2 months ago
  - c. was 286 and was lowered to 168 without medication 2 years ago
6. \_\_\_\_\_ When the patient had high cholesterol:
  - a. he weighed 225 pounds and now weighs 200 pounds
  - b. he weighed 225 pounds and now weighs 190 pounds
  - c. he weighed 210 pounds and now weighs 199 pounds
7. \_\_\_\_\_ When he is constipated, the patient takes:
  - a. Metamucil and Sani-Supp
  - b. Citrucel only
  - c. Sani-Supp and Citrucel
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's date of birth is:
  - a. January 23, 1923 and he is 84 years old
  - b. January 23, 1945 and he is 63 years old
  - c. January 3, 1984 and he is 23 years old
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor who treated the patient's cholesterol is:
  - a. Dr. Elliot Soto
  - b. Dr. Elias Sheth
  - c. Dr. Elias Soto
10. \_\_\_\_\_ To treat Parkinson's disease:
  - a. Dr. Sanjay Sheth has prescribed Eldepryl
  - b. Dr. Elias Soto has prescribed Eldepryl
  - c. Dr. Sanjay Sheth has prescribed Elder



11. \_\_\_\_ To treat his Parkinson's, the pharmacist instructs the patient to take:
- a 5-mg capsule twice a day; one with breakfast and one with dinner
  - a 10-mg capsule once a day with breakfast
  - a 5-mg capsule twice a day; one with breakfast and one with lunch
12. \_\_\_\_ Common side effects of the medication include:
- dry mouth, dizziness, nausea, and trouble sleeping
  - dry mouth only
  - dizziness and trouble sleeping
13. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to avoid certain foods such as:
- red wine, cheese, salami, liverwurst, pickled herring, and soy sauce because they contain sugar and can cause serious high blood pressure
  - red wine, cheese, salami, liver, pickled herring, and soy sauce because they contain tyramine, which can cause serious high blood pressure
  - red wine, cheese, salami, liver, pickled herring, and soy sauce because they do not contain tyramine
14. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to eat healthy foods such as:
- fruits, vegetables, and whole grains because they will help to prevent constipation, which is common in patients whose digestive tract is affected by Parkinson's
  - fruits, vegetables, and whole grains because they will help to improve his walking
  - fruits, vegetables, and whole grains because they will help to improve his tremors
15. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist advises the patient:
- to stop walking and recommends he visit the American Parkinson's Disease Association website
  - that Parkinson's is curable and that he should continue to walk
  - that Parkinson's is not curable, but is treatable, that walking and swimming are good forms of exercise, that he should call his doctor if he notices that is having difficulty speaking, chewing, and swallowing, and that he should visit the American Parkinson's Disease Association website for more information about the disease



### **Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

- \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - Karen Frank, and the pharmacist's name is Eric Manning
  - Eric Manning, and the pharmacist's name is Karen Frank
  - Karen Manning, and the pharmacist's name is Eric Frank
- \_\_\_\_ The patient's prescription is for:
  - Zantac to treat her generalized anxiety disorder
  - Xanax to treat her depression
  - Xanax to treat her generalized anxiety disorder

3. \_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is:
  - a. December 31, 1968 and she is 38
  - b. December 1, 1968 and she is 38
  - c. December 30, 1968 and she is 38
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient's address is:
  - a. 37 Marina Drive and her telephone number is 767-1187
  - b. 37 Marina Drive and her telephone number is 766-1187
  - c. 37 Marina Drive and her telephone number is 766-1186
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor's name is:
  - a. Brian Duncan
  - b. Ryan Duncan
  - c. Brian Dunn
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient has:
  - a. allergies and is currently taking birth control pills and vitamins
  - b. no allergies and is currently taking only vitamins
  - c. no allergies and is currently taking birth control pills and vitamins
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient's medical history and conditions include:
  - a. appendicitis, nail fungal infection, and acid reflux
  - b. appendicitis and acid reflux
  - c. nail fungal infection and acid reflux
8. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that Xanax will:
  - a. treat her anxiety and produce a sleepy effect
  - b. cure her anxiety and produce a calming effect
  - c. treat her anxiety and produce a calming effect
9. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that her anxiety has been triggered by:
  - a. her boss and her work, and that she can't sleep and can't concentrate
  - b. her boss and her work, and that she can't sleep, can't concentrate, feels restless, gets headaches, and sometimes gets diarrhea
  - c. her boss and her work, and that she hasn't been able to work
10. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist's advice to the patient that Xanax:
  - a. is an anti-anxiety sedative that is not habit-forming
  - b. is an anti-anxiety sedative that is habit-forming and produces dependency
  - c. is not an anti-anxiety sedative
11. \_\_\_\_ Side effects of the medication include:
  - a. drowsiness, dizziness, slurred speech, clumsiness, and difficulty walking
  - b. dry mouth and dizziness
  - c. slurred speech
12. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist advises the patient that if she doesn't feel better:
  - a. she should double her dosage
  - b. she should tell her doctor, and that she take care of herself by walking, eating well, and avoiding alcohol, nicotine, and caffeine
  - c. she should discontinue taking her medication

How did you do on the Post-Assessment in Chapter 9? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

## PRE-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ The voluntary loss of urine is called **incontinence**.
2. \_\_\_\_ Loss of urine caused by coughing, laughing, sneezing, lifting heavy objects, or exercising is called **stress incontinence**.
3. \_\_\_\_ **Interstitial cystitis** is a painful and chronic bladder syndrome.
4. \_\_\_\_ An **overactive bladder**, which is also known as an irritable bladder, causes the sudden urge to hold in urine.
5. \_\_\_\_ The noun forms of **leak** are leak and leakage.
6. \_\_\_\_ A risk factor for developing **urinary tract infection** (UTI) is a kidney stone.
7. \_\_\_\_ Factors that contribute to an **overactive bladder** include, but are not limited to, UTI, an enlarged prostate, diabetes, and excessive alcohol and caffeine consumption.
8. \_\_\_\_ Obese people have a much lower risk of experiencing **stress incontinence**.
9. \_\_\_\_ Men who experience the urgent need to urinate, who have difficulty urinating, or who experience pain during urination should be tested for **prostate cancer**.
10. \_\_\_\_ The noun form of **urgent** is urge.
11. \_\_\_\_ **Overactive bladder** that includes urge incontinence is called overactive bladder, wet; and overactive bladder that does not include urge incontinence is referred to as overactive bladder, dry.
12. \_\_\_\_ Symptoms of a **kidney infection**, which is a specific type of UTI, include a burning sensation while urinating, pus or blood in the urine, and frequent urination at night.
13. \_\_\_\_ **Urethritis** and **cystitis** are types of bladder control problems.
14. \_\_\_\_ **Urinary incontinence** is the ability to control the release of urine from the bladder.
15. \_\_\_\_ Another word for urinate is **void**.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ An untreated kidney infection can lead to:
  - a. blood poisoning
  - b. dehydration
  - c. excessive urination
2. \_\_\_\_ A risk factor for developing **interstitial cystitis** is:
  - a. obesity
  - b. excessive urination
  - c. sexual intercourse

3. \_\_\_\_ To help decrease the risk of **urinary incontinence**, one should:
  - a. drink as little water as possible
  - b. maintain a healthy weight and eat more fiber, which helps to prevent constipation, which can cause incontinence
  - c. avoid alcohol completely
4. \_\_\_\_ **Nocturnal enuresis** is the medical term for:
  - a. nighttime bed wetting
  - b. toilet trained
  - c. uncontrollable leaking
5. \_\_\_\_ Neurologic disorders such as Parkinson's disease can contribute to:
  - a. prostate cancer
  - b. overactive bladder
  - c. stress incontinence
6. \_\_\_\_ Drinking cranberry juice and water can help to reduce the risk of getting:
  - a. UTI
  - b. overactive bladder
  - c. reflex incontinence
7. \_\_\_\_ **Total incontinence** is used to describe:
  - a. loss of urine without warning
  - b. periodic large volumes of urine and uncontrollable leaking or continuous leaking of urine
  - c. wetting the bed at night
8. \_\_\_\_ The word **burning** is:
  - a. a noun and an adjective
  - b. a verb only
  - c. a noun only
9. \_\_\_\_ Benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH) refers to:
  - a. inflammation of the prostate
  - b. a condition that causes the prostate to enlarge and incontinence
  - c. a condition that causes the prostate to shrink
10. \_\_\_\_ The expression "**I need to take a piss**" means:
  - a. I need to urinate
  - b. I need to go away
  - c. I cannot control my urine

How did you do? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

## MEDICAL VOCABULARY

---

A good understanding of vocabulary words in pharmacy is very important for communication with professors, fellow students, patients, and coworkers. Knowledge and understanding of vocabulary leads to successful communication and success as a pharmacy student, as a pharmacy technician, and as a practicing pharmacist. You may already know many of the vocabulary words in this chapter, but for words that are unfamiliar, pay careful attention to them and make every effort to know their correct spelling, meaning, and pronunciation. It is a good idea to keep a list of new words and to look up these new words in a bilingual dictionary or dictionary in your first language. A good command of pharmacy-related vocabulary and good pronunciation of vocabulary will help to prevent embarrassing mistakes and increase effective verbal communication skills.

## Urinary System Vocabulary

absorbent pads	hematuria	pessary
bed wetting	impede	postvoid residual
bladder	incontinence	urine
bladder training	interstitial cystitis	septicemia
catheter	involuntary	toilet
contents	contraction	urethra
contract	Kegel exercises	urethral inserts
cystitis	kidney infection	urethritis
double voiding	leakage	urinalysis
drain	nocturia	urinary sphincter
dribbles	nocturnal enuresis	urinary tract infection
emptying	overactive bladder	urinate
enlarged prostate	overflow	urine output
flow	pelvis	void

## PARTS OF SPEECH

A good understanding of parts of speech, such as verbs, nouns, adjectives, and adverbs, is important for successful communication when speaking or writing. It is equally important to know the various forms of words and to use them appropriately.

### Word Forms

The table below lists the main forms of some terms that you will likely encounter in pharmacy practice. Review the table and then do the exercises that follow to assess your understanding.

<b>Noun (n)</b>	<b>Infinitive/Verb (v)</b> —Past Tense	<b>Adjective (adj)</b>	<b>Adverb (adv)</b>
absorbency; absorption	to absorb; absorbed	absorbent	
drainage	to drain; drained	draining	
dribble	to dribble; dribbled	dribbling	
emptiness; emptying	to empty; emptied	empty	
enlargement	to enlarge; enlarged	enlarged	
flow	to flow; flowed	flowing	flowingly
hematuria		hematuric	
impediment	to impede; impeded	impedimental; impedimentary	
incontinence		incontinent	
involuntariness		involuntary	involuntarily
leak; leakage	to leak; leaked	leaking	
overactivity		overactive	
residue		residual	
septicemia		septicemic	
urethra		urethral	
urine; urinalysis; urination; urinator	to urinate; urinated	urinative	

**Word Forms Exercise**

Read the following sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv.

1. **Unintentional urine loss** caused by **physical** activity such as sneezing, coughing, laughing, and lifting heavy objects is called **stress incontinence**.  
unintentional \_\_\_\_ urine \_\_\_\_ loss \_\_\_\_ physical \_\_\_\_ stress incontinence \_\_\_\_
2. Symptoms of **urinary** tract infection, or **UTI**, include the **urge** to **urinate**, a **burning** sensation when **urinating**, and passing small amounts of **urine** frequently.  
urinary \_\_\_\_ UTI \_\_\_\_ urge \_\_\_\_ urinate \_\_\_\_ burning \_\_\_\_  
urinating \_\_\_\_ urine \_\_\_\_
3. Loss of **bladder control**, also known as **urinary incontinence**, causes the inability to control the **release** of urine in the form of minor **leaks** or **dribbles** to **wetting** one's clothes.  
bladder control \_\_\_\_ urinary incontinence \_\_\_\_ release \_\_\_\_ leaks \_\_\_\_  
dribbles \_\_\_\_ wetting \_\_\_\_
4. The type of urinary incontinence that makes a person feel like they need to **empty** their **bladder** but can't and continue to **constantly dribble** urine is called **overflow incontinence**.  
empty \_\_\_\_ bladder \_\_\_\_ constantly \_\_\_\_ dribble \_\_\_\_ overflow  
incontinence \_\_\_\_
5. Prostate cancer symptoms include **urgency** of urination, **dribbling** urine **flow**, pain during **urination**, and a **feeling** that the bladder is not **empty**.  
urgency \_\_\_\_ dribbling \_\_\_\_ flow \_\_\_\_ urination \_\_\_\_ feeling \_\_\_\_ empty \_\_\_\_
6. Waking up during the night to **urinate**, **urinating** more than eight times during a 24-hour period, and experiencing urge incontinence and losing **urine** are symptoms commonly found in **overactive** bladder, also referred to as **irritable** bladder.  
urinate \_\_\_\_ urinating \_\_\_\_ urine \_\_\_\_ overactive \_\_\_\_ irritable \_\_\_\_
7. Several factors contribute to and **exacerbate** stress **incontinence**, including childbirth, prostate surgery, **urinary** tract infection, smoking, which causes coughing, and **diabetes**, which can **cause excessive** urine production.  
exacerbate \_\_\_\_ incontinence \_\_\_\_ urinary \_\_\_\_ diabetes \_\_\_\_ cause \_\_\_\_ excess \_\_\_\_
8. The type of urinary incontinence that **affects** some children, especially boys, is called **nocturnal enuresis**, and is more **commonly** known as **bed wetting** at night.  
affects \_\_\_\_ nocturnal enuresis \_\_\_\_ commonly \_\_\_\_ bed wetting \_\_\_\_
9. **Interstitial cystitis**, also known as **painful** bladder **syndrome**, is chronic inflammation of the bladder that causes a **persistent urge** to urinate, pain and **pressure** around the bladder, and **pain** during sexual intercourse.  
interstitial cystitis \_\_\_\_ painful \_\_\_\_ syndrome \_\_\_\_ persistent \_\_\_\_  
urge \_\_\_\_ pressure \_\_\_\_ pain \_\_\_\_
10. Symptoms of **cystitis**, which is **inflammation** or infection of the bladder and a type of urinary tract infection, include the urge to **urinate**, a burning sensation, and blood in the **urine**; cystitis can become a **serious** health problem if it **spreads** to the kidneys.  
cystitis \_\_\_\_ inflammation \_\_\_\_ urinate \_\_\_\_ urine \_\_\_\_ serious \_\_\_\_  
spreads \_\_\_\_
11. Many cases of overactive bladder occur because the muscles of the bladder **involuntarily contract** when the bladder is still filling or is only half full to create **contractions** and the urgent **need to urinate**.  
involuntarily \_\_\_\_ contract \_\_\_\_ contractions \_\_\_\_ need \_\_\_\_ urinate \_\_\_\_

12. An enlarged **prostate** can compress the **urethra** and **impede** urine flow from the bladder, which can cause **retention** and the **need** for **frequent** urination.  
prostate \_\_\_\_ urethra \_\_\_\_ impede \_\_\_\_ retention \_\_\_\_ need \_\_\_\_ frequent \_\_\_\_
13. Nausea, vomiting, **shaking chills**, high fever, and back pain are symptoms of acute pyelonephritis, a type of urinary tract **infection** that **infects** the kidney as a result of a **spreading** bladder infection.  
shaking \_\_\_\_ chills \_\_\_\_ infection \_\_\_\_ infects \_\_\_\_ spreading \_\_\_\_
14. **Complications** of interstitial cystitis include **interrupted** sleep, **emotional** stress, **interference** with social and work activities, and sexual **intimacy**.  
complications \_\_\_\_ interrupted \_\_\_\_ emotional \_\_\_\_ interference \_\_\_\_ intimacy \_\_\_\_
15. People suffering from urge **incontinence** are **susceptible** to **complications** such as anxiety, depression, and **poor concentration**.  
incontinence \_\_\_\_ susceptible \_\_\_\_ complications \_\_\_\_ poor \_\_\_\_ concentration \_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### *Typical Medical Conditions and Patient Complaints*

The sentences below contain vocabulary that describes and explains typical medical conditions, diseases, symptoms, and patient complaints that a pharmacist encounters. Read the sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv. Look up words you do not know in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

- Before he was diagnosed with an **enlarged prostate**, the patient had **complained** that he was unable to **empty** his bladder but that he had the **urgent need** to urinate often.  
enlarged prostate \_\_\_\_ complained \_\_\_\_ empty \_\_\_\_ urgent \_\_\_\_ need \_\_\_\_
- Cystitis in women whose **bladder** becomes **infected** as a result of **bacteria** being introduced into the bladder through the **urethra** during sexual intercourse is sometimes called **honeymoon cystitis**.  
bladder \_\_\_\_ infected \_\_\_\_ bacteria \_\_\_\_ urethra \_\_\_\_ honeymoon cystitis \_\_\_\_
- Avoiding **certain** foods, such as caffeine, chocolate, citrus, tomatoes, alcohol, and foods **high** in vitamin C, which can **irritate** the bladder, can **relieve interstitial cystitis**.  
certain \_\_\_\_ high \_\_\_\_ irritate \_\_\_\_ relieve \_\_\_\_ interstitial cystitis \_\_\_\_
- People who suffer from overactive bladder can help **alleviate** their symptoms by practicing **interventions** such as reducing fluid **intake**, increasing fiber intake, **training** the bladder to delay **voiding**, and double voiding, which means trying to **urinate** again after urinating.  
alleviate \_\_\_\_ interventions \_\_\_\_ intake \_\_\_\_ training \_\_\_\_ voiding \_\_\_\_ urinate \_\_\_\_
- Types of devices to help women who suffer from stress incontinence include a **urethral plug**, which is a tampon-like **disposable device** inserted in the urethra to prevent **leakage**, and a bladder neck support device **inserted** into the vagina to lift the bladder.  
urethral \_\_\_\_ plug \_\_\_\_ disposable \_\_\_\_ device \_\_\_\_ leakage \_\_\_\_ inserted \_\_\_\_
- Urethritis, inflammation** or infection of the bladder, **causes** a **burning** sensation when urinating, and in some men causes a penile **discharge**.  
urethritis \_\_\_\_ inflammation \_\_\_\_ causes \_\_\_\_ burning \_\_\_\_ discharge \_\_\_\_
- It is important for women to **urinate** as soon as they feel the **urge** and not keep **urine** in the bladder, to **empty** the bladder right after sexual intercourse, and to **wipe** from the front to the back after a bowel movement to **avoid** bacteria from entering the vagina to help **reduce** urinary tract infection.  
urinate \_\_\_\_ urge \_\_\_\_ urine \_\_\_\_ empty \_\_\_\_ wipe \_\_\_\_ avoid \_\_\_\_ reduce \_\_\_\_

8. Patients with certain **medical** or physical **impairments** such as arthritis or Alzheimer's disease, which **prevents** them from getting to the bathroom on time to **urinate**, will experience a type of urinary incontinence called **functional incontinence**.  
 medical \_\_\_\_ impairments \_\_\_\_ prevents \_\_\_\_ urinate \_\_\_\_ functional incontinence \_\_\_\_
9. An **enlarged** prostate can **constrict** the urethra and **block urine flow**, which can result in the **urge to release** urine, also known as overflow incontinence.  
 enlarged \_\_\_\_ constrict \_\_\_\_ block \_\_\_\_ urine flow \_\_\_\_ urge \_\_\_\_ release \_\_\_\_
10. To reduce the **risk** of kidney infection, it is important to drink plenty of water and cranberry juice to help remove bacteria from the body during **urination**, to **urinate** frequently and not hold in **urine**, and to **shower** rather than bathe to prevent **moisture** that can cause infection.  
 risk \_\_\_\_ urination \_\_\_\_ urinate \_\_\_\_ urine \_\_\_\_ shower \_\_\_\_ moisture \_\_\_\_
11. Two types of bladder infection, or **cystitis**, caused by bacteria are **community-acquired** bladder infection, which is not acquired in hospitals and nursing homes, and **hospital-acquired** bladder infection, which occurs as a result of **urinary** catheters inserted in the urethra to **collect** urine.  
 cystitis \_\_\_\_ community-acquired \_\_\_\_ hospital-acquired \_\_\_\_ urinary \_\_\_\_ collect \_\_\_\_
12. In women, **urethritis** can be caused by **sexually transmitted diseases** such as herpes simplex and **chlamydia**, and in men urethritis can be caused by gonorrhea and chlamydia.  
 urethritis \_\_\_\_ sexually \_\_\_\_ transmitted \_\_\_\_ diseases \_\_\_\_ chlamydia \_\_\_\_
13. An enlarged prostate can lead to other **complications** such as interrupted **sleep**, the inability to **empty** the bladder, **recurrent** bladder infections, and potential kidney **damage**.  
 complications \_\_\_\_ sleep \_\_\_\_ empty \_\_\_\_ recurrent \_\_\_\_ damage \_\_\_\_
14. **Diabetics** and people with an **abnormal** urinary tract, an enlarged prostate, low immune systems, and those who have had a **catheter inserted** in their bladder, may be more **prone** to developing urinary tract infections.  
 diabetics \_\_\_\_ abnormal \_\_\_\_ catheter \_\_\_\_ inserted \_\_\_\_ prone \_\_\_\_
15. Overactive bladder is caused by a **sudden, involuntary** muscle **contraction** in the wall of the bladder that **leads to urination urgency**.  
 sudden \_\_\_\_ involuntary \_\_\_\_ contraction \_\_\_\_ leads \_\_\_\_ urination \_\_\_\_ urgency \_\_\_\_
16. Causes of urinary **incontinence** include pregnancy, childbirth, menopause, **prostate** surgery, **impaired** thinking such as forgetfulness and **senility**, and **various** diseases and medications.  
 incontinence \_\_\_\_ prostate \_\_\_\_ impaired \_\_\_\_ senility \_\_\_\_ various \_\_\_\_
17. **Ulceration** and bleeding of the bladder, which can lead to **scarring** and bladder **stiffness**, can be caused by interstitial cystitis, a **chronic inflammatory** disease of the bladder.  
 ulceration \_\_\_\_ scarring \_\_\_\_ stiffness \_\_\_\_ chronic \_\_\_\_ inflammatory \_\_\_\_
18. Symptoms of kidney infection include **pus** and blood in the **urine**; back, side, and **groin** pain, **frequent** urination, a burning **sensation**, nausea, and a **fever**.  
 pus \_\_\_\_ urine \_\_\_\_ groin \_\_\_\_ frequent \_\_\_\_ sensation \_\_\_\_ fever \_\_\_\_
19. Left **untreated**, cystitis can cause scarring and **formation** of **stones** as a result of holding in **urine** to avoid **painful urination**.  
 untreated \_\_\_\_ formation \_\_\_\_ stones \_\_\_\_ urine \_\_\_\_ painful \_\_\_\_ urination \_\_\_\_
20. **Regular** exercise, reducing alcohol and caffeine **consumption**, and a **diet** high in fiber can help **reduce** the **risk** of **overactive** bladder.  
 regular \_\_\_\_ consumption \_\_\_\_ diet \_\_\_\_ reduce \_\_\_\_ risk \_\_\_\_ overactive \_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.



## Medical Vocabulary Comprehension

Now that you have read sentences 1 through 15 describing language regarding the urinary system, assess your understanding by doing the exercises below.

### *Multiple Choice Questions*

Choose the answer that correctly completes each sentence below.

1. \_\_\_\_ Unintentional urine loss caused by sneezing, coughing, or heavy lifting is called:
  - a. overflow incontinence
  - b. dribbling
  - c. stress incontinence
2. \_\_\_\_ A symptom of an **enlarged prostate** is:
  - a. leakage
  - b. inability to empty the bladder
  - c. double voiding
3. \_\_\_\_ Another term for loss of bladder control is:
  - a. urinary incontinence
  - b. urgency
  - c. persistent urge
4. \_\_\_\_ A **catheter** in the bladder can cause:
  - a. involuntary muscle contraction in the wall of the bladder
  - b. urinary tract infection
  - c. chronic inflammation of the bladder
5. \_\_\_\_ Another term for **nocturnal enuresis** is:
  - a. bed wetting at night
  - b. urethritis
  - c. retaining urine
6. \_\_\_\_ A person experiencing pus and blood in the urine should be tested for:
  - a. kidney infection
  - b. overflow incontinence
  - c. bacteria
7. \_\_\_\_ **Community-acquired bladder infection** is a type of:
  - a. overactive bladder
  - b. functional incontinence
  - c. cystitis
8. \_\_\_\_ To reduce the risk of **kidney infection**, it is important to:
  - a. drink plenty of water and cranberry juice to help remove bacteria during urination
  - b. double void
  - c. resist the urge to urinate
9. \_\_\_\_ An **enlarged prostate** can:
  - a. cause overflow incontinence
  - b. impede urine flow
  - c. cause inflammation of the bladder

10. \_\_\_\_ Symptoms of **urinary tract infection** include:
  - a. the urge to urinate and a burning sensation when urinating
  - b. loss of bladder control
  - c. excess urine production
11. \_\_\_\_ Chronic inflammation of the bladder that causes a persistent urge to urinate, pain in the bladder, and pain during sexual intercourse can be caused by:
  - a. an enlarged prostate
  - b. interstitial cystitis
  - c. stress incontinence
12. \_\_\_\_ Pregnancy, childbirth, prostate surgery, and diabetes can exacerbate:
  - a. enuresis
  - b. cystitis
  - c. stress incontinence
13. \_\_\_\_ **Cystitis** can be the cause of:
  - a. scarring and formation of stones resulting from holding in urine to avoid painful urination
  - b. scarring and formation of stones due to leakage
  - c. overactive bladder
14. \_\_\_\_ Patients suffering from **urge incontinence** are susceptible to:
  - a. anxiety and depression
  - b. kidney infection
  - c. chlamydia
15. \_\_\_\_ Another term for **overactive bladder** is:
  - a. irritable bladder
  - b. empty bladder
  - c. full bladder

### *True/False Questions*

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ The type of urinary incontinence that causes a person to constantly dribble urine is called overflow incontinence.
2. \_\_\_\_ Cystitis will not become a serious health problem if it spreads to the kidneys.
3. \_\_\_\_ People who suffer from overactive bladder can help alleviate their symptoms if they reduce the amount of fluid intake and learn how to train their bladder to delay voiding.
4. \_\_\_\_ Urethritis is inflammation of the kidneys and causes a penile discharge in some men.
5. \_\_\_\_ Another word for cystitis that results from sexual intercourse as a result of bacteria being introduced into the bladder through the urethra is honeymoon cystitis.
6. \_\_\_\_ The words “urination” and “urine” are nouns.
7. \_\_\_\_ A type of urinary incontinence that affects children, especially boys, is functional incontinence.
8. \_\_\_\_ Septicemic is the adjective form of septicemia.
9. \_\_\_\_ Urethritis is inflammation or infection of the bladder and causes a burning sensation when urinating.
10. \_\_\_\_ Exercising regularly and reducing alcohol, caffeine, and fiber intake will help decrease the risk of overactive bladder.

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### **Writing Exercise**

An important part of communication is the ability to write about what you read, to write correctly, and to spell correctly. In the exercises below, write your understanding of the meaning of the bolded words.

1. Describe in writing what **stress incontinence**, **urge incontinence**, **overflow incontinence**, and **functional incontinence** are.

---

---

---

---

2. Describe in writing what **urinary tract infection** is.

---

---

---

---

3. Describe in writing what **cystitis** and **interstitial cystitis** are.

---

---

---

---

4. Describe in writing what **enlarged prostate** and **kidney infection** are.

---

---

---

---

5. Describe in writing what **overactive bladder** and **nocturnal enuresis** are.

---

---

---

---

Check what you have written with acceptable answers that appear in the Answer Key online.

## **LISTENING AND PRONUNCIATION**

The ability to listen and understand what is being said and heard, and the ability to pronounce words clearly, is extremely important. A word misheard and a word mispronounced will lead to poor communication and can seriously put both the pharmacist and patient in danger. Therefore, it is very important that one hear clearly what another person has said, and that one speak clearly with correct pronunciation.

Listen carefully to the pharmacy-related words presented in the audio files found in Chapter 10 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), and then pronounce them as accurately as you can. Listen and then repeat. You will listen to each word once and then you will repeat it. You will do this twice for each word. Listening and pronunciation practice will increase your listening and speaking confidence. Many languages do not produce or emphasize certain sounds produced and emphasized in English, so pay careful attention to the pronunciation of each word.



## Pronunciation Exercise

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 10 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)). Listen and repeat the words. Then say the words aloud for additional practice.

1. absorbent pad	əb-sôr' bənt pəd
2. bed wetting	bēd wēt ng
3. bladder	blād' ər
4. bladder training	blād' ər trā' nŋ
5. catheter	kāth' ĩ-tər
6. contents	kōn' tēnt' s
7. contract	kōn' trākt'
8. cystitis	sĭ-stĭ' tĭs
9. double voiding	dūb' əl voidng
10. drain	drān
11. dribbles	drĭb' əls
12. empty	ēmp' tē
13. enlarged prostate	ēn-lārj' t prōs' tāt'
14. flow	flō
15. hematuria	hē' mət- tōōr' ē-ə
16. impede	ĭm-pēd'
17. incontinence	ĭn-kōn' tən- əns
18. interstitial cystitis	ĭn' tər-stĭsh' əl sĭ-stĭ' tĭs
19. involuntary contraction	ĭn-vōl' ən-tēr' ē kōn' trākt' shən
20. Kegel exercises	kē gəl ēk' sər-sĭz' ēs
21. kidney infection	kĭd' nē ĭn-fēk' shən
22. leakage	lē' kĭj
23. nocturia	nōk-tūreə
24. nocturnal enuresis	nōk-tūr' nəl ēn' yər- ē' sĭs
25. overactive bladder	ō' vər- ākt' ĩv blād' ər
26. overflow	ō' vər-flō'
27. pelvis	pēl' vĭs
28. pessary	pēs' ə-rē
29. postvoid residual urine	pōst void rĭ-zĭj' ōō- əl yōōr' ĭn
30. septicemia	sēp' tĭ-sē' mē- ə
31. toilet	toi' lĭt
32. urethra	yōō- rē' thrə
33. urethral insert	yōō- rē' thrōl ĭn' sūrt'
34. urethritis	yōōr' ĭ-thrĭ' tĭs
35. urinalysis	yōōr' ə-nāl' ĭ-sĭs
36. urinary sphincter	yōōr' ə-nēr' ē sfĭngk' tər
37. urinary tract infection	yōōr' ə-nēr' ē trākt ĭn-fēk' shən
38. urinate	yōōr' ə-nāt'
39. urine output	yōōr' ĭn out' pōōt'
40. void	void

Which words are easy to pronounce? Which are difficult to pronounce? Use the space below to write in the words that you find difficult to pronounce. These are words you should practice saying often.

---



---



---

---



---



---



---

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 10 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) as many times as you need to increase your pronunciation ability of the difficult words. Pronounce these words with a friend or a colleague who speaks English.

### English Sounds That Are Difficult for Speakers of Other Languages to Pronounce

#### Spanish

In Spanish, there is no English “v” sound, but the “v” consonant in Spanish is pronounced like the English “b.” The vowel “i” is pronounced like a long “e.” Pay careful attention to the “v” sound in English when pronouncing words that begin with “v.” Also pay careful attention to English words that begin with “s;” do not use the Spanish “es” sound when pronouncing English words that begin with “s.”

For example, in English,

cystitis is not pronounced seesteetees

#### Vietnamese

In Vietnamese, the “t” consonant is pronounced “s,” but in English the “t” is pronounced “t” and “s” is pronounced “s.” Be careful with English words that begin with “t.” In Vietnamese, the “b” consonant is pronounced “p,” but in English “p” is pronounced “p” and “b” is pronounced “b.”

In Vietnamese, words do not end in “b,” “ch,” “f,” “d,” “j,” “l,” “p,” “r,” “s,” “sh,” “v,” and “z.” In English, words end in these letters. Pay special attention to pronouncing these English sounds. In Vietnamese, there is no “dzh” or “zh” sound, so English words like “judge” (dzh) and “rupture” (zh) will be hard for Vietnamese speakers to pronounce.

For example, in English,

contents is not pronounced conteh

#### Gujarati

In Gujarati, “v” is pronounced “w,” “f” is pronounced “p,” “p” is pronounced “f,” and “z” is pronounced “j.” Short “i” is pronounced long “e,” “x” is pronounced “ch,” and “th” is pronounced “s.” In English, “v” is pronounced “v,” “f” is pronounced “f,” “z” is pronounced “z” or “s,” “j” is pronounced “j,” and “x” is pronounced “x.” Pay careful attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

flow is not pronounced plo

#### Korean

In Korean, the “v” consonant is pronounced “b” and the “f” consonant is pronounced “p.” In English, the “v” is pronounced “v,” the “f” is pronounced “f,” and the “p” is pronounced “p.” Pay special attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

void is not pronounced boid

(continued)

**Chinese**

In Chinese, the “r” consonant is pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are not pronounced at all. Pay careful attention to English words that begin with “r” because the “r” is not pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are pronounced in English.

For example, in English,

impede is not pronounced impee

**Russian**

The “w” consonant is pronounced like a “v” and the “v” sound like a “w.” Pay careful attention to the English “th.” It is not pronounced “s.”

For example, in English,

void is not pronounced woid

**DICTATION****Listening/Spelling Exercise: Word and Word Pairs**

Listen to the words or word pairs on the audio files found in Chapter 10 on thePoint (thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_

**Listening/Spelling Exercise: Sentences**

Listen to the sentences on the audio files found in Chapter 10 on thePoint (thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Now, check your sentences against the correct answers in the Answer Key online. If there are any new words that you do not know or that you spelled incorrectly, make a list of those words and study them for meaning and spelling.

## PHARMACIST/PATIENT DIALOGUES

The ability to orally communicate effectively with your professors, colleagues, and especially with patients is very important. As a pharmacist, you will be counseling patients; patients will come to you for advice. They will have questions about a condition and symptoms they may experience and will ask you to help treat the condition. Therefore, it is extremely important that you understand what they are saying and that you respond to them and their questions appropriately. Your patients will speak differently. For example, some may speak very quickly, others too low, and yet others may speak angrily. To help you improve your listening skills, listen to the following dialogues, or short conversations, between a pharmacist and a patient and between a pharmacy technician and a patient.

### Listening and Comprehension Exercises



#### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Lisa Mattson
  - b. Leeza Matson
  - c. Leeza Mattson

2. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient has been prescribed:
  - a. bacitracin
  - b. Bactrim
  - c. Bethaprim
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor's name is:
  - a. Dr. Chen
  - b. Dr. Chang
  - c. Dr. Chinn
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's birth date is:
  - a. March 1, 1982
  - b. March 2, 1982
  - c. March 10, 1982
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's previous address was:
  - a. 11 Lancaster Road in Summit, and the current address is 1212 Warwick Avenue in Summit
  - b. 1212 Warwick Road in Lancaster, and the current address is 11 Summit Avenue in Lancaster
  - c. 1212 Warwick Avenue in Summit, and the current address is 11 Lancaster Road in Summit
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's phone number is:
  - a. 332-9376
  - b. 332-9763
  - c. 322-9376
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is allergic to:
  - a. birth control pills and nuts, and was taking Tylenol for the pressure in her lower abdomen and the burning sensation
  - b. nuts, is currently on birth control pills, and was taking Tylenol for the pressure in her lower abdomen and the burning sensation
  - c. nuts, was taking Tylenol for the pain in her lower abdomen, and is not on birth control pills
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient has been prescribed Bactrim because she has:
  - a. cystitis, an infection of the kidney
  - b. interstitial cystitis
  - c. cystitis, an infection of the bladder
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient the medication should give her peace of mind. This means:
  - a. her mind will be peaceful
  - b. she will experience a feeling of calm and feel less worried
  - c. she will be free to speak her mind
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor wants the patient to take the medication:
  - a. once a day with food only
  - b. twice a day: once in the morning and once in the evening with a full glass of water
  - c. twice a day: once in the morning and once in the evening with milk only
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that if the medication upsets her stomach, she can:
  - a. stop taking the medication
  - b. take the medicine with milk only
  - c. take the medicine with milk or food



12. \_\_\_\_ The patient must take the medication for:
- 15 days, but can stop taking it if she feels better
  - 15 weeks, and should not stop taking it even if she feels better
  - 15 days, and should not stop taking it even if she feels better
13. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that she has:
- a burning sensation when she urinates and feels like she has to urinate all the time
  - a burning sensation and is dribbling urine
  - a burning sensation and is wetting her clothes
14. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
- the medication can cause nausea, diarrhea, and headaches, and that she should not drink cranberry juice but instead use a heating pad to relieve the pressure in her lower abdomen
  - the medication can cause nausea, diarrhea, headaches, and a rash, and that cranberry juice can help get rid of her bladder infection and that a heating pad can relieve the pressure in her lower abdomen
  - she should not drink cranberry juice because it could cause nausea and diarrhea, but that a heating pad can relieve the pressure her in lower abdomen
15. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that her insurance is:
- Healthy Life Insurance
  - Personal Life Insurance
  - Live Healthy Insurance

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### **Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
- Luis Spagnola, and the pharmacist's name is Antonia Mercado
  - Antonia Mercado, and the pharmacist's name is Luis Spagnola
  - Luis Mercado, and the pharmacist's name is Antonia Spagnola
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient is in a:
- hospital
  - clinic
  - retail pharmacy
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient is:
- 63 and his date of birth is June 18, 1944
  - 44 and his date of birth is June 18, 1968
  - 63 and his date of birth is June 8, 1944

4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient has been diagnosed with:
  - a. an enlarged bladder
  - b. an enlarged urethra
  - c. an enlarged prostate
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor is:
  - a. Dr. Spagnola, and he has prescribed Atrovent
  - b. Dr. Echols, and he has prescribed Avodart
  - c. Dr. Echols, and he has prescribed Avodart
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The medication prescribed to the patient will help:
  - a. to shrink urine flow
  - b. to shrink the prostate
  - c. to shrink the bladder
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's symptoms include:
  - a. urinating frequently at night, the need to urinate a lot, and urinating small amounts of urine
  - b. urinating frequently at night, the need to urinate a lot, and urinating large amounts of urine
  - c. urinating infrequently at night, no need to urinate a lot, and urinating small amounts of urine
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that his doctor wants him to take the medication:
  - a. which is a tablet, twice a day, and to swallow it whole with food only
  - b. which is a soft-gel capsule, once a day and to swallow it whole with or without food
  - c. which is a soft-gel capsule, twice a day and to swallow it whole without food
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient it will probably take:
  - a. 3 to 6 days before the medication takes effect and he starts to feel better
  - b. 3 to 6 weeks before the medication takes effect and he starts to feel better
  - c. 3 to 6 months before the medication takes effect and he starts to feel better
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Side effects of the medication include:
  - a. sexual problems such as impotence and decreased interest in sex
  - b. sexual problems such as long erection and increased interest in sex
  - c. sexual problems such as impotence and increased interest in sex
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that he is taking:
  - a. Lipitor only
  - b. Lipitor for his cholesterol and Metamucil when he's constipated
  - c. Lipitor and Metamucil every day
12. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is allergic to:
  - a. shellfish and shrimp
  - b. jellyfish
  - c. jellyfish and shrimp
13. \_\_\_\_\_ To help control his symptoms, the pharmacist advises the patient:
  - a. to stop drinking water and caffeine after 7 PM, to limit alcohol, to try sitting on the toilet instead of standing when urinating, and to exercise
  - b. to stop drinking water and caffeine before 7 PM and to exercise
  - c. to stop drinking water and caffeine during the day and to sit on the toilet after 7 PM to urinate
14. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to call:
  - a. his doctor if his symptoms improve
  - b. his doctor or the clinic pharmacist if his symptoms worsen
  - c. his doctor if his symptoms worsen

15. \_\_\_\_ The patient will receive a prescription:
- for 1 month with no refills
  - for 1 month and 5 refills
  - for 6 months

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

---

Idioms and idiomatic expressions are made up of a group of words that have a different meaning from the original meaning of each individual word. Native speakers of the English language use such expressions comfortably and naturally. However, individuals who are new speakers of English or who have studied English for many years may still not be able to use idioms and idiomatic expressions as comfortably or naturally as native speakers. As pharmacy students, pharmacy technicians, and practicing pharmacists, you will hear many different idiomatic expressions. Some of you will understand and know how to use these expressions correctly. At times, however, you may not understand what your professors, colleagues, and patients are saying. This of course can lead to miscommunication, embarrassment, and possibly dangerous mistakes.

Unlike the previous chapters that contain idioms and expressions with words related to the chapter theme, there are no idioms or expressions that contain words related to the urinary system. However, there is one slang word for the word “urinate.” The word “piss” is the slang for “urinate.” For example, “I have to piss” means “I have to urinate.” The word “piss” also has a second meaning in a different word form. For example, “He pissed me off” or “He pisses me off” means “He got me mad or angry” and “He gets me mad or angry,” respectively. A third word form of “piss” is “pisser.” For example, “He is such a pisser” means “He is very funny and lots of fun.”

## POST-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

- \_\_\_\_ The idiom **I need to piss** means I need to urinate.
- \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **urethritis** is urethral.
- \_\_\_\_ Nocturnal enuresis means bed wetting during the day.
- \_\_\_\_ The word **empty** is both a verb and an adjective.
- \_\_\_\_ UTI is caused by stress incontinence.
- \_\_\_\_ An enlarged prostate can cause retention of urine.
- \_\_\_\_ Cystitis can become serious if it spreads to the kidney.
- \_\_\_\_ Another term for overactive bladder is irritable bladder.
- \_\_\_\_ Cranberry juice will not help fight bacteria in a urinary tract infection.
- \_\_\_\_ Another term for interstitial cystitis is honeymoon cystitis.
- \_\_\_\_ Pyelonephritis is a type of urinary tract infection that infects the urethra.
- \_\_\_\_ If a patient complains he is unable to control the release of his urine and is experiencing leaks and dribbles, he probably has an enlarged prostate.
- \_\_\_\_ Stress incontinence can be caused by childbirth.
- \_\_\_\_ Caffeine, alcohol, and citrus foods can irritate the bladder.
- \_\_\_\_ Functional incontinence can affect people with physical and mental impairments.

## Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Absorbent is:
  - a. a noun
  - b. an adjective
  - c. a verb
2. \_\_\_\_\_ A person suffering from bladder infections should:
  - a. drink plenty of water
  - b. decrease the amount of water he or she drinks
  - c. drink only cranberry juice
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Stress incontinence can be caused by:
  - a. crying
  - b. sneezing and coughing
  - c. sneezing, coughing, laughing, and lifting heavy objects
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Kegel exercises can help a person with:
  - a. an enlarged prostate
  - b. a kidney infection
  - c. an overactive bladder
5. \_\_\_\_\_ In this sentence, “The sudden urge to urinate and frequent urination may be symptomatic of overactive bladder,” the word **urination** is:
  - a. a verb and a noun
  - b. an adjective
  - c. a noun
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Avodart is used to treat:
  - a. cystitis
  - b. enlarged prostate
  - c. overactive bladder
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Bactrim is used to treat:
  - a. cystitis
  - b. urinary incontinence
  - c. enlarged prostate
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The idiomatic expression “**He’s a pisser**” means:
  - a. he urinates a lot
  - b. he wets his bed
  - c. he is very funny and great fun
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The word **flow** is a:
  - a. verb and noun
  - b. verb only
  - c. noun only
10. \_\_\_\_\_ In the sentence, “Symptoms of urinary tract infection, or UTI, include the urge to urinate, a burning sensation when urinating, and passing small amounts of urine frequently,” the word **urinary** is:
  - a. an adjective, and urge is a noun
  - b. a noun, and urge is an adjective
  - c. a noun, and urge is a noun

11. \_\_\_\_ A heating pad can be used to:
- alleviate lower abdominal pain caused by a bladder infection
  - shrink an enlarged prostate
  - control leakage
12. \_\_\_\_ A person with an overactive bladder should:
- only learn how to use absorbent pads to control leakage
  - double void to completely empty the bladder
  - drink a lot of water
13. \_\_\_\_ Interstitial cystitis is a:
- chronic inflammatory disease of the bladder
  - chronic inflammatory disease of the kidney
  - kind of incontinence
14. \_\_\_\_ The word **dribble** is a:
- verb
  - noun
  - verb and a noun
15. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence, “Losing urine is a symptom of overactive bladder, also known as irritable bladder,” the word **overactive** is:
- an adjective
  - a past tense verb
  - a noun

## Listening and Comprehension Exercises



### Dialogue #1

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

- \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist's name is:
  - Joan Brown, and the patient's name is Jude Berger
  - Jude Brown, and the patient's name is Joan Brown
  - Jude Berger, and the patient's name is Joan Brown
- \_\_\_\_ The patient's medical condition is:
  - urinary tract infection
  - overactive bladder
  - stress incontinence
- \_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor is:
  - Dr. Berger, and she has prescribed Detrol
  - Dr. Hoffman, and she has prescribed Detrol
  - Dr. Brown, and she has prescribed Detrol

4. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that:
  - a. she's having problems losing her urine and that she is using Depends absorbent pads
  - b. she's having problems losing her urine and that she is too embarrassed to use absorbent pads
  - c. she's having problems losing her urine and is not using absorbent pads
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that she is taking:
  - a. Amaryl for her type II diabetes
  - b. Amaryl for her type I diabetes
  - c. Amoxil for her ear infection
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient is allergic to:
  - a. Ceclor only
  - b. Ceclor and latex
  - c. latex only
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient is:
  - a. 48 years old, has one fibroid, and has had one breast biopsy that was benign
  - b. 48 years old, has two fibroids, and has had one breast biopsy that was malignant
  - c. 48 years old, has three fibroids, and has had two breast biopsies that were benign
8. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that Detrol will:
  - a. stop the infection that is causing her overactive bladder
  - b. help to relax the muscles in the bladder and help to control urination
  - c. help to relax the muscles and stop the infection in the bladder
9. \_\_\_\_ The patient needs to take Detrol:
  - a. twice a day with or without food and see her doctor in 6 weeks
  - b. once a day with or without food and see her doctor in 6 days
  - c. twice a day with food and see her doctor in 6 months
10. \_\_\_\_ Side effects of the medication include:
  - a. vomiting, diarrhea, dry eye, and dry mouth
  - b. dry eye, dry mouth, dizziness, headaches, constipation, drowsiness, and blurred vision
  - c. dry eye, dry mouth, and constipation
11. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist advises the patient:
  - a. to eat a diet rich in fiber and to ask her doctor for a laxative and stool softener if she gets constipated
  - b. to drink lots of water only
  - c. to drink lots of water and to eat a diet rich in fiber
12. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that the medication:
  - a. will cause her to sweat
  - b. will cause decreased sweating
  - c. will cause her to overheat and sweat
13. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist advises the patient that she can learn to:
  - a. increase the number of urges to urinate and decrease the number of leakages
  - b. decrease the number of urges to urinate and decrease the number of leakages
  - c. decrease the number of urges to urinate and increase the number of leakages
14. \_\_\_\_ The patient should learn how to:
  - a. delay urination, how to double void, and how to do Kegel exercises
  - b. retain urination and how to double void
  - c. hold urine every 10 minutes and double void

15. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient she can find help:
- in a book entitled *National Association for Continence*
  - from the organization National Association for Continence on the web
  - at a local support group call National Association for Continence



### Dialogue #2

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

- \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - Jacqueline Cho, and the pharmacist's name is Leonard Chase
  - Leonard Cho, and the pharmacist's name is Jacklyn Chase
  - Jacklyn Cho, and the pharmacist's name is Leonard Chase
- \_\_\_\_ The patient has a prescription for Macrochantin to treat:
  - a kidney infection
  - a urinary tract infection
  - an overactive bladder
- \_\_\_\_ The patient's date of birth is:
  - February 12, 1989, and she is 18 years old
  - February 18, 1989, and she is 8 years old
  - February 18, 1989, and she is 12 years old
- \_\_\_\_ The patient's address is:
  - 27 Sunset Terrace in Waterville, and her telephone number is 467-4485
  - 27 Sunset Terrace in Watertown, and her telephone number is 476-4485
  - 27 Sunset Terrace in Watertown, and her telephone number is 467-4485
- \_\_\_\_ The patient is:
  - not covered by her father's insurance, which is Health Choice Medical and Drug Plan
  - covered by her father's insurance, which is Healthy Choice Medical Plan
  - covered by her father's insurance, which is Health Choice Medical and Drug Plan
- \_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor is:
  - Dr. Varsha Patel
  - Dr. Leonard Chase
  - Dr. Varsha Chase
- \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that she is:
  - allergic to antibiotics and tomatoes, is lactose intolerant, and is on birth control pills
  - not allergic to medications but gets hay fever, is lactose intolerant, is allergic to tomatoes, and is on birth control pills
  - allergic to medications, gets hay fever, is lactose intolerant, is allergic to tomatoes, and is on birth control pills

8. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that she is:
- drinking cranberry juice to treat her urinary tract infection
  - not taking anything to treat her urinary tract infection
  - drinking a lot of water to treat her urinary tract infection
9. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient the prescribed medication is:
- an antibiotic that will help to relax the muscles in her bladder
  - a muscle relaxant that will help to get rid of bacteria
  - an antibiotic that will help to stop bacteria from growing in her bladder
10. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to:
- take the full prescribed amount unless she starts feeling better
  - discontinue taking the medication as soon as the symptoms clear
  - take the full prescribed amount even if she starts to feel better
11. \_\_\_\_ The doctor has prescribed that the patient take:
- 4 capsules a day, one every 6 hours
  - 6 capsules a day, one every 4 hours
  - 4 capsules at once
12. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that a side effect of the medication is:
- dark yellow or brown urine, which is very serious
  - dark yellow or brown urine, which is quite normal
  - dark yellow or brown urine, and that she needs to stop taking the medication
13. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that she:
- can continue to drink cranberry juice but to also drink plenty of water to flush out bacteria
  - should stop drinking cranberry juice but drink plenty of water so she doesn't become dehydrated
  - should just drink plenty of water
14. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient she:
- can drink moderate amounts of alcohol and caffeine
  - should not drink alcohol and caffeine until the infection clears up
  - should not drink alcohol, caffeine, and citrus juice until the infection clears up
15. \_\_\_\_ To prevent future infections, the pharmacist tells the patient to:
- avoid sexual intercourse
  - drink plenty of water
  - empty the bladder and not hold in urine, to wipe front to back after urinating, and drink plenty of water to flush out bacteria after sexual intercourse

How did you do on the Post-Assessment in Chapter 10? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.



## PRE-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ Reversible scarring of the liver is called **cirrhosis**.
2. \_\_\_\_ One cause of **autoimmune hepatitis** is scarring of the liver.
3. \_\_\_\_ Intravenous drug users and people who share needles are not at risk for **hepatitis B**, a serious liver infection.
4. \_\_\_\_ One cause of damage to the liver is **alcoholic cirrhosis**.
5. \_\_\_\_ The noun form of **hepatic** is hepatitis.
6. \_\_\_\_ **Hepatitis B** is transmitted through food.
7. \_\_\_\_ **Cirrhosis** of the liver is caused by alcohol only.
8. \_\_\_\_ **Hepatitis A** is transmitted through blood and bodily fluids.
9. \_\_\_\_ **Autoimmune hepatitis** is caused by years of alcohol abuse.
10. \_\_\_\_ The noun form of **toxin** is toxic.
11. \_\_\_\_ Contaminated needles used in body piercing and body tattooing are one cause of **hepatitis C**.
12. \_\_\_\_ Cirrhosis makes it difficult for blood to flow through the liver to detoxify harmful substances and to purify the blood.
13. \_\_\_\_ Immune disorders such as diabetes, ulcerative colitis, and Sjögren's syndrome can be found in people with **autoimmune hepatitis**.
14. \_\_\_\_ **Hepatitis B** can be transmitted through sexual contact, needle sharing, accidental needle sticks, and from mother to child.
15. \_\_\_\_ The word **contagion** is an adjective.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ Causes of **cirrhosis** include:
  - a. hepatitis A and hepatitis B
  - b. chronic hepatitis B and hepatitis C, alcoholism, and autoimmune hepatitis
  - c. alcoholism only
2. \_\_\_\_ A risk factor for contracting **hepatitis B** is:
  - a. having unprotected sex with more than one partner
  - b. eating contaminated food
  - c. alcohol consumption

3. \_\_\_\_\_ Complications of **cirrhosis** include:
  - a. bleeding and bruising, edema in the abdomen and legs, and hypertension in the vein from the liver
  - b. bleeding and bruising only
  - c. edema in the legs only
4. \_\_\_\_\_ People exhibiting symptoms such as yellowing of the whites of the eyes and the skin and abdominal swelling should be tested for:
  - a. hepatitis A
  - b. autoimmune hepatitis
  - c. contaminated body piercings
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Another term for fluid in and swelling of the abdomen is:
  - a. edema
  - b. encephalopathy
  - c. ascites
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Liver cancer can be caused by:
  - a. hepatitis A, hepatitis B, and cirrhosis
  - b. cirrhosis only
  - c. hepatitis B, hepatitis C, and cirrhosis
7. \_\_\_\_\_ A complication of **cirrhosis** is:
  - a. jaundice
  - b. dark urine
  - c. hepatic encephalopathy
8. \_\_\_\_\_ **Hepatitis B** is transmitted through:
  - a. contact with blood and bodily fluids of an infected person
  - b. body piercing and illegal drug use
  - c. contaminated blood
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The word contaminated is:
  - a. a verb
  - b. a verb and an adjective
  - c. an adjective
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The expression “**What am I, chopped liver?**” means the person:
  - a. likes liver
  - b. feels frustrated and ignored
  - c. has liver disease

How did you do? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

## MEDICAL VOCABULARY

---

A good understanding of vocabulary words in pharmacy is very important for communication with professors, fellow students, patients, and coworkers. Knowledge and understanding of vocabulary leads to successful communication and success as a pharmacy student, as a pharmacy technician, and as a practicing pharmacist. You may already know many of the vocabulary words in this chapter, but for words that are unfamiliar, pay careful attention to them and make every effort to know their correct spelling, meaning, and pronunciation. It is a good idea to keep a list of new words and to look up these new words in a bilingual dictionary or dictionary in your first language. A good command of pharmacy-related vocabulary and good pronunciation of vocabulary will help to prevent embarrassing mistakes and increase effective verbal communication skills.

## Hepatic System Vocabulary

alcoholism	hepatic encephalopathy	platelets
ascites	hepatitis	portal hypertension
bile duct	immune globulin	scarring
cirrhosis	immunization	spider angioma
contagious	inoperable	toxin
contamination	jaundice	vaccination
edema	liver transplant	varices
hemochromatosis	outbreaks	viral hepatitis
hemolytic anemia	pernicious anemia	

## PARTS OF SPEECH

A good understanding of parts of speech, such as verbs, nouns, adjectives, and adverbs, is important for successful communication when speaking or writing. It is equally important to know the various forms of words and to use them appropriately.

### Word Forms

The table below lists the main forms of some terms that you will likely encounter in pharmacy practice. Review the table and then do the exercises that follow to assess your understanding.

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v) —Past Tense	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
alcoholism; alcoholic		alcoholic	
ascites		ascitic	
cirrhosis		cirrhotic	
contagion; contagiousness		contagious	contagiously
contamination; contaminant	to contaminate; contaminated	contaminated	
duct		ductal; ductless	
encephalopathy		encephalopathic	
hemolysis		hemolytic	
hepatitis; hepatectomy		hepatic	
immunization	to immunize; immunized	immune; immunized	
inoperability		inoperable	inoperably
toxic; toxicity		toxic	toxically
transplant; transplanter; transplantation	to transplant; transplanted	transplantable	
vaccine; vaccination	to vaccinate; vaccinated		
virus		viral	virally

**Word Forms Exercise**

Read the following sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv.

- Symptoms of **cirrhosis** include **swelling** in the legs, **fluid** in the abdomen, **intense itching**, fatigue, and nausea.  
cirrhosis \_\_\_\_ swelling \_\_\_\_ fluid \_\_\_\_ intense \_\_\_\_ itching \_\_\_\_
- Autoimmune hepatitis**, a disease of the **liver** in which the body **attacks** itself, may be caused by other diseases, **toxins**, and certain **medications**.  
autoimmune hepatitis \_\_\_\_ liver \_\_\_\_ attacks \_\_\_\_ toxins \_\_\_\_ medications \_\_\_\_
- Chronic hepatitis B** is caused by the hepatitis B **virus** and can lead to scarring of the liver, also known as **cirrhosis**, liver cancer, and liver **failure**.  
chronic \_\_\_\_ hepatitis B \_\_\_\_ virus \_\_\_\_ cirrhosis \_\_\_\_ failure \_\_\_\_
- Contaminated** food or water can **cause hepatitis A**, a **contagious** liver **infection** that does not lead to chronic hepatitis or cirrhosis.  
contaminated \_\_\_\_ cause \_\_\_\_ hepatitis A \_\_\_\_ contagious \_\_\_\_ infection \_\_\_\_
- Fatigue, anemia, **itching** (also known as **pruritus**), **jaundice**, which is yellowing of the white of the eyes and the skin, and **discomfort** in the **abdomen** are symptoms of autoimmune hepatitis.  
itching \_\_\_\_ pruritus \_\_\_\_ jaundice \_\_\_\_ discomfort \_\_\_\_ abdomen \_\_\_\_
- It is **critical** for anyone with cirrhosis to avoid **alcohol**, which is broken down by the liver into highly **toxic** chemicals that **trigger inflammation** that **destroys** liver cells.  
critical \_\_\_\_ alcohol \_\_\_\_ toxic \_\_\_\_ trigger \_\_\_\_ inflammation \_\_\_\_ destroy \_\_\_\_
- Hepatitis C is **contracted** by coming in contact with blood, needles used to **inject** drugs, and **needles** used in **tattooing** and body piercing that are **contaminated** with the hepatitis C virus.  
contracted \_\_\_\_ inject \_\_\_\_ needles \_\_\_\_ tattooing \_\_\_\_ contaminated \_\_\_\_
- Hepatitis B, one strain of **viral** hepatitis, can **infect** a person who has **unprotected** sex with an **infected** person; a person who uses or shares needles and syringes **contaminated** with infected blood; a person, such as a health care worker, who accidentally comes in contact with infected human blood; and a baby whose infected mother has **transmitted** the virus during pregnancy.  
viral \_\_\_\_ infect \_\_\_\_ unprotected \_\_\_\_ infected \_\_\_\_ contaminated \_\_\_\_ transmitted \_\_\_\_
- Autoimmune hepatitis, which can be **triggered** after being **infected** with hepatitis A, hepatitis B, Epstein-Barr virus, or measles, can **lead** to other health **complications** such as pernicious **anemia** and hemolytic anemia.  
triggered \_\_\_\_ infected \_\_\_\_ lead \_\_\_\_ complications \_\_\_\_ anemia \_\_\_\_
- Because hepatitis A is highly **contagious**, it is important for the **infected** person to **wash** his or her hands after using the bathroom, **avoid** oral, anal, and digital **sexual contact**, and not prepare food for others or share utensils.  
contagious \_\_\_\_ infected \_\_\_\_ wash \_\_\_\_ avoid \_\_\_\_ sexual \_\_\_\_ contact \_\_\_\_
- A person suffering from **alcoholic** cirrhosis will most likely be **malnourished** and require a nutrition program that will help to **regenerate** the **damaged** liver.  
alcoholic \_\_\_\_ malnourished \_\_\_\_ regenerate \_\_\_\_ damaged \_\_\_\_
- Jaundice, **loss** of appetite, **abdominal** pain around the liver, **joint** pain, and dark **urine** are **symptomatic** of hepatitis B.  
loss \_\_\_\_ abdominal \_\_\_\_ joint \_\_\_\_ urine \_\_\_\_ symptomatic \_\_\_\_

13. People **diagnosed** with hepatitis B need to avoid alcohol, avoid **certain** prescription and **over-the-counter** drugs such as acetaminophen that can cause damage to the liver, and should not **share** toothbrushes and **razors** with others.  
 diagnosed \_\_\_\_ certain \_\_\_\_ over-the-counter \_\_\_\_ share \_\_\_\_ razors \_\_\_\_
14. Autoimmune hepatitis can cause cirrhosis of the liver, which can lead to **complications** such as **enlarged** veins, known as **varices**, and **portal hypertension**, which is **increased** blood pressure in the vein from the liver.  
 complications \_\_\_\_ enlarged \_\_\_\_ varices \_\_\_\_ portal hypertension \_\_\_\_ increased \_\_\_\_
15. Symptoms of hepatitis A include **low-grade** fever, **vomiting**, nausea, **loss** of appetite, and **discomfort** in the **abdominal** area.  
 low-grade \_\_\_\_ vomiting \_\_\_\_ loss \_\_\_\_ discomfort \_\_\_\_ abdominal \_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### *Typical Medical Conditions and Patient Complaints*

The sentences below contain vocabulary that describes and explains typical medical conditions, diseases, symptoms, and patient complaints that a pharmacist encounters. Read the sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv. Look up words you do not know in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

- Hepatitis A can be spread by **contaminated** foods, such as shellfish, **uncooked** vegetables, and **raw** fruit that cannot be peeled, and by **ice** and tap water.  
 contaminated \_\_\_\_ uncooked \_\_\_\_ raw \_\_\_\_ ice \_\_\_\_
- Some people **infected** with hepatitis B **virus** and most people infected with hepatitis C virus will develop **chronic hepatitis**, which can lead to cirrhosis and **liver cancer**.  
 infected \_\_\_\_ virus \_\_\_\_ chronic \_\_\_\_ hepatitis \_\_\_\_ liver cancer \_\_\_\_
- It is important to **wash** one's hands with soap and **warm** water to **guard** against **contracting** hepatitis A, a highly **contagious** disease.  
 wash \_\_\_\_ warm \_\_\_\_ guard \_\_\_\_ contracting \_\_\_\_ contagious \_\_\_\_
- Alternative** medicines such as herb milk thistle, which is believed to **heal** and **rebuild** the liver, and omega-3 fatty acids, which can help to **protect** the liver, are recommended alternative **therapies** for patients suffering from cirrhosis.  
 alternative \_\_\_\_ heal \_\_\_\_ rebuild \_\_\_\_ protect \_\_\_\_ therapies \_\_\_\_
- Hepatitis B cannot be **contracted** by **casual contact** such as shaking hands, sharing a phone, sitting on a toilet seat, or coming in contact with the tears or **sweat** of an **infected** person.  
 contracted \_\_\_\_ casual \_\_\_\_ contact \_\_\_\_ sweat \_\_\_\_ infected \_\_\_\_
- Autoimmune** hepatitis can lead to other **diseases** such as **ulcerative** colitis, Hashimoto's thyroiditis, **rheumatoid** arthritis, and **type I** diabetes.  
 autoimmune \_\_\_\_ diseases \_\_\_\_ ulcerative \_\_\_\_ rheumatoid \_\_\_\_ type I \_\_\_\_
- Hepatitis A, which is most **contagious** before **signs** and symptoms appear, is **transmitted** through water and food **contaminated** with **feces**.  
 contagious \_\_\_\_ signs \_\_\_\_ transmitted \_\_\_\_ contaminated \_\_\_\_ feces \_\_\_\_
- Coming in **contact** with blood, semen, **vaginal** secretions, or **saliva** that is **infected** with the hepatitis B virus and that **enters** the body will cause a person to **contract** hepatitis B.  
 contact \_\_\_\_ vaginal \_\_\_\_ saliva \_\_\_\_ infected \_\_\_\_ enters \_\_\_\_  
 contract \_\_\_\_

9. Symptoms such as sleeping during the day instead of at night, the inability to concentrate, and memory loss are typical of **hepatic** encephalopathy, which is **impairment** of the brain as a result of **toxic** substances that have **accumulated** in the blood caused by cirrhosis.  
hepatic \_\_\_\_ impairment \_\_\_\_ toxic \_\_\_\_ accumulated \_\_\_\_
10. Although there is a **vaccine** for hepatitis A and hepatitis B, there is no vaccine for hepatitis C, a **virus** that **silently attacks** the liver without the person having any **symptoms**.  
vaccine \_\_\_\_ virus \_\_\_\_ silently \_\_\_\_ attacks \_\_\_\_ symptoms \_\_\_\_
11. The many causes of cirrhosis include alcohol abuse, **chronic viral** hepatitis, autoimmune hepatitis, **inherited** disorders such as hemochromatosis, which is an **abnormal** accumulation of iron, **toxins**, and certain medications.  
chronic \_\_\_\_ viral \_\_\_\_ inherited \_\_\_\_ abnormal \_\_\_\_ toxins \_\_\_\_
12. Receiving the **immune globulin** or hepatitis vaccine can protect a person from **contracting** hepatitis A, as can **washing** one's hands after **using** the toilet, washing all fruits and vegetables before consuming, and drinking **bottled** water, especially in countries where hepatitis A is common.  
immune globulin \_\_\_\_ contracting \_\_\_\_ washing \_\_\_\_ using \_\_\_\_ bottled \_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### Medical Vocabulary Comprehension

Now that you have read sentences 1 through 12 describing language regarding the hepatic system, assess your understanding by doing the exercises below.

#### *Multiple Choice Questions*

Choose the answer that correctly completes each sentence below.

- \_\_\_\_ A liver disease that causes the body to attack itself is:
  - cirrhosis
  - autoimmune hepatitis
  - hepatitis C
- \_\_\_\_ **Jaundice** is yellowing of:
  - the whites of the eyes
  - the liver
  - the skin and the whites of the eye
- \_\_\_\_ Contaminated water or food can cause:
  - hepatitis C
  - hepatitis A
  - cirrhosis
- \_\_\_\_ One cause of **cirrhosis** is:
  - alcohol abuse
  - hepatitis A
  - contaminated food
- \_\_\_\_ Complications of **autoimmune hepatitis** include:
  - hepatitis B
  - Epstein-Barr virus
  - pernicious anemia and hemolytic anemia

- 
6. \_\_\_\_ Symptoms of **hepatitis B** include:
- jaundice, abdominal pain, and dark urine
  - sleeping during the day
  - increased blood pressure in the vein leading to the liver
7. \_\_\_\_ **Chronic hepatitis** can develop in people who have:
- hepatitis A
  - hepatitis B and hepatitis C
  - cirrhosis
8. \_\_\_\_ To reduce the risk of contracting **hepatitis A**, it is important to:
- drink plenty of water
  - wash one's hands with soap and water
  - stop drinking alcohol
9. \_\_\_\_ **Hepatitis C** is contracted by:
- coming in contact with blood, intravenous needles, and tattooing and body piercing needles that are contaminated with the virus
  - coming in contact with feces
  - having unprotected sex
10. \_\_\_\_ **Hemochromatosis** is a disorder that produces:
- toxins in the blood
  - toxins in the brain
  - an abnormal accumulation of iron
11. \_\_\_\_ Avoiding acetaminophen and the sharing of razors and toothbrushes with others needs to be practiced by people who have been diagnosed with:
- cirrhosis
  - hepatitis B
  - autoimmune hepatitis
12. \_\_\_\_ A complication of **autoimmune hepatitis** is:
- enlarged veins
  - impairment of the brain
  - hemochromatosis
13. \_\_\_\_ There is no vaccine for:
- hepatitis A and hepatitis C
  - hepatitis B
  - hepatitis C
14. \_\_\_\_ Symptoms of **hepatic encephalopathy** include:
- sleeping during the day instead of at night and the inability to concentrate
  - sleeping during the day instead of at night only
  - sleeping during the day instead of at night, the inability to concentrate, and memory loss
15. \_\_\_\_ Another term for **cirrhosis** is:
- scarring of the portal vein
  - scarring of the liver
  - alcoholism

**True/False Questions**

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Hepatitis C is contracted through feces.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Cirrhosis is a disease of the liver in which the body attacks itself.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Fatigue, anemia, itching, jaundice, and yellowing of the whites of the eyes and the skin are symptoms of autoimmune hepatitis.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Hepatitis B can be contracted through casual contact such as shaking hands and coming in contact with the tears and sweat of an infected person.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Hepatitis A is not a contagious disease but can be contracted through contaminated water and food.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The word “encephalopathic” is a noun.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ There is no vaccine for hepatitis C, a virus that silently attacks the liver.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Swelling of the legs, fluid in the abdomen, itching, nausea, and fatigue are symptoms of cirrhosis.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Hepatitis B can be spread through unprotected sex, shared needles, tattooing, and body piercing.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ A person infected with hepatitis A should avoid oral, anal, and digital sexual contact, as well as wash their hands after using the bathroom.

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

**Writing Exercise**

An important part of communication is the ability to write about what you read, to write correctly, and to spell correctly. In the exercises below, write your understanding of the meaning of the bolded words.

1. Describe in writing what **hepatitis A**, **hepatitis B**, and **hepatitis C** are.

---

---

---

---

2. Describe in writing what **cirrhosis** is.

---

---

---

---

3. Describe in writing what **autoimmune hepatitis** is.

---

---

---

---

Check what you have written with acceptable answers that appear in the Answer Key online.

**LISTENING AND PRONUNCIATION**

---

The ability to listen and understand what is being said and heard, and the ability to pronounce words clearly, is extremely important. A word misheard and a word mispronounced will lead to poor communication and can seriously put both the pharmacist and patient in danger. Therefore, it is very



important that one hear clearly what another person has said, and that one speak clearly with correct pronunciation.

Listen carefully to the pharmacy-related words presented in the audio files found in Chapter 11 on thePoint (thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert), and then pronounce them as accurately as you can. Listen and then repeat. You will listen to each word once and then you will repeat it. You will do this twice for each word. Listening and pronunciation practice will increase your listening and speaking confidence. Many languages do not produce or emphasize certain sounds produced and emphasized in English, so pay careful attention to the pronunciation of each word.



### Pronunciation Exercise

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 11 on thePoint (thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert). Listen and repeat the words. Then say the words aloud for additional practice.

- |                           |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. alcoholism             | ãl'kə-hô-lĩz' əm             |
| 2. ascites                | ə-sĩ'tēz                     |
| 3. bile duct              | bĩl dũkt                     |
| 4. cirrhosis              | sĩ-rō'sĩs                    |
| 5. contagious             | kə-n-tā'jəs                  |
| 6. contamination          | kə-n-tām'ə-nā'shən           |
| 7. hemochromatosis        | hē'mə-krō'mə-tō'sĩs          |
| 8. hemolytic anemia       | hē'mə-lĩt'ĩk ə-nē'mē-ə       |
| 9. hepatic encephalopathy | hĩ-pāt'ĩk ěn-sĕf'ə-lōp'ə-thĕ |
| 10. hepatitis             | hĕp'ə-tĩ'tĩs                 |
| 11. immune globulin       | ĩ-myōōn' glōb'yə-lĩn         |
| 12. immunization          | ĩm'yə nĩ-zā'shən             |
| 13. inoperable            | ĩn-ōp'ər-ə-bəl               |
| 14. jaundice              | jənd'ĩs                      |
| 15. liver transplant      | lĩv'ər trāns-plānt'          |
| 16. pernicious anemia     | pər-nĩsh'əs ə-nē'mē-ə        |
| 17. platelet              | plāt'lĩt                     |
| 18. portal hypertension   | pōr'tl hĩ'pər-tĕn'shən       |
| 19. outbreaks             | out'brāk's                   |
| 20. scarring              | skārng                       |
| 21. spider angioma        | spĩ'dər ānjĕ-ō'mə            |
| 22. toxic                 | tōk'sĩk                      |
| 23. vaccination           | vāk'sə-nā'shən               |
| 24. varices               | vār'ĩ-sĕz'                   |
| 25. viral hepatitis       | vĩ'rəl hĕp'ə-tĩ'tĩs          |

Which words are easy to pronounce? Which are difficult to pronounce? Use the space below to write in the words that you find difficult to pronounce. These are words you should practice saying often.

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 11 on the Point ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) as many times as you need to increase your pronunciation ability of the difficult words. Pronounce these words with a friend or a colleague who speaks English.

### English Sounds That Are Difficult for Speakers of Other Languages to Pronounce

#### Spanish

In Spanish, there is no English “v” sound, but the “v” consonant in Spanish is pronounced like the English “b.” The vowel “i” is pronounced like a long “e.” Pay careful attention to the “v” sound in English when pronouncing words that begin with “v.” Also pay careful attention to English words that begin with “s;” do not use the Spanish “es” sound when pronouncing English words that begin with “s.”

For example, in English,

hepatitis is not pronounced ehpahteetees

#### Vietnamese

In Vietnamese, the “t” consonant is pronounced “s,” but in English the “t” is pronounced “t” and “s” is pronounced “s.” Be careful with English words that begin with “t.” In Vietnamese, the “b” consonant is pronounced “p,” but in English “p” is pronounced “p” and “b” is pronounced “b.”

In Vietnamese, words do not end in “b,” “ch,” “f,” “d,” “j,” “l,” “p,” “t,” “s,” “sh,” “v,” and “z.” In English, words end in these letters. Pay special attention to pronouncing these English sounds. In Vietnamese, there is no “dzh” or “zh” sound, so English words like “judge” (dzh) and “rupture” (zh) will be hard for Vietnamese speakers to pronounce.

For example, in English,

bile is not pronounced pile

#### Gujarati

In Gujarati, “v” is pronounced “w,” “f” is pronounced “p,” “p” is pronounced “f,” and “z” is pronounced “j.” Short “i” is pronounced long “e,” “x” is pronounced “ch,” and “th” is pronounced “s.” In English, “v” is pronounced “v,” “f” is pronounced “f,” “z” is pronounced “z” or “s,” “j” is pronounced “j,” and “x” is pronounced “x.” Pay careful attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

viral is not pronounced wiral

#### Korean

In Korean, the “v” consonant is pronounced “b” and the “f” consonant is pronounced “p.” In English, the “v” is pronounced “v,” the “f” is pronounced “f,” and the “p” is pronounced “p.” Pay special attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

vaccination is not pronounced baccination

#### Chinese

In Chinese, the “r” consonant is pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are not pronounced at all. Pay careful attention to English words that begin with “r” because the “r” is not pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are pronounced in English.

For example, in English,

scarring is not pronounced scallin

(continued)

**Russian**

The “w” consonant is pronounced like a “v” and the “v” sound like a “w.” Pay careful attention to the English “th.” It is not pronounced “s.”

For example, in English,

vaccination is not pronounced waccination

**DICTIONARY****Listening/Spelling Exercise: Word and Word Pairs**

Listen to the words or word pairs on the audio files found in Chapter 11 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_

**Listening/Spelling Exercise: Sentences**

Listen to the sentences on the audio files found in Chapter 11 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

Now, check your sentences against the correct answers in the Answer Key online. If there are any new words that you do not know or that you spelled incorrectly, make a list of those words and study them for meaning and spelling.

## PHARMACIST/PATIENT DIALOGUES

The ability to orally communicate effectively with your professors, colleagues, and especially with patients is very important. As a pharmacist, you will be counseling patients; patients will come to you for advice. They will have questions about a condition and symptoms they may experience and will ask you to help treat the condition. Therefore, it is extremely important that you understand what they are saying and that you respond to them and their questions appropriately. Your patients will speak differently. For example, some may speak very quickly, others too low, and yet others may speak angrily. To help you improve your listening skills, listen to the following dialogues, or short conversations, between a pharmacist and a patient and between a pharmacy technician and a patient.

### Listening and Comprehension Exercises



#### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Justine Libster, and the pharmacist's name is Jonathan Barry
  - b. Jonathan Libster, and the pharmacist's name is Justine Barry
  - c. Jonathan Barry, and the pharmacist's name Justine Libster
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is in a:
  - a. retail pharmacy
  - b. clinic
  - c. hospital

3. \_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor's name is:
  - a. Dr. Sorenson
  - b. Dr. Sorrysen
  - c. Dr. Soringsun
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient's medical condition is:
  - a. cirrhosis, and he has been prescribed Actonel
  - b. liver failure, and he has been prescribed Aldactone
  - c. cirrhosis, and he has been prescribed Aldactone
5. \_\_\_\_ The prescribed medication is a:
  - a. diuretic that will help remove fluid from the patient's body
  - b. liquid that will help remove fluid from the patient's body
  - c. diuretic that will help the patient to retain fluid in his body
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that he:
  - a. has fluid in his legs
  - b. has an abdomen full of water
  - c. has a lot of fluid in his abdomen and that his legs are swollen
7. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
  - a. alcohol is not a toxin that is processed through the liver and that it does not do damage to the liver
  - b. alcohol is a toxin that is processed through the liver and that it does damage to the liver
  - c. alcohol does not damage the liver
8. \_\_\_\_ The doctor has prescribed the patient to take:
  - a. two 25-mg tablets once a day in the morning
  - b. two 25-mg tablets a day: one in the morning and one in the early evening
  - c. one 25-mg tablet in the evening
9. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that:
  - a. he is also taking rifampin to relieve the itching caused by cirrhosis
  - b. he used to take rifampin to relieve the itching caused by cirrhosis
  - c. he used to take rifampin to relive the water retention in his body
10. \_\_\_\_ A common side effect of Aldactone is:
  - a. impotence, and rare side effects include breast enlargement and drowsiness
  - b. drowsiness, and rare side effects include impotence and breast enlargement
  - c. breast enlargement, and rare side effects include impotence and drowsiness
11. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient he:
  - a. should not take rifampin and Aldactone together
  - b. can take rifampin and Aldactone together
  - c. should take rifampin in the morning and Aldactone in the evening
12. \_\_\_\_ The patient is allergic to:
  - a. wasps and bees
  - b. sulfa and iodine
  - c. wasps, bees, shellfish, sulfa, and iodine
13. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that people with cirrhosis should avoid:
  - a. uncooked shellfish, because it contains mercury
  - b. uncooked shellfish, because it is not always free of bacteria, which is extremely dangerous to people with cirrhosis
  - c. cooked shellfish

14. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that he:
- drinks two cans of beer a week, and the pharmacist tells the patient that that is acceptable
  - has stopped drinking entirely
  - drinks two cans of beer a week and does not drink hard liquor, and the pharmacist tells the patient that he must stop drinking alcohol entirely because his damaged liver can lead to liver disease, a liver transplant, or death
15. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient, who is:
- 43 years old, to eat a healthy diet, restrict salt intake, not to take Aleve or Motrin, and to stay away from sick people because he is not able to fight infection like healthy people can
  - 28 years old, to eat a healthy diet, restrict intake, and not to take Aleve or Motrin
  - 43 years old, to get the hepatitis A and hepatitis B vaccine

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



### **Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
- Mustafa Pasdar, and the pharmacist's name is Samantha Duffy
  - Samantha Pasdar, and the pharmacist's name is Mustafa Duffy
  - Samantha Duffy, and the pharmacist's name is Mustafa Pasdar
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient is in a:
- hospital
  - clinic
  - retail pharmacy
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient is:
- 25 and her date of birth is May 14, 1982
  - 25 and her date of birth is May 14, 1992
  - 25 and her date of birth is May 4, 1982
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient's has been diagnosed with:
- hepatitis B
  - chronic hepatitis
  - hepatitis C
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor is:
- Dr. Len Whitman, and he has prescribed Hepsera
  - Dr. Ben Winman, and he has prescribed Hepsera
  - Dr. Ben Whitman, and he has prescribed Hepsera

- 
6. \_\_\_\_ The medication prescribed to the patient will:
- cure the virus
  - slow down the virus
  - slow down the virus and eventually cure it
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient contracted the virus through:
- sharing of contaminated needles
  - protected sex
  - unprotected sex with an infected person
8. \_\_\_\_ The patient's symptoms included:
- pain around the abdomen, dark urine, and yellowing of the skin and whites of the eyes
  - jaundice
  - pain around the abdomen, dark urine, yellowing of the skin and whites of the eyes, and itchy skin
9. \_\_\_\_ The doctor prescribed that the patient take the medication:
- once a day with food
  - twice a day with or without food
  - once a day with or without food
10. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
- her condition cannot be spread to others
  - she needs to prevent spreading the infection to others
  - she will infect only some people
11. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
- discontinuing the medication will not make her condition worse and that side effects of the medication include headaches, fever, weakness, and diarrhea
  - discontinuing the medication could make her condition worse but that the medication has no serious side effects
  - discontinuing the medication could make her condition worse, that side effects of the medication include headaches, fever, weakness, and diarrhea, and that serious side effects include rash, swelling, and a change in urine amount
12. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that it is:
- important that she keep her doctor's appointments, and that if the infection lasts more than 6 months, she has acute hepatitis and that the infection will not clear up
  - important that she keep her doctor's appointments, and that if the infection lasts more than 6 months, she has chronic hepatitis B and that her body will not be able fight the infection
  - not important that she keep her doctor's appointments if her infection lasts less than 6 months
13. \_\_\_\_ When the patient says, "This just boggles the mind," she means that:
- what the pharmacist is telling her is confusing
  - the infection has made her confused
  - she finds her condition confusing and difficult to accept
14. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient:
- that it is very important to protect her partners from the virus and to protect them from exposure to blood, saliva, and vaginal secretions, and that her partners wear a condom for vaginal and anal sex and that both partners wear dental condoms for oral sex
  - that it is very important to protect her partners from the virus by avoiding blood contact
  - to stop having sexual intercourse for 6 months

15. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient:
- not to share syringes and needles, to eat a healthy diet of whole grains, protein, fruits, and vegetables, and that not taking care of her infection can lead to cirrhosis of the liver, liver damage, and liver cancer
  - not to share syringes and needles, to eat a healthy diet of whole grains, protein, fruits, and vegetables, and that not taking care of her infection can lead to hepatitis A and hepatitis C
  - not to share syringes and needles and that not eating a healthy diet of whole grains, proteins, fruits, and vegetables can lead to autoimmune hepatitis

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

---

Idioms and idiomatic expressions are made up of a group of words that have a different meaning from the original meaning of each individual word. Native speakers of the English language use such expressions comfortably and naturally. However, individuals who are new speakers of English or who have studied English for many years may still not be able to use idioms and idiomatic expressions as comfortably or naturally as native speakers. As pharmacy students, pharmacy technicians, and practicing pharmacists, you will hear many different idiomatic expressions. Some of you will understand and know how to use these expressions correctly. At times, however, you may not understand what your professors, colleagues, and patients are saying. This of course can lead to miscommunication, embarrassment, and possibly dangerous mistakes.

Unlike the previous chapters that contain idioms and expressions with words related to the chapter theme, there are no idioms or expressions that contain words related to the hepatic system. However, there is one idiomatic expression using the word “liver.” For example, “What am I, chopped liver?” means “Why are you ignoring me?” or “Don’t ignore me.” The term “chopped liver” also has a second meaning and refers to a food made of cooked chicken liver that is chopped up and mixed with chopped eggs and onions.

## POST-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

- \_\_\_\_\_ **Hepatitis A** is contracted through contaminated needles.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The adjective of **cirrhosis** is cirrhotic.
- \_\_\_\_\_ **Hepatitis C** is a viral infection in which the body attacks itself.
- \_\_\_\_\_ The words **transplant** and **transplantation** are nouns.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Yellowing of the whites of the eyes and skin, anemia, and itching are symptoms of **hepatitis B**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ **Chronic hepatitis B** is caused by cirrhosis.
- \_\_\_\_\_ One way to contract **hepatitis C** is through contaminated tattooing and body piercing needles.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Another term for scarring of the liver is **autoimmune hepatitis**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Dark urine, jaundice, loss of appetite, vomiting, and abdominal pain are symptoms of **hepatitis A**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ A low-grade fever, loss of appetite, vomiting, and abdominal pain are symptoms of **hepatitis A**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Another term for enlarged veins is **varices**.
- \_\_\_\_\_ People infected with **autoimmune hepatitis** cannot share razors and toothbrushes.



13. \_\_\_\_ **Autoimmune hepatitis** can lead to hepatitis B.
14. \_\_\_\_ **Hepatitis B** can be contracted through casual contact such as hand shaking.
15. \_\_\_\_ **Hepatic encephalopathy** is caused by hepatitis A.

## Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ The word **alcoholic** is:
  - a. a noun
  - b. an adjective and a noun
  - c. a verb
2. \_\_\_\_ A person suffering from **hepatitis B** should:
  - a. drink plenty of water
  - b. not share toothbrushes and razors with others
  - c. avoid casual contact with others
3. \_\_\_\_ Pernicious anemia and hemolytic anemia can be triggered by:
  - a. autoimmune hepatitis
  - b. hepatitis A
  - c. hepatitis B and hepatitis C
4. \_\_\_\_ Alternative medicines such as herb milk thistle are believed to heal:
  - a. autoimmune hepatitis
  - b. the liver of people suffering from cirrhosis
  - c. the liver of people suffering from hepatitis A
5. \_\_\_\_ In this sentence, "Hepatitis A is most contagious before signs and symptoms appear," the word **contagious** is:
  - a. a verb and a noun
  - b. an adjective
  - c. a noun
6. \_\_\_\_ Hepsera is used to:
  - a. cure the hepatitis B virus
  - b. slow down the hepatitis A virus
  - c. slow down the hepatitis B virus
7. \_\_\_\_ Aldactone is used to:
  - a. treat water retention caused by cirrhosis
  - b. treat water retention caused by the hepatitis B virus
  - c. slow down the hepatitis B virus
8. \_\_\_\_ Impairment of the brain as a result of toxic substances that accumulate in the blood is caused by:
  - a. autoimmune hepatitis
  - b. hepatic encephalopathy
  - c. cirrhosis
9. \_\_\_\_ The word **toxicity** is a:
  - a. verb and a noun
  - b. verb only
  - c. noun only

10. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence, “Alcohol and chronic viral hepatitis are two causes of cirrhosis,” the word **chronic** is:
- an adjective and viral is a noun
  - an adjective and viral is an adjective
  - a noun and viral is a noun
11. \_\_\_\_ **Hepatitis A** is contracted through:
- unprotected sex
  - contaminated food, water, and feces
  - accidental needlesticks
12. \_\_\_\_ A person with **cirrhosis**:
- can drink alcohol in moderation
  - should constantly wash his or her hands
  - should not drink alcohol
13. \_\_\_\_ **Autoimmune hepatitis** can lead to:
- hepatitis B
  - diseases such as type II diabetes and Hashimoto’s thyroiditis
  - hepatitis C
14. \_\_\_\_ The word **contaminant** is:
- a verb and the word contamination is a noun
  - a noun and the word contamination is a noun
  - an adjective and the word contamination is a noun
15. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence, “It’s very important for people infected with hepatitis A, which is very contagious, to wash their hands,” the word **contagious** is:
- an adjective
  - a past tense verb
  - a noun

## Listening and Comprehension Exercises



### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist’s name is:
- James Arroyo, and the patient’s name is Fela Richter
  - Fela Arroyo, and the patient’s name is James Richter
  - Fela Arroyo, and the patient’s name is James Rickter

- 
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient's medical condition is:
    - a. hepatitis B
    - b. hepatitis C
    - c. hepatitis A
  3. \_\_\_\_ The patient has a prescription for:
    - a. Roferon-A
    - b. Intron A
    - c. Rebetron
  4. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist the prescribed medication is:
    - a. a combination drug of interferon alpha-2b solution and ribavirin capsules
    - b. a combination drug of interferon alpha-2b capsules and ribavirin solution
    - c. a combination drug of interferon alpha-2a solution and ribavirin solution
  5. \_\_\_\_ The patient's date of birth is:
    - a. September 21, 1975, he lives at 70 Julia Lane, and his telephone number is 876-5231
    - b. September 21, 1975, he lives at 701 Julia Lane, and his telephone number is 876-5321
    - c. September 21, 1975, he lives at 71 Julia Lane, and his telephone number is 876-5321
  6. \_\_\_\_ The patient is allergic to:
    - a. onions, and his doctor's name is Chad Borden
    - b. onions, and his doctor's name is Charles Borden
    - c. onions, and his doctor's name is Charles Boring
  7. \_\_\_\_ The patient most likely got hepatitis C from:
    - a. injecting drug needles
    - b. a contaminated tattooing needle
    - c. a blood transfusion
  8. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that needles make him feel:
    - a. silly
    - b. cutesy
    - c. queasy
  9. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to:
    - a. inject interferon alpha-2b intravenously and to take the ribavirin capsule with water at bedtime
    - b. inject interferon alpha-2b subcutaneously and to take the ribavirin capsule with water in the morning
    - c. inject interferon alpha-2b subcutaneously and to take the ribavirin capsule with water at bedtime
  10. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to:
    - a. take the ribavirin with or without food, but to take it the same way every day, to drink plenty of water to prevent dehydration, and store both the capsules and interferon in the refrigerator
    - b. take the ribavirin with or without food, but to take it the same way every day, to drink plenty of water to prevent dehydration, and store only the interferon in the refrigerator
    - c. take the ribavirin with food only, to drink plenty of water to prevent dehydration, and store only the capsules in the refrigerator
  11. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
    - a. Rebetron will cure hepatitis C and prevent the transmission of the virus
    - b. Rebetron will not cure hepatitis C, but it will prevent the transmission of the virus
    - c. it is not known if Rebetron will cure hepatitis C or if it prevents the transmission of the virus or cirrhosis and liver cancer

12. \_\_\_\_\_ Side effects of the medication include:
- constipation, hair loss, and anemia
  - flu-like symptoms, anemia, dehydration, dizziness, nausea, hair loss, and hair thinning
  - flu-like symptoms, anemia, and hair loss
13. \_\_\_\_\_ Serious side effects include:
- depression, mood and behavior changes, thoughts of suicide, and allergic reactions such as a rash, swelling of the lips and mouth, and difficulty breathing
  - depression and difficulty breathing
  - difficulty breathing and chest pains
14. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist advises the patient to avoid:
- pregnancy while taking interferon alpha-2b because it is known to spread the virus if transmitted to unborn children
  - pregnancy while taking interferon alpha-2b and for 6 months after treatment because interferon alpha-2a is known to cause birth defects in unborn children
  - pregnancy only while taking interferon alpha-2b only because it is known to cause birth defects in unborn children
15. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that he needs to make a few adjustments in his life, which include:
- avoiding alcohol and maintaining a healthy diet
  - avoiding alcohol and unsafe sex, maintaining a healthy diet, not sharing razors and toothbrushes so others don't come in contact with his blood, and informing others of his virus
  - not donating blood only



### **Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - Sonia Watson, and the pharmacist's name is Victor Sanchez
  - Sonya Sanchez, and the pharmacist's name is Victor Watson
  - Sonia Sanchez, and the pharmacist's name is Victor Watson
- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient has a prescription for:
  - prednisone to treat cirrhosis
  - predisol to treat autoimmune hepatitis
  - prednisone to treat autoimmune hepatitis
- \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's date of birth is:
  - 1/5/49
  - 1/15/49
  - 4/15/49

- 
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's address is:
- 6 Moonlight Court in Ivytown, and her telephone number is 367-7644
  - 6 Moonlight Terrace in Ivytown, and her telephone number is 376-7664
  - 6 Moonlight Terrace in Ivytown, and her telephone number is 367-7644
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient:
- has no insurance, and her doctor is Michael Drake
  - has insurance from Healthy Choice Medical Plan, and her doctor is Michelle Drake
  - has insurance from Personal Health, and her doctor is Michelle Drake
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is allergic to:
- eggs and penicillin, is taking Fosamax, and is in menopause
  - eggs and ampicillin, is taking Fosamax, and is perimenopausal
  - eggs and penicillin and is not taking Fosamax
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that:
- her mother died from complications of autoimmune hepatitis
  - her mother was recently diagnosed with autoimmune hepatitis
  - her father died from complications of cirrhosis
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor has prescribed the patient to take:
- one 40-mg prednisone tablet twice a day
  - two 20-mg prednisone tablets once a day
  - one 20-mg prednisone tablet once a day
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that her liver biopsy test was:
- positive for cirrhosis
  - positive for liver cancer
  - negative for cirrhosis
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that prednisone will:
- cure her autoimmune hepatitis
  - cure her autoimmune hepatitis but only if she takes her medication as directed by her doctor
  - not cure her autoimmune hepatitis and that her doctor will monitor her liver with frequent blood tests
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The side effects of prednisone include:
- fluid and salt retention, weight gain, and puffiness in the face (also known as moon face)
  - fluid and salt retention, weight gain, puffiness in the face (also known as moon face), high blood pressure, and osteoporosis
  - fluid and salt retention
12. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that she will need to take prednisone:
- for the rest of her life
  - for as long she needs to and then she can discontinue taking it
  - as determined by her doctor, and that every patient is different
13. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that her symptoms include:
- fatigue, jaundice, and discomfort in the abdomen
  - jaundice and nausea
  - a low-grade fever and discomfort in the abdomen

14. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that:
- a. she doesn't like to exercise
  - b. she exercises regularly, lifts weights, and jogs and walks around the indoor track
  - c. she only lifts weights once a week
15. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
- a. because her disease was discovered early and her treatment was started early, she doesn't run the risk of developing cirrhosis of the liver or liver failure
  - b. because her disease was discovered early and her treatment was started early, she still runs the risk of developing cirrhosis of the liver or liver cancer
  - c. even though her disease was discovered early, she will definitely experience other complications as a result of having autoimmune hepatitis

How did you do on the Post-Assessment in Chapter 11? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

## PRE-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ **Pelvic inflammatory disease**, or PID, does not lead to infertility.
2. \_\_\_\_ A symptom of erectile dysfunction, or ED, is the inability to obtain a full erection.
3. \_\_\_\_ **Fertility** is the inability to conceive a child.
4. \_\_\_\_ A discharge, itching, and pain in the vagina can be caused by **vaginitis**.
5. \_\_\_\_ **Gonorrhea** is a highly contagious, sexually transmitted disease, or STD, also known as “the clap.”
6. \_\_\_\_ Some women who are lactating can develop **mastitis**, an infection of the breast tissue that can cause pain, redness, and swelling of the breast.
7. \_\_\_\_ Heavy bleeding during **menstruation** is called **amenorrhea**.
8. \_\_\_\_ **Hot flashes** refer to the feeling of a warm and hot sensation throughout the face and upper body and to the flushed appearance of hot, red, and blotchy skin on the face and upper body experienced by some perimenopausal women.
9. \_\_\_\_ **Genital herpes** is a highly contagious, sexually transmitted disease that affects only women.
10. \_\_\_\_ **Toxic shock syndrome** is a rare but life-threatening infection that affects mostly women who wear superabsorbent tampons, contraceptive sponges, and diaphragms.
11. \_\_\_\_ **Menorrhagia** refers to the absence of a menstrual cycle.
12. \_\_\_\_ A **yeast infection** is a type of **vaginitis** that causes itching and a white, thick discharge that looks like cottage cheese.
13. \_\_\_\_ **Uterine fibroids**, which are common in women, can cause heavy menstrual periods, urinary problems, constipation, anemia, and an enlarged abdomen.
14. \_\_\_\_ Several factors in males, including erectile dysfunction, premature ejaculation, lack of semen, and sexually transmitted diseases, can lead to **infertility**.
15. \_\_\_\_ The word **menstruation** is an adjective.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ Causes of **pelvic inflammatory disease** include:
  - a. unprotected sex with more than one partner and using contraceptive IUDs
  - b. using contraceptive IUDs only
  - c. unprotected sex only

2. \_\_\_\_\_ **Mittelschmerz** is a term that refers to:
  - a. pain during intercourse
  - b. one-sided lower abdominal pain experienced by women during ovulation
  - c. pain during ejaculation
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Symptoms of **premenstrual syndrome**, or PMS, include:
  - a. fatigue and sleepiness
  - b. fatigue, irritability, and sleepiness
  - c. fatigue, irritability, tender breasts, mood swings, food cravings, and depression
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Thick, lumpy tissue in the breast area and full, painful, tender breasts describes:
  - a. fibrocystic breast disease
  - b. inflammatory breast disease
  - c. mastitis
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Another term for a painful periods is:
  - a. amenorrhea
  - b. menorrhagia
  - c. dysmenorrhea
6. \_\_\_\_\_ A painful female reproductive disorder that can cause heavy bleeding, severe pain, and cramps during menstruation and cause infertility is:
  - a. pelvic inflammatory disease
  - b. polycystic ovarian syndrome
  - c. endometriosis
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Signs and symptoms of an **ovarian cyst** include:
  - a. pain during intercourse, menstrual irregularities, fullness in the abdomen, and pressure in the rectum and bladder
  - b. pain in the lower abdomen and pelvis and heavy foul-smelling vaginal discharge
  - c. pain during ovulation and hot flashes
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Common causes of a heavy menstrual flow include but are not limited to:
  - a. sexually transmitted diseases
  - b. uterine fibroids and polyps, hormonal imbalance, lack of ovulation, and endometriosis
  - c. breast lumps and ovarian cysts
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The word **miscarry** is a:
  - a. verb
  - b. verb and an adjective
  - c. noun
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The expression “**keep me abreast**” means the person wants:
  - a. to keep their breasts
  - b. to be told of the most recent information
  - c. to keep at least one breast

How did you do? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

## MEDICAL VOCABULARY

---

A good understanding of vocabulary words in pharmacy is very important for communication with professors, fellow students, patients, and coworkers. Knowledge and understanding of vocabulary leads to successful communication and success as a pharmacy student, as a pharmacy technician, and as a practicing pharmacist. You may already know many of the vocabulary words in this chapter, but for words that are unfamiliar, pay careful attention to them and make every effort to know their correct spelling, meaning,



and pronunciation. It is a good idea to keep a list of new words and to look up these new words in a bilingual dictionary or dictionary in your first language. A good command of pharmacy-related vocabulary and good pronunciation of vocabulary will help to prevent embarrassing mistakes and increase effective verbal communication skills.

## Reproductive System Vocabulary

adenomyosis	frothy discharge	penis
amenorrhea	gonorrhea	perimenopause
atrophic vaginitis	hormones	premenstrual syndrome
bacterial vaginitis	hot flash	polycystic ovarian syndrome
birth control	hysterectomy	postpartum
bloated	infertility	progesterone
breast lump	inseminate	scabies
cervix	intercourse	scrotum
condom	intrauterine device	semen
contraception	lactation	seminal fluid
cramps	lumpectomy	sexually transmitted disease (STD)
cysts	mastectomy	sexually transmitted infection (STI)
diaphragm	mastitis	sperm
douche	menometrorrhagia	spermicide
dysmenorrheal	menopause	syphilis
dyspareunia	menorrhagia	testicle
early menarche	menstruation	testosterone
ectopic pregnancy	miscarriage	toxic shock syndrome
ejaculation	mittelschmerz	transmission
endometriosis	nipple	uterine fibroids
erectile dysfunction	ovary	vaginitis
fallopian tube	ovulation	venereal disease
fertile	Pap smear	yeast infection
fibrocystic breasts	pelvic inflammatory disease	
fibroids	pelvis	
foul odor		

## PARTS OF SPEECH

A good understanding of parts of speech, such as verbs, nouns, adjectives, and adverbs, is important for successful communication when speaking or writing. It is equally important to know the various forms of words and to use them appropriately.

### Word Forms

The table below lists the main forms of some terms that you will likely encounter in pharmacy practice. Review the table and then do the exercises that follow to assess your understanding.

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v)— Past Tense	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
amenorrhea		amenorrheic; amenorrheal	
bacteria		bacterial	bacterially
	to bloat; bloated	bloated; bloating	
cervix		cervical	

(continued)

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v)— Past Tense	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
contraceptive; contraception			
controllability; control	to control; controlled	controlled; controlling; controllable	controllably
cramp	to cramp; cramped	cramped; crampy	
dysfunction		dysfunctional	dysfunctionally
dysmenorrhea		dysmenorrheal; dysmenorrheic	
ectopia		ectopic	
ejaculation	to ejaculate; ejaculated	ejaculatory	
endometriosis; endometrium; endometria		endometrial	
erection; erectility	to erect; erected	erectile	
fertility; fertilization	to fertilize; fertilized	fertilized	
fibroid		fibrocystic	
frothiness		frothy	frothily
gonorrhoea		gonorrhoeal; gonorrhoeic	
hormone		hormonal; hormonal	hormonally
hysterectomy		hysterectomize	
infertility		infertile	
insemination	to inseminate; inseminated		
lactation	to lactate; lactated	lactating; lactational	
mastitis		mastitic	
menarche		menarcheal	
menopause		menopausal	
menorrhagia		menorrhagic	
menstruation	to menstruate; menstruated	menstrual	
miscarriage	to miscarry; miscarried		
ovary; ovaritis		ovarian	
ovulation	to ovulate; ovulated	ovulating; ovulatory	
pelvis		pelvic	
penis		penile	
pregnancy		pregnant	
		premenstrual	premenstrually
semen		seminal	

(continued)

Noun (n)	Infinitive/Verb (v)—		Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
	Past Tense			
sex			sexual	sexually
syndrome			syndromic	
syphilis			syphilitic	
testicle			testicular	
transmission	to transmit; transmitted			
uterus			uterine	
vagina; vaginitis			vaginal	vaginally
yeast; yeastiness			yeasty	yeastily

### Word Forms Exercise

Read the following sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv.

1. **Untreated pelvic** inflammatory disease (PID), which is caused by sexually transmitted diseases such as gonorrhea and chlamydia, can damage **reproductive** organs as a result of infected fluid that collects in the **fallopian tubes** and **scarring**.  
untreated \_\_\_\_\_ pelvic \_\_\_\_\_ reproductive \_\_\_\_\_ fallopian tubes \_\_\_\_\_ scarring \_\_\_\_\_
2. Many **females** will experience a **yeast infection**, a type of **vaginitis**, which is caused **naturally** by *Candida*, a **fungus**.  
females \_\_\_\_\_ yeast infection \_\_\_\_\_ vaginitis \_\_\_\_\_ naturally \_\_\_\_\_ fungus \_\_\_\_\_
3. Men who suffer from **erectile dysfunction**, also known as **impotence**, may experience the **inability** to occasionally achieve an **erection**, the inability to have a **full** erection, or the inability to maintain an erection during intercourse.  
erectile dysfunction \_\_\_\_\_ impotence \_\_\_\_\_ inability \_\_\_\_\_ erection \_\_\_\_\_ full \_\_\_\_\_
4. Symptoms of **gonorrhea**, also known as “the clap,” a highly contagious **sexually** transmitted disease or **STD** that affects both men and women, include a thick **vaginal** or **penile discharge** and a burning sensation when urinating.  
gonorrhea \_\_\_\_\_ sexually \_\_\_\_\_ STD \_\_\_\_\_ vaginal \_\_\_\_\_ penile \_\_\_\_\_ discharge \_\_\_\_\_
5. An uncomfortable and embarrassing symptom of **menopause** is **hot flashes**, which are characterized by a **flushed, blotchy**, red face and skin, a feeling of **warmth** through the upper body and face, and **sweat** on the upper body.  
menopause \_\_\_\_\_ hot flashes \_\_\_\_\_ flushed \_\_\_\_\_ blotchy \_\_\_\_\_ warmth \_\_\_\_\_ sweat \_\_\_\_\_
6. Some mothers who are **lactating**, or breast-feeding their babies, will develop **mastitis**, which is inflammation of the **breast** tissue caused by bacteria that enters the breast tissue through a **crack** in the skin of the **nipple** or through the **milk duct**.  
lactating \_\_\_\_\_ mastitis \_\_\_\_\_ breast \_\_\_\_\_ crack \_\_\_\_\_ nipple \_\_\_\_\_ milk duct \_\_\_\_\_
7. Primary **amenorrhea** refers to lack of **menstruation** by the age of 16, and **secondary** amenorrhea refers to **lack** of menstruation for more than 6 months.  
amenorrhea \_\_\_\_\_ refers \_\_\_\_\_ menstruation \_\_\_\_\_ secondary \_\_\_\_\_ lack \_\_\_\_\_
8. Signs of an **ectopic** pregnancy, in which the **fertilized** egg **implants** itself outside the uterus, are abnormal **vaginal** bleeding, **pelvic** pain in the lower part of the **pelvis**, and feeling faint and dizzy.  
ectopic \_\_\_\_\_ fertilized \_\_\_\_\_ implants \_\_\_\_\_ vaginal \_\_\_\_\_ pelvic \_\_\_\_\_ pelvis \_\_\_\_\_

9. **Dysmenorrhea** is the term that refers to painful **menstrual cramps**, which are characterized by **painful** lower **abdominal** pain accompanied by nausea, vomiting, and loose **stool**.  
 dysmenorrhea \_\_\_\_\_ menstrual \_\_\_\_\_ cramps \_\_\_\_\_ painful \_\_\_\_\_ abdominal \_\_\_\_\_  
 stool \_\_\_\_\_
10. Most women in **perimenopause**, which is the years leading to menopause, will experience a variety symptoms that include **irregular** periods, heavy **bleeding** during periods, hot flashes, mood changes, **vaginal** dryness, and **urinary** incontinence.  
 perimenopause \_\_\_\_\_ irregular \_\_\_\_\_ bleeding \_\_\_\_\_ vaginal \_\_\_\_\_ urinary \_\_\_\_\_
11. Causes of male **infertility** include, but are not limited to, **impaired** shape and impaired movement of the **sperm**, a low sperm **count**, **testosterone** deficiency, and sexually transmitted diseases such as gonorrhea and **chlamydia**.  
 infertility \_\_\_\_\_ impaired \_\_\_\_\_ sperm \_\_\_\_\_ count \_\_\_\_\_ testosterone \_\_\_\_\_  
 chlamydia \_\_\_\_\_
12. The use of latex **condoms** during **sexual** intercourse reduces the risk of **contracting sexually** transmitted infections such as gonorrhea and chlamydia and preventing the transmission of the HIV virus by **blocking** the **exchange** of bodily fluids.  
 condoms \_\_\_\_\_ sexual \_\_\_\_\_ contracting \_\_\_\_\_ sexually \_\_\_\_\_ blocking \_\_\_\_\_  
 exchange \_\_\_\_\_
13. Symptoms of **polycystic** ovary syndrome, a **hormonal** disorder, include no **menstruation** or **irregular** menstruation, **excessive** hair growth on the face, chest, and other parts of the body, and **multiple** cysts on the ovaries.  
 polycystic \_\_\_\_\_ hormonal \_\_\_\_\_ menstruation \_\_\_\_\_ irregular \_\_\_\_\_  
 excessive \_\_\_\_\_ multiple \_\_\_\_\_
14. The morning-after pill, also referred to as emergency **contraception**, is a **birth control** pill taken to **prevent** pregnancy after **unprotected** or **unwanted** sex has occurred.  
 contraception \_\_\_\_\_ birth control \_\_\_\_\_ prevent \_\_\_\_\_ unprotected \_\_\_\_\_  
 unwanted \_\_\_\_\_
15. Women whose **cervical** cancer has **progressed** will experience **pelvic** pain and pain during intercourse, have **vaginal** bleeding between periods and during menopause, and have a **foul**, bloody vaginal **discharge**.  
 cervical \_\_\_\_\_ progressed \_\_\_\_\_ pelvic \_\_\_\_\_ vaginal \_\_\_\_\_ foul \_\_\_\_\_  
 discharge \_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### *Typical Medical Conditions and Patient Complaints*

The sentences below contain vocabulary that describes and explains typical medical conditions, diseases, symptoms, and patient complaints that a pharmacist encounters. Read the sentences carefully. Then indicate the word form of the bolded word(s), choosing from v, n, adj, or adv. Look up words you do not know in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

1. Symptoms of **testicular** cancer, which is highly **treatable** when **diagnosed** early, include discomfort or pain in the **testicle** or **scrotum**, a lump or **enlargement** in either testicle, and fatigue.  
 testicular \_\_\_\_\_ treatable \_\_\_\_\_ diagnosed \_\_\_\_\_ testicle \_\_\_\_\_ scrotum \_\_\_\_\_  
 enlargement \_\_\_\_\_
2. Complications of **untreated** pelvic inflammatory disease—whose symptoms include pelvic pain, heavy vaginal discharge with a foul odor, and pain during intercourse—include **infertility**, **ectopic** pregnancy, which can cause life-threatening **bleeding**, and **chronic** pelvic pain.  
 untreated \_\_\_\_\_ infertility \_\_\_\_\_ ectopic \_\_\_\_\_ bleeding \_\_\_\_\_ chronic \_\_\_\_\_

3. **Endometriosis**, a painful **reproductive** disease in which tissue that normally lines the inside of the **uterus** implants itself in the **fallopian** tubes, ovaries, and in the tissue lining of the **pelvis**, can interfere with conception and lead to impaired **fertility**.  
 endometriosis \_\_\_\_\_ reproductive \_\_\_\_\_ uterus \_\_\_\_\_ fallopian \_\_\_\_\_ pelvis \_\_\_\_\_ fertility \_\_\_\_\_
4. Substance **abuse**, certain **medical** conditions such as heart disease and diabetes, certain **medications**, and stress and anxiety are **risk factors** for developing **erectile** dysfunction, or ED.  
 abuse \_\_\_\_\_ medical \_\_\_\_\_ medications \_\_\_\_\_ risk factors \_\_\_\_\_ erectile \_\_\_\_\_
5. After menopause, some women may develop **atrophic vaginitis**, a condition that is caused by **low estrogen levels** and characterized by **vaginal** burning, itching, or pain.  
 atrophic \_\_\_\_\_ vaginitis \_\_\_\_\_ low estrogen \_\_\_\_\_ levels \_\_\_\_\_ vaginal \_\_\_\_\_
6. **Cervicitis** is inflammation of the **cervix** caused by viruses and bacteria transmitted by **STDs** such as gonorrhea, chlamydia, **genital** herpes, and genital **warts** and can lead to **pelvic** inflammatory disease (PID).  
 cervicitis \_\_\_\_\_ cervix \_\_\_\_\_ STDs \_\_\_\_\_ genital \_\_\_\_\_ warts \_\_\_\_\_ pelvic \_\_\_\_\_
7. **Hormonal** imbalance, stress, too much **exercise**, low body **weight**, certain medications, a thyroid condition, **contraceptives**, and pregnancy can cause **amenorrhea**.  
 hormonal \_\_\_\_\_ exercise \_\_\_\_\_ weight \_\_\_\_\_ contraceptives \_\_\_\_\_ amenorrhea \_\_\_\_\_
8. Symptoms of **menopause**, which occurs when a woman has not had a **period** for 12 months, include **night sweats**, irregular periods, decreased **fertility**, **vaginal** dryness, urinary incontinence, irritability, and weight gain.  
 menopause \_\_\_\_\_ period \_\_\_\_\_ night sweats \_\_\_\_\_ fertility \_\_\_\_\_ vaginal \_\_\_\_\_
9. Women who experience **adenomyosis** during menstruation will experience **prolonged** and heavy bleeding, severe and **sharp cramps**, and **pass blood clots**.  
 adenomyosis \_\_\_\_\_ prolonged \_\_\_\_\_ sharp \_\_\_\_\_ cramps \_\_\_\_\_ pass \_\_\_\_\_ blood clots \_\_\_\_\_
10. In men, **gonorrhea** can lead to **infertility**; in women, it can lead to PID and other complications such as **ectopic** pregnancy, **transmission** to the child during pregnancy, and infertility; and in both men and women gonorrhea can spread to the **anal** area, the mouth and throat, and eyes.  
 gonorrhea \_\_\_\_\_ infertility \_\_\_\_\_ ectopic \_\_\_\_\_ transmission \_\_\_\_\_ anal \_\_\_\_\_
11. While **tender** breasts, **mood swings**, food cravings, and irritability a few days before a woman gets her period are typical symptoms of **premenstrual** syndrome (**PMS**), more **persistent** sadness, depression, anger, anxiety, loss of control, and overeating or lack of appetite are typical symptoms of premenstrual dysphoric disorder (**PMDD**), which is a more severe form of PMS.  
 tender \_\_\_\_\_ mood swings \_\_\_\_\_ premenstrual \_\_\_\_\_ PMS \_\_\_\_\_ persistent \_\_\_\_\_ PMDD \_\_\_\_\_
12. **HPV**, or human papillomavirus, infection is transmitted through sexual contact, and symptoms of sexually contracted HPV in females are **genital warts** that can **appear** in the vulva, cervix, vagina, and near the anus; and in males the warts can appear in the scrotum, **penis**, and around the anus.  
 HPV \_\_\_\_\_ genital \_\_\_\_\_ warts \_\_\_\_\_ appear \_\_\_\_\_ penis \_\_\_\_\_
13. A **hysterectomy** might be a good option for women who suffer from **cervical** or **uterine** cancer, endometriosis, uterine fibroids that cause heavy **bleeding**, and who suffer from persistent bleeding during periods when **non-surgical** methods have not been successful.  
 hysterectomy \_\_\_\_\_ cervical \_\_\_\_\_ uterine \_\_\_\_\_ bleeding \_\_\_\_\_ non-surgical \_\_\_\_\_

14. **Premature ovarian failure**, which is used to refer to a woman's **ovaries' inability** to function before age 40, can lead to infertility, osteoporosis, and depression.  
premature \_\_\_\_\_ ovarian \_\_\_\_\_ failure \_\_\_\_\_ ovaries' \_\_\_\_\_ inability \_\_\_\_\_
15. Signs of **endometrial** cancer, also known as **uterine** cancer, include prolonged periods, bleeding between periods, a **watery**, pink **vaginal** discharge, and more **frequent** spotting during the perimenopause years.  
endometrial \_\_\_\_\_ uterine \_\_\_\_\_ watery \_\_\_\_\_ vaginal \_\_\_\_\_ frequent \_\_\_\_\_
16. A woman with an **ovarian** cyst may experience **irregular** periods, pelvic pain, pain during **intercourse**, breast **tenderness** as though she were **pregnant**, **fullness** in the abdomen, pressure in the bladder and rectum, nausea, and vomiting.  
ovarian \_\_\_\_\_ irregular \_\_\_\_\_ intercourse \_\_\_\_\_ tenderness \_\_\_\_\_ pregnant \_\_\_\_\_ fullness \_\_\_\_\_
17. The symptoms of **genital herpes**, also known as herpes simplex virus 2, a highly **contagious** STD that has no **cure**, include **itching** around the **genital** area and buttocks, and small red bumps and **blisters** in the genital area.  
genital herpes \_\_\_\_\_ contagious \_\_\_\_\_ cure \_\_\_\_\_ itching \_\_\_\_\_ genital \_\_\_\_\_ blisters \_\_\_\_\_
18. A **complication** of prolonged and heavy **menstrual** bleeding, known as **menorrhagia**, is **anemia**, which results from iron **deficiency**.  
complication \_\_\_\_\_ menstrual \_\_\_\_\_ menorrhagia \_\_\_\_\_ anemia \_\_\_\_\_ deficiency \_\_\_\_\_
19. Signs of **ovarian** cancer, which mimic symptoms of bladder and **digestive** disorders, include **bloating**, **urinary** urgency, nausea and gas, diarrhea, constipation, lack of appetite, pain during sexual intercourse, and **increased waist** size.  
ovarian \_\_\_\_\_ digestive \_\_\_\_\_ bloating \_\_\_\_\_ urinary \_\_\_\_\_ increased \_\_\_\_\_ waist \_\_\_\_\_
20. To help increase the performance of **sperm**, men should **watch** their weight, **exercise**, and avoid tobacco, alcohol, **recreational** drugs, steroids, and testosterone **supplements**.  
sperm \_\_\_\_\_ watch \_\_\_\_\_ exercise \_\_\_\_\_ recreational \_\_\_\_\_ supplements \_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## Medical Vocabulary Comprehension

Now that you have read sentences 1 through 20 describing language regarding the reproductive system, assess your understanding by doing the exercises below.

### *Multiple Choice Questions*

Choose the answer that correctly completes each sentence below.

- \_\_\_\_\_ A disease that if left untreated can damage the fallopian tubes is:
  - vaginitis
  - pelvic inflammatory disease
  - cervicitis
- \_\_\_\_\_ **Menorrhagia** is:
  - absence of menstruation
  - prolonged and heavy bleeding during menstruation
  - painful intercourse
- \_\_\_\_\_ Human papillomavirus (HPV) infects:
  - the penis and scrotum only

- b. the vagina and anus only
  - c. the cervix, vulva, vagina, penis, scrotum, and anal area
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Persistent sadness, depression, anger and anxiety, loss of control, and overeating or lack of appetite are typical symptoms of:
- a. premenstrual syndrome (PMS)
  - b. hot flashes
  - c. premenstrual dysphoric disorder (PMDD)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Risk factors for **erectile dysfunction** include:
- a. stress and certain medical conditions such as heart disease and diabetes
  - b. impotence
  - c. penile discharge
6. \_\_\_\_\_ **Cervicitis** is caused by:
- a. viruses and bacteria transmitted by STDs
  - b. infertility
  - c. a hormonal disorder
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Characteristics of **perimenopause** include:
- a. regular periods and normal bleeding
  - b. irregular periods, heavy bleeding, and hot flashes
  - c. premature ovarian failure
8. \_\_\_\_\_ **Genital herpes** is:
- a. a highly contagious STD that has a cure
  - b. a highly contagious disease with no cure that causes itching and red bumps and blisters around the genital area of men only
  - c. a highly contagious disease with no cure that causes itching and red bumps and blisters around the genital area of both men and women
9. \_\_\_\_\_ **Amenorrhea** refers to:
- a. absence of menstruation
  - b. painful cramps during menstruation
  - c. pain during sexual intercourse
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Avoiding tobacco, alcohol, recreational drugs, steroids, and testosterone supplements can help a man:
- a. avoid STDs
  - b. increase sperm performance
  - c. treat genital warts
11. \_\_\_\_\_ Bloating, increased waist size, and urinary urgency are symptoms of:
- a. PMS
  - b. PID
  - c. ovarian cancer
12. \_\_\_\_\_ A complication of **menorrhagia** is:
- a. absence of periods
  - b. anemia
  - c. infertility
13. \_\_\_\_\_ Irregular periods, breast tenderness, pain during intercourse, and pressure in the bladder and rectum are some symptoms of:
- a. ovarian cyst
  - b. cervicitis
  - c. endometriosis

14. \_\_\_\_ The condition in which women experience prolonged and heavy bleeding, severe and sharp cramps, and pass blood clots is called:
- dyspareunia
  - menorrhagia
  - adenomyosis
15. \_\_\_\_ Another term for **gonorrhea** is:
- the snap
  - the clap
  - scabies

### *True/False Questions*

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

- \_\_\_\_ **Genital herpes** is a highly contagious STD that has a cure.
- \_\_\_\_ A **hysterectomy** might be a good option for women who suffer from uterine fibroids that cause heavy bleeding, from cervical and uterine cancer, and from endometriosis.
- \_\_\_\_ **Premature ovarian failure** can lead to pelvic inflammatory disease.
- \_\_\_\_ **Erectile dysfunction** can lead to testicular cancer.
- \_\_\_\_ **Atrophic vaginitis** is a condition that is by caused by low estrogen levels and characterized by vaginal burning, itching, or pain.
- \_\_\_\_ The word “**menopausal**” is a noun.
- \_\_\_\_ **Endometriosis** does not interfere with conception and does not lead to infertility.
- \_\_\_\_ Another term for emergency contraception is the **morning-after pill**.
- \_\_\_\_ A **yeast infection** is a type of STD that is caused by the *Candida* fungus.
- \_\_\_\_ Discomfort or pain in the testicle or scrotum, a lump or enlargement in either testicle, and fatigue are signs of **testicular cancer**.

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### *Writing Exercise*

An important part of communication is the ability to write about what you read, to write correctly, and to spell correctly. In the exercises below, write your understanding of the meaning of the bolded words.

1. Describe in writing what **pelvic inflammatory disease** is.

---

---

---

---

2. Describe in writing what **erectile dysfunction** is.

---

---

---

---

3. Describe in writing what **amenorrhea, menorrhagia, dysmenorrhea, and adenomyosis** are.

---

---

---

---



4. Describe in writing what **perimenopause** and **menopause** are.

---



---



---

5. Describe in writing what **gonorrhea**, **genital herpes**, and **human papillomavirus** are.

---



---



---

Check what you have written with acceptable answers that appear in the Answer Key online.

## LISTENING AND PRONUNCIATION

The ability to listen and understand what is being said and heard, and the ability to pronounce words clearly, is extremely important. A word misheard and a word mispronounced will lead to poor communication and can seriously put both the pharmacist and patient in danger. Therefore, it is very important that one hear clearly what another person has said, and that one speak clearly with correct pronunciation.

Listen carefully to the pharmacy-related words presented in the audio files found in Chapter 12 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)), and then pronounce them as accurately as you can. Listen and then repeat. You will listen to each word once and then you will repeat it. You will do this twice for each word. Listening and pronunciation practice will increase your listening and speaking confidence. Many languages do not produce or emphasize certain sounds produced and emphasized in English, so pay careful attention to the pronunciation of each word.



### Pronunciation Exercise

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 12 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)). Listen and repeat the words. Then say the words aloud for additional practice.

- |                        |                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. adenomyosis         | ăd' n-ō-mī-ō' s' s            |
| 2. amenorrhea          | ā-mĕn' ə-rĕ' ə                |
| 3. atrophic vaginitis  | ā-trōf' ĭk vāj' ə-nī' t' s    |
| 4. bacterial vaginosis | băk-tĭr' ĕ-ə  vāj' ə-nō' s' s |
| 5. birth control       | bŭrth kən-trōl'               |
| 6. bloated             | blō' t' ĭd                    |
| 7. breast lump         | brĕst lŭmp                    |
| 8. cervix              | sŭr' v' ĭks                   |
| 9. condom              | kōn' dəm                      |
| 10. contraceptive      | kōn' trə-sĕp' t' ĭv           |
| 11. cramps             | krămps                        |
| 12. cyst               | s' ĭst                        |
| 13. diaphragm          | dī' ə-frăm                    |
| 14. douche             | dōōsh                         |
| 15. dysmenorrhea       | d ĭs-mĕn' ə-rĕ' ə             |
| 16. dyspareunia        | d ĭspĕru niĕə                 |
| 17. early menarche     | ŭr' lĕ mə-năr' kĕ             |
| 18. ectopic pregnancy  | ĕk-tō' p' ĭk prĕg' nən-sĕ     |
| 19. ejaculation        | ĭ-jăk' yə-ĭă' shən            |
| 20. endometriosis      | ĕn' dō-mĕ' trĕ-ō' s' s        |

21. erectile dysfunction	ĩ-rĕk'təl, -tɪl' dɪs-fŭngk'shən
22. fallopian tube	fə-lɒ'pĕ.ən tɒb
23. fertile	fúr'tl
24. fibrocystic breasts	fɪ'brɒ-sɪs'tɪk brĕsts
25. fibroids	fɪ'broid's
26. foul odor	foul 'ɒdər
27. frothy discharge	fró'thĕ dɪs-chärj
28. gonorrhea	gɒn'ə-rĕ'ə
29. hormone	hór'mɒn
30. hot flash	hɒt flæsh
31. hysterectomy	hɪs'tə-rĕk'tə-mĕ
32. infertility	ɪn'fər-tɪl'ɪ-tĕ
33. inseminate	ɪn-sĕm'ə-nā-t
34. intercourse	ɪn'tər-kòrs
35. intrauterine device	ɪn'trə-yoo'tər-ɪn dɪ-vɪs
36. lactation	lækt-ā'shən
37. lumpectomy	lŭm-pĕk'tə-mĕ
38. mastectomy	mā-stĕk'tə-mĕ
39. mastitis	mā-stɪ'tɪs
40. menopause	mĕn'ə-pôz
41. menorrhagia	mĕn'ə-rā'jĕ.ə
42. menses	mĕn'sĕz
43. menstruation	mĕn'strɒ-ā'shən
44. miscarriage	mɪs'kār'ɪj
45. mittelschmerz	mɪtlɪmærts
46. nipple	nɪp'əl
47. ovary	o'vərĕ
48. ovulate	o'vyə-lāt
49. Pap smear	pæp smír
50. pelvic inflammatory disease	pĕl'vɪk ɪn-flām'ə-tôr'ĕ dɪ-zĕz
51. pelvis	pĕl'vɪs
52. penis	pĕ'nɪs
53. perimenopause	pír'ĕmĕn'ə-pôz
54. polycystic ovarian syndrome	pɒl'ĕ-sɪs'tɪk ɒ-vār'ĕ.ən sɪn'drɒm
55. postpartum	pɒst-pār'təm
56. premenstrual syndrome	prĕ-mĕn'strɒ-əl sɪn'drɒm'
57. progesterone	prɒ-jĕs'tərɒn'
58. scabies	skā'bĕz
59. scrotum	skrɒ'təm
60. semen	sĕ'mən
61. seminal fluid	sĕm'ə-nəl flɒ'ɪd
62. sexually transmitted disease	sĕk'shɒ-əlĕ trāns-mɪtĕd dɪ-zĕz'
63. sexually transmitted infection	sĕk'shɒ-əlĕ trāns-mɪtĕd ɪn-fĕk'shən
64. sperm	spûrm
65. spermicide	spûr'mɪ-sɪd
66. syphilis	sɪf'əlɪs
67. testicle	tĕs'tɪkəl
68. testosterone	tĕs-tɒs'tərɒn
69. toxic shock syndrome	tɒk'sɪk shɒk sɪn'drɒm
70. uterine fibroid	yoo'tər-ɪn fɪ'broid
71. vaginitis	vāj'ə-nɪ'tɪs

72. venereal disease	və-nīr'ē-əl dī-zēz
73. yeast infection	yēst ȳn-fēk'shən

Which words are easy to pronounce? Which are difficult to pronounce? Use the space below to write in the words that you find difficult to pronounce. These are words you should practice saying often.

---



---



---



---



---



---



---

Listen to the audio files found in Chapter 12 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) as many times as you need to increase your pronunciation ability of the difficult words. Pronounce these words with a friend or a colleague who speaks English.

#### English Sounds That Are Difficult for Speakers of Other Languages to Pronounce

##### Spanish

In Spanish there is no English “v” sound, but the “v” consonant in Spanish is pronounced like the English “b.” The vowel “i” is pronounced like a long “e.” Pay careful attention to the “v” sound in English when pronouncing words that begin with “v.” Also pay careful attention to English words that begin with “s;” do not use the Spanish “es” sound when pronouncing English words that begin with “s.”

For example, in English,

pelvis is not pronounced pelbees

##### Vietnamese

In Vietnamese, the “t” consonant is pronounced “s,” but in English the “t” is pronounced “t” and “s” is pronounced “s.” Be careful with English words that begin with “t.” In Vietnamese, the “b” consonant is pronounced “p,” but in English “p” is pronounced “p” and “b” is pronounced “b.”

In Vietnamese, words do not end in “b,” “ch,” “f,” “d,” “j,” “l,” “p,” “r,” “s,” “sh,” “v,” and “z.” In English, words end in these letters. Pay special attention to pronouncing these English sounds. In Vietnamese, there is no “dzh” or “zh” sound, so English words like “judge” (dzh) and “rupture” (zh) will be hard for Vietnamese speakers to pronounce.

For example, in English,

birth control is not pronounced pir contoh

##### Gujarati

In Gujarati, “v” is pronounced “w,” “f” is pronounced “p,” “p” is pronounced “f,” and “z” is pronounced “j.” Short “i” is pronounced long “e,” “x” is pronounced “ch,” and “th” is pronounced “s.” In English, “v” is pronounced “v,” “f” is pronounced “f,” “z” is pronounced “z” or “s,” “j” is pronounced “j,” and “x” is pronounced “x.” Pay careful attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

fertile is not pronounced pertile

(continued)

**Korean**

In Korean, the “v” consonant is pronounced “b” and the “f” consonant is pronounced “p.” In English, the “v” is pronounced “v,” the “f” is pronounced “f,” and the “p” is pronounced “p.” Pay special attention when pronouncing these sounds.

For example, in English,

vaginitis is not pronounced baginitis

**Chinese**

In Chinese, the “r” consonant is pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are not pronounced at all. Pay careful attention to English words that begin with “r” because the “r” is not pronounced “l” or “w,” and “b,” “d,” “g,” and “ng” are pronounced in English.

For example, in English,

pregnancy is not pronounced prehnehcee

**Russian**

The “w” consonant is pronounced like a “v” and the “v” sound like a “w.” Pay careful attention to the English “th.” It is not pronounced “s.”

For example, in English,

vaginitis is not pronounced waginitis

**DICTIONATION****Listening/Spelling Exercise: Word and Word Pairs**

Listen to the words or word pairs on the audio files found in Chapter 12 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_
13. \_\_\_\_\_
14. \_\_\_\_\_
15. \_\_\_\_\_

**Listening/Spelling Exercise: Sentences**

Listen to the sentences on the audio files found in Chapter 12 on thePoint ([thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert](http://thePoint.lww.com/diaz-gilbert)) and then write them down on the lines below.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Now, check your sentences against the correct answers in the Answer Key online. If there are any new words that you do not know or that you spelled incorrectly, make a list of those words and study them for meaning and spelling.

## PHARMACIST/PATIENT DIALOGUES

The ability to orally communicate effectively with your professors, colleagues, and especially with patients is very important. As a pharmacist, you will be counseling patients; patients will come to you for advice. They will have questions about a condition and symptoms they may experience and will ask you to help treat the condition. Therefore, it is extremely important that you understand what they are saying and that you respond to them and their questions appropriately. Your patients will speak differently. For example, some may speak very quickly, others too low, and yet others may speak angrily. To help you improve your listening skills, listen to the following dialogues, or short conversations, between a pharmacist and a patient and between a pharmacy technician and a patient.

### Listening and Comprehension Exercises



#### *Dialogue #1*

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - a. Emily Walker, and the pharmacist's name is Frank Lynch
  - b. Emily Lynch, and the pharmacist's name is Frank Walker
  - c. Frank Walker, and the pharmacist's name is Emily Lynch
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient is in a:
  - a. hospital
  - b. retail pharmacy
  - c. clinic
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor's name is:
  - a. Dr. Alexandra
  - b. Dr. Alexander
  - c. Dr. Alexandria
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient's medical condition is:
  - a. vaginal yeast infection
  - b. atrophic vaginitis
  - c. cottage cheese
5. \_\_\_\_ The doctor has prescribed:
  - a. prescription Monistat-7 in tablet form
  - b. non-prescription Monistat-7 cream
  - c. non-prescription Monistat-7 suppositories
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that she has:
  - a. had a yeast infection in the past and that she is very embarrassed
  - b. never had a yeast infection before and that she is very embarrassed
  - c. never had a yeast infection and that she's not embarrassed
7. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to insert the:
  - a. 100-mg suppository with the applicator in her vagina for the next 7 mornings
  - b. 10-mg suppository with the applicator in her vagina for the next 7 nights
  - c. 100-mg suppository with the applicator in her vagina for the next 7 nights
8. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient:
  - a. there is no reason to be embarrassed and that vaginal yeast infection is very common
  - b. that vaginal yeast infection is not common, but that she should not feel embarrassed
  - c. that three out of four women get a vaginal yeast infection and that she should be embarrassed
9. \_\_\_\_ The patient asks the pharmacist if the medication is going to get rid of her:
  - a. painful urination
  - b. itching and a vaginal discharge that looks like cottage cheese
  - c. painful urination and a bloody vaginal discharge
10. \_\_\_\_ Side effects of the medication include:
  - a. irritation and a burning sensation after inserting the suppository
  - b. irritation and vaginal dryness
  - c. a burning sensation and vaginal dryness
11. \_\_\_\_ The patient asks the pharmacist if:
  - a. vaginal yeast infection is a sexually transmitted disease
  - b. vaginal yeast infection is contagious
  - c. vaginal yeast infection causes infertility

12. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
- vaginal yeast infection is triggered by sexual intercourse
  - vaginal yeast infection is triggered by the naturally occurring *Candida* fungus and other factors such as antibiotics, birth control pills, pregnancy, and menopause
  - vaginal yeasts infection is triggered by *Lactobacillus* bacteria
13. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist she is:
- not presently on the pill because she is pregnant
  - 21, on the pill, and that she has never had a yeast infection before
  - 21, not on the pill because she is trying to get pregnant, and that she has never had a yeast infection before
14. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
- bubble bath, vaginal contraceptives, and tight clothes can trigger the growth of the fungus, and the patient tells the pharmacist that she recently used bubble bath
  - body wash, vaginal contraceptives, and loose clothes can trigger the growth of the fungus, and the patient tells the pharmacist that she recently used bubble bath
  - bubble bath, vaginal contraceptives, and tights clothes can trigger the growth of the fungus, and the patient tells the pharmacist that she doesn't use bubble bath, vaginal contraceptives, or wear tight clothes
15. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist recommends other ways to prevent vaginitis and yeast infection and tells the patient to avoid:
- hot tubs and whirlpools and to eat lots of fat-free yogurt
  - hot tubs, whirlpools, and douching
  - hot tubs, whirlpools, douching, which can actually cause yeast infections, and to eat yogurt that contains the bacteria *Lactobacillus*, which is common in the vagina

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.



## Dialogue #2

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

- \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:
  - Lester Greenwald II
  - Lester Green II
  - Leslie Greenwald II
- \_\_\_\_ The patient's has:
  - ADD
  - ED
  - erectile function

3. \_\_\_\_ The patient's address is:
  - a. 2 Ardmore Ave in Weston, his date of birth is July 16, 1951, and his insurance is Healthy Life
  - b. 22 Ardmore Road in Westmont, his date of birth is July 16, 1951, and his insurance is Healthy Life
  - c. 22 Ardmore Road in Westmont, his date of birth is July 6, 1951, and he has no insurance
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor is:
  - a. Dr. Ahmet and he has prescribed Viagra
  - b. Dr. Ahmed and he has prescribed Vagisil
  - c. Dr. Ahmed and he has prescribed Viagra
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient:
  - a. is currently taking Zoloft for depression
  - b. was taking Zoloft for depression, but is not taking Zoloft anymore because his depression became worse
  - c. was taking Zoloft for depression, but is not taking Zoloft anymore because he started to feel better
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that he was:
  - a. having pressure and stress at work and became depressed
  - b. fired from his job and became depressed
  - c. having problems in his marriage and became depressed
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the patient that he has had ED for:
  - a. 2 years
  - b. more than 2 weeks
  - c. 2 months
8. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist that his wife:
  - a. is very impatient and upset about his ED
  - b. has divorced him because of his ED
  - c. is patient and understanding about his ED
9. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that the medication will:
  - a. relax the smooth muscles in his penis and increase the amount of blood in his penis to cause an erection during sexual stimulation
  - b. relax the smooth muscles in his penis and decrease the amount of blood in his penis to cause an erection during sexual stimulation
  - c. relax the smooth muscles in his penis and cause multiple erections
10. \_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor has prescribed:
  - a. 50-mg tablets of the medication to be taken once a day only before sexual activity
  - b. 5-mg tablets of the medication to be taken twice a day only before sexual activity
  - c. 100-mg tablets of the medication to be taken once a day only before sexual activity
11. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that taking one tablet:
  - a. 4 hours before sexual intimacy is most effective
  - b. 1 hour before sexual intimacy is most effective
  - c. 30 minutes before sexual intimacy is most effective
12. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that the medication:
  - a. should start working 1 hour after it is taken
  - b. should start working 30 minutes after it is taken
  - c. should start working immediately



13. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that side effects of the medication include:
- dizziness, flushing, back pain, and diarrhea
  - dizziness and flushing only
  - a persistent desire to have sexual intercourse
14. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that:
- the medication should not be taken with food
  - the medication should not be taken with a high-fat meal because it may delay the onset of the medication
  - he should not eat 1 hour before becoming sexually intimate
15. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that he will:
- see improvement with his ED immediately
  - not see improvement with his ED immediately, and that if his ED does not improve he should see his doctor
  - see improvement within 1 week, and that if he doesn't he should see his doctor for a dosage adjustment

Check your answers in the Answer Key online. How did you do? Are there new words you do not know? Take the time now to look them up in your bilingual or first-language dictionary.

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

---

Idioms and idiomatic expressions are made up of a group of words that have a different meaning from the original meaning of each individual word. Native speakers of the English language use such expressions comfortably and naturally. However, individuals who are new speakers of English or who have studied English for many years may still not be able to use idioms and idiomatic expressions as comfortably or naturally as native speakers. As pharmacy students, pharmacy technicians, and practicing pharmacists, you will hear many different idiomatic expressions. Some of you will understand and know how to use these expressions correctly. At times, however, you may not understand what your professors, colleagues, and patients are saying. This of course can lead to miscommunication, embarrassment, and possibly dangerous mistakes.

Unlike the previous chapters that contain idioms and expressions with words related to the chapter theme, there are no idioms or expressions that contain words related to reproductive system vocabulary in this chapter. However, there is one idiomatic expression with the word “breast.” For example, “Please keep me abreast of any changes in the patient’s condition” means “Please let me know and inform me of any changes in the patient’s condition.”

## POST-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

- \_\_\_\_ **Vaginal yeast infection** is caused naturally by *Candida*, a fungus.
- \_\_\_\_ The adjective form of **penis** is penile.
- \_\_\_\_ **Erectile dysfunction** is also known as impotence.
- \_\_\_\_ The word **premenstrual** is a noun.
- \_\_\_\_ “The clap” is another term for **chlamydia**.
- \_\_\_\_ **Hot flashes** are characterized by a flushed, blotchy red face and skin and warmth and sweat in the upper body.
- \_\_\_\_ **Mastitis** is spread by sexual contact.
- \_\_\_\_ **Amenorrhea** refers to heavy menstrual bleeding.

9. \_\_\_\_ Excessive hair growth, lack of menstruation, or irregular periods are symptoms of **endometriosis**.
10. \_\_\_\_ There is no treatment for **testicular cancer**, even if it's diagnosed early.
11. \_\_\_\_ Risks for developing **erectile dysfunction** include substance abuse and certain medical conditions such as diabetes.
12. \_\_\_\_ If a patient complains she is experiencing bleeding between periods, a watery pink vaginal discharge, and frequent spotting during the **perimenopause** years, she should be checked for **endometrial cancer**.
13. \_\_\_\_ **Gonorrhea** in men can lead to infertility, and in women can lead to PID and **ectopic pregnancy**.
14. \_\_\_\_ Avoiding tobacco, alcohol, and recreational drug use will not help increase the performance of **sperm**.
15. \_\_\_\_ Latex **condoms** will not reduce the risk of contracting gonorrhea and chlamydia.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ The word **semen** is:
  - a. a noun
  - b. an adjective
  - c. a verb
2. \_\_\_\_ **Gonorrhea** and **chlamydia** affect:
  - a. men only
  - b. men and women
  - c. women only
3. \_\_\_\_ Signs of an **ectopic pregnancy** include:
  - a. a foul and bloody vaginal discharge
  - b. pelvic pain in the lower part of the pelvis, feeling faint and dizzy, and abnormal vaginal bleeding
  - c. atrophic vaginitis, sharp cramps, and blood clots
4. \_\_\_\_ Both men and women can suffer from:
  - a. ED
  - b. PMDD
  - c. HPV
5. \_\_\_\_ In the sentence, "Symptoms of testicular cancer include discomfort or pain in the testicle or scrotum," the word **testicular** is:
  - a. a noun and testicle is an adjective
  - b. an adjective and testicle is a noun
  - c. a noun and testicle is a noun
6. \_\_\_\_ Viagra is used to treat:
  - a. vaginitis
  - b. erectile dysfunction
  - c. low sperm count
7. \_\_\_\_ Monistat-7 is used to treat:
  - a. genital herpes
  - b. menorrhagia
  - c. vaginal yeast infection

8. \_\_\_\_\_ Women suffering from **adenomyosis** experience:
- pelvic pain
  - prolonged and heavy bleeding, sharp cramps, and pass blood clots
  - vaginal itching
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The word **pregnant** is:
- an adjective
  - a noun
  - an adjective and a noun
10. \_\_\_\_\_ In the sentence, “Complications of untreated pelvic inflammatory disease include infertility and ectopic pregnancy,” the word **infertility** is:
- an adjective and ectopic is a noun
  - a noun and ectopic is an adjective
  - an adverb and ectopic is a noun
11. \_\_\_\_\_ **Endometriosis** can:
- interfere with conception and lead to infertility
  - lead to PID
  - lead to cervicitis
12. \_\_\_\_\_ **Atrophic vaginitis** is a condition caused by:
- high estrogen levels in menopausal women
  - low estrogen levels in menopausal women
  - high estrogen levels in menopausal and perimenopausal women
13. \_\_\_\_\_ A **hysterectomy** is recommended for women who suffer from:
- heavy bleeding caused by uterine fibroids
  - PMS and PMDD
  - infertility
14. \_\_\_\_\_ The word **premenstrual** is:
- a verb
  - a noun
  - an adjective
15. \_\_\_\_\_ In the sentence, “A symptom of polycystic ovary syndrome is no menstruation or irregular menstruation,” the word **menstruation** is:
- an adjective and irregular is a noun
  - a noun and irregular is an adjective
  - a noun and irregular is a noun

## Listening and Comprehension Exercises



### Dialogue #1

Listen to Dialogue #1, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist's name is:
  - a. David Mendez, and the patient's name is Rosa Cunningham
  - b. David Cunningham, and the patient's name is Rosa Mendez
  - c. Rosa Mendez, and the patient's name is David Cunningham
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient's medical condition is:
  - a. gonorrhea only, and his doctor is Dr. Sanders
  - b. gonorrhea and chlamydia, and his doctor is Dr. Sanderson
  - c. chlamydia only, and his doctor is Dr. Sanderson
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient has a prescription for:
  - a. azithromycin only
  - b. doxycycline and azithromycin
  - c. doxycycline only
4. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that doxycycline is:
  - a. a red capsule used to treat chlamydia, and that azithromycin is a light yellow tablet used to treat chlamydia
  - b. a light yellow tablet used to treat gonorrhea, and that azithromycin is a red capsule used to treat chlamydia
  - c. a light yellow capsule used to treat chlamydia, and that azithromycin is a red tablet used to treat chlamydia
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient tells the pharmacist he is experiencing:
  - a. a burning sensation when he urinates, penile discharge, and urethritis
  - b. a burning sensation and bloody urine when he urinates
  - c. a bloody penile discharge and burning sensation when he urinates
6. \_\_\_\_ Gonorrhea and chlamydia are both:
  - a. contagious viral infections that are spread through sexual contact
  - b. contagious bacterial infections that are spread through sexual contact
  - c. contagious bacterial infections that do not respond to antibiotics
7. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient he needs to take doxycycline:
  - a. twice a day and azithromycin once a day
  - b. once a day and azithromycin twice a day
  - c. and azithromycin twice a day
8. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to take:
  - a. one tablet of doxycycline in the morning and one tablet in the evening, and one azithromycin capsule once a day, and that he can take both together but without food
  - b. one tablet of azithromycin in the morning and one tablet in the evening, and one capsule of doxycycline once a day, and that he can take both together with food
  - c. one tablet of doxycycline in the morning and one tablet in the evening, and one azithromycin capsule once a day, and that he can take them both together with food
9. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient:
  - a. to take both medications 2 hours before meals or 1 hour after meals
  - b. to take both medications 2 hours after meals or 2 hours before meals
  - c. take both medications at least 1 hour before or 2 hours after meals
10. \_\_\_\_ The side effects of doxycycline include:
  - a. diarrhea, loose stools, vomiting, and abdominal pain

- b. nausea, upset stomach, dizziness, trouble sleeping, and lightheadedness  
c. diarrhea, upset stomach, vomiting, and trouble sleeping
11. \_\_\_\_ The side effects of azithromycin include:  
a. diarrhea, upset stomach, vomiting, and trouble sleeping  
b. nausea, upset stomach, dizziness, trouble sleeping, and lightheadedness  
c. diarrhea, loose stools, vomiting, and abdominal pain
12. \_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient:  
a. to finish taking the entire prescription and to avoid sexual intercourse until the infections are completely gone  
b. to finish taking the entire prescription and that if he is going to have sexual intercourse while he is infected, he should wear a latex condom  
c. to finish taking the entire prescription, to avoid sexual intercourse until the infections are completely gone, to use a latex condom when he is ready to resume sexual activity, to avoid oral sex, and to let his partner know he is infected
13. \_\_\_\_ The patient's date of birth is:  
a. May 18, 1983 and he is 24 years old  
b. May 24, 1983 and he is 18 years old  
c. May 18, 1983 and he is 18 years old
14. \_\_\_\_ The patient's address is:  
a. 643 Millbrook Rd, Apt C4, in Morton and his phone number is 543-0090  
b. 643 Millbrook Rd, Apt 4C, in Morton and his phone number is 543-0090  
c. 643 Millbrook Rd, Apt 4C, in Morton and his phone number is 543-0009
15. \_\_\_\_ The patient will pay for his medications:  
a. with his insurance plan  
b. with cash  
c. with his credit card



## **Dialogue #2**

Listen to Dialogue #2, stop, listen again and take notes. Listen to the dialogue as many times as you need or until you feel you have written sufficient notes and feel confident. You can use your notes to answer the multiple choice questions at the end of the dialogue.

Notes \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions below by selecting the answer that correctly completes each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient's name is:  
a. Stuart Livingston, and the pharmacist's name is Roberta Robertson  
b. Roberta Robertson, and the pharmacist's name is Stuart Livingston  
c. Roberta Livingston, and the pharmacist's name is Stuart Robertson
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient has a prescription for:  
a. levofloxacin and azithromycin  
b. levofloxacin and metronidazole  
c. metronidazole only

3. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's medical condition is:
  - a. ED
  - b. PID
  - c. PPDD
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's doctor is:
  - a. Dr. Francesca Gruber
  - b. Dr. Francesca Gerber
  - c. Dr. Francesco Gerber
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's date of birth is:
  - a. June 19, 1989
  - b. June 9, 1989
  - c. June 19, 1985
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient is:
  - a. allergic to CAT scan dye and shellfish, takes Tylenol when she has a headache, and takes vitamins
  - b. allergic to CAT scan dye and shellfish, is currently taking Tylenol for PID, and takes vitamins
  - c. allergic to CAT scan dye and vitamins
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient:
  - a. is on birth control pills
  - b. has an IUD
  - c. had her IUD removed
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The doctor has prescribed the patient take:
  - a. one terra cotta pink 25-mg levofloxacin tablet twice a day and one white 25-mg metronidazole tablet once a day
  - b. one terra cotta pink 250-mg levofloxacin tablet once a day and one white 250-mg metronidazole capsule twice a day
  - c. one terra cotta pink 250-mg metronidazole table once a day and one white 250-mg levofloxacin capsule twice a day
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to take both medications:
  - a. for 7 days
  - b. for 14 days
  - c. for 4 days
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient to take both medications:
  - a. with a glass of water
  - b. with food
  - c. with a glass of water or with milk to prevent an upset stomach
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient:
  - a. she can drink alcohol in moderation, but not to take her vitamins because they will prevent the medications from being fully absorbed
  - b. she cannot drink alcohol when taking levofloxacin and she cannot take her vitamins when taking metronidazole because metronidazole will prevent the medication from being fully absorbed
  - c. she cannot drink alcohol when taking metronidazole and that she should take levofloxacin either 2 hours before or after she takes her vitamins because they prevent the medication from being fully absorbed
12. \_\_\_\_\_ The side effects of both medications:
  - a. cause upset stomach, diarrhea, drowsiness, nausea, headache, and loss of appetite, but metronidazole can also cause constipation and dry mouth, and levofloxacin can also cause trouble sleeping

- b. cause upset stomach, diarrhea, drowsiness, nausea, headache, and loss of appetite, but metronidazole can also cause trouble sleeping, and levofloxacin can also cause dry mouth
  - c. cause upset stomach, nausea, and loss of appetite, dry mouth, and trouble sleeping
13. \_\_\_\_\_ The pharmacist tells the patient that untreated PID:
- a. can lead to other sexually transmitted diseases
  - b. can lead to infertility, ectopic pregnancy, and chronic pelvic pain
  - c. has no complications
14. \_\_\_\_\_ If one has PID, it is important to:
- a. tell one's partner, abstain from sex until the infection clears up, and practice safe sex with a latex condom
  - b. take medication while having sexual intercourse
  - c. permanently abstain from sexual intercourse to avoid further recurring infections
15. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient will pay for the medications with:
- a. insurance
  - b. cash
  - c. credit card

How did you do on the Post-Assessment in Chapter 12? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.





## PRE-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ **Documentation** of patient care is not mandatory.
2. \_\_\_\_ **DH** is the abbreviation for drug history, **FH** is the abbreviation for family history, and **SH** is the abbreviation for social history.
3. \_\_\_\_ **Legal liability** is a major reason for pharmacy documentation.
4. \_\_\_\_ **SOAP notes** are used to prescribe medications to patients.
5. \_\_\_\_ **DRP** is the abbreviation for drug-related problem.
6. \_\_\_\_ **Objective** information on a SOAP note refers to the information that is provided by the patient, and **subjective** information on a SOAP note refers to information obtained through prescription records, lab values, and physical examinations.
7. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviation **Q** means every hour, and the abbreviation **QH** means every.
8. \_\_\_\_ **Pharmacy documentation** should be concise, very clear, and patient-focused.
9. \_\_\_\_ **HEET** is the abbreviation for head, eyes, ears, and throat.
10. \_\_\_\_ The “A” in **SOAP** notes refers to assessment and the patient’s medical and drug-related problems, and the “P” in **SOAP** notes refers to the plan for treatment, follow-up, and monitoring.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ **SID** is the abbreviation for:
  - a. four times a day
  - b. once daily
  - c. every other day
2. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviation **PMD** means:
  - a. post medical diagnosis
  - b. private medical doctor
  - c. past medical diagnosis
3. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviation **MedHx** means:
  - a. medical history
  - b. medication history
  - c. medical and medication history

4. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviation **S/P** in the **PMH** section of the patient chart refers to:
  - a. status post or a past event in the patient's past medical history
  - b. symptom progression in the patient's past medical history
  - c. status post or past event in the patient's medication history
5. \_\_\_\_ **HPI** refers to:
  - a. history of past illness, and **PMH** refers to past medical history
  - b. history of past infections, and **PMH** refers to past medical history
  - c. history of present illness, and **PMH** refers to past medical history
6. \_\_\_\_ A patient states: "I'm having problems blowing my nose. It's clogged and I feel pressure in my cheeks." This is an example of:
  - a. a patient complaint that should be recorded in the objective section of the SOAP note
  - b. a patient complaint that should be recorded in the subjective section of the SOAP note
  - c. an assessment of the patient's medical problem, which should be recorded in the assessment section of the SOAP note
7. \_\_\_\_ **NKA** is the abbreviation for:
  - a. no known addictions
  - b. no known allergies
  - c. known allergies
8. \_\_\_\_ **HS** is the abbreviation for:
  - a. health symptoms
  - b. headaches
  - c. at bedtime
9. \_\_\_\_ The following information, "Present MedHx includes Captopril 25 mg po TID × 5 years for HTN," means the patient is taking:
  - a. Captopril 25 milligrams by mouth twice a day for a period of 5 years for hypertension, and should be recorded in the current prescription medication history of the patient chart or in the objective section of the patient SOAP note
  - b. Captopril 25 milligrams by mouth three times a day for a period of 5 years for hypertension, and should be recorded in the current nonprescription medication history of the patient chart or in the assessment section of the patient SOAP note
  - c. Captopril 25 milligrams by mouth three times a day for a period of 5 years for hypertension, and should be recorded in the current prescription medication history of the patient chart or in the objective section of the patient SOAP note
10. \_\_\_\_ The following information, "Aleve 220 mg po PRN HA," means the patient is taking:
  - a. 220 milligrams of Aleve by mouth as needed for a headache, which should be documented in the current over-the-counter medication history of the patient chart or in the objective section of the patient SOAP note
  - b. 220 milligrams of Aleve by mouth as needed for a headache, which should be documented in the current prescription medication history of the patient chart or in the objective section of the patient SOAP note
  - c. 220 milligrams of Aleve by mouth as needed for a headache, which should be documented in the current prescription medication history of the patient chart or in the assessment section of the patient SOAP note

How did you do? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

## PHARMACY DOCUMENTATION VOCABULARY

---

In this chapter, you will be introduced to the language and vocabulary of pharmacy found in various kinds of pharmacy documentation forms. Models and examples will be presented. It is important to

become familiar with these different models. These types of documentation seek a variety of information, such as personal patient information, medical history, medication history, allergies and adverse drug reactions, social and family history, and much more. In this chapter, you will also have the opportunity to practice interpreting abbreviations and to read and write pharmacy documentation.

Appropriate pharmacy documentation is very important and critical for obvious reasons. First, you want to provide the best possible care to your patients. Second, you want to prevent potential lawsuits that can result from poor documentation, poor patient care, and errors. Third, you will need to communicate patient information to individuals such as fellow students, professors, pharmacists, other health care professionals, insurance companies, and drug companies.

It is important to be knowledgeable of the various terms, vocabulary words, and abbreviations used in written pharmacy documentation of patient complaints and health and medication concerns. The documentation forms are interrelated. For example, SOAP notes help you to obtain valuable information from a patient who is being assessed and are helpful in making a pharmaceutical care plan for the patient. The pharmaceutical care plan will help the pharmacist to write and document important information, plan treatment goals, monitor outcomes, and record any intervention made. The patient case presentation or patient medical and physical database will help pharmacy students and pharmacists to share knowledge about their patients, to get advice about a patient from pharmacy students and pharmacists, and help pharmacy students to present patient cases to their professors and other pharmacists.

A good command of pharmacy documentation vocabulary and abbreviations is absolutely necessary because pharmacy documentation of patient complaint, history, assessment, patient care, and more is mandatory. As pharmacy students and pharmacists you will be advising and counseling patients. You will assess their general health, their medical and medication history, and the goals, problems with, and outcomes of their drug therapy. You will inform and instruct your patients about their medical conditions and how to use medications properly. You will determine whether the patient will need to change, continue, or discontinue a certain medication.

You may already know many of the vocabulary words and abbreviations in this chapter, but if some words and abbreviations are new to you, pay careful attention to them and make every effort to know their correct spelling, meaning, and pronunciation. It is a good idea to keep a list of new words and abbreviations and to look up these new words in a bilingual dictionary, in a dictionary in your first language, in an English language dictionary, and in a dictionary of abbreviations and acronyms.

## Pharmacy Documentation Abbreviations

### *Patient Information—Personal and Physical*

ADR	adverse drug reaction
All	allergies
A&O	alert and oriented
A&O × 1	alert and oriented to person
A&O × 2	alert and oriented to person and place
A&O × 3	alert and oriented to person, place, and time
BF	black female
BM	black male
BMF	black married female
BMM	black married male
BP	blood pressure
BPM, bpm	beats per minute
CC	chief complaint
C/O	complains of
CV	cardiovascular
DD	demographic data
DH	drug history
DOB	date of birth
Dx	diagnosis

ETHO	alcohol
Ext	extremities
F	female
FH	family history
F/U	follow-up
Gen	general appearance
Genit/Rectal	genital/rectal
HO	history of
HPI	history of present illness
Hx	history
ID	identification
Kg	kilogram
Labs	laboratory tests and results
lb	pound
LMP	last menstrual period
M	male
MAR	medication administration record
Meds	medications
MedHx	medication history
MS	musculoskeletal
NKA	no known allergies
NKDA	no known drug allergies
NL	normal
OTC	over the counter
P	pulse, pressure, plan
PE	physical examination
PMD	private medical doctor
PMH	past medical history
PMI	past medical illness
PP	patient profile
PPD	packs per day
PSH	past surgical history
Pt.	patient
R/O	rule out
ROS	review of system
RR	respiration rate
SH	social history
S/P	status post
S/S	signs/symptoms
SQ	subcutaneous
Sx	symptom
T, Temp	temperature
TPR	temperature, pulse, respiration

Tx	treatment
UNK	unknown
VS	vital signs
VSS	vital signs stable
WD	well developed
WDM	white divorced male
WDWN-BF	well-developed, well-nourished black female
WDWN-BM	well-developed, well-nourished black male
WDWN-WF	well-developed, well-nourished white female
WDWN-WM	well-developed, well-nourished white male
WF	white female
WM	white male
WMF	white married female
WMM	white married male
WN	well-nourished
WNL	within normal limits
Wt.	weight
yo	year old

*Body Parts*

Abd	abdomen
AD	right ear
AS	left ear
AU	each ear
CNS	central nervous system
Cx	cervix
EENT	eyes, ears, nose, throat
HEENT	head, eyes, ears, nose, throat
HR	heart rate
OD	right eye
OS	left eye
OU	both eyes

*Symptoms/Signs/Side Effects*

CFNS	chills, fever, and night sweats
Cig	cigarettes
CP	chest pain
DOE	dyspnea on exertion
FUO	fever of unknown origin
HA	headache
LBP	lower back pain
NSR	normal sinus rhythm

N&V	nausea and vomiting
N/V/D	nausea/vomiting/diarrhea
PND	paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea
SOB	shortness of breath

*Diseases/Medical Conditions*

AD	Alzheimer's disease
AIH	autoimmune hepatitis
ALD	alcoholic liver disease
ALL	acute lymphocytic leukemia
ALS	amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (Lou Gehrig's disease)
AMI	acute myocardial infarction
ANLL	acute non-lymphocytic leukemia
AOM	acute otitis media (middle ear infection)
CA	cancer
CAD	coronary artery disease
CF	cystic fibrosis
CHD	coronary heart disease
CHF	coronary heart failure
COPD	chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
CP	chest pain, cerebral palsy
CV	cardiovascular
CVA	cerebrovascular accident
DI	diabetes insipidus
DJD	degenerative joint disease
DM	diabetes mellitus
DVT	deep venous thrombosis
ED	erectile dysfunction
Fx.	fracture
GE	gastroesophageal/gastroenterology
GERD	gastroesophageal reflux disease
GI	gastrointestinal
GU	gastric ulcer, genitourinary
HAV	hepatitis A virus
HBV	hepatitis B virus
HCV	hepatitis C virus
HD	Hodgkin's disease
HH	hiatal hernia
HPV	human papilloma virus
HSV	herpes simplex virus
HTN	hypertension
IBD	inflammatory bowel disease
IBS	irritable bowel syndrome
IDDM	insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus
IM	infectious mononucleosis

---

MI	myocardial infarction
MS	multiple sclerosis
NHL	non-Hodgkin's lymphoma
NIDDM	non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus
OA	osteoarthritis
PE	pulmonary embolism
PID	pelvic inflammatory disease
PMDD	postmenopausal dysphoric disorder
PMS	premenstrual syndrome
PUD	peptic ulcer disease
PVD	peripheral vascular disease
RA	rheumatoid arthritis
STD	sexually transmitted disease
TB	tuberculosis
TIA	transient ischemic attack
TSS	toxic shock syndrome
UC	ulcerative colitis
URI	upper respiratory infection
UTI	urinary tract infection

*Medication*

APAP	acetaminophen
ASA	aspirin
ATB	antibiotic
BCP	birth control pill
Nitro	nitroglycerin
NSAID	nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug
OC	oral contraceptive
PCN	penicillin
Tyl	Tylenol

*Diagnostic Tests*

BC	blood culture
Bx	biopsy
CBC	complete blood count
Cx	culture
CXR	chest x-ray
Endo	endoscopy, endotracheal
INR	international normalization ratio

UA	urinalysis
XR	x-ray
<i>Dosage/Dosage Method</i>	
aa	of each
AC	before meals
BID	twice daily
Cap	capsule
Crm	cream
D	day
Gt	drop
H	hour
Hrly	hourly
Hrs	hours
HS	at bedtime
IM	intramuscular
Inj	injection
INH	inhalation
IV	intravenous
mcg	micrograms
mg	milligrams
mos	month
NPO	nothing by mouth
oint	ointment
PC	after meals
pil	pill
po	by mouth
pr	per rectum
prn	as needed
pulv	powder
PV	per vagina
Q	every
q1d	every day
q1w	every week
q4h	every 4 hours
q6h	every 6 hours
QAM	every morning
QPM	every evening
QD	once daily, every day
QH	every hour
QHS	every night at bedtime
QID	four times daily
QM	every morning



QOD	this is no longer an acceptable abbreviation for every other day; you must spell out “every other day”
Qs	up to
qwk	once a week
Rx	prescription
SID	once a day
SC, SQ	subcutaneous
SL	sublingual (beneath the tongue)
Ss	one half
tab	tablet
tsp	teaspoon
TID	three times daily
ud	as directed
ung	ointment
wk	week
×	period of time (e.g., “for five days” = × 5 days)
yr	year

#### *Recommendations*

BR	bed rest
D/C	discontinue; discharge
F/U	follow-up

### ***Pharmacy Documentation Abbreviations Exercise***

Provide the appropriate abbreviation or definition for the terms below.

- The abbreviation for **four times daily** is: \_\_\_\_\_
- The abbreviation for **every night at bedtime** is: \_\_\_\_\_
- The abbreviation for **once a week** is: \_\_\_\_\_
- HPI** means: \_\_\_\_\_
- A&O** means: \_\_\_\_\_
- bpm** means: \_\_\_\_\_
- The abbreviation for **musculoskeletal** and **multiple sclerosis** is: \_\_\_\_\_
- VSS** means: \_\_\_\_\_
- The abbreviation **WD** means: \_\_\_\_\_
- SID** is the abbreviation for: \_\_\_\_\_
- TPR** is the abbreviation for: \_\_\_\_\_
- The abbreviation for **antibiotic** is: \_\_\_\_\_
- AU** is the abbreviation for: \_\_\_\_\_
- PE** is an abbreviation for: \_\_\_\_\_
- The abbreviation for **of each** is: \_\_\_\_\_

**Multiple Choice Questions**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated sentence, “The Pt.’s DH includes OTC medications and ASA BID,” means:
  - a. The patient’s demographic history includes over-the-counter medications and Tylenol twice daily
  - b. The patient’s drug history includes over-the-counter medications and aspirin twice daily
  - c. The patient’s drug history includes over-the-counter medications and two aspirins twice daily
2. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated sentence, “The Pt. was Dx with DM and instructed how to administer her medication SQ q1d” means:
  - a. The patient was diagnosed with dementia and instructed how to administer her medication subcutaneously daily
  - b. The patient was diagnosed with diabetes mellitus and instructed how to administer her medication subcutaneously weekly
  - c. The patient was diagnosed with diabetes mellitus and instructed how to administer her medication subcutaneously daily
3. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated sentence, “The WDWN-BF C/O of CFNS” means:
  - a. The well-developed and well-nourished black female was complaining of chills, fever, and night sweats
  - b. The well-developed and divorced black female was complaining of chills, fever, and nervousness
  - c. The well-developed and undernourished black female was complaining of chills, fever, and night sweats
4. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated sentence, “The 64 yo WM’s CC was CP and SOB” means:
  - a. The 64-year-old white male’s chief complaint was chest pain and shortness of breath
  - b. The 64-year-old white male’s cardiology complaint was chest pain and shortness of breath
  - c. The 64-year-old white male’s chief complaint was cerebral palsy and shortness of breath
5. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated sentence, “Pt.’s MedHx includes 2 puffs of his inhaler for COPD and ADR to iodine” means:
  - a. the patient’s medical history includes 2 puffs of his inhaler for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and an adverse drug reaction to iodine
  - b. the patient’s medication history includes 2 puffs of his inhaler for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and an adverse drug reaction to iodine
  - c. the patient’s medication history includes 2 puffs of his inhaler for chronic bronchitis and an adverse drug reaction to iodine
6. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated sentence, “The Pt. was instructed to F/U in 2 wks to monitor CP, ADR to Nitro-Dur patch, and storage of SL nitro” means:
  - a. The patient was instructed to follow-up for a period of 2 weeks to monitor chest pain, adverse drug reaction to sublingual nitroglycerin, and to check proper storage of the Nitro-Dur patch
  - b. The patient was instructed to follow-up in 2 weeks to monitor chest pains, adverse drug reaction to sublingual nitroglycerin, and to check proper storage of the Nitro-Dur patch
  - c. The patient was instructed to follow-up in 2 weeks to monitor chest pain, adverse drug reaction to the Nitro-Dur patch, and to check proper storage of sublingual nitroglycerin
7. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated sentence, “The 37 yo WF’s C/C of PMS and Sx of abd pain and HA, and she treated it with ibuprofen 400 mg TID” means:
  - a. The 37-year-old white female’s chief complaint of postmenstrual syndrome and symptoms of abdominal pain and hiatal hernia was treated with 400 milligrams of ibuprofen three times daily
  - b. The 37-year-old white female’s chief complaint of premenstrual syndrome and symptoms of abdominal pain and headache was treated with 400 milligrams of ibuprofen three times daily
  - c. The 37-year-old white female’s chief complaint of premenstrual syndrome and symptoms of abdominal pain and headache was treated with 40 milligrams of ibuprofen four times daily

8. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated sentence, “The 21 yo WDWN-WM with HO GERD and asthma C/O pain in AS and was taking Tyl po prn” means:
- The 21-year-old well-developed, well-nourished white male with a history of gastrointestinal reflux disease and asthma complained of pain in his left ear and was taking Tylenol by mouth as needed
  - The 21-year-old white, divorced, well-nourished male with a history of gastrointestinal reflux disease and asthma complained of pain in his right ear and was taking Tylenol by mouth as needed
  - The 21-year-old well-developed, well-nourished white male with a history of gastrointestinal reflux disease and asthma complained of pain in both ears and was taking Tylenol by mouth as needed
9. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated sentence, “The Pt.’s MedHx includes Flexeril 10 mg TID for LBP and muscle spasms, and Captopril 25mg BID for HTN” means:
- The patient’s medication history includes 10 milligrams of Flexeril three times daily for lower back pain and muscle spasms, and 20 milligrams Captopril twice daily for hypertension
  - The patient’s medication history includes 25 milligrams of Flexeril three times daily for lower back pain and muscle spasms, and 10 milligrams Captopril twice daily for hypertension
  - The patient’s medical history includes 10 milligrams of Flexeril twice daily for lower back pain and muscle spasms, and 20 milligrams Captopril three times daily for hypertension
10. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated sentence, “The 69 yo WF has Hx glaucoma OU and cataracts OD, and was Dx with OA 5 days ago after XR revealed left hip Fx.” means:
- The 69-year-old white female has a history of right eye glaucoma and cataracts in both eyes and was diagnosed with osteoarthritis 5 days ago after x-ray revealed a left hip fracture
  - The 69-year-old white female with a history of glaucoma in both eyes and right eye cataracts was diagnosed with osteoarthritis for a period of 5 days after x-ray revealed a left hip fracture
  - The 69-year-old white female with a history of glaucoma in both eyes and right eye cataracts was diagnosed with osteoarthritis 5 days ago after x-ray revealed a left hip fracture

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

### ***Pharmacy and Medical Abbreviations Exercise***

Read the following sentences carefully. Then write in the abbreviation of the bolded words on the lines provided.

- The 41-**year-old female** patient is **complaining** that she is feeling fatigued, tired, and cold all the time. She began taking 50 mcg of Levoxyol **once a day** three weeks ago. She is currently on **birth control pills**.  
 year-old \_\_\_\_ female \_\_\_\_ complaining \_\_\_\_ once a day \_\_\_\_ birth control pills \_\_\_\_
- A 26-year-old **male patient** complains of heartburn and feeling dizzy. He states he has **tuberculosis** and is taking rifampin capsules 2 hours **before meals**. He has **no known allergies to drugs** but is **allergic** to latex.  
 male \_\_\_\_ patient \_\_\_\_ tuberculosis \_\_\_\_ before meals \_\_\_\_ no known allergies to drugs \_\_\_\_ allergic \_\_\_\_
- The patient has a **history of hypertension** and chronic bronchitis. Her **chief complaint** today is **chest pain** and **shortness of breath**.  
 history of \_\_\_\_ hypertension \_\_\_\_ chief complaint \_\_\_\_ chest pain \_\_\_\_ shortness of breath \_\_\_\_
- A 54-year-old man complains of dizziness and frequent urination at night. He is currently taking 40 **milligrams** of valsartan **twice daily by mouth** to treat **congestive heart failure** and 20 milligrams of Lasix **once daily** by mouth to treat edema in his legs.  
 milligrams \_\_\_\_ twice daily \_\_\_\_ by mouth \_\_\_\_ congestive heart failure \_\_\_\_ once daily \_\_\_\_

5. A 35-year-old woman has a **history of pelvic inflammatory disease**. Her **chief complaint** today is severe cramping, fainting, and dizziness after taking tegaserod **twice daily before meals** for 2 days to treat her **irritable bowel syndrome**.

history of \_\_\_\_\_ pelvic inflammatory disease \_\_\_\_\_ chief complaint \_\_\_\_\_  
twice daily \_\_\_\_\_ before meals \_\_\_\_\_ irritable bowel syndrome \_\_\_\_\_

6. The patient is **complaining of** mouth sores, a persistent cough, and black stools. These **symptoms** could be the side effects of Rheumatex. He was recently **diagnosed** with ankylosing spondylitis. The patient also suffers from **chronic obstructive pulmonary disease** and chronic bronchitis. He has an Atrovent inhaler and takes two to four **inhalations every day twice a day**.

complaining of \_\_\_\_\_ symptoms \_\_\_\_\_ diagnosed \_\_\_\_\_ chronic obstructive  
pulmonary disease \_\_\_\_\_ inhalations \_\_\_\_\_ every day twice a day \_\_\_\_\_

7. A **16-year-old girl** recently diagnosed with epilepsy and grand mal seizures **complains of nausea, vomiting, diarrhea**, and fatigue. She is presently taking **one Dulcolax tablet daily**. **Allergies** include Ceclor and cats.

16-year-old girl \_\_\_\_\_ complains of \_\_\_\_\_ nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea \_\_\_\_\_  
one Dulcolax tablet daily \_\_\_\_\_ allergies \_\_\_\_\_

8. A 60-year-old man is **complaining of** constipation. He has a **history of** constipation and takes Metamucil, but the Metamucil is not working as effectively as he would like. He suffers from Parkinson's disease and is currently taking a **5-milligram capsule of Eldepryl twice a day, one with breakfast and one with lunch**.

complaining of \_\_\_\_\_ history of \_\_\_\_\_ 5-milligram capsule of Eldepryl twice a day,  
one with breakfast and one with lunch \_\_\_\_\_

9. An 18-year-old woman is complaining of a rash on her legs and arms. She states she woke up this morning with the rash. She has **no known drug allergies**, but is allergic to tomatoes. She began taking Macrochantin 7 days ago to treat her first **urinary tract infection**. She was taking one **100-milligram Macrochantin capsule four times a day**, one capsule **every 6 hours**. She has a **history of** exercise-induced asthma but has not had an asthma attack in a long time and is not taking an asthma medication.

no known drug allergies \_\_\_\_\_ urinary tract infection \_\_\_\_\_ 100-milligram Macro-  
chantin capsule four times a day \_\_\_\_\_ every 6 hours \_\_\_\_\_ history of \_\_\_\_\_

10. The patient is complaining that he has been having **lower back pain** for about a week. He has also been feeling dizzy and having some diarrhea. He has a **history of** depression and took Zoloft **once a day for 6 weeks** about 4 months ago. He is no longer taking Zoloft and he can't remember the dosage. He was recently diagnosed with **erectile dysfunction** and is currently taking one **50-milligram Viagra tablet about twice a week** before sexual activity.

lower back pain \_\_\_\_\_ history of \_\_\_\_\_ once a day for 6 weeks \_\_\_\_\_ erectile dys-  
function \_\_\_\_\_ 50-milligram Viagra table about twice a week \_\_\_\_\_

11. The 56-year-old female patient was **diagnosed** with **autoimmune hepatitis** 2 months ago. A **biopsy** for cirrhosis of the liver was negative. She is currently taking **two 20-milligram prednisone tablets daily**. She has also been taking Fosamax for osteoporosis for 2 years. Her **chief complaint** today is fatigue and discomfort in her **abdomen**.

diagnosed \_\_\_\_\_ autoimmune hepatitis \_\_\_\_\_ biopsy \_\_\_\_\_ two 20-milligram  
prednisone tablets daily \_\_\_\_\_ chief complaint \_\_\_\_\_ abdomen \_\_\_\_\_

12. The patient has **history of** hepatitis B. His **chief complaint** today is diarrhea and abdominal pain. He was **diagnosed** with gonorrhea and chlamydia 7 days ago. He was taking **doxycycline twice a day, once in the morning and once in the evening, and taking azithromycin once a day, both for 5 days**. Both medication dosages are unknown. He has **no known drug allergies**.

history of \_\_\_\_\_ chief complaint \_\_\_\_\_ diagnosed \_\_\_\_\_ doxycycline twice a day,  
once in the morning and once in the evening, and taking azithromycin once a day, both for  
5 days \_\_\_\_\_ no known drug allergies \_\_\_\_\_

13. A **23-year-old female** with a history of vaginal yeast infections and menorrhagia **complains of** waking up with a body rash. She is currently being treated for cystitis. Her doctor prescribed **one tablet of Bactrim be taken in the morning and one tablet in the evening for 15 days.** Today is day 6. Her **allergies** include Ceclor, iodine, and peanut butter.

23-year-old female \_\_\_\_\_ complains of \_\_\_\_\_ one tablet of Bactrim be taken in the morning and one tablet in the evening for 15 days \_\_\_\_\_ allergies \_\_\_\_\_

14. A 60-year-old man was **diagnosed** with glaucoma 2 weeks ago and prescribed **1 drop of Isopto Carpine in each eye four times a day** by his **private medical doctor.** Patient is **complaining of** cloudy vision, spasms of the eyelids, and blurred vision. He has a **hiatal hernia** and has a **history of gastroesophageal reflux disease.**

diagnosed \_\_\_\_\_ 1 drop of Isopto Carpine in each eye four times a day \_\_\_\_\_ private medical doctor \_\_\_\_\_ complaining of \_\_\_\_\_ hiatal hernia \_\_\_\_\_ history of gastroesophageal reflux disease \_\_\_\_\_

15. A 47-year-old man is complaining of severe abdominal pain, bloody diarrhea, and flu-like **symptoms.** He was diagnosed with colitis 2 weeks ago. He went to the doctor after bleeding from his rectum and complaining of diarrhea. His doctor prescribed **one Asacol pill daily, but patient does not know the dosage.** Patient states he is not getting better. Patient has a **history of** fungal infection in his groin area and was prescribed Nizoral. The fungal infection cleared up and he is no longer taking Nizoral. Patient's **known drug allergies** include **penicillin.**

symptoms \_\_\_\_\_ one Asacol pill daily, but patient does not know dosage \_\_\_\_\_ history of \_\_\_\_\_ known drug allergies \_\_\_\_\_ penicillin \_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

**Abbreviations Writing Exercise**

Read the following sentences written with abbreviations and rewrite them as complete sentences.

1. A 47 yo WM recently Dx with ED is C/O feeling dizzy, flushed, and LBP. He has taken one Viagra 50-mg tab po 6 different times about 1 hr before sexual activity.

\_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

2. A 29 yo WF with HO Hep B is C/O a thick Vag D/C that looks like cottage cheese. Her MedHx includes Hepsera to Tx Hep B and Nasonex for nasal congestion.

\_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

3. A 33 yo WMD with HPI cirrhosis is C/O of n/v/d and drowsiness. He is currently taking one Aldactone 25-mg tab po AM, po PM SID, to Tx water retention in abd and legs. He has NKDA.

\_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

4. A 56 yo BF with HTN  $\times$  5 yrs is C/O a rapid heart beat. All include sulfa. She is currently smoking 1 ppd cig and has been smoking for 36 yrs. Current MedHx includes Captopril 25-mg po TID  $\times$  5 yrs and digoxin 5-mg po SID.

---

---

---

---

5. The pt. is C/O abd pain and worsening bloody diarrhea. He states he feels like he has the flu. He was Dx with UC 3 wks ago. He has been taking Asacol po SID (dosage UNK). All include PCN.

---

---

---

---

6. The 43 yo WF is C/O abd pain and a foul vag D/C. Her LMP was 2 mos ago. She is on BCP and denies she is pregnant. She has MS and is currently taking Betaseron Inj SID.

---

---

---

---

7. The 61 yo Pt.'s CC is a gout flare-up in his right toe. He states it's tender to the touch and very red and hot. The flare-up started 3 days ago. He's been taking 2 Tyl tab prn. He wants to get a cortisone Inj and an Rx for probenecid, which he received the last time he had a gout attack 2 years ago.

---

---

---

---

8. The 21 yo WF's CC is nausea, loss of appetite, dizziness, and HAs. She began taking Macrodan-tin cap po SID  $\times$  5 days to Tx UTI. Pt has NKDA but other All include wasps, bees, and iodine. She is on BCP and has been taking Aleve 1 tab prn for her HAs.

---

---

---

---

9. The 30 yo BM is C/O painful and burning urination, and penile discharge for about 1 wk. He has NKDA but is allergic to latex. Pt. had HO TB 5 yrs ago and was prescribed rifampin. Pt. also has history of STDs—gonorrhea and chlamydia. He was Dx 2 yrs ago and was prescribed doxycycline and azithromycin. Pt does not remember dosage. Pt. does not always use condoms or practice safe sex.

---

---

---

---

10. The 26 yo WF's CC is hair loss, trembling, and shaking. Pt. was recently Dx with hypothyroidism and is currently taking Levoxyl 50 mcg po SID. Pt. has been taking Levoxyl  $\times$  2 wks. Her LMP was 3 wks ago. She is not on BCP. Pt. takes Tyl prn for HAs. She states she cut her finger yesterday and has applied Neosporin on the cut. All include sulfa, iodine, and dog dander.

---

---

---

11. The Pt. was brought in by her husband. He stated she was experiencing terrible pain in her sternum and in her back and heartburn. Pt. was A&O. She had Endo 4 days ago and was Dx with HH, GERD, and an inflamed esophagus. Her PMD prescribed ranitidine 1 tsp AM and 1 tsp PM SID. PSH includes appendectomy and rt. knee surgery. All include Bactrim and cats.

---

---

---

12. The 5 yo WNF Pt. was brought in by her mother. Her mother states her daughter is tugging at her AS, that her OD is pink and watery, and that she is crying a lot. Her mother has been giving her daughter children's Tyl. 1 tsp po prn. Mother states her daughter has Hx of ear infections and has had one episode of croup. Their PMD has prescribed amoxicillin to Tx her ear infections. The Pt.'s VS are NL. Pt.'s SH includes parents who each smoke 1–2 ppd cigs.

---

---

---

13. The 32 yo BM is C/O constipation  $\times$  2 wks. He is taking Metamucil BID. The Pt.'s other current medications include Lipitor 20 mg po QHS to treat cholesterol and 2 glyburide 5 mg tab po BID for DM type II.

---

---

---

14. The 56 yo WF had liver Bx 1 wk ago and was Dx with cirrhosis of the liver. The Pt.'s C/C is anxiety and depression. The Pt. has Hx of COPD. Current medications include albuterol, 2 puffs prn for SOB  $\times$  7 yrs. She has 25 yr smoking Hx, but quit 1 year ago, and has 20 yr Hx of ETHO consumption. Pt. denies drinking ETHO after cirrhosis Dx.

---

---

---

15. The 69 yo BM is C/O of weakness and aching pain in both legs around the calf area for a long time. He can't walk as far as he used to. Pt. has Hx of CAD, angina, and high cholesterol. His Meds include Atenol 50-mg tab po SID, Mevacor 20-mg tab po daily, and ASA 325-mg tab po SID.

Check what you have written with acceptable answers that appear in the Answer Key online.

## Pharmacy Documentation Abbreviations Comprehension

Now that you have been introduced to written pharmacy documentation abbreviations and have read and completed sentences 1 through 15 using language regarding patient information and pharmacy documentation, assess your understanding by doing the exercises below.

### *Multiple Choice Questions*

Choose the answer that correctly completes each sentence below.

- \_\_\_\_\_ The abbreviation for **chief complaint** is:
  - CCO
  - C/O
  - CC
- \_\_\_\_\_ The abbreviation for **“doxycycline twice a day, once in the morning and once in the evening”** is:
  - BID doxycycline AM/PM
  - doxycycline po AM BID, po PM BID
  - BID doxycycline AM and BID doxycycline PM
- \_\_\_\_\_ The abbreviation for **“every 6 hours”** is:
  - HQ6
  - hq6
  - q6h
- \_\_\_\_\_ The sentence: “Patient is complaining of chest pain and shortness of breath” can be abbreviated as:
  - Pt. C/O CP and SOB
  - Pt. CC of Ch Pn and SOB
  - Patient CC of CP and SOB
- \_\_\_\_\_ The sentence: “The patient has been taking Dulcolax twice daily before meals for a period of 2 days to treat her irritable bowel syndrome” can be abbreviated as:
  - Pt. is taking Dulcolax po BID AC to treat IBS × 2 days
  - Pt. is taking Dulcolax po TID PC × 2 days to treat IBS
  - Pt. is taking Dulcolax po BID PC to treat IBS
- \_\_\_\_\_ The abbreviation for **“one 50-milligram Viagra tablet approximately twice a week”** is:
  - Viagra 50-mg tab qwk
  - Viagra 50-mg tab po appr. biwk
  - Viagra 50-mcg tab po qwk
- \_\_\_\_\_ **HPI** is the abbreviation for:
  - history of present illness
  - history of past illness
  - history of present and past illness



8. \_\_\_\_\_ **“The patient’s VS are NL”** means:
- The patient’s vital signs are normal
  - The patient’s vaginal symptoms are normal
  - The patient’s vascular symptoms are normal
9. \_\_\_\_\_ **“Pt. takes Tyl prn for HAs”** means:
- the patient takes Tylenol intravenously for headaches
  - the physical therapist only takes Tylenol when he has a headache
  - the patient takes Tylenol as needed for headaches
10. \_\_\_\_\_ **PV** is the abbreviation for:
- pelvic virus
  - per vagina
  - powder
11. \_\_\_\_\_ The sentence: “The Pt. has been taking Macrochantin cap po QID × 5 days to Tx UTI” means:
- The patient has been taking a Macrochantin capsule by mouth four times a day for a period of 5 days to treat urinary tract infection
  - The patient takes 5 Macrochantin capsules a day to urinary tract infection
  - The patient took a Macrochantin capsule by mouth once a day for only 5 days to treat urinary tract infection
12. \_\_\_\_\_ **ADR** is the abbreviation for:
- attention deficit recurrence
  - Alzheimer’s disease relapse
  - adverse drug reaction
13. \_\_\_\_\_ The sentence: “He suffers from Parkinson’s disease and is currently taking a 5-milligram capsule of Eldepryl twice a day, one with breakfast and one with lunch” means:
- He suffers from Parkinson’s disease and is taking 5 Eldepryl capsules with breakfast and 5 Eldepryl capsules with lunch
  - He suffers from Parkinson’s disease and takes Eldepryl 5-mg cap po BID, one AM/one PM
  - He suffers from Parkinson’s disease and takes Eldepryl 5-mg cap po SID, one AM/one PM
14. \_\_\_\_\_ **TPR** is the abbreviation for:
- treatment, pulse, and respiration
  - temperature, pulse, and respiration
  - treatment, pain, respiration
15. \_\_\_\_\_ The sentence: “He has been taking Asacol po SID (dosage UNK)” means:
- He has been taking Asacol injections daily but dosage is not known
  - He has been taking Asacol by mouth daily and the patient knows the dosage
  - He has been taking Asacol by mouth daily but the dosage is unknown

### ***True/False Questions***

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

- \_\_\_\_\_ **DOB** is the abbreviation for diagnosis of biopsy.
- \_\_\_\_\_ **Hx of PID** is the abbreviation for history of peptic inflammatory disease.
- \_\_\_\_\_ “Patient has **KDA** but is allergic to peanuts” means the patient has no known drug allergies and is not allergic to peanuts.
- \_\_\_\_\_ **BID AC** means twice daily after meals.
- \_\_\_\_\_ “Current **MedHx** includes Captopril **25 mg po TID × 5 years**” means current medication history includes taking a 25-mg Captopril by mouth three times for a period of 5 years.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ The abbreviation **DD** means demographic data and the abbreviation **DH** means drug history.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ “Her **PMD** prescribed Isopto **1 Gt OD QID**” means her private medical doctor prescribed 1 drop of Isopto Carpine in her right eye four times daily.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The abbreviation for acetaminophen is **ASA**.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ “She is taking Levoxyl **50 mcg po SID**” means she is taking 50 milligrams of Levoxyl daily.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ **QHS** is the abbreviation for every night at bedtime.

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

---

## PHARMACY DOCUMENTATION AND STANDARDIZED PATIENT FORMS

---

A common method used to document a patient’s pharmaceutical care is the SOAP note. SOAP is the acronym for subjective (S), objective (O), assessment (A), and plan (P). Subjective information includes information the patient shares with the pharmacy student and pharmacist during the patient interview, observations that the pharmacist and pharmacy student make about the patient, and information about the symptoms the patient is experiencing. Objective information is data that is obtained from the results of laboratory and diagnostic tests. An assessment of the patient is made by the pharmacy student and the pharmacist and is based on subjective and objective information. The plan in the SOAP note includes information about how to treat the patient, whether to discontinue medication and prescribe a new medication, whether to adjust dosage, and whether to order additional diagnostic tests.

The patient case presentation or patient workup is another method to document a patient’s pharmaceutical care. The case presentation is also a way for pharmacy students to learn how to manage a patient’s disease state. Practicing pharmacists use case presentations to discuss a patient’s care with colleagues and other pharmacists who will also be taking care of the patient. The case presentation form includes a lot of information and can include up to 22 sections to be completed. Some of these sections are chief complaint, history of present illness, family and social history, medications, physical examination, and laboratory tests and results. An example of a case presentation or patient workup is the Patient History and Physical Database form. Pharmacotherapy Workup Notes are another way to document a patient’s pharmaceutical care, and include three sections: assessment, care plan, and evaluation. Pharmacotherapy Workup Notes also provide a case presentation form.

The SOAP note, the Patient History and Physical Database, and the Pharmacotherapy Workup Notes require that the patient’s record be clear and concise and that the data collected by the pharmacy student and the pharmacist be organized and logical. The information that is written in these types of pharmacy documentation forms contains abbreviations, acronyms, and short/incomplete sentences as well as complete sentences. Familiarity with and complete knowledge of abbreviations and acronyms and their meanings, and a good command of written English, is therefore essential.

In this section, you will be introduced to the SOAP note format and the Patient History and Physical Database (Patient H&P Database), and you will learn how to complete them. You also will be introduced to a sample of the Pharmacotherapy Workup Notes format that appears in Appendix B.

### SOAP Notes Model

Figure 13-1 shows a model of a SOAP note. The purpose of this model is to introduce you to and familiarize you with the language and abbreviations used on this form. The SOAP note format is used to communicate patient information in writing. The information for a SOAP note is obtained from the patient interview, from pharmacy students’ and pharmacists’ assessments, and from lab and test results. There are variations of the SOAP form, but the important thing to remember is that you need to document certain information to be able to treat a patient and to be able to share patient information in writing with professors, pharmacists, fellow students, medical doctors, and other health care professionals involved in the treatment and pharmaceutical care of the patient.

<b>SOAP Notes Form</b>	
Patient's name: _____	DOB: _____
<b>S: (Subject)</b>	
In this section, you write and document subjective information shared with you by the patient. This information includes:	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) the patient's chief complaint</li> <li>2) the patient's history of their present illness</li> <li>3) the patient's past medical history</li> <li>4) the patient's family history</li> <li>5) the patient's social history</li> <li>6) the patient's review of system, which is the patient's summary of their health</li> </ol>	
<b>O: (Objective)</b>	
In this section, you document objective information. This information includes:	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) the patient's current medications</li> <li>2) the patient's allergies</li> <li>3) the patient's vital signs</li> <li>4) the patient's physical exam</li> <li>5) the results of any tests such as X-rays, blood tests, etc.</li> </ol>	
<b>A: (Assessment)</b>	
In this section, you document:	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) your interpretation of the patient's complaint(s) and adherence to the medication regimen, as well as the diagnosis based on the patient's medical condition(s), current medication condition, and the results of any tests that may have been ordered</li> <li>2) the need for instructions and education to the patient about medications, dosage, and treatment</li> </ol>	
<b>P: (Plan)</b>	
In this section, you document:	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) how you will address the concerns and issues found in the assessment</li> <li>2) suggestions and recommendations for treatment, medications, dosage</li> <li>3) any referrals or other suggestions for the patient</li> <li>4) instructions to the patient to self-check and self-monitor</li> </ol>	

FIGURE 13-1 Model of a SOAP note

### ***Completing a SOAP Note Exercise***

Read the following patient scenario carefully. After reading it thoroughly, complete the blank SOAP note form below. Put the information that you have read into the appropriate sections. Use abbreviations and pay careful attention to spelling. Based on the patient scenario presented, not every section of the SOAP note will be completed.

#### *Patient Scenario*

*MC is a 68-year-old white woman who is brought to the clinic by her son, who lives with her. Her son states that his mother is not feeling well and has been coughing a lot. She did not sleep well last night because the cough kept waking her up. MC has also been coughing up phlegm and sputum. Her son also states that his mother is not eating as much. MC has had chronic bronchitis since she was 22 and has been smoking since she was 15 years old. She developed*

*chronic obstructive pulmonary disease 10 years ago. She has had an Atrovent inhaler and is supposed to take four to six inhalations four times a day, but she doesn't always do so.*

*MC has had hypertension for 8 years and is taking 20 milligrams of Lisinopril once a day. MC also takes 10 milligrams of Fosamax daily in the morning for osteoporosis. She also had a complete hysterectomy when she was 42 as a result of fibroids and severe menstrual bleeding. MC has also had two benign breast nodules removed. She had a negative right breast biopsy in 1999 and a negative left breast biopsy in 2005. The son states there is no history of breast cancer in the family, but that MC's sister died from ovarian cancer at the age of 45 fifteen years ago. There is no history of diabetes or CAD in her family.*

*MC is allergic to iodine and sulfa. She is also allergic to cats. MC lives with her son and his wife and two grandchildren ages 6 and 8. She worked until age 64 as a supermarket cashier. She has been a widow 18 years. Her husband died of colon cancer. She smokes a pack of cigarettes a week. She has tried to quit and wore the patch but with no success. She doesn't drink alcohol. MC is tired, experiencing labored breathing, but is cooperative.*

*Her blood pressure is 137/82. Her pulse is 84. She weighs 135 pounds and measures 66 inches tall. Her temperature is 98 degrees. There is no nasal discharge. Labs and x-ray have been ordered and results are pending.*

Patient: \_\_\_\_\_

**S:**

CC: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

HPI: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

PMH: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

FH: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

SH: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**O:**

Meds: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Allergies: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

PE: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Labs: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**P:** \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

***SOAP Notes Comprehension Exercise***

Now that you have completed a written SOAP related to the patient scenario, assess your understanding of the patient's information in the SOAP note by doing the exercises below.

***Multiple Choice Questions***

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The patient's chief complaint is:
  - a. she has been a widow for 18 years
  - b. she is not feeling well and coughing a lot
  - c. she is allergic to sulfa and iodine

2. \_\_\_\_ The patient's husband's death of colon cancer and the patient's sister's death of ovarian cancer documents:
  - a. PMH
  - b. FH
  - c. SH
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient's allergies are documented in the:
  - a. assessment section of the SOAP note
  - b. subjective section of the SOAP note
  - c. objective section of the SOAP note
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient:
  - a. works as a supermarket cashier and lives with her son and his family
  - b. is retired and lives alone
  - c. is retired and lives with her son and his family
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient's medication information includes:
  - a. medications to treat DM, CAD, and OA and is documented in the objective section of the SOAP note
  - b. medications for HTN, chronic bronchitis, and COP and is documented in the assessment section of the SOAP note
  - c. medications for HTN, chronic bronchitis, COPD, and osteoporosis and is documented in the objective section of the SOAP note
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient's VS and pending lab results are recorded in the:
  - a. objective section of the SOAP note
  - b. assessment section of the SOAP note
  - c. PE section of the SOAP note
7. \_\_\_\_ The medication the patient does not take every day like she is supposed to is:
  - a. Fosamax
  - b. Atrovent inhaler
  - c. Lisinopril
8. \_\_\_\_ According to the plan section of the SOAP note:
  - a. the patient's Lisinopril dosage will be increased
  - b. the patient has been referred to a smoking cessation program
  - c. a plan cannot be developed because the assessment is incomplete
9. \_\_\_\_ The patient is:
  - a. anxious and uncooperative, and continues to smoke a pack of cigarettes a day
  - b. tired, has labored breathing, but is cooperative, and smokes a pack of cigarettes a week
  - c. experiencing SOB, is cooperative, and no longer smokes
10. \_\_\_\_ The patient's medical history includes:
  - a. a complete hysterectomy, negative breast biopsies on each breast, and benign breast nodules
  - b. partial hysterectomy, negative breast biopsies, and benign breast nodules
  - c. a complete hysterectomy, negative left breast biopsy, and a malignant breast nodule on her right breast

How did you do? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.

### **Patient History and Physical Database Model**

Below is a model of a Patient History and Physical (H&P) Database form. The purpose of the H&P Database form is to obtain patient information and to communicate and share the patient information

with pharmacy students, pharmacists, and other health care professionals in writing and verbally. Information obtained in the H&P Database form comes from the patient interview and from lab and test results. There are variations of the H&P Database form, but the important thing to remember is that you need to document certain information to be able to treat a patient and to be able to share patient information in writing with professors, pharmacists, fellow students, medical doctors, and other health-care professionals involved in the treatment and pharmaceutical care of the patient.

### ***Completing a Patient H&P Database Form Exercise***

Read the following patient scenario carefully. After reading it thoroughly, complete the appropriate sections of the guided Patient H&P Database form below. Use abbreviations and pay careful attention to spelling. Based on the patient scenario presented, not every section of the Patient H&P Database form will be completed.

ID: In this section, you identify the patient by age, race, and sex.

CC: In this section, you document the patient's chief complaint.

HPI: In this section, you document the patient's history of present illness.

PMH: In the section, you document the patient's past medical history.

DH: In this section, you document the patient's drug history.

Allergies: In this section, you document the patient's allergies.

FH: In this section, you document the patient's family medical history.

SH: In this section, you document the patient's social history.

ROS: In this section, you document the patient's own summary of their health status.

PE: In this section, you document the patient's vital signs during the physical examination.

Labs: In this section, you document any lab results.

Recommendation: In this section, you make recommendations based on lab and test results, and you instruct and educate patient.

Monitoring Plan: In this section, you plan for the patient to return, to self-monitor, and to self-check.

### ***Patient Scenario<sup>a</sup>***

**Scenario:** You are a pharmacy student at a community pharmacy. Mr. Smith, a 68-year-old gentleman who has been a patient this pharmacy for several years, enters the store and presents a prescription for Coumadin 2 mg #30, i po SID. You have available to you Mr. Smith, his pharmacy profile, and a sheet of his laboratory values, which your preceptor has trained him to bring every time he comes to the pharmacy. The following information is the history and physical data you are able to obtain, your assessment of Mr. Smith's situation, and your chart note.

Read the information that appears in the patient's profile below:

*The patient is a 68-year-old man whose chief complaint is that he needs to increase his warfarin dose due to decreased efficacy in his past dose. The patient takes warfarin daily to prevent deep vein thrombosis. Because today his international normalization ratio is 1.5, his doctor has increased his warfarin dosage from 5 milligrams by mouth every day to 7 milligrams by mouth every day. The patient was diagnosed with deep vein thrombosis. He had hip replacement surgery 3 months ago. He had a single episode of atrial fibrillation 4 years ago and is currently in normal sinus rhythm. He was diagnosed with congestive heart failure 7 years ago and with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease 5 years ago. He had an anterior myocardial infarction 14 years ago and is not currently experiencing*

<sup>a</sup>Adapted with permission from O'Sullivan T, Boh L. *Pharmacy Practice Manual: A Guide to the Clinical Experience*. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2001:600,603–604. Example of a case workup.

chest pain. He has been taking 5 milligrams of warfarin by mouth once daily for 2 months for deep vein thrombosis. It is the same dose since he was discharged from the hospital 2 months ago. He's been taking .25 milligrams of digoxin by mouth daily for a period of 7 years for congestive heart failure, 2 puffs of ipratropium four times daily for a period of 9 years for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, and 2 puffs of albuterol four times daily for a period of 9 years for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.

His over-the-counter medications include one multivitamin with iron and minerals by mouth daily for his general health for a period of 7 months. For constipation he has been taking one scoop of psyllium in a glass of water daily for a period of 4 years. He takes four tablespoonfuls of bismuth salicylate as needed for diarrhea. He states he took one dose twice in the past year for stomach flu. He's also been taking two to three alfalfa tablets daily for health. His friend recommended this to him about a month ago. The patient's medication refill history indicates that he obtains his refills on time. He obtains all prescription and over-the-counter medications from this pharmacy, but he buys the alfalfa tablets at the health food store. His recreational drug use includes a 40-packs-a-year smoking history. He quit 2 years ago. He drinks one to two drinks per week, and there has been no recent change in that amount. He denies any history of medication or environmental allergies. His father died at age 54 from acute myocardial infarction.

The patient is retired and lives with his wife, who helps him with medication management at home. He denies any changes in ingesting foods that contain vitamin K. A summary of the patient's own health status indicates he has no current complaints. His sputum is clear, he has had no coughing spells recently, and he denies shortness of breath, dyspnea on exertion, and paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea. The patient states he sleeps with one pillow and that he is comfortable walking short distances and there has been no change in 3 months. He denies any chest pain and bleeding or bruising on his skin. He states his urine is clear and yellow with no blood and that his stools are dark brown.

The patient weighs 80 kilograms, which is his usual weight, and he stands 5 feet 10 inches tall. His heart rate is 85 with regular rhythm. His blood pressure is 135/82. His rate and rhythm is 20 and his temperature is 37.2. His lab results indicate that today his international normalization ratio is 1.5. Two weeks ago it was 1.9; 4 weeks ago it was 2.4; 6 weeks ago it was 2.6; and 8 weeks ago at discharge from the hospital it was 2.3 and his albumin was 4.5. The recommendation is to treat anticoagulation by having the patient discontinue taking alfalfa tablets and to start taking 80 milligrams of enoxaparin subcutaneously every 12 hours but to discontinue enoxaparin when his international normalization ratio is greater than or equal to 2.0. The patient will be instructed in how to self-administer the medication subcutaneously. The recommendation also includes continuing warfarin at the current dose.

To treat myocardial infarction prophylaxis, it is recommended the patient take 81 milligrams of aspirin by mouth daily. Patient has been instructed to return for an international normalization ratio check in 5 days and to self-monitor for signs/symptoms of deep vein thrombosis, which include calf warmth, tenderness, or pain, and to call his doctor immediately if he experiences chest pain or shortness of breath. The patient has been instructed to also check for signs/symptoms of major bleeding in the gums, urine, stool, skin bruising, and epistaxis and to come back for a stool guaiac test in 3 months.



*Patient H&P Database Form Comprehension Exercise*

ID: \_\_\_\_\_

CC: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

HPI: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

PMH: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

DH: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

OTC MEDS: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Allergies: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

FH: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

SH: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

ROS: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

PE: \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

Pertinent Labs:

Today	2 weeks ago	4 weeks ago	6 weeks ago	8 weeks ago (at discharge)
INR:	INR:	INR:	INR:	INR: Alb:
_____				

Current Medical Problems	Goal of Therapy	Measurable End-Point

Current Drug-Related Problems	Justification	Therapeutic Alternatives

Recommendation	Monitoring Plan

How did you do? Compare your written answers with the completed sample Patient H&P Database form in the Answer Key online.

***Completing SOAP Note from Patient H&P Database Form***

Complete the SOAP note below using patient information from the Patient H&P Database above.

**S:** \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**O:** \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**P:** \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

How did you do? Compare your written answers with the completed sample SOAP note related to the patient scenario in the Answer Key online.

### Pharmacy Documentation Forms Comprehension: Patient H&P Database Form and SOAP Note

Now that you have read the patient scenario and have completed the Patient H&P Database form and SOAP note, assess your understanding by doing the exercises below.

#### *True/False Questions*

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient is an 86-year-old man.
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient has a prescription for Coumadin 2 mcg #20, i po SID.
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient's chief complaint is that he wants his digoxin medication increased.
4. \_\_\_\_ The patient was diagnosed with DVT 2 years ago.
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient's OTC medications include alfalfa tablets, multivitamins with iron and minerals, psyllium, and bismuth salicylate.
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient lives with his daughter.
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient's father died of COPD at age 54.
8. \_\_\_\_ The patient smokes and drinks regularly.
9. \_\_\_\_ The lab results indicate the patient needs to discontinue taking alfalfa tablets.
10. \_\_\_\_ The lab results indicate the patient should continue with the current warfarin dose.

#### *Multiple Choice Questions*

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

1. \_\_\_\_ The patient is a (an):
  - a. 68-year-old woman
  - b. 68-year-old man
  - c. 86-year-old man
2. \_\_\_\_ The patient's prescription is for:
  - a. Coumadin 2 mg #30, i po SID
  - b. Coumadin 2 mg #30 i po BID
  - c. Coumadin 2 mcg #20, i po SID
3. \_\_\_\_ The patient's complaint is that he needs his:
  - a. warfarin dosage increased
  - b. digoxin dosage increased
  - c. warfarin dosage decreased

4. \_\_\_\_ The patient was diagnosed with:
  - a. CHF 2 months ago
  - b. COPD 2 months ago
  - c. DVT 2 months ago
5. \_\_\_\_ The patient's OTC medications include:
  - a. alfalfa tablets and multivitamins with iron and minerals
  - b. alfalfa tablets, multivitamins with iron and minerals, psyllium, and bismuth salicylate
  - c. psyllium, bismuth salicylate, and alfalfa tablets
6. \_\_\_\_ The patient:
  - a. lives with his spouse
  - b. is a widow
  - c. lives with his daughter
7. \_\_\_\_ The patient's:
  - a. mother died of AMI at age 54
  - b. father died of AMI at age 54
  - c. father died of COPD at age 54
8. \_\_\_\_ The patient:
  - a. tried to quit smoking 2 years ago, but continues to smoke
  - b. smokes a pack of cigarettes per week
  - c. quit smoking 2 years ago
9. \_\_\_\_ The lab results indicate the patient needs to:
  - a. continue taking alfalfa tablets
  - b. discontinue taking alfalfa tablets
  - c. take alfalfa tablets as needed
10. \_\_\_\_ The patient will:
  - a. continue with warfarin at current dose to treat DVT
  - b. discontinue current dose
  - c. continue with increased warfarin dosage to treat DVT
11. \_\_\_\_ The patient information, "DVT, 2 mos ago" and "1–2 drinks/week" is indicated in the:
  - a. objective section of the SOAP note
  - b. SH section of the Patient H&P Database form
  - c. subjective part of the SOAP note
12. \_\_\_\_ The recommendation to discontinue alfalfa tablets should be included in the:
  - a. plan section of the SOAP note and in the monitoring plan section of the Patient H&P Database
  - b. labs section of the Patient H&P Database
  - c. DH section of the Patient H&P Database
13. \_\_\_\_ The patient's PE data should be included in the:
  - a. objective section of the SOAP note and in the PE section of the Patient H&P Database
  - b. assessment section of the SOAP note
  - c. subjective section of the SOAP note and in the PE section of the Patient H&P Database
14. \_\_\_\_ The history of the patient's INR lab results should be documented in the:
  - a. assessment section of the SOAP note and in the Labs section of the Patient H&P Database
  - b. labs section of the Patient H&P Database and in the objective section of the SOAP notes
  - c. subjective section of the Patient H&P Database

15. \_\_\_\_ The patient's new medications, patient education, and patient instructions should be documented in the:
- assessment section of the SOAP note
  - recommendation and plan section of the Patient H&P Database and in the assessment section of the SOAP note
  - plan section of the SOAP note and in the recommendation and plan section of the Patient H&P Database

How did you do? Check your answers against the Answer Key online.

## POST-ASSESSMENT

---

### True/False Questions

Indicate whether each sentence below is true (T) or false (F).

- \_\_\_\_ **Tx** is the abbreviation for treat/treatment.
- \_\_\_\_ The patient's PMH and PHI is documented in the objective section of the SOAP note.
- \_\_\_\_ **TID × 5 yrs** means "taken three times daily for a period of 5 years."
- \_\_\_\_ Vital signs and current medications are documented in the objective section of the SOAP note, and the patient's allergies are documented in the subjective section of the SOAP note.
- \_\_\_\_ The abbreviation for **nitroglycerin** is **nigly**.
- \_\_\_\_ The Patient H&P Database includes only information about the patient's current health and physical data.
- \_\_\_\_ **MedHx** is the abbreviation for medical history.
- \_\_\_\_ The recommendation section of the Patient H&P Database is used to make recommendations based on lab and tests results, and to instruct and educate patients about medication use.
- \_\_\_\_ The abbreviation for cancer is **Cx**.
- \_\_\_\_ The patient's smoking and recreational drug use history is documented in the subjective section of the SOAP note and in the DH section of the Patient H&P Database.
- \_\_\_\_ **ABT** is the abbreviation for antibiotic.
- \_\_\_\_ Objective information in a SOAP note is obtained through lab tests and diagnostics tests.
- \_\_\_\_ The abbreviation for **allergy** is **All**.
- \_\_\_\_ **CFNS** is the abbreviation for cold, fatigue, and night sweats.
- \_\_\_\_ There is only one form that is used to document patient pharmacy documentation.
- \_\_\_\_ **cig** is the abbreviation for cigarettes.
- \_\_\_\_ Knowledge of pharmacy and medical abbreviations is not needed to read and write pharmacy documentation.
- \_\_\_\_ **PND** is the abbreviation for paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea.
- \_\_\_\_ Pharmacy documentation is shared with patients only.
- \_\_\_\_ The abbreviation **WN** means well nourished.

### Multiple Choice Questions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, and c.

- \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated sentence: "The 26 yo WF's CC of NVD" means:
  - The 26-year-old female widow is complaining of nausea, vertigo, and dizziness
  - The 26-year-old white female's chief complaint of nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea
  - The 26-year-old well female is complaining of nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea

2. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated form of the sentence, “The patient is taking 50 micrograms of Levoxyl by mouth once a day,” is:
- The Pt. is taking Levoxyl 50 mcg po SID
  - The Pt. is taking Levoxyl 50 mg po SID
  - The Pt. is taking Levoxyl 50 mcg SQ SID
3. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated form of the sentence, “Her private medical doctor prescribed one teaspoon of ranitidine in the morning and one tsp in the evening daily,” is:
- Her PMD prescribed ranitidine 1 tsp AM and 1 tsp PM QD
  - Her PMD prescribed ranitidine 2 tsp BID
  - Her PMD prescribed ranitidine 2 tsp AM and 2 tsp PM QD
4. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated sentence, “Pt.’s SH includes parents who each smoke 1–2 ppd cigs,” means:
- Patient’s smoking history includes parents who each smoke one to two packs of cigarettes per day
  - Patient’s social history includes parents who each smoke one to two packs of cigarettes per week
  - Patient’s social history includes parents who each smoke one to two packs of cigarettes per day
5. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated sentence, “The 32 yo BM is C/O constipation  $\times$  2 wks and is taking Metamucil BID,” means:
- The 32-year-old black male is complaining that he had constipation 2 weeks ago and is taking Metamucil twice daily
  - The 32-year-old black male is complaining that he has had constipation for a period of 2 weeks and is taking Metamucil twice daily
  - The 32-year-old black male is complaining of constipation for at least 2 weeks and has been taking Metamucil twice weekly
6. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated form of the sentence, “The patient has chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, chronic bronchitis, and is taking two to four inhalations of Atrovent every day twice a day,” is:
- The Pt. has COPD and chronic bronchitis and is taking 2–4 IHN Atrovent BID SID
  - The Pt. has COPD and chronic bronchitis and is taking 2–4 IHN Atrovent SID
  - The Pt. has COPD and chronic bronchitis and is taking 2–4 INH Atrovent BID
7. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated form of the sentence, “He is currently taking one 25-milligram tablet of Aldactone by mouth in the morning and one in the evening daily to treat water retention in the abdomen and legs,” is:
- He is currently taking 1 Aldactone 25-mcg tab po AM, po PM BID to Tx water retention in abd and legs
  - He is currently taking 1 Aldactone 25-mg tab po AM, po PM QD to Tx water retention in abd and legs
  - He is currently taking 2 Aldactone 25-mg tab po AM, PM QD to Tx water retention in abd and legs
8. \_\_\_\_ The abbreviated sentence, “A 47 year WDWN–WF came to the ED C/O of CFNS and LBP” means:
- A 47-year-old well-developed, well-nourished white female came to the emergency department complaining of chills, fatigue, nausea, sweating, and lower back pain
  - A 47-year-old white divorced and well-nourished female came to the emergency department complaining of chills, fever, night sweats, and lower blood pressure
  - A 47-year-old well-developed, well-nourished white female came to the emergency department complaining of chills, fever, night sweats, and lower back pain

9. \_\_\_\_\_ The abbreviated form of the sentence, “The 56-year-old white female had a liver biopsy 1 week ago and was diagnosed with cirrhosis of the liver,” is:
- a. The 56 yo WF had liver Cx 1 wk ago and was Dx with cirrhosis of the liver
  - b. The 56 yo WF had liver Bx 1 mos ago and was Dx with cirrhosis of the liver
  - c. The 56 yo WF had liver Bx 1 wk ago and was Dx with cirrhosis of the liver
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The abbreviated form of the sentence, “The mother stated her 5-year-old daughter was tugging at her both ears, that her right eye was pink, and that she had given her one teaspoon of children’s Tylenol by mouth as needed” is:
- a. The mother stated her 5 yo daughter was tugging at AU and OD was pink, and that she had given her daughter 1 children’s Tyl tsp po prn
  - b. The mother stated her 5 yo daughter was tugging at AD and OD was pink, and that she had given her daughter 1 children’s Tyl tsp po prn
  - c. The mother stated her 5 mos old daughter was tugging at AU and OD was pink, and that she had given her daughter 1 children’s Tyl tsp po prn

How did you do on the Post-Assessment in Chapter 13? Check your answers in the Answer Key online.





## CHAPTER 1

---

### Pharmacist/Patient Dialogues

#### *Dialogue #1*

**Patient:** Hi, I was wondering if you could give me some advice. I was swimming in the ocean today, and when I got out, I noticed that I had all of these red bumps from my waist down.

**Pharmacist:** Do they itch?

**Patient:** Yeah, and I can't stop scratching them.

**Pharmacist:** I can see from your scratch marks. You only went into the water up to your waist? Did you feel a sting?

**Patient:** Yeah, come to think of it, I did. That's why I left the water.

**Pharmacist:** Well, it looks like you have a bumpy rash caused by a jellyfish sting.

**Patient:** A jellyfish sting? What should I do to get rid of this itch?

**Pharmacist:** Are you allergic to any medications?

**Patient:** Not that I know of, but I don't think so.

**Pharmacist:** I would recommend Benadryl tablets and hydrocortisone cream. You'll find them in aisle 5.

**Patient:** I have a hard time swallowing tablets and pills. Does Benadryl come in a liquid?

**Pharmacist:** Sure. You can get it in liquid form. Follow the directions for both the Benadryl and the hydrocortisone cream. And if the itching and rash continue, call your doctor.

**Patient:** Thank you so much.

**Pharmacist:** No problem. Glad to be of help.

#### *Dialogue #2*

**Patient:** I was wondering what I could do about the problem I'm having with my big right toe.

**Pharmacist:** What seems to be the problem?

**Patient:** Here, I'll show you. I thought it was just oozy and blistery, but this morning when I got up and tried to put my foot in my shoe, it really hurt.

**Pharmacist:** Is it sensitive to the touch?

**Patient:** Yeah. That's why I'm wearing open-toe sandals so that the toe won't rub against anything. Even when I put a Band-Aid on it, it really hurts.

**Pharmacist:** Have you been wearing tight shoes? When did you notice the watery blisters?

**Patient:** Well, actually I ran a 10K race this past weekend and it was raining and my sneakers got wet, and that's when my toe started to hurt and I saw the watery blisters.

**Pharmacist:** Well, it looks like the wet sneakers and maybe not enough room at the tip of your sneakers caused the nail to get soft and the skin to get blisters. It looks like you have a fungal infection.

**Patient:** Fungus? Where would I get fungus?

**Pharmacist:** Well, a fungal infection is caused by the moist environment created by your wet sneaker and socks rubbing against your toes. That's what has happened to your right toe.

**Patient:** What's going to happen to my toenail?

**Pharmacist:** Well, it will most likely turn black from the dead nail and blood underneath it. Eventually, it will fall off, but in time your toenail will grow back.

**Patient:** What should I put on it?

**Pharmacist:** Do you have any allergies to certain medications?

**Patient:** Well, I'm allergic to sulfa and iodine.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Don't put Betadine on your toe. But if you go to aisle 3, you'll find Lamisil. This will help with the tenderness that you're feeling and will prevent the fungal infection from spreading. Follow the directions on the bottle.

**Patient:** How long will it take before my nail grows back?

**Pharmacist:** It could be a while before your toenail will grow back, maybe a few months. If you continue to have problems, or if it begins to ooze more blood, I suggest you make an appointment with a podiatrist, a foot doctor, or call your primary care doctor. Also, keep your toe dry and well ventilated until you feel comfortable enough to wear closed shoes.

**Patient:** Thank you so much. I'll be more careful next time I run another race.

**Pharmacist:** Take care of your toes.

### *Dialogue #3*

**Pharmacist:** Hello. Can I help you?

**Patient's mother:** I hope so. We're on vacation so I can't make an appointment to see our pediatrician and was hoping you could help us. My daughter has been scratching her head a lot. I thought maybe she's scratching because of the sun.

**Pharmacist:** Let me take a look at her hair and her scalp. Has she had head lice before?

**Patient's mother:** No.

**Pharmacist:** How old is your daughter?

**Patient's mother:** She's 6.

**Pharmacist:** It looks like she's got her first case of head lice.

**Patient's mother:** She must have picked it up at day camp.

**Pharmacist:** Maybe. It's not anything to be embarrassed about. I suggest you buy a metal louse comb and soak it in rubbing alcohol and run it through her hair to remove the wingless insects. They look like sesame seeds. I also recommend a medicated antilice treatment. Nix works well. You can find both in the shampoo aisle. It's also a good idea to wash her sheets, pillowcases, towels, and her clothes.

**Patient's mother:** Is it hard to use?

**Pharmacist:** No. First, wash her hair with shampoo, rinse it, and towel dry. Then rub the Nix cream into her hair. Make sure her scalp is fully covered with it, as well as behind the ears and behind her neck. Leave the Nix on for 10 minutes and then rinse. After that, use the louse comb to remove the lice.

**Patient's mother:** How long will it be before the lice are gone?

**Pharmacist:** If after a week she still has lice, repeat the process.

**Patient's mother:** Is head lice contagious?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, it is, so I recommend you and the rest of your family use Nix too, and wash your sheets, pillowcases, and clothes, too.

**Patient's mother:** Thank you so much.

## Mini Dialogue Listening Exercises

### *Mini Dialogue #1*

**Person A:** You work too hard. You need to learn how to let your hair down. Let's go dancing tonight.

**Person B:** I can't. I have to work late. If I don't fill these prescriptions, they are never going to get filled in time.

### *Mini Dialogue #2*

**Person A:** Have you seen the movie "The Shining?" It's one of my favorite Jack Nicholson movies.

**Person B:** I saw that movie once. I can never watch it again. It makes my hair stand on end.

**Mini Dialogue #3**

**Person A:** Have you met the new pharmacist? What do you think of her?

**Person B:** She's only been here 1 week and she's already getting under my skin.

**Mini Dialogue #4**

**Person A:** It's really quiet today—not too many patients coming in with prescriptions.

**Person B:** I'm not complaining. It's nice not to have patients getting in my hair.

**Mini Dialogue #5**

**Person A:** I can't believe I have to work tonight and study for my pharmacy exam, which is tomorrow morning.

**Person B:** I would be tearing my hair out if I were you.

**Mini Dialogue #6**

**Person A:** How's your new boss?

**Person B:** He's like my old boss, who was friendly and kind, but he's also tough as nails.

**Chapter 1 Post-Assessment****Dialogue #1**

**Patient:** Hi. Can I speak with the pharmacist?

**Pharmacist:** I am the pharmacist on duty today. What can I help you with?

**Patient:** When I woke up yesterday, I noticed that my arm was a reddish-brown color and was swollen. It is painful and itchy. It seems to be getting worse today. Is there a cream that I can buy that will reduce the swelling and relieve the itchiness?

**Pharmacist:** Let's take a look at the arm. You're right. It is a brown color and it is swollen. Let me ask you a couple of questions. Were you bitten by an insect or did you hit your arm?

**Patient:** Not that I remember. But I was camping during the Labor Day weekend 2 days ago. Maybe I was bitten by an insect and did not notice it.

**Pharmacist:** OK. That seems possible, as I can see a possible bite mark. Has the swelling spread in the last 2 days?

**Patient:** Yes. At first, the brown color and swelling was only around my wrist. Today, they nearly reach my elbow!

**Pharmacist:** Have you noticed any pus?

**Patient:** Yes. As I was scratching my arm this morning, I noticed a small amount of clear fluid discharge.

**Pharmacist:** OK. It looks like you may have what is called impetigo, which is a mild skin condition that can be caused by an insect bite. I really think you should see a doctor today since the infection in your arm is pretty big and spreading.

**Patient:** Really?

**Pharmacist:** It looks like you're going to need a prescription for an antibiotic. But in the meantime, you may take Benadryl for the itching so you don't continue to scratch and spread the infection.

**Patient:** Benadryl? I've never taken Benadryl.

**Pharmacist:** You need to be careful. Benadryl can make you drowsy, so don't drive or operate heavy machinery right after you take it. To relieve the pain, I recommend you take Tylenol or Motrin unless you have any kidney or liver problems.

**Patient:** Actually, I take Tylenol a lot when I have a headache and I don't have any kidney problems.

**Pharmacist:** Good. You can find both Benadryl and Tylenol in aisle 4. And I know it's hard not to, but try not to scratch. The infection can spread and make things worse.

**Patient:** Thanks for all your help. I will call my doctor as soon as I get home. Thank you for your help.

**Pharmacist:** Sure, glad to be of help.

### *Dialogue #2*

**Patient:** Hi, can I speak with the pharmacist?

**Pharmacist:** Hi, I am Mrs. Smith, the pharmacist on duty. What can I help you with today?

**Patient:** My feet are burning and itching, and the skin is peeling off. I'm starting to tear my hair out! How can I make the burning and itching stop?

**Pharmacist:** Do you mind if I examine your feet?

**Patient:** Not at all.

**Pharmacist:** OK, you said that both feet are burning and itching?

**Patient:** Yes!

**Pharmacist:** OK, I am going to remove your socks and shoes. Let's take a look at your feet.

**Patient:** Do I have athlete's foot?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, the skin is scaly between your toes and on the soles of your feet. This scaliness, in combination with the burning and itching, is characteristic of a fungal infection called athlete's foot.

**Patient:** What should I do?

**Pharmacist:** I recommend that you apply Lamisil cream twice a day to the affected area. You will use this cream for 2 weeks.

**Patient:** Can I stop using it if the burning sensation and itchiness go away?

**Pharmacist:** It is important that you continue to use the cream for the entire 2 weeks, even if the burning and itching stop before then. If you don't use the cream for 2 weeks, the infection may return. Do you have any questions?

**Patient:** Do I need to do anything to my feet before I put the cream on?

**Pharmacist:** You should wash and completely dry your feet, even between the toes, before applying the cream. In addition, you should change your socks daily and should consider wearing different shoes, as the fungus may possibly be living in your shoes if they are old or if they are constantly worn.

**Patient:** Where can I find the Lamisil?

**Pharmacist:** Follow me. I'll show you where we keep it.

### *Dialogue #3*

**Patient:** Hi, are you the pharmacist?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, I am. What can I help you with?

**Patient:** I feel a little embarrassed. But, well, I have a bad habit of biting my nails when I am nervous. I was biting my nails yesterday, and a very thin piece of my nail was ripped from the side of the nail. Today the side of my index finger is red, swollen, and very painful. I was wondering what I should do for the finger?

**Pharmacist:** I see. Have you noticed any pus or discharge from the nail?

**Patient:** Yes. There was yellow pus from the nail this morning when I pressed on the finger.

**Pharmacist:** Well, it looks like you have an ingrown fingernail. There is a small infection in the finger, which is the reason for the redness, inflammation, pus, and pain. I recommend that you soak the finger twice a day in an Epsom salts soak. You can also apply peroxide to the finger. In addition, you should apply Neosporin to the finger during the day and cover it with a Band-Aid. You may take Motrin for the pain until the infection heals. The infection should be gone in several days. Do you have any questions?

**Patient:** Not at this time. Can you show me where the Epsom salts and the Neosporin are?

**Pharmacist:** Sure. Follow me.

---

## CHAPTER 2

### Pharmacist/Patient Dialogues

#### *Dialogue #1*

**Patient:** Hi, I need help. I woke up this morning with my right eye crusted and shut tight. I washed my face, and the eye was red. And it's gotten worse throughout the day. Now it's itchy, swollen, and really red.

**Pharmacist:** It looks like you have conjunctivitis, or what we call pink eye.  
**Patient:** I don't think I've ever had pink eye. I've had a stye, but not pink eye.  
**Pharmacist:** Pink eye is very contagious. That's probably how you got it. Do your eyes also feel itchy?  
**Patient:** Yeah, it feels like there is something in my eye, but I can't get it out. Anyway, I have a prescription to treat it. I have a big presentation in 2 days and I don't want to look like this. Here's the prescription.  
**Pharmacist:** OK. It's a prescription for tobramycin ophthalmic solution. They're eyedrops. Do you wear contacts?  
**Patient:** Yeah, but I didn't put them in this morning. As you can see, I'm wearing my glasses.  
**Pharmacist:** Good. Don't wear your contacts while using eyedrops and until your eye clears up.  
**Patient:** That's it. Will it clear up in 2 days?  
**Pharmacist:** Your doctor has prescribed that you use the eyedrops for 5 days. Put one drop in your eye every 4 hours. It should relieve the redness, inflammation, and itchiness. And even if you see that your eye has cleared up before the 5 days, continue using the drops.  
**Patient:** OK. I just hope my eye gets better before my presentation.  
**Pharmacist:** I hope so too. And don't be surprised if you experience a burning or stinging sensation. These are just some of the side effects. Make sure you read the instructions carefully. And good luck with your presentation.  
**Patient:** Thanks.

### *Dialogue #2*

**Patient's mother:** Hi. Could you fill this prescription quickly? We just got back from the pediatrician's office and my daughter has an ear infection. She's been crying non-stop. Here's the prescription.  
**Pharmacist:** The prescription is for amoxicillin, an antibiotic. Has she had amoxicillin before?  
**Patient's mother:** No. I don't think so. This is her first ear infection.  
**Pharmacist:** How old is she?  
**Patient's mother:** She's almost 3...34 months old.  
**Pharmacist:** Is she allergic to penicillin?  
**Patient's mother:** No. I don't think so.  
**Pharmacist:** OK. The doctor has ordered the amoxicillin in suspension form, liquid form. I suggest that you also buy a dose-measuring spoon if you don't have one so that you can measure the dosage as precisely as possible.  
**Patient's mother:** I have one.  
**Pharmacist:** Good.  
**Patient's mother:** How about the side effects? Is there anything I should look for?  
**Pharmacist:** Yes. Keep your eyes open for any side effects such as watery diarrhea. And if she gets a rash or starts itching or wheezing, call your doctor immediately.  
**Patient's mother:** Can she eat with the medicine?  
**Pharmacist:** Sure. And make sure she drinks plenty of water when you give her her dosage.  
**Patient's mother:** OK. I'll follow the directions on the bottle.  
**Pharmacist:** Oh, one more thing. Make sure you refrigerate the medicine and make sure she finishes the entire amount, even if she begins to feel better.  
**Patient's mother:** Sure. Thank you so much.

### *Dialogue #3*

**Pharmacist:** Hello. Can I help you?  
**Patient:** I hope so. My eye doctor tells me I have glaucoma and he gave me this prescription. What's it for?  
**Pharmacist:** Well, it's a prescription for Iopto Carpine. It will help treat your glaucoma. Did your doctor explain how to use this medicine?  
**Patient:** He did. But I was so upset when he told me I have glaucoma that I didn't really listen. He told me that he would put me on this medicine. What did you say the name of the medicine is and what does it do?  
**Pharmacist:** Well, it will help to reduce the high pressure in your eyes. By lowering the pressure, it will help to prevent problems with your vision.

**Patient:** Yeah, I don't see well, especially at night. And yeah, I do feel some pressure. So what kind of medicine is it?

**Pharmacist:** Well, Isopto Carpine is an eyedrop. Do you wear contact lenses?

**Patient:** No, no.

**Pharmacist:** OK, before applying the drops, make sure your hands are clean and don't touch the eye dropper with your hands or let it touch your eyes.

**Patient:** Yeah, I know. I've used Visine eyedrops in the past for red eye. I know how to use eyedrops.

**Pharmacist:** Good, but you need to be careful with these eyedrops. Pull your lower eyelid to make a pouch and then squirt one eyedrop in the eyelid pouch. Then close your eye and place your index finger in the corner of your eye by your nose and put pressure on it for about a minute. And try not to blink. When you've done this with one eye, do the same to the other eye. Do you have any questions?

**Patient:** Not right now. The medication box will have the label to tell me how many times I should put the eyedrops in my eye.

**Pharmacist:** That's right. And, of course, if you have any questions, call your doctor.

**Patient:** Yeah, if I can get through.

**Pharmacist:** I know what you mean. In the meantime, I need to get some information. Have you been here before?

**Patient:** Are you kidding me? I've been here for all kinds of ailments. I should be in your fancy computer. My name is Aldo Mancini—A-L-D-O M-A-N-C-I-N-I—and I'm 62 years young.

**Pharmacist:** OK, but I need your birth date.

**Patient:** I was born on April 5, 1944.

**Pharmacist:** OK, here you are. You still live at the same address and you still have the same insurance? And you have no allergies?

**Patient:** That's right. Hey, I do have a question. Are there any, you know, side effects from this medicine?

**Pharmacist:** Good question. It's very common to feel a little irritation, burning, or stinging. You might temporarily experience blurred vision. But of course, if these side effects persist, call your doctor. And call your doctor immediately if you experience a rash, itching, dizziness, or difficulty breathing. These are rare, but just in case.

**Patient:** Can I call you, if I can't get through at the doctor's office?

**Pharmacist:** Myself or another pharmacist will be happy to help you. Our phone number appears on your prescription label.

**Patient:** By the way, how do you spell the name of the eyedrops?

**Pharmacist:** That's I-S-O-P-T-O and C-A-R-P-I-N-E. Isopto Carpine.

**Patient:** All those letters for small eyedrops. Thank you so much. What's your name?

**Pharmacist:** I'm Eman Hussain. My name is on the label, too.

**Patient:** You've been wonderful. Thank you so much.

**Pharmacist:** You're very welcome, Mr. Mancini.

## Mini Dialogue Listening Exercises

### *Mini Dialogue #1*

**Person A:** Why are you smiling from ear to ear?

**Person B:** I just passed my pharmacy licensing exam and I have three job offers, but I don't know which one to accept.

### *Mini Dialogue #2*

**Person A:** Did you see the World Cup soccer championship game between Italy and Brazil? It was such a great game.

**Person B:** Are you kidding me? My eyes were glued to the TV and I didn't go to work.

### *Mini Dialogue #3*

**Person A:** Have you met the new head pharmacist? What do you think of him?

**Person B:** Poor guy. He's only been here 4 days and he's already up to his ears in work.

**Mini Dialogue #4**

**Person A:** It's really quiet today—not too many patients coming in with prescriptions.

**Person B:** I'm not complaining. It's nice not to have patients bend your ear about all their health problems.

**Mini Dialogue #5**

**Person A:** I can't believe I have to work tonight by myself. I feel I shouldn't work alone because I'm still green behind the ears.

**Person B:** Your boss has a lot of confidence in your ability.

**Mini Dialogue #6**

**Person A:** How's your new boss?

**Person B:** He's like my old boss, who was friendly and kind, but he has eyes like a hawk.

**Mini Dialogue #7**

**Person A:** It's amazing how much customers and patients will try to steal batteries for their hearing aids.

**Person B:** I know. The batteries are so small. That's why we need to have eyes in the back of our head at all times to be able to stop them.

**Chapter 2 Post-Assessment****Dialogue #1**

**Patient:** Hi. I need a prescription filled. I have swimmer's ear and the doctor gave me a prescription for an antibiotic.

**Pharmacist:** Sure. It's for Cortisporin Otic solution. Have you had swimmer's ear before?

**Patient:** Yeah, a couple of times. Usually I just put a little bit of diluted vinegar in my ears and take Tylenol for the pain and it usually clears it up. But this time the infection is pretty bad and I'm in more pain than usual.

**Pharmacist:** Do you swim a lot?

**Patient:** Actually, I do triathlons, so I spend a lot of time in the pool or in Cooper River training.

**Pharmacist:** That's probably how you got the infection.

**Patient:** I know, and I have a triathlon coming up in a month.

**Pharmacist:** Wow. I can barely walk a block without running out of breath. OK, let me fill this prescription for you. Have you been here before?

**Patient:** No. Do you need my insurance card?

**Pharmacist:** Sure, I'll take that, but I'll need to ask you a couple of questions. What's your full name? And what's your date of birth?

**Patient:** Michael P. Francis and my birth date is February 2, 1960.

**Pharmacist:** Is Francis with an "i" or and "e"?

**Patient:** With an "i" as in F-R-A-N-C-I-S.

**Pharmacist:** OK. And your address?

**Patient:** 21 Chester Lane, apartment three "s" in Wayne. The zip is 11920.

**Pharmacist:** Thanks. Your co-pay for the prescription is \$10.00.

**Patient:** OK. You think this antibiotic will get rid of this infection soon?

**Pharmacist:** Well, it should. It will help to stop the growth of bacteria in your ears. And it will reduce the swelling and inflammation that is causing the pain. You should start feeling better in 3 to 5 days, but make sure you use the medication regularly.

**Patient:** How many times a day should I put drops in?

**Pharmacist:** Your doctor has prescribed three to four times a day. You need to finish the entire prescription even if you're feeling better.

**Patient:** OK. I guess I'll read the directions and instructions in the package.

**Pharmacist:** That's a good idea, and pay attention to possible side effects such as stinging or burning that won't go away after you apply the drops. Call the doctor if you experience this, and call the doctor if you feel that you are experiencing some hearing loss.

**Patient:** Thanks. I'll read the label carefully.

**Pharmacist:** Good. And good luck in your triathlon.

### *Dialogue #2*

**Patient:** Hi, can I speak with the pharmacist?

**Pharmacist:** Hi, I am Dr. Newmark, the pharmacist on duty. What can I help you with today?

**Patient:** I just had cataract surgery on my right eye and the doctor told me I should get this medicine. He said it will help with inflammation.

**Pharmacist:** OK. It's a prescription for Lotemax eyedrops. Have you been here before?

**Patient:** Oh, yeah. Many times, for this and that.

**Pharmacist:** What is your name?

**Patient:** Ethel Burns, honey. That's B-U-R-N-S, not B-Y-R-N-E-S.

**Pharmacist:** Mrs. Burns, what's your date of birth?

**Patient:** Do you really need to know? I'm just kidding. My birth date is December 4, 1938. I'm 68 and now I have cataracts. Can you believe it?

**Pharmacist:** Actually, they're quite common. Mrs. Burns, are you allergic to any medication?

**Patient:** Yes, penicillin.

**Pharmacist:** Are you taking any other medications?

**Patient:** No, not right now. I consider myself pretty healthy. I walk 2 miles every day, except in bad weather. I don't want to fall and break my hip.

**Pharmacist:** That's wise. OK, let me explain how to use the eyedrops. Make sure you shake the bottle well. Gently pull the lower eyelid and then squirt the eyedrop. Close your eyes for a couple of minutes and try not to blink.

**Patient:** It sounds easy, but will it hurt?

**Pharmacist:** Well, it's not unusual to feel some stinging or burning and some temporary vision loss. In rare cases, some people experience dizziness, rash, itching, and trouble breathing. If you do, please call your doctor immediately.

**Patient:** Are you serious? If I'd known that, I would have kept my cataract. One eyedrop can cause all of that?

**Pharmacist:** I'm glad you have a good sense of humor about it, but please call your doctor if you experience any of these side effects. Do you have any other questions?

**Patient:** Well, now I'll know what to expect if I get a cataract on my left eye.

**Pharmacist:** I hope not, but if you do, we're here.

**Patient:** Thanks, hon. It's nice to be young.

**Pharmacist:** You're welcome. Enjoy your walks.

### *Dialogue #3*

**Patient:** Hi, are you the pharmacist?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, I am. What can I help you with?

**Patient:** Well, I got into a brawl. I got punched in my left ear a few times. I went to the emergency room a couple of days later after the pain wouldn't go away and it looks like I have a ruptured eardrum. It hurts a bit. The doctor said it should heal in a couple of months, but in the meantime to prevent an infection he gave me this prescription.

**Pharmacist:** I see. What's your name?

**Patient:** Thomas Miller.

**Pharmacist:** Mr. Miller, have you been here before?

**Patient:** No, and I don't have any insurance. I'll charge it on my credit card.

**Pharmacist:** OK, Mr. Miller. The prescription is for Cortisporin Otic. Do you have any allergies?

**Patient:** I'm allergic to cats. Is the medicine going to get rid of the pain? It's getting a little intense.

**Pharmacist:** Well, the medicine contains antibiotics to help stop bacteria from growing, as well as hydrocortisone to help reduce the ear swelling and the discomfort you're having. Mr. Miller, what's your date of birth and what's your address?



**Patient:** My birth date is November 16, 1980. And I'm from out of town staying with a friend a few days, but my home address is 17 Oak Bluff Road in Middlebury, Connecticut 06720.

**Pharmacist:** How do you spell Middlebury?

**Patient:** M-I-D-D-L-E-B-U-R-Y. Hey, do I drink the medicine or is it eardrops?

**Pharmacist:** They are eardrops. Follow the directions on the bottle and package insert. Your doctor wants you to use the drops three to four times a day. It's a good idea to wash your hands before you squirt the drops in.

**Patient:** Sure.

**Pharmacist:** You might experience a stinging or burning sensation at first. But if you start feeling you can't hear normally, call your doctor immediately, or if you're staying with your friend a few days longer, go back to the emergency room. Other things to look for are allergic reactions such as dizziness, rash, and difficulty breathing. Also, try to wear a shower cap when you shower, and if you need to blow your nose, blow it gently.

**Patient:** OK, I'll try to remember all of that. How much is that going to be?

**Pharmacist:** That'll be \$58.00.

**Patient:** I'm sorry. I didn't hear right. Did you say \$8.00?

**Pharmacist:** No, I said \$58.00.

**Patient:** Yikes! It's a good thing I have my credit card.

## CHAPTER 3

---

### Pharmacist/Patient Dialogues

#### *Dialogue #1*

**Patient:** Hi, my name is Debra Allen. I'm here to pick up my Nasonex prescription.

**Pharmacist:** One moment please. How do you spell your name?

**Patient:** D-E-B-R-A, Allen, A-L-L-E-N.

**Pharmacist:** OK, here you go. Have you ever used Nasonex before?

**Patient:** No, but my nasal congestion has gotten so bad. Now I have nasal blockage so my doctor called it in for me to pick up.

**Pharmacist:** Yeah, I can see. Have you been using any other medicine?

**Patient:** No, but I've been sleeping with a vaporizer, but it hasn't helped.

**Pharmacist:** Well, let me explain how to use the spray. First, make sure you prime the pump.

**Patient:** I'm sorry. What do you mean?

**Pharmacist:** Hold the bottle in the air and squeeze the pump about 10 times until you see a mist.

**Patient:** OK. How often should I spray my nose?

**Pharmacist:** Use it once a day, at the same time. And even if you start to feel better and you're breathing better, do not skip a day.

**Patient:** How long should I use it?

**Pharmacist:** Well, it can take up to 2 weeks before you start feeling some relief, so keep using it, but call your doctor if after 2 weeks you see no change.

**Patient:** Are there any side effects?

**Pharmacist:** Well, you might experience a headache, a sore throat, some coughing, and even a nosebleed. If the symptoms get severe, call your doctor. Your Nasonex comes with a package insert. Read it carefully. You can call the pharmacy or your doctor if you have any questions.

**Patient:** Thank you so much.

**Pharmacist:** No problem. Glad to be of help.

#### *Dialogue #2*

**Patient:** I'm here to get my prescription filled. It's for this embarrassing sore on the bottom of my lip.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Is this the correct spelling of your name? R-E-B-E-K-A-H.

**Patient:** Yes, I'm Rebekah Lowe. That's L-O-W-E.

**Pharmacist:** Thanks. OK, your prescription is for Valtrex. Did your doctor explain what it's used for and how to use it?

**Patient:** Well, she said it was to treat my cold sore. She also said it's called a fever blister.

**Pharmacist:** That's right. Were you feeling discomfort in the area of the lip?

**Patient:** Yeah, I was feeling a tingling, itching, and burning sensation. I've never had this kind of feeling on my lip.

**Pharmacist:** Well, Valtrex will help you to feel better as it attacks the herpes virus that has caused the cold sore.

**Patient:** How often do I take it and is it a pill or an ointment?

**Pharmacist:** Well, it's a caplet. It's a 1-day oral treatment. You take the caplet one time and then another one 12 hours later. Do not take it for more than 1 day.

**Patient:** That's it? Will it make me sick?

**Pharmacist:** Well, there can be some side effects such as a headache, dizziness, nausea, and a sore throat. But you may not experience any of them.

**Patient:** My doctor did tell me that I may have a recurrence.

**Pharmacist:** That's true. These cold sores are contagious, so make sure not to kiss others, and don't touch the sore with your hands. And don't be too embarrassed. They are very common.

**Patient:** Thanks. I'll read the instructions on the box carefully.

**Pharmacist:** OK. And call the doctor if you have any concerns.

**Patient:** Thank you so much.

**Pharmacist:** Sure. Anytime.

### *Dialogue #3*

**Pharmacist:** Hello. Can I help you?

**Patient's mother:** I hope so. My daughter is teething and she's drooling a lot. I've tried everything. I rub her gums; I give her a frozen washcloth. I've even massaged her gums with a frozen banana. I'm starting to pull my hair out.

**Pharmacist:** Have you tried children's Tylenol?

**Patient's mother:** Yeah, I did. It gave her temporary relief but then she starts crying again and gets fussy. And she doesn't want to eat.

**Pharmacist:** Well, I can recommend Zilactin Baby.

**Patient's mother:** I've never heard of it. Am I going to need to get a doctor's prescription for it?

**Pharmacist:** No, mom. It's a nonprescription medicated gel that works fast. And it even has a grape flavor. How old is your daughter?

**Patient's mother:** She's 6 months old.

**Pharmacist:** OK, then you should try Zilactin Baby. You can find it in the baby products aisle.

**Patient's mother:** Do I rub the gel on her gums?

**Pharmacist:** Yeah. With your finger tip or a cotton swab, apply a small amount on her gums, but don't do it more than four times a day. If you see a rash or hives, call your pediatrician.

**Patient's mother:** Thank you so much. I'll try it.

## Mini Dialogue Listening Exercises

### *Mini Dialogue #1*

**Person A:** Are you doing anything tonight? Do you want to go see the new Robert DeNiro movie? I hear it's really good.

**Person B:** I can't. I've got to keep my nose to the grindstone. I have no time for fun and relaxation.

### *Mini Dialogue #2*

**Person A:** Did you hear what happened today at work? The new pharmacist and the pharmacy technician both called in sick. It was terrible. We were so busy with patients.

**Person B:** I bet your boss was foaming at the mouth.

### *Mini Dialogue #3*

**Person A:** How do you like the new pharmacist? What do you think of her?

**Person B:** She's only been here 2 weeks and already she's poking her nose into everyone's business.

**Mini Dialogue #4**

**Person A:** Did you see the schedule? You're working the next two weekends.

**Person B:** It's no skin off my nose. I don't have any plans either weekend.

**Mini Dialogue #5**

**Person A:** I can't believe how juicy and tender this meat is.

**Person B:** I know. I can't stop eating it. It just melts in your mouth.

**Mini Dialogue #6**

**Person A:** How do you like your co-workers?

**Person B:** I like them a lot, except for one pharmacy technician who likes to bad mouth some of us and even some of the regular patients.

**Mini Dialogue #7**

**Person A:** Is it hard to be a supervisor? You must have so many responsibilities.

**Person B:** It can be difficult sometimes, especially when I have to remind some of my workers to keep their nose clean.

**Chapter 3 Post-Assessment****Dialogue #1**

**Patient's mother:** Hi. I need to get a prescription filled.

**Pharmacist:** Sure. What is your name?

**Patient mother:** Actually, the prescription is for my baby boy. I'm not really sure what the name of the drug is or how to pronounce it. I can't figure out the doctor's handwriting.

**Pharmacist:** Let's take a look at the prescription. OK. It's a prescription for Nystatin Suspension. Does your baby have thrush?

**Patient's mother:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** Has your baby been here before or to any other pharmacy?

**Patient's mother:** No.

**Pharmacist:** Can I have his name and age?

**Patient's mother:** Yes. His name is Sebastian Hoffman and he's 45 days old.

**Pharmacist:** Is his name spelled S-A-B-...

**Patient's mother:** No. It's S-E-B-A-S-T-I-A-N. Hoffman. H-O-F-F-M-A-N.

**Pharmacist:** What's his birth date?

**Patient's mother:** 6/2/2006. June 2, 2006.

**Pharmacist:** What's your address?

**Patient's mother:** 77 Tree Lane.

**Pharmacist:** Are you breastfeeding?

**Patient's mother:** No. Is the medicine a liquid or an ointment?

**Pharmacist:** It's a liquid because he's an infant. I'll explain how to use Nystatin, but first, do you know if Sebastian is allergic to any medications?

**Patient's mother:** I don't think so.

**Pharmacist:** What you need to do is squirt the liquid drops into the side of his cheek four times a day. Use the marked dropper that comes with the medicine. Give all the doses that the doctor has ordered and don't discontinue the drops if Sebastian starts feeling better. And of course, read the package insert carefully.

**Patient's mother:** Should I give him the medicine before or after he eats?

**Pharmacist:** Try to give him the drops before you give him the bottle. And speaking of bottles, make sure you carefully sterilize them and the nipples, including the pacifier if he has one.

**Patient's mother:** He doesn't use a pacifier.

**Pharmacist:** Good then. And keep your eyes open for possible side effects such as vomiting and diarrhea. If he experiences either, call your pediatrician.

**Patient's mother:** Thanks for all your help.

**Pharmacist:** Sure, glad to be of help.

### *Dialogue #2*

**Patient:** Hi, is Sam in today?

**Pharmacy technician:** Sure. Is there anything I can help you with?

**Patient:** Yeah. I need this prescription filled. But I want to speak to Sam.

**Pharmacy technician:** Sure. Just let me get your name and information and I'll tell him you're here.

**Patient:** Tell him Jenny is here.

**Pharmacy technician:** How do you spelling Jenny? Is it Jenny with a "y" or Jennie with an "ie"?

**Patient:** It's Jenny with a "y". But my full name is Jennifer Browne. And that's Browne with an "e", B-R-O-W-N-E. My birth date is ten six eighty. And I live on Paradise Road.

**Pharmacy technician:** OK. I have you in the system. Give me your prescription so I can give it to Sam.

**Patient:** Thanks.

**Pharmacist:** Hey Jenny. How's it going?

**Patient:** Remember my canker sores from last week? Well, they've gotten worse and I can't take it any more.

**Pharmacist:** The Orabase didn't work?

**Patient:** No, so I went to see my doctor and he gave me a prescription for . . .

**Pharmacist:** Debacterol.

**Patient:** This better work. I can barely open my mouth. And they sting when I eat.

**Pharmacist:** Actually, you should feel relief right away. Before you apply the liquid, dry the canker with a cotton swab. You'll feel some stinging, but like I said, you should be pain free right away and they should heal. It's a good idea to rinse your mouth with a little water and baking soda after you apply the Debacterol.

**Patient:** This better work. I'm desperate.

**Pharmacist:** You'll be fine, but if they persist, see your doctor again. Jenny, is your insurance plan still Healthy Life Insurance?

**Patient:** Yeah.

**Pharmacist:** OK, Jenny, it's all been taken care of. Let me know how the Debacterol is working. Take care and have a good day. It was good see you.

**Patient:** You too. Thanks, Sam.

**Pharmacist:** No problem, Jenny. Have a good day.

### *Dialogue #3*

**Patient:** Hi. I hope you can make me feel better.

**Pharmacist:** I'll try. How can I help you?

**Patient:** I just left the doctor's office. He told me I have sinusitis and I feel terrible. I've never had sinusitis. His nurse phoned in my prescription for something that begins with an A, I think.

**Pharmacist:** I'll take a look. What's your name and who is your doctor?

**Patient:** My name is Melissa Costello, and my doctor is Dr. Dixon, Robert Dixon. That's Dixon without the "s".

**Pharmacist:** OK, I have the prescription. It's for amoxicillin, but I notice you're not in our computer system. Have you been here before?

**Patient:** I've been in the supermarket, but I've never been in the pharmacy. I've never had a prescription filled here.

**Pharmacist:** OK. I need to ask you a few questions. It won't take long. Are you allergic to any medications?

**Patient:** I'm allergic to iodine.

**Pharmacist:** Are you taking any medications now?

**Patient:** Well, I've been taking Dristan decongestant and Tylenol.

**Pharmacist:** What your date of birth?

**Patient:** August 27, 1979.

**Pharmacist:** What type of insurance do you have?

**Patient:** I have Best Health Insurance. Here's my card. It also has my home address on it.

**Pharmacist:** What's your home number?

**Patient:** 555-0171.

**Pharmacist:** Thanks. While your prescription is being filled, and it won't be long, let me explain to you how to use amoxicillin. Have you ever taken amoxicillin?

**Patient:** No. I've never had sinusitis before.

**Pharmacy:** OK. Make sure to take the dosage prescribed by your doctor. It's on the medicine bottle label.

**Patient:** Is it OK to stop taking it if I start to feel better?

**Pharmacist:** No. It's very important to take all the amoxicillin. Even if you start feeling better, your sinus infection may not be completely treated. And don't break open the capsules. Swallow them whole.

**Patient:** Can I take it with food?

**Pharmacist:** You can, and you can also take it on an empty stomach, but make sure you drink a full glass of water with the capsules.

**Patient:** Will they make me feel different or sick?

**Pharmacist:** Actually, since this is your first time with amoxicillin, read the computer printout we will give you of the side effects. These side effects could include some nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. But if you experience shortness of breath, or you feel that your throat is closing up, or you get hives and swelling, stop taking it and get medical help immediately. I don't want you to panic, but just be mindful of these possible side effects.

**Patient:** Wow. Getting a sinus infection is no fun. I just want to feel better soon.

**Pharmacist:** You will. And call your doctor if you have other concerns.

**Patient:** Thank you so much. You've been so helpful.

## CHAPTER 4

### Pharmacist/Patient Dialogues

#### *Dialogue #1*

**Pharmacist:** Hello, are you here to pick up a prescription or to get one filled?

**Patient:** Actually, I'm here to get a prescription filled.

**Pharmacist:** I see. It's a prescription for Levoxyl. Have you been here before?

**Patient:** Yeah. I was here last year for a sinus infection. I was on ampicillin.

**Pharmacist:** What's your name?

**Patient:** Linda Anderson. My birth date is 1/2/69. I was wondering . . . could you hurry up? I'm really cold. It's so cold in here.

**Pharmacist:** I'll try. OK, I see you are in our system. You still live on Sunset Road?

**Patient:** No, I moved. I live on 32 Harvard Road, but same town. And I have the same phone number.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Thanks for the update. Now, I need to ask you a couple of questions. Are you taking any medication?

**Patient:** Well, I take vitamins. And I cut my finger 2 days ago, so I've been taking Tylenol and putting Neosporin on the cut.

**Pharmacist:** Have you been on Levoxyl before?

**Patient:** No, this is my first time. I have hypo . . . something to do with my thyroid. It's so confusing. All I know is that I'm always cold and really super tired and I forget things and I can't concentrate. And I've gained weight but I'm not eating more.

**Pharmacist:** Your doctor has given you a prescription for Levoxyl because you have hypothyroidism or an underactive thyroid. Levoxyl is a synthetic thyroid hormone that will replace the hormone that is normally produced by your thyroid gland.

**Patient:** How often do I take it?

**Pharmacist:** Your doctor has prescribed 50 mcg once a day. It's a good idea to take it in the morning on an empty stomach about a half hour before breakfast. Your doctor will monitor you.

**Patient:** Are there any strange side effects?

**Pharmacist:** Well, not all people react in the same way. But let your doctor know if you begin experiencing headaches, nervousness, trembling, or sweating. There's a list of possible side effects on the computer

printout you will receive with the medication. In very rare cases, some people might experience some hair loss until their bodies adjust to the medication. Let your doctor know.

**Patient:** Will it make me sleepy?

**Pharmacist:** Well, no, but it may cause insomnia.

**Patient:** Great. Just what I need.

**Pharmacist:** You can always call us or your doctor if you have any concerns.

**Patient:** I know. Thanks. Here is my insurance card. I think I only have a \$5 co-pay.

### *Dialogue #2*

**Patient:** Hi. I'm here to pick up my insulin medicine.

**Pharmacist:** What is your name?

**Patient:** Sean Smith.

**Pharmacist:** Sean, have you been here before?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** OK, I need to ask you a few questions. Sean, how do you spell your first name?

**Patient:** S-E-A-N.

**Pharmacist:** What's your birth date?

**Patient:** March 18, 1980.

**Pharmacist:** Your home address?

**Patient:** 88 Marlboro Lane in Waine.

**Pharmacist:** Is that W-A-Y-N-E?

**Patient:** No, it's W-A-I-N-E.

**Pharmacist:** And the phone number where you can be reached?

**Patient:** My cell number is best. It's 818-0818.

**Pharmacist:** Can you confirm your doctor's name?

**Patient:** Dr. Harwicke, with an "e" at the end.

**Pharmacist:** And your insurance?

**Patient:** I have Optimal Health. Here's my card.

**Pharmacist:** OK, now I have all the information I need. Oh, one more thing. Any allergies?

**Patient:** I'm allergic to peanuts and peanut butter.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Now here's your prescription. This is NovoLog.

**Patient:** Novo what?

**Pharmacist:** NovoLog. It's spelled N-O-V-O-L-O-G. This is insulin that you inject to treat your diabetes.

**Patient:** Yeah, my doctor said it's the kind I inject.

**Pharmacist:** That's right. Has your doctor taught you how to inject it?

**Patient:** Yeah. And I've watched my mother inject herself many times. She has diabetes, too.

**Pharmacist:** Some important things to remember. Don't inject cold insulin, so keep the insulin at room temperature. Clean the area you want to inject like the back of your arm, your thigh, or your abdomen with rubbing alcohol. Make sure you inject the correct amount as prescribed by your doctor.

**Patient:** Do I inject the insulin before or after I eat?

**Pharmacist:** Inject it 5 to 10 minutes before you eat. And pay attention to some possible side effects. Too much insulin can cause low blood sugar, or hypoglycemia, and you might experience chills, dizziness, sweating, and hunger. Too little insulin can cause hyperglycemia, or high blood sugar, and you might feel very thirsty, urinate a lot, and feel a little confused and drowsy. Call your doctor immediately. I know it's a lot to remember. Do you have any questions?

**Patient:** No, I'll be all right. My doctor has explained a lot to me and I can always ask my mother.

**Pharmacist:** OK, Sean. Here you go. There's more information about the insulin on the package. Take care. And feel free to call us any time.

### *Dialogue #3*

**Pharmacist:** Good morning. How can I help you today?

**Patient:** My doctor called in a prescription for Sofran. I think that's what it's called.

**Pharmacist:** What are you having treated?

**Patient:** For my nausea. I have leukemia.

**Pharmacist:** OK. You mean Zofran with a “z”. It’s spelled Z-O-F-R-A-N. That’s OK. So many medications sound identical. Anyway, would you like to sit down while you wait?

**Patient:** No, I’m OK.

**Pharmacist:** OK. What’s your name?

**Patient:** My last name is Morales. My first name is Martin.

**Pharmacist:** Could you spell your last name for me?

**Patient:** M-O-R-A-L-E-S.

**Pharmacist:** Is your date of birth July 27, 1966?

**Patient:** Yeah.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Here we are. You still live at the same address?

**Patient:** Yeah. And I still have the same phone number.

**Pharmacist:** Is your doctor Dr. Thomas Miller?

**Patient:** Yeah.

**Pharmacist:** Have you used Zofran before?

**Patient:** No. But after a few rounds of chemotherapy I started to have more nausea and more vomiting.

**Pharmacist:** That’s not uncommon. Hopefully, the Zofran will help alleviate both.

**Patient:** I hope so. Am I going to feel any other side effects?

**Pharmacist:** Well, you might experience some lightheadedness, headaches, drowsiness, and even constipation. Some people experience muscle stiffness and vision problems.

**Patient:** How about any allergic reactions? I’m allergic to iodine.

**Pharmacist:** Well, as indicated in the packaging, some rare allergic reactions include severe rash, difficulty breathing, and swelling. Of course, please seek medical attention immediately if any of these occur.

**Patient:** Wow, all of that just to make my nausea and vomiting go away.

**Pharmacist:** You said you’re receiving chemotherapy?

**Patient:** Yeah.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Your doctor has prescribed that you need to take one tablet about 30 minutes before your treatment, and your doctor has probably told you not to eat before your treatment. Let your doctor know if the medication is not working for you.

**Patient:** OK, I will. I have another round of chemotherapy tomorrow morning.

**Pharmacist:** Good luck and I hope you get well soon.

**Patient:** Thanks a lot. Here’s my insurance card.

## Mini Dialogue Listening Exercises

### *Mini Dialogue #1*

**Person A:** I hate when patients yell at me when their prescription is not ready in time. Don’t they know how busy we are?

**Person B:** Oh, don’t let them make your blood boil. Just do your job with a smile on your face.

### *Mini Dialogue #2*

**Person A:** Have you seen the movies “Saw” and “Saw II?” I can’t wait to see “Saw III.”

**Person B:** No way. Those types of movies make my blood run cold.

### *Mini Dialogue #3*

**Person A:** No, I’m not the only pharmacist in my family. My grandmother was a pharmacist; so was my mother and my older brother.

**Person B:** Wow. Pharmacy really runs in your blood.

### *Mini Dialogue #4*

**Person A:** Your sister called while you were out. She said she needs to borrow money from you.

**Person B:** I’m never going to lend her money again. The last time I loaned her money, she paid me in pennies. It was like getting blood from a stone.

### *Mini Dialogue #5*

**Person A:** My brother and I had a big fight last night. I don't like his fiancé and I don't think he should marry her. And I don't want to be in their wedding.

**Person B:** Well, whether you like her or not or don't want to be in their wedding, he's still your brother. And you know what they say—blood is thicker than water.

## Chapter 4 Post-Assessment

### *Dialogue #1*

**Pharmacist:** Hello. How can I help you today?

**Patient:** Well, I need to get my prescription for my diabetes filled.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Do you have the prescription?

**Patient:** Yeah. Here it is. My doctor, Dr. Menken, wants me to try a new pill to control my diabetes. I also have to follow a new diet and exercise more.

**Pharmacist:** Is that M-E-N-K-E-N or M-E-N-K-I-N?

**Patient:** With an “e”.

**Pharmacist:** He has ordered Amaryl in 2-mg tablets.

**Patient:** Yeah, he said they would be pills and not the insulin I've been injecting. By the way, how do you spell that? It sounds like a girl's name.

**Pharmacist:** It's spelled A-M-A-R-Y-L. You look familiar. Have you been here before?

**Patient:** For my insulin. My name is Ann Marie Jones. No “e” in Ann and they're two separate names.

**Pharmacist:** So that's capital A-N-N and capital M-A-R-I-E. And Jones is J-O-N-E-S.

**Patient:** That's right.

**Pharmacist:** Is your birth date January 20, 1977?

**Patient:** Yep.

**Pharmacist:** Is your insurance still Healthy Living?

**Patient:** No. I have a new job and a new insurance plan. It's Health Now Plan. Here's my card.

**Pharmacist:** Thanks. Is your address still 64 Robin Circle in Haddonfield?

**Patient:** No. I've moved. My new address is 17 Princeton Road in Maple Shade.

**Pharmacist:** And your phone?

**Patient:** Also new. It's 632-1129.

**Pharmacist:** Thanks. Now, do you have any questions about the new medication?

**Patient:** I didn't have any problems with my old insulin injection, but I used to get red where I injected myself and felt a little pain for a little while, but that's about it.

**Pharmacist:** Well, you won't experience that with the tablet, but keep your eyes open for other side effects such as yellowing of your eyes or skin, dark urine, or stomach pains. These are rare, but not to be ignored. Of course, if you have difficulty breathing, swelling, or a rash, seek medical attention immediately.

**Patient:** I will. I will read the pamphlet and the instructions in the box. And the nurse at the doctor's office also explained to me what to look for.

**Pharmacist:** That's good. And remember you can always call us if you have any questions.

**Patient:** I know. Thanks.

**Pharmacist:** Sure. It will be just a few minutes

**Patient:** Oh, yeah. I just remembered, how often do I take the tablet?

**Pharmacist:** Your doctor wants you to take one tablet once a day with breakfast. Try to take it regularly and of course monitor and check your glucose levels and let your doctor know if your glucose levels are elevated.

### *Dialogue #2*

**Pharmacist:** Hello. How can I help you today?

**Patient:** I'm here to pick up my prescription. Dr. Schneider called it in this morning.

**Pharmacist:** Sure. What's your name?

**Patient:** Ilene, I-L-E-N-E. Last name Willis, W-I-L-L-I-S.

**Pharmacist:** Is that a prescription for propylthiouracil?

**Patient:** Yeah, I think so. Dr. Schneider said it's also called PTU. I have Graves disease, a hyperactive thyroid.

**Pharmacist:** Did your doctor explain how to use it?



**Patient:** Well, I think he said I have to take one tablet three times a day.

**Pharmacist:** That's what he prescribed. Did he explain to you some of the side effects that you might have?

**Patient:** No, but will I feel drowsy?

**Pharmacist:** Well, that's one side effect. You might also experience joint pain, nausea, upset stomach, and some tingling and burning sensation on your hands and feet. You can read more about the side effects in the computer printout stapled to the prescription bag. But I need to get additional information.

**Patient:** Sure.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have any allergies?

**Patient:** No medicines, but I'm allergic to onions, bees, and wasps.

**Pharmacist:** What's your birth date?

**Patient:** April 22, 1952.

**Pharmacist:** I see you're in our computer. Is your address still 2733 Phoenix Avenue?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** And your insurance?

**Patient:** Mutual Health and Life.

**Pharmacist:** OK, you're all set. You don't have a co-pay. Don't hesitate to call us or your doctor if you have any concerns.

**Patient:** I will. Thank you.

### *Dialogue #3*

**Customer:** Hi, I'm here to pick up my wife's prescription. The last name is Graham.

**Pharmacist:** Can you spell it for me?

**Customer:** G-R-A-H-A-M. Her first name is Christina with an "h".

**Pharmacist:** OK. Here it is. Did the doctor explain to your wife or to you how Aranesp is used?

**Customer:** Well, Dr. Patel told us it's an injection to help her with the anemia she has as a result of her chemotherapy.

**Pharmacist:** Which doctor Patel?

**Customer:** Amit Patel. A-M-I-T.

**Pharmacist:** OK. I'll explain how to use it and the possible side effects as soon as I confirm some information. Has Christina been here before?

**Customer:** Many, many times. Her birth date is February 12, 1955. We live on 4601 Westmont Road.

**Pharmacist:** OK. I see this information in our system. Insurance is the same?

**Customer:** Yeah. And I don't have a co-pay.

**Pharmacist:** That's right. Aranesp is a colorless vial. Your doctor has ordered two vials that you can refill. She needs to inject it under her skin. If she's too weak, you can do it. Needles don't make you queasy, do they?

**Customer:** I've been a diabetic for years and have experience injecting my insulin.

**Pharmacist:** OK then. Her doctor wants her to use it once a week. It usually takes 2 to 6 weeks before she'll start feeling better. You can read the patient information pamphlet regarding preparation and usage instructions.

**Customer:** I will. Any side effects?

**Pharmacist:** It's possible to experience a headache, body aches, and diarrhea. In rare cases, the medication can cause blood clots, so keep an eye out for swelling, redness, and weakness of arms and legs. Call the doctor immediately. And of course, if you or your wife have any questions, please call us.

**Customer:** Sure. We will. Thanks.

## CHAPTER 5

---

### Pharmacist/Patient Dialogues

#### *Dialogue #1*

**Pharmacist:** Hello. Can I help you?

**Patient's mother:** I hope so. I have a prescription for my daughter. She's home with bronchitis.

**Pharmacist:** OK. It's for Entex. Has your daughter been taking any other medication?  
**Patient's mother:** Well, she was taking Robitussin, but her cough and congestion got worse. And now she has a lot of mucus in her lungs.  
**Pharmacist:** How old is your daughter?  
**Patient's mother:** She's 16.  
**Pharmacist:** What's your daughter's name?  
**Patient's mother:** Aurea Cuevas.  
**Pharmacist:** Can you please spell her name for me?  
**Patient's mother:** Aurea is A-U-R-E-A and Cuevas is C-U-E-V-A-S.  
**Pharmacist:** Thanks. And what's her date of birth?  
**Patient's mother:** August 19, 1990.  
**Pharmacist:** I see from the computer she's been here before.  
**Patient's mother:** Yeah. For ear infections when she was younger.  
**Pharmacist:** Is she allergic to any medications?  
**Patient's mother:** She broke out into a rash the first time she took Bactrim for some kind of infection.  
**Pharmacist:** Is your address still 11 Morningside Terrace?  
**Patient's mother:** Yeah.  
**Pharmacist:** Is the phone number the same?  
**Patient's mother:** Yes.  
**Pharmacist:** And the doctor is Dr. Swee?  
**Patient's mother:** Yep.  
**Pharmacist:** Well, the medication should start to make her feel better. The medication will help to loosen the mucus in her lungs and clear the congestion. She'll start to breathe easier.  
**Patient's mother:** Will it make her drowsy?  
**Pharmacist:** It might, so don't let her drive while she's taking it. She might also experience some nausea and upset stomach. It's rare, but keep your eyes out for other side effects such as . . .  
**Patient's mother:** I'll just read the insert in the box. I read everything.  
**Pharmacist:** That's a good idea. How will you be paying for this?  
**Patient's mother:** I'll pay cash. By the way, is it pills or liquid?  
**Pharmacist:** Her doctor prescribed capsules. And make sure she drinks plenty of fluids when she takes the capsules. Do you have any other questions?  
**Patient's mother:** No, but how much is it?  
**Pharmacist:** That'll be \$33.99.  
**Patient's mother:** OK.

### *Dialogue #2*

**Patient:** Hi, I need to get this prescription filled. I have asthma.  
**Pharmacist:** Your doctor has given you a prescription for the albuterol oral inhaler.  
**Patient:** What do you mean? It's not a pill I can take?  
**Pharmacist:** No. Your doctor ordered the inhaler instead.  
**Patient:** How do I use it? This is the first time I've had asthma. She told me I have exercise-induced asthma and wheezing.  
**Pharmacist:** Do you play sports?  
**Patient:** Yeah, I play field hockey, basketball, and softball.  
**Pharmacist:** Good for you. Now, it's important to read the leaflet in the package, but I'll show you how to use it. First, shake the inhaler and spray-test it. Then put the mouthpiece near your mouth and exhale. Next, place the mouthpiece in your mouth and press the inhaler as you inhale deeply. Make sure you hold your breath for at least 10 seconds so that the medication gets absorbed.  
**Patient:** How often do I do that?  
**Pharmacist:** Well, your doctor has prescribed that you inhale two to three puffs 15 to 30 minutes before exercise or physical activity to help you with exercise-induced wheezing. Make sure you don't take more puffs than prescribed by your doctor.  
**Patient:** So this will help me get rid of my wheezing and the shortness of breath I get when I run?  
**Pharmacist:** It should, but if you find that it's not helping, please see your doctor. And keep your eyes out for any possible side effects such as headache and nausea. And if you begin to feel dizzy, get medical help.

You can read more about the side effects in the package insert, but first I need to get some information.

What's your name?

**Patient:** Jonna Toledo.

**Pharmacist:** Is that J-O-H-N-A?

**Patient:** No, it's J-O-N-N-A and my last name is T-O-L-E-D-O.

**Pharmacist:** Have you been here before?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** Are you at least 18?

**Patient:** Yeah. Do you need my birth date?

**Pharmacist:** Yes.

**Patient:** It's September 9, 1989.

**Pharmacist:** And your address?

**Patient:** 216 Ardmore Avenue.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have insurance?

**Patient:** Yes, I'm covered by my dad's insurance. It's Health Now. I think I only have a \$5.00 co-pay. Here's the card.

**Pharmacist:** And your phone number?

**Patient:** It's 551-2002.

**Pharmacist:** OK, as soon as I process everything, I'll have your inhaler ready for you. You can have a seat.

**Patient:** Thanks.

### *Dialogue #3*

**Patient:** Hi, I need a prescription filled.

**Pharmacist:** Sure. What's your name?

**Patient:** Chirag Joseph.

**Pharmacist:** How do you spell Chirag?

**Patient:** C-H-I-R-A-G.

**Pharmacist:** OK, here it is. Do you have any questions about the prescription?

**Patient:** I guess. What is it?

**Pharmacist:** Your doctor has ordered rifampin.

**Patient:** Rifa what?

**Pharmacist:** Rifampin. It's spelled R-I-F-A-M-P-I-N. Do you know why your doctor prescribed this medication?

**Patient:** Yeah, I have TB.

**Pharmacist:** That's right. Rifampin helps to treat bacterial TB. It comes in capsules.

**Patient:** I have a hard time swallowing pills.

**Pharmacist:** That's OK. You can open the capsules and sprinkle it on a spoonful of applesauce, for example, and eat it right way.

**Patient:** OK.

**Pharmacist:** You'll need to take the medication on an empty stomach. And make sure to drink a full glass of water with it. Your doctor wants you to take one capsule 1 to 2 hours before or after you eat. I will put a label with instructions on the bottle.

**Patient:** I've never had TB before. This medicine will clear it up?

**Pharmacist:** It will help treat it. Are you allergic to any medication?

**Patient:** Not medication, but I'm allergic to latex, like, you know, latex gloves.

**Pharmacist:** Since this is a new medication for you, just pay attention to any side effects, such as upset stomach, heartburn, dizziness, and drowsiness. And don't be alarmed if you notice that your urine appears reddish. Always call your doctor if you're concerned or have any questions. Do you have any questions?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** OK, Chirag, I need some personal information. What's your address?

**Patient:** 3 Chester Street in Philadelphia.

**Pharmacist:** Your birth date?

**Patient:** May 26, 1981.

**Pharmacist:** Your doctor is Dr. Menken?

**Patient:** Yeah.

**Pharmacist:** Phone number?

**Patient:** 231-5521.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have a prescription drug plan?

**Patient:** No. I have medical insurance, but no drug plan. How much is this going to cost me?

**Pharmacist:** \$189.00.

**Patient:** Oh my God. Is there a cheaper brand?

**Pharmacist:** This is the generic, less expensive medication.

**Patient:** I'll charge it on my MasterCard.

**Pharmacist:** That's fine.

## Mini Dialogue Listening Exercises

### *Mini Dialogue #1*

**Person A:** I need to tell you something, but you can't tell anyone. I'm quitting my job. I can't take it any more.

**Person B:** I can't believe you're quitting. But don't worry, I won't breathe a word.

### *Mini Dialogue #2*

**Person A:** Did you hear what the customer said?

**Person B:** Not really. She said something under her breath.

### *Mini Dialogue #3*

**Person A:** I really don't like the way my boss treats me. I can't continue to work like this.

**Person B:** You need to just get it off your chest and let him know that it's affecting your health.

### *Mini Dialogue #4*

**Person A:** It's really quiet today. Where are all the patients?

**Person B:** I'm not complaining. Remember the kid yesterday who was screaming at the top of his lungs when his mother wouldn't buy him the chocolate candy bar?

### *Mini Dialogue #5*

**Person A:** Do you think our manager will hire a new pharmacist so we don't have to work so many hours by ourselves?

**Person B:** Don't hold your breath. He told us a year ago he would hire a new pharmacist, and we're still waiting.

### *Mini Dialogue #6*

**Person A:** Can I go on my break now? I've been working non-stop.

**Person B:** Go ahead. You've hardly had time to breathe. You need a break.

## Chapter 5 Post-Assessment

### *Dialogue #1*

**Patient:** Hi. I'm here to pick up my prescription for emphysema.

**Pharmacist:** Sure. What's your name?

**Patient:** Felicita Castro.

**Pharmacist:** Can you spell your first name for me?

**Patient:** F-E-L-I-C-I-T-A. Do you know how to spell my last name?

**Pharmacist:** Yes. It's C-A-S-T-R-O. OK. Our computer tells us you've been here in the past.

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** Your birth date is 1/2/49?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** Is your address still the same?

**Patient:** No. I live on Penn Road. Twenty-three Penn in Dennis.

**Pharmacist:** Is that Pens?

**Patient:** No. It's Penn. P-E-N-N.

**Pharmacist:** OK. I'll need to make that change in the computer. How about your insurance?

**Patient:** Same.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Let me get your prescription. Do you know what the doctor ordered?

**Patient:** No, she said it's a new medicine for me.

**Pharmacist:** Your doctor ordered Atrovent. It's an inhaler.

**Patient:** Really? Another inhaler? I've used inhalers before. I think it was albuterol.

**Pharmacist:** OK. This inhaler works in a similar way.

**Patient:** How many puffs do I take?

**Pharmacist:** Your doctor wants you to inhale by mouth two puffs four times a day. You should wait about a minute between the puffs.

**Patient:** Am I going to have dry mouth? The albuterol gave me dry mouth.

**Pharmacist:** Probably, so make sure to rinse your mouth with water after you use the inhaler. Do you have any other questions?

**Patient:** No. I'm fine. Thanks for all your help.

**Pharmacist:** Sure, glad to be of help.

### *Dialogue #2*

**Customer:** Hi, I'm here to pick up my son's prescription.

**Pharmacist:** What's your son's name?

**Customer:** Jeremy Manbeck.

**Pharmacist:** How do you spell your last name?

**Customer:** M-A-N-B-E-C-K.

**Pharmacist:** Has Jeremy been here before?

**Customer:** Oh yes! Many times.

**Pharmacist:** It's a prescription for Pulmozyme, which is a colorless solution.

**Customer:** Yeah, that's it.

**Pharmacist:** I just need to confirm Jeremy's age. He's 8?

**Customer:** Yeah. His date of birth is March 3, 1999.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have any questions about how to use this medication?

**Customer:** Not really. I feel like a cystic fibrosis expert. My son has had so many different drugs in the last 7 years.

**Pharmacist:** So you also have a nebulizer at home?

**Customer:** Yeah.

**Pharmacist:** Good. Well, Jeremy's doctor has prescribed he inhale the Pulmozyme using his nebulizer twice a day. This should help to break up the thick, sticky mucus that's clogging up his lungs. It will help him breathe easier.

**Customer:** Any side effects I should be looking for?

**Pharmacist:** He may experience hoarseness or laryngitis.

**Customer:** OK. I don't think I have any other questions right now.

**Pharmacist:** OK, just sign here for the prescription. Your co-pay is \$20.00.

### *Dialogue #3*

**Customer:** Hi, are you the pharmacist?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, I am. What can I help you with?

**Customer:** I need to get these two prescriptions for my son. It's asthma medication.

**Pharmacist:** Has your son been here before?

**Customer:** No. We recently moved to the area.

**Pharmacist:** Has he had this prescription filled elsewhere before?

**Customer:** No. This is the first time. He's just been diagnosed with asthma.  
**Pharmacist:** I need to ask you a few questions. What's your son's name?  
**Customer:** Jaime Griffin. That's J-A-I-M-E G-R-I-F-F-I-N.  
**Pharmacist:** Does he have a middle initial?  
**Customer:** Yeah. B for Bruce.  
**Pharmacist:** Does he have any allergies?  
**Customer:** Peanut butter.  
**Pharmacist:** His birth date?  
**Customer:** He's 10. His birth date is November 19, 1998.  
**Pharmacist:** What's your address?  
**Customer:** 1124 Moonriver Court.  
**Pharmacist:** What kind of insurance does he have?  
**Customer:** He's covered under me. It's Northeast Medical. I have a \$25.00 co-pay.  
**Pharmacist:** OK. And his doctor is Dr. Halina Somikova?  
**Customer:** Yeah.  
**Pharmacist:** OK. Did she explain to you how to use both medications?  
**Customer:** She did a little, but it's very confusing.  
**Pharmacist:** I'd be happy to explain. The doctor has prescribed albuterol and Advair. Albuterol is a bronchodilator and Advair is a powder inhaler. Advair will help with his wheezing and trouble breathing, and the albuterol will help to open up his air passages so he can breathe easier. Both are inhaled through the mouth.  
**Customer:** When does he use them? Does he use them together?  
**Pharmacist:** No. Albuterol is to be used for sudden shortness of breath caused by exercise or physical activity. It's a quick-relief inhaler. Advair takes longer to work and will help to control the symptoms of breathing problems.  
**Customer:** The nurse at the doctor's office did give me some instructions and pamphlets and she said we can call if we have any problems.  
**Pharmacist:** Sure. Both boxes containing these medications will have instructions and diagrams. I'll put the label containing the doctor's instructions on the packages. It may be confusing at first, but your son will get comfortable using them.  
**Customer:** So these should help with his breathing problems?  
**Pharmacist:** He'll notice a big difference in his breathing, but call his doctor if he experiences any side effects. The albuterol may cause nausea, headaches, and dizziness. And it can increase the heart rate. The Advair might cause hoarseness, throat irritation, and dry mouth. All of these side effects are listed in the package insert. Of course, seek medical attention if he has severe breathing problems, has chest pains, swelling, and severe dizziness.  
**Customer:** That's a lot for a kid and me to remember. But I'll read the instructions.  
**Pharmacist:** Feel free to call us too if you have any questions once you get home. OK, your co-pay cost is \$50.00— that's \$25.00 per prescription.  
**Customer:** I will. Thanks.

---

## CHAPTER 6

### Pharmacist/Patient Dialogues

#### *Dialogue #1*

**Pharmacist:** Hello, my name is Sam Morgan. I'm the pharmacist. How are you today?  
**Patient:** I'm OK. I'm a little bit tired.  
**Pharmacist:** Can you tell me why you're visiting us today?  
**Patient:** Well, I recently had a heart attack. About a month ago. And I need to get my prescription refilled. I can't remember the name of the drug, but I think it begins with a "c".  
**Pharmacist:** OK. Was this your first heart attack?  
**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** Can you tell me your name so I can get your chart and take a look at it?

**Patient:** Margaret Peters.

**Pharmacist:** Here it is. Give me a minute to take a quick look at it. OK. According to your chart, you were prescribed captopril. Do you have the bottle with you?

**Patient:** Yeah. It's in my purse. Here it is.

**Pharmacist:** Thank you. I just need to update your chart before I give you the refill. Do you have a few minutes?

**Patient:** Sure.

**Pharmacist:** I see from your chart that you have been on other medications. Are you still taking Lipitor for your cholesterol?

**Patient:** No. I stopped after I had the heart attack.

**Pharmacist:** Did the doctor tell you to stop?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** Mrs. Peters, you need to take the medical advice of your doctor.

**Patient:** Medicine is so expensive, even with insurance.

**Pharmacist:** I understand. Speak to your doctor about reduced-cost medications, OK? And before you leave I'll give you a list of reduced-cost cholesterol medicines for your doctor to review.

**Patient:** OK. I will. And thanks for the list.

**Pharmacist:** I see that you take over-the-counter multivitamins with iron and minerals. Are you still taking them?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** Now, do you feel that the captopril is working for you?

**Patient:** I think so.

**Pharmacist:** Have you had any side effects?

**Patient:** Well, I noticed I felt a little dizzy and lightheaded when I first took it, but then it went away. I'm feeling fine now.

**Pharmacist:** Good. Have you experienced a fast heartbeat?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** How about a cough?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** Change in your urine?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** Any other side effects that you can think of?

**Patient:** No. Actually, I think the medicine is making me feel better. That's why I'm here for a refill. I want to continue to feel good.

**Pharmacist:** That's a wise idea. Give me a few minutes while I get you the refill. Remember, you need to take one pill three times a day and an hour before you eat. And avoid any potassium supplements or salt substitutes.

**Patient:** I know.

## *Dialogue #2*

**Pharmacist:** Good morning, Mr. Jackson. How are you today? Do you remember me?

**Patient:** I think so. Were you the pharmacist the last time I was here?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, I'm Linda Riley.

**Patient:** Linda. Now I remember.

**Pharmacist:** So how are you doing? How are you feeling?

**Patient:** OK.

**Pharmacist:** I remember that you started to see us after you were diagnosed with congestive heart failure. Are you taking your meds?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** Can you tell me what you're taking?

**Patient:** Well, let me get my bottles out. I'm taking val . . . sar . . . tan. I'm taking La . . . six. And 2 weeks ago I had a cataract removed, so I'm taking drops. I think they're called Lo . . . te . . . max. Here you go.

**Pharmacist:** Thank you. Can you tell me what you're taking valsartan for?

**Patient:** For my heart.

**Pharmacist:** Can you tell me why you're taking the Lasix?

**Patient:** Doctor told me it stops me from having too much water in my lungs and helps with the swelling in my legs.

**Pharmacist:** And how about the Lotemax?

**Patient:** After she took out my cataract from my left eye, she told me to put the drops in so I don't get inflammation. My eye is fine. I'm gonna see her next week for a checkup.

**Pharmacist:** Are you able to see better?

**Patient:** Yes, very much.

**Pharmacist:** Good. Mr. Jackson, you've done a good job of bringing in all your meds. Are you taking your medications as directed by your doctor and as on the medication labels?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** Are any of the medicines giving you any trouble?

**Patient:** Well, sometimes when I get up from sitting, I feel a little dizzy. And I'm going to the bathroom a lot.

**Pharmacist:** Well, the Lasix helps to remove the extra fluid, or what we call edema, in your body and your legs. That explains why you're urinating more. The dizziness is a common side effect of valsartan and Lasix. Try to get up slowly. Can you tell me when you're taking your valsartan?

**Patient:** Well, I really try to take the val . . . sar . . . tan with food, but the doctor said I don't need to take it with food.

**Pharmacist:** How about the Lasix?

**Patient:** The doctor told me to take it around eight in the morning every day so I don't have to wake up so much in the night to urinate. So I try not to take my pills at night.

**Pharmacist:** That's a good idea. I see from your chart you have smoked in the past. Are you smoking now?

**Patient:** No. I wish I could.

**Pharmacist:** According to your chart, part of your treatment includes some exercise. What kind of physical activity do you do?

**Patient:** Well, I have been going out for walks in the evenings and on weekends if the weather is nice. But I didn't walk for almost 2 weeks when I had the eye patch over my eye.

**Pharmacist:** Well, I'm glad you are walking as much as you can. It's important. Mr. Jackson, do you have any questions for me?

**Patient:** No, I'm OK. Thank you so much, dear.

### *Dialogue #3*

**Pharmacist:** Good morning. My name is Larry Brand. I'm your pharmacist today. Are you Mrs. Eva Gonzalez?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** I understand that you are being discharged from the hospital today, so I just want to go over with you what you need to know about your medication to help you treat your stroke. I see from your chart that you are 51.

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** I also see from your chart that you have type I diabetes.

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** Are you still taking NovoLog?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** Have you had any problems with NovoLog?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** I see from your chart that this is your first stroke. Your doctor has prescribed Aggrenox.

**Patient:** What?

**Pharmacist:** Here, I'll spell it for you. A-G-G-R-E-N-O-X. I'm going to explain to you what it is and how it will help decrease your chances of having another stroke. I know it's difficult to talk, but you can stop me to ask questions.

**Patient:** OK.

**Pharmacist:** Is a family member going to pick you up?



**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** I'll try to come back and explain things to your family member.

**Patient:** OK.

**Pharmacist:** This medication comes in a capsule. It contains aspirin and another medication with a long name. It's spelled d-i-p-y-r-i-d-a-m-o-l-e. The capsule will help to stop blood clots in the brain. The doctor wants you to take one capsule in the morning and one capsule in the evening. You can take it with food or without food. It's important that you swallow the capsule whole. Don't crush or chew the capsule. Do you understand me so far?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** Good. Also, drink eight ounces of water.

**Patient:** OK.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Now I'm going to explain some possible side effects, some problems that the medication may give you. These side effects include nausea, dizziness, heartburn, diarrhea, and sleepiness. Understand?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** But if you have bruising on your skin or dark and bloody stool when you go to the bathroom, or if you have a severe headache or if you get a rash or have difficulty breathing, call your doctor immediately. I will give you a list of all the side effects for you to take home and read. Also have a family member read them. I'm sorry I have so much information to tell you, but it's important.

**Patient:** OK.

**Pharmacist:** According to your chart, you're not currently taking any medication that cannot be taken with the capsules, but remember not to take ibuprofen like Motrin and naproxen like Aleve.

**Patient:** OK.

**Pharmacist:** Also, let the doctor that treats you for diabetes know that you've had a stroke and that you're taking Aggrenox. He may want to adjust your diabetes medicine.

**Patient:** OK.

**Pharmacist:** Thank you so much for being patient. My name is Larry Brand. I wish you well. If you or your family has any questions, you can call me. Here is my card with my phone number. Or you can call your doctor or your drugstore pharmacist.

**Patient:** OK.

## Mini Dialogue Listening Exercises

### *Mini Dialogue #1*

**Person A:** I hate when patients yell at me when their prescription is not ready in time. Don't they know how busy we are?

**Person B:** Jan, we need to have a heart-to-heart talk about your attitude. The patients have complained about you.

### *Mini Dialogue #2*

**Person A:** I don't know how much longer I can take working here. All Mike does is yell at me.

**Person B:** I know what you mean. How can a person with a heart of stone be in charge of this pharmacy?

### *Mini Dialogue #3*

**Person A:** How was your doctor's visit today? What did he say about your test results?

**Person B:** It's not good. When he told me, my heart sank.

### *Mini Dialogue #4*

**Person A:** Sometimes I wish I could be more like Norma. She doesn't hide anything.

**Person B:** I know what you mean, but I don't know if I could always wear my heart on my sleeve.

### *Mini Dialogue #5*

**Person A:** My sister and I had a big fight last night. I don't like her fiancé. I don't think he's good for her. She's my baby sister and I want her to be happy.

**Person B:** Well, there's nothing you can do. Your heart's in the right place, but it's her life.

**Mini Dialogue #6**

**Person A:** Don't worry. I'll work for you this weekend. I know how important it is to have a big birthday party for your children.

**Person B:** Thank you so much for switching weekends with me. You have a heart of gold.

**Chapter 6 Post-Assessment****Dialogue #1**

**Pharmacist:** Hello. My name is Frederica Collins. I'm a pharmacist and I will be reviewing your prescription with you and answer any questions you may have. Are you Mr. Arthur Jenkins?

**Patient:** Yes, I am. Nice to meet you. Do you know what drugs the doctor wants me to take?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, I do. But first I want you to tell me how you're feeling.

**Patient:** Well, I have felt better, but it's been hard for me to walk. My legs have been hurting. The doctor told me I have bad arteries. He says they're hard.

**Pharmacist:** You have what is called peripheral artery disease. What that means is that you have fatty material inside your arteries. This fatty material blocks the blood from flowing to your arteries. That's why your legs hurt when you walk. Your legs need more blood when they move, when you walk or go up the stairs.

**Patient:** Yeah. My legs feel tight and heavy and my calf muscles feel tired. You know, the pain comes and goes.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have any other discomfort?

**Patient:** Well, sometimes my butt hurts and sometimes I have numbness and a tingling feeling in my legs, and my feet ache.

**Pharmacist:** Those are common symptoms. But you should start feeling much better once you begin your medication. Your doctor has prescribed Pletal. Has your doctor talked to you about Pletal?

**Patient:** He told me the medicine will help me to walk better, and not limp.

**Pharmacist:** That's right. It will help to reduce the symptoms you're experiencing. Soon you should be able to walk farther distances without so much pain. It will help improve the oxygen and blood flow in your legs. Here's what Pletal looks like. It comes in tablet form. They are white, and as you can see, the name of the drug is imprinted on the tablet.

**Patient:** Yeah, I see. P-L-E-T-A-L. It is spelled almost like flower petal.

**Pharmacist:** Yeah, you're right. Now, you will need to take a tablet twice a day. And make sure you take the tablet 30 minutes before breakfast and dinner, or 2 hours after breakfast and dinner.

**Patient:** I'm confused. Did you say 30 minutes after breakfast or dinner?

**Pharmacist:** You're right. It can be a bit confusing, but I'll repeat it. Thirty minutes *before* breakfast *and* dinner or 2 hours *after* breakfast *and* dinner.

**Patient:** How fast will I start feeling better?

**Pharmacist:** Well, you should see improvement in as soon as 2 to 4 weeks, or longer. It could take as long as 12 weeks before you'll feel the benefits of the medication.

**Patient:** That long, huh? I hope it's sooner than later. I have a hard time getting to my car, and I'm uncomfortable when I drive.

**Pharmacist:** Speaking of driving, be careful. The medication can make you dizzy. Be careful when driving, and limit alcohol intake. And keep your eyes out for other possible side effects such as diarrhea. And if your feet and hands start to swell and you start to feel rapid and pounding heartbeats, call your doctor immediately. And avoid grapefruit. You want to avoid a bad interaction.

**Patient:** No grapefruit? Not even with my breakfast?

**Pharmacist:** I wouldn't recommend it, but check with your doctor.

**Patient:** OK.

**Pharmacist:** OK, Mr. Jenkins, do you have any questions for me?

**Patient:** Is there anything I shouldn't take?

**Pharmacist:** Yes. Don't take aspirin or anti-inflammatory over-the-counter drugs like ibuprofen or naproxen. Are there any drugs you're taking, prescribed or over-the-counter?

**Patient:** Sometimes I take Tylenol. Is that OK?

**Pharmacist:** Sure. Do you have any other questions for me?

**Patient:** No, but I do have a lot to remember. Everything you told me will be on the label?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, and I'll also give you a patient information sheet for you to take home and refer to. And if you have any questions, you can call the clinic, your local pharmacist, or your doctor.

### *Dialogue #2*

**Pharmacist:** Good afternoon, Mrs. Davis. How are you today?

**Patient:** I'm pretty good. You can call me Helen.

**Pharmacist:** Sure, Helen. I'm Brett Long. I'm the clinic pharmacist and I'm here to see how you're doing and to review your prescriptions with you. I see from your chart that you were hospitalized with chest pains, more specifically, angina. This was your first episode?

**Patient:** Yes, it was. I thought I was having a heart attack and going to die.

**Pharmacist:** I also see from your chart that you are a smoker and that you have high cholesterol and high blood pressure.

**Patient:** Yes, I have tried to quit so many times, and I try to eat healthy, but . . .

**Pharmacist:** How old are you?

**Patient:** I'm 49.

**Pharmacist:** OK, Mrs. Davis. Let's talk about your medications. Can you tell me what you're taking for your angina?

**Patient:** Well, the doctor gave me a patch. It's right here on my chest.

**Pharmacist:** Can you tell me the name of the patch and how you're using it?

**Patient:** Isn't it nitroglycerin?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, but the name of the patch is Nitro-Dur. Can you tell me how you're using it?

**Patient:** I put it on my chest. My doctor told me to leave it there for about 12 to 14 hours during the day. But sometimes it itches and irritates my skin so I take it off. And sometimes I take it off when I'm in the shower.

**Pharmacist:** Don't do that. Don't remove it. You need to keep the patch on when showering and even swimming. To avoid irritation, change the location of the patch; for example, if it irritates your skin on your chest, place the next patch on your upper arm. Do you have any allergies?

**Patient:** Well, I'm allergic to penicillin.

**Pharmacist:** OK. It's important to keep the patch on for 12 to 14 hours, and then wait about 10 to 12 hours before you put a new patch on.

**Patient:** OK.

**Pharmacist:** Now, let's review your cholesterol medication. What are you taking for your cholesterol?

**Patient:** Zocor.

**Pharmacist:** Can you tell me how you use Zocor?

**Patient:** Well, I know I'm supposed to take one tablet at night but sometimes I forget, especially if I'm not home.

**Pharmacist:** Mrs. Davis, it's very important to take your Zocor on a daily basis. Is it giving you any problems? Does it give you an upset stomach, do your muscles feel weak, does it make you fatigued?

**Patient:** No, none of that. I have no problems with it. I just don't take it as I should, and I know I should. But I know I'm not supposed to eat grapefruit because I'm on Zocor, which is fine with me because I don't like grapefruit.

**Pharmacist:** Well, that's good. Not that you don't like grapefruit, but that you know not to eat it with Zocor. And what are you taking for your blood pressure?

**Patient:** Well, the doctor put me on Diovan, but I don't always take it like I'm supposed to.

**Pharmacist:** Has it given you problems?

**Patient:** Yeah. It would make me dizzy and lightheaded so I told the doctor and he changed the prescription so I wouldn't get dizzy and lightheaded and it worked, but still I don't always take it.

**Pharmacist:** Mrs. Davis, Helen, I can't emphasize enough how important it is to take all your medications. I also see in your chart that your doctor has prescribed physical activity and weight loss. And he also recommended a smoking cessation program.

**Patient:** I know, I know. I need to lose weight and I need to stop smoking. It's so hard.

**Pharmacist:** Mrs. Davis, you're very young, but you have developed coronary heart disease. And angina is caused by coronary heart disease. It's becoming more difficult for oxygen and blood to reach your heart

muscles. And the cholesterol is making your arteries hard. And smoking and high blood pressure do not help the situation. Are you aware that the number one killer in women is not cancer, but heart disease?

**Patient:** Really! I didn't know that.

**Pharmacist:** Yes! You are putting yourself at great risk for a heart attack and heart failure.

**Patient:** I had no idea. What should I do?

**Pharmacist:** First, you need to take all your medications and make regular appointments with your doctor. Next, you need to sign up for a smoking cessation class. The hospital here offers classes. The hospital also offers exercise and weight loss classes. Most insurance plans will pay for all of these classes, and, if not, the hospital charges reasonable rates. And finally, you need to watch your diet. Follow the diet plan your doctor gave you. I have a copy of it in your chart. I'll make a copy for you now.

---

## CHAPTER 7

### Pharmacist/Patient Dialogues

#### *Dialogue #1*

**Pharmacist:** Good afternoon. I'm Chris Meloni and I'm the pharmacist working with your doctor, Dr. Gary Lubin. Are you Amanda Adams?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** How are you today?

**Patient:** I'm OK, except for my esophagus and my reflux.

**Pharmacist:** Yeah. I see from your chart that you have been having problems with GERD. Can you tell me a little bit about what's been going on and the medications you've been taking?

**Patient:** Well, about 3 months ago I noticed I was having some heartburn even though I wasn't eating any spicy foods, you know, like Mexican and Thai food. So I took some Maalox, Mylanta, Tums. But those didn't work.

**Pharmacist:** You got no relief?

**Patient:** Not only didn't I get relief, but I started to choke and gag on my food. One day about 2 weeks ago it was pretty bad. My husband took me to the emergency room and they referred me to a gas-tro-ento-rol-ogist. And he gave me an endo- something, you know, to look down my esophagus.

**Pharmacist:** You had an endoscopy, and what did the doctor find?

**Patient:** Well, he told me my esophagus was really inflamed and that I had a hiatal hernia, and that that was causing my choking and my problems swallowing, so he gave me medication. He gave me Zantac, and I told him if that's the generic, that's fine. I refuse to pay for brand names. He told me that Zantac was the brand-name drug and that the generic is ra-NI-ti-deen. I think it's spelled R-A-N-I-T-I-D-I-N-E. He told me it's in liquid form so I don't have to swallow pills.

**Pharmacist:** That's right. When did you have the endoscopy?

**Patient:** Three days ago. But I'm just getting my prescription now.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Are you still having problems swallowing and choking?

**Patient:** No. I haven't been eating much since my throat feels a little sore. I'm just eating Jell-O and soup and stuff like that. But I'm starting to feel better.

**Pharmacist:** Good. What did the doctor tell you about ranitidine?

**Patient:** I really have no idea. I was drowsy and groggy after the endoscopy; I can't remember what he said. He spoke to my husband, but he can't really remember either. Can you tell me?

**Pharmacist:** Absolutely! Well, like I said earlier, you have GERD. Ranitidine will help to reduce the stomach acid that is causing the problems. Dr. Lubin wants you to take a teaspoon in the morning and a teaspoon in the evening. You can take it with or without food. Try to take it at the same time every day. Are you taking any other medications?

**Patient:** Well, I did have pink eye about 2 weeks ago and I was taking tobramycin. And it cleared up.

**Pharmacist:** OK. That's good. Do you have any questions about the ranitidine?

**Patient:** Yeah. Is it going to make me stop choking and having problems swallowing? It's pretty scary.

**Pharmacist:** Well, it's going to help prevent too much stomach acid from producing. It will help to reduce the inflammation in your esophagus. But if you continue to have choking episodes, tell

your doctor. I want you to be aware that this medication can cause dizziness, headaches, constipation, and diarrhea. Though very unlikely, if you get a rash, have swelling, and have trouble breathing, call your doctor immediately.

**Patient:** Are you serious? You know, when I was in college I had a CAT scan and I almost died. I stopped breathing, started convulsing. But they gave me Benadryl and I survived. I found out later I was allergic to iodine.

**Pharmacist:** Wow! Yeah, I see from your chart that you're allergic to iodine. And another thing, avoid alcohol.

**Patient:** Don't worry. I don't drink and Dr. Lubin told me because of my bad esophagus I can't have alcohol.

**Pharmacist:** That's right. Do you have any questions?

**Patient:** I'm starting to get a headache. Can I take my Tylenol when I get a headache while I'm on this medication?

**Pharmacist:** Yeah, Tylenol is fine, but try to avoid ibuprofen and naproxen.

**Patient:** What are they again?

**Pharmacist:** Motrin and Aleve.

**Patient:** OK.

## *Dialogue #2*

**Pharmacist:** Hi. Are you Mr. Alex Hardy?

**Patient:** Yes, I am.

**Pharmacist:** How are you today? My name is Gerry Wade and I'm the pharmacist on duty in the clinic today. I'm here to talk to you about the medication Dr. Finkel has prescribed. He has prescribed Asacol. Do you know why you need to take Asacol?

**Patient:** Well, I have colitis. I've been having diarrhea and bleeding from my rectum, and sometimes I can't go to the bathroom even though I feel like I have to go.

**Pharmacist:** What you have is ulcerative colitis that is causing inflammation in your rectum. That's why you are having a difficult time moving your bowels. Is this the first time you have experienced colitis?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Before I begin to explain how to use Asacol, I just want to confirm a few things in your patient chart and ask you a few questions.

**Patient:** Sure.

**Pharmacist:** Is your birth date December 12, 1961?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** Your chart states that you're allergic to penicillin. Anything else?

**Patient:** No, I don't think so.

**Pharmacist:** I also see that you have had problems with a fungal infection. Can you tell me more about that?

**Patient:** Well, I had these red, dry patches on my arms and my legs near my groin area, like jock itch, and the doctor told me it was a fungal infection and gave me a pill that starts with an "N". I don't remember the name.

**Pharmacist:** According to your chart it was Nizoral.

**Patient:** Yeah, that's it.

**Pharmacist:** Are you still taking Nizoral?

**Patient:** No, no. My jock itch went away about 3 weeks after I started taking the medicine. That was about 2 weeks ago.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Good. Now, let's talk about your medicine for your colitis. The doctor wants you to take two tablets three times a day. You don't need to eat food with it. But make sure you take the tablets whole and that you not chew or crush them. You should also know that it's possible that you might see parts of the tablet or the whole tablet in your stool. If this happens tell your doctor. Any questions so far?

**Patient:** Is it going to give me gas? When I started taking the medicine for my jock itch, I was having more gas than usual.

**Pharmacist:** Well, it might. That's one of the possible side effects. You might also have flu-like symptoms and abdominal and back pain. I'll give you a complete list of all the possible side effects for you

to take with you. But if you get very bad stomach and abdominal pain, worsening bloody diarrhea, or constipation or a fever, call your doctor. And try not to drink alcohol while on this medicine.

**Patient:** Not even a beer now and then?

**Pharmacist:** I don't recommend it. Do you have any questions?

**Patient:** Yeah. What should I do if I forget to take it?

**Pharmacist:** Well, if you miss a dose, try to take it as soon as you remember. But if you remember right as you're coming to your next dose, skip the dose you forgot. And don't double up to catch up.

**Patient:** OK. I just hope this medicine cures whatever it is I have.

**Pharmacist:** Well, Asacol is not going to cure your colitis. It's going to treat it. Asacol is an anti-inflammatory drug that will help to treat your condition. It will decrease some of the symptoms you're having, such as diarrhea and bleeding from your rectum. Of course, if you feel the medication is not alleviating your symptoms and not making you feel better, call your doctor.

**Patient:** Thanks. I will.

### *Dialogue #3*

**Pharmacist:** Good afternoon. Are you Lily Soto?

**Patient:** Yep. That's me.

**Pharmacist:** Hi. I'm Chaz Oliver, and I'm the pharmacist whose going to review your patient chart and go over your new prescription with you.

**Patient:** You mean my prescription for my constipation?

**Pharmacist:** Yes.

**Patient:** You have no idea what I'm going through. It's terrible, not being able to go. My stomach is all bloated; my pants don't fit. I feel pregnant. I'm really starting to tear my hair out. Have you ever been constipated?

**Pharmacist:** I'm sure we've all been at one time or another.

**Patient:** Please help me. I can't take it anymore. I can't remember the last time I had a good bowel movement.

**Pharmacist:** OK, Lily. Let me look over your chart. I see the last time you were in the clinic was about 4 weeks ago.

**Patient:** Yeah. I was here to get my blood pressure medication refilled. I'm taking a drug called telmisartan.

**Pharmacist:** Telmisartan.

**Patient:** That's it. I've been taking it for about 2 years and I still don't know how to pronounce the name. High blood pressure runs in my family. Here's my prescription for my constipation.

**Pharmacist:** It's a prescription for Dulcolax.

**Patient:** Is it a pill or a suppository?

**Pharmacist:** It's a suppository that will help to stimulate your digestive tract and your intestines. Have you used suppositories before?

**Patient:** Yeah, when I had hemorrhoids.

**Pharmacist:** OK, so then you know how to insert them. I would advise that you try not to have a bowel movement 10 to 15 minutes before you insert the suppository.

**Patient:** OK, I won't. How many do I use?

**Pharmacist:** Insert one suppository before bedtime or in the morning before breakfast.

**Patient:** Will it work fast?

**Pharmacist:** Well, you may feel it start to work after about 30 minutes.

**Patient:** How long should I use it?

**Pharmacist:** Your doctor has ordered a box of six suppositories. You shouldn't use them for more than a week. If you don't have a bowel movement after taking the suppositories, see your doctor.

**Patient:** I can still take my blood pressure medicine, right?

**Pharmacist:** Sure.

**Patient:** Are there any side effects with these suppositories?

**Pharmacist:** You might experience some irritation in your rectal area, and you might experience cramping and diarrhea. But if you experience bleeding or, like I said earlier, you have no bowel movement, contact your doctor immediately.

**Patient:** OK, I will. Thanks. Hopefully, I'll start feeling better.

## Mini Dialogue Listening Exercises

### *Mini Dialogue #1*

**Person A:** You must be so relieved the exam is over. Now you can relax.

**Person B:** I couldn't wait for it to be over. I had butterflies in my stomach the entire time I was taking the test.

### *Mini Dialogue #2*

**Person A:** Can you believe some of these patients?

**Person B:** To tell you the truth, some days I just can't stomach them.

### *Mini Dialogue #3*

**Person A:** I really do not like our chemistry professor. He's way too tough.

**Person B:** I know what you mean. I don't have the stomach for another course with him.

### *Mini Dialogue #4*

**Person A:** What's wrong? Did something happen?

**Person B:** I just saw a dead mouse in my office and it really turned my stomach.

### *Mini Dialogue #5*

**Person A:** Did you hear that John is going to be promoted to manager?

**Person B:** I heard, and I'm not happy. His promotion is difficult to stomach.

### *Mini Dialogue #6*

**Person A:** Why is she always late for work? It's so unprofessional.

**Person B:** I find it hard to stomach people who are tardy and show no consideration for others.

## Chapter 7 Post-Assessment

### *Dialogue #1*

**Patient:** Hi. Are you the pharmacist?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, I am. How can I help you?

**Patient:** Well, I'm a little bit embarrassed, but I need something to help me with my constipation.

**Pharmacist:** Sure. Do you have a prescription from your doctor?

**Patient:** No. Do I need one?

**Pharmacist:** No. We have many over-the-counter treatments that can help you. How long have you been constipated?

**Patient:** Well, almost 3 weeks now. I'm having difficulty going, you know, moving my bowels. I strain, but nothing happens. In fact, I think I also have a hemorrhoid from all the straining.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have any allergies?

**Patient:** Not to medicines, but I'm allergic to milk and onions.

**Pharmacist:** Are you currently on any medication?

**Patient:** I take birth control pills.

**Pharmacist:** OK, come with me and I'll show you some products that you can choose from, but I would suggest Sani-Supp. It's a glycerin suppository that you insert into your rectum. Make sure you moisten the suppository with lukewarm water before inserting. The instructions are on the back of the box.

**Patient:** OK. This is so embarrassing. I've had suppositories before. After I had my first child, I had so many hemorrhoids from pushing so hard during labor that my doctor gave me suppositories to get rid of my hemorrhoids.

**Pharmacist:** Good. So it shouldn't be difficult. Use the suppositories as needed but try not to use the suppositories for longer than a week. If you're still constipated, I recommend that you see your doctor.

**Patient:** Is there anything else you can recommend? Being constipated is so uncomfortable and I feel so bloated.

**Pharmacist:** Well, first make sure you drink plenty of water every day. Four to six glasses is good. Eat a lot of fiber and roughage. I can also recommend Metamucil or Citrucel.

**Patient:** What's the difference?

**Pharmacist:** No difference really. They are both fiber laxatives, which help to increase the amount of water in your stool and to soften your stool. Both come in powder, chewable tablets, and wafers. But you need to drink plenty of water with all of them. And make sure you read the label carefully.

**Patient:** Will it help me with my hemorrhoid?

**Pharmacist:** It should. Metamucil is also used to treat hemorrhoids. But if you want a topical ointment, you can use Preparation H.

**Patient:** Yeah. I've used that in the past. I'll get that too. How long should I take the Metamucil?

**Pharmacist:** No more than 7 days. If you're still constipated, please tell your doctor. Do you have everything you need?

**Patient:** Yes, I think so. I have the Sani-Supp suppositories, the Metamucil chewable tablets, and Preparation H, and hopefully the end of my constipation. And thank you so much. You've been very patient and helpful.

**Pharmacist:** My pleasure. Here, I'll take those to the register where you can pay for them.

### *Dialogue #2*

**Pharmacist:** Good morning, are you Samuel Torres?

**Patient:** Yeah, that's me.

**Pharmacist:** I'm Erin Farrell, and I'm the pharmacist who will go over your prescription to treat your peptic ulcer and answer any questions you might have. How are you today?

**Patient:** I've been better. This ulcer is really bad news.

**Pharmacist:** Can you tell me more about the discomfort and pain that you're having?

**Patient:** Like I told my doctor, I'm still having a pain that burns, you know, a burning pain around my belly button and my breastbone.

**Pharmacist:** Does the pain last a long time?

**Patient:** It comes and goes, you know. Sometimes it's just for a little while and sometimes I can have the pain for hours. And it really flares up at night, so I have a hard time sleeping.

**Pharmacist:** Before you saw your doctor, were you taking anything for it?

**Patient:** I took Maalox and Mylanta and Pepto-Bismol, and nothing would happen. I wouldn't feel better. So I stopped taking them and I went to the doctor.

**Pharmacist:** Are you taking any other medications?

**Patient:** Just my vitamins. That's it.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Do you know what your doctor prescribed?

**Patient:** No, I don't remember.

**Pharmacist:** OK, I just need to confirm one thing—are you allergic to penicillin or any kind of antibiotic?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** OK, according to your chart, Dr. B. J. Lewis has prescribed Prevpac. It's used to treat ulcers caused by a bacterial infection. Prevpac contains medication to help block the acid in your stomach and also contains antibiotics to help stop bacteria from growing.

**Patient:** That sounds good. How long do I take it?

**Pharmacist:** You need to take one tablet in the morning and one tablet in the evening. And you're going to do this for 14 days. Do not stop taking it before then even if you feel better. If you stop taking it before the 14 days, you risk the chance of letting the bacteria continue to grow and then you'll have the problem all over again. And you don't want that.

**Patient:** Yeah, you're right. Do I need to take it with food?

**Pharmacist:** No, but take it before you eat. And make sure you swallow the tablets whole. Don't chew or crush them. Do you have any questions?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** OK. You shouldn't experience any side effects other than maybe a headache and maybe a taste in your mouth you wouldn't normally have. However, if you have bad stomach pain, cramps, and



persistent diarrhea, let your doctor know. And one more thing—it's important not to drink alcohol when taking Prevpac. It can make you dizzy or drowsy. Please read all the information regarding the side effects.

**Patient:** Well, I hope this medicine does the trick. I don't want to get another ulcer.

**Pharmacist:** Well there are things you can do to take care of yourself. I'm sure your doctor mentioned that smoking can increase stomach acid, and that excessive drinking can also irritate the lining of your stomach and possibly cause bleeding. And it's a good idea to avoid taking pain relievers such Motrin and Aleve. If you need to take a pain reliever, take Tylenol.

**Patient:** Well, I am trying to quit smoking and I'm not a big drinker, but I'll watch myself. You have some good advice.

**Pharmacist:** OK, then. If you have problems with the medication, call your doctor.

## CHAPTER 8

### Pharmacist/Patient Dialogues

#### *Dialogue #1*

**Pharmacist:** Hello, are you Rachel Lipton?

**Patient:** Yes, I am.

**Pharmacist:** Good morning, I'm Walter Cronin, the pharmacist. You can call me Walt. How would you prefer to be called, Rachel or Mrs. Lipton?

**Patient:** I've been called Mrs. Lipton for so long, why stop now? Walt, you can call me Mrs. Lipton.

**Pharmacist:** OK, Mrs. Lipton. I see that you are here today to get your prescription for sulfasalazine to help treat your rheumatoid arthritis.

**Patient:** Is that what Dr. Solomon ordered?

**Pharmacist:** Yes.

**Patient:** I hope it helps me. My rheumatoid is really getting bad. The pain and swelling has gotten worse, especially on my fingers. My fingers are curling up and becoming deformed. My hips, knees, and feet are stiff. My muscles hurt. I hurt all over. It's so painful, but I try to keep a stiff upper lip.

**Pharmacist:** I'm sorry to hear that it's getting worse. I have reviewed your chart, and I see that you've had arthritis for quite a while, and you've taken other medications. I guess they haven't worked for you.

**Patient:** No. Not really. The Aleve didn't help, and the prednisone didn't help but it made me gain weight. I was even on Vioxx, and it killed some people and it was taken off the market. So now the doctor wants me to try this new drug. What did you say the name of the drug is?

**Pharmacist:** It's sulfasalazine. It will help to reduce the joint pain, swelling, and stiffness you've been having. Hopefully it will help to slow down the progression of the disease and prevent further joint damage. Your doctor also wants you to continue with Aleve. Sulfasalazine is an antiarthritic drug that is used with a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug such as Aleve. Hopefully, you'll start to notice a difference after taking the Aleve with the sulfasalazine.

**Patient:** I hope so. How often do I take it, and what does it look like? Pills come in so many different colors I get confused sometimes.

**Pharmacist:** I know what you mean. Well, it's a gold-color, 500-mg tablet. It looks like this. It's a delayed-released tablet...

**Patient:** What does that mean?

**Pharmacist:** It means the drug doesn't take effect as soon as you take it. You take one tablet with breakfast in the morning and make sure to drink a glass of water, too. And make sure that you swallow it whole. Don't chew, crush it, or break it. And take the Aleve, too, which as you know is yellow.

**Patient:** Yeah, but it won't make it easier to swallow.

**Pharmacist:** That may be so, but you don't want to increase the chance of getting an upset stomach if you crush, chew, or break it.

**Patient:** The prednisone made me gain weight. What's this new medicine going to do to me?

**Pharmacist:** Well, first, it's intended to help reduce the pain you're having. However, as with all medicines, patients will experience some side effects. You may experience nausea, vomiting, and headaches along with

some other effects that are listed on the drug information sheet I will give you. However, call your doctor if you have ringing in the ear, painful urination, or blood in your urine or have difficulty breathing.

**Patient:** Is this one of those medicines that won't let you out in the sun?

**Pharmacist:** Yeah. It may make you sensitive to the sun, so avoid being out in the sun too long and, as always, wear sunscreen. Have you had any problems with the Aleve, like stomach bleeding?

**Patient:** No, nothing like that. So if I take this new pill without chewing, crushing, or breaking it and drink lots of water with it and take it every day, I won't be feeling all this pain? Sometimes I just want to yell at the top of my lungs, it hurts so bad.

**Pharmacist:** I understand. But you need to know that it may take 1 to 3 months before you feel any improvement.

**Patient:** That long? I'll be tearing my hair out.

**Pharmacist:** I understand, but along with the medications, it's important to exercise. You can ask your doctor to refer you to a physical therapist who can teach you how to exercise your fingers. And exercise is good for the entire body. Of course, it's important to control weight. Too much weight can add stress to the joints on your back, hips, knees, and feet.

**Patient:** If weight is bad for arthritis, then why do doctors give patients like me prednisone, which makes you gain weight?

**Pharmacist:** That's a good question. But you found that prednisone is not good for you. Is there anything that you do to help reduce the pain?

**Patient:** Sometimes, especially at night, I put hot pads around my fingers and on my knees and feet and my muscles. I heat the hot pads in the microwave and they do feel good on my joints. And of course, Mr. Lipton massages my feet and knees almost every night.

**Pharmacist:** Well, you're very lucky to have Mr. Lipton. You can also try to use a cold pack. It can help to dull the sensation of the pain. Do you have any other questions about the sulfasalazine?

**Patient:** No, you've been very helpful, Walt. Is that it?

**Pharmacist:** Almost. I just need to confirm some information in your chart about your age, allergies, and medical history before I send you home.

**Patient:** Sure.

## *Dialogue #2*

**Pharmacist:** Good morning, Mr. Brady. How are you today? Do you remember me? I know it's been a while.

**Patient:** Not really. The last time I was here was over 2 months ago.

**Pharmacist:** That's right. I'm Henrietta Washington.

**Patient:** Henrietta. Now I remember. How are you?

**Pharmacist:** I'm fine. How are you doing? How are you feeling?

**Patient:** Well, not so good.

**Pharmacist:** I remember that you started to see us after you were diagnosed with COPD and chronic bronchitis. Are you using your Atrovent inhaler?

**Patient:** Yes. But I'm not here for that. I now have arthritis in my spine. The name of the arthritis is hard to pronounce and remember so I just call it AS.

**Pharmacist:** Is it ankylosing spondylitis?

**Patient:** Yeah. I think that's it. Here's the prescription. I can't really read the doctor's handwriting.

**Pharmacist:** Thank you. Okay, I see Dr. Anderson has prescribed Rheumatrex. He's also indicated that if we don't have Rheumatrex, which is the brand-name drug, we can give you methotrexate.

**Patient:** Give me whatever is easier to pronounce, even if it costs more. I have a good drug prescription plan.

**Pharmacist:** Sure. But, Mr. Brady, first I'd like to ask you some questions and review your medical and drug history.

**Patient:** Sure, Henrietta. And you can call me Steven.

**Pharmacist:** Sure, Steven. First thing's first. You mentioned earlier that you're using your Atrovent inhaler?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** How many inhalations do you take a day?

**Patient:** I take two to four inhalations every day two times a day.

**Pharmacist:** Is it working for you? Has it made breathing easier for you?

**Patient:** Yes, very much.

**Pharmacist:** Have you experienced any side effects that you weren't having before using the inhaler?

**Patient:** No, none really, except in the beginning I did have a sore throat, but then it went away and my throat has just been fine. And now I have AS.

**Pharmacist:** Can you tell more about that and what took you to see Dr. Anderson?

**Patient:** I was having soreness in my lower back and pain and a tender feeling down my spine, and then it spread to my ribs and my shoulders. I thought it was related to my COPD so I went to see my lung doctor, Dr. Posner. He gave me some blood tests and an MRI and then he told me I had AS. I really got hit between the eyes. He sent me to Dr. Anderson. He's an arthritis doctor.

**Pharmacist:** Well, thank you for sharing that with me. I'm sure both of your doctors will monitor you carefully. They may have explained to you that AS can also cause the rib cage to stiffen and restrict lung capacity and function.

**Patient:** Yeah, I know. Dr. Anderson also told me that I will have difficulty walking and standing, and that I'll be hunched and stooped over when the joints begin to fuse.

**Pharmacist:** Did he mention that you may experience breathing difficulty as a result of the bones in your rib cage fusing together?

**Patient:** So I'll have more breathing problems in addition to my COPD.

**Pharmacist:** Have you noticed increased breathing difficulty?

**Patient:** No, not really. But my doctor says I could have more breathing problems.

**Pharmacist:** Well, it would be a good idea to get physical therapy. It will help relieve pain and give you physical strength and flexibility. And as the disease progresses, you'll develop a stooped posture, but with physical therapy you can work on standing upright as much as you can. And of course, not smoking will help. You're not smoking, are you?

**Patient:** No, I gave that up when I was told I had COPD.

**Pharmacist:** Good. Now, let me tell you about your new medication, Rheumatrex. Rheumatrex is a very potent medication. You need to take one pill a week. You can take it with food, but you don't have to. But you should drink plenty of fluid when you take the pill. And keep an eye out for any possible side effects such as mouth sores, a persistent cough, and black stools. I'll give you a patient information sheet with detailed side effects. Read it carefully. Also, it's important to avoid alcohol and limit your time in the sun. You may become more sensitive to the sun.

**Patient:** I hope I get relief right away.

**Pharmacist:** Well, it will take up to several months before you feel relief. But of course, if you're having difficulty breathing and moving and you feel you're getting worse, please call both of your doctors. And of course, you can always call me or any of our other pharmacists.

**Patient:** Thank you so much, Henrietta.

**Pharmacist:** Sure, Steven. Now, before you leave with your Rheumatrex, I just want to double-check some personal and medical history. Are you still at the same address, do you have any new allergies, and are you taking any other new medications that I don't know about?

**Patient:** I'm still at the same address, no new allergies, and I'm taking Atrovent and now I'll be taking Rheumatrex, too.

## Mini Dialogue Listening Exercises

### *Mini Dialogue #1*

**Person A:** You know Patty is really mad at you.

**Person B:** Yeah, I know. Her nose is all out of joint because I didn't invite her to my graduation party.

### *Mini Dialogue #2*

**Person A:** I don't know how much longer I can take working here. All Teresa does is criticize and nag me all day.

**Person B:** You need to tell her to get off your back.

**Mini Dialogue #3**

**Person A:** What did you think of Dr. Smith's lecture on arthritis treatments?

**Person B:** I'm just glad it's over. I was bored stiff.

**Mini Dialogue #4**

**Person A:** Did you hear what happened last night at the dance club?

**Person B:** Yeah, I heard that some students became angry after they couldn't get in because it was crowded with so many people, so they decided to muscle their way in, but security came and took them away.

**Mini Dialogue #5**

**Person A:** How did you do on your research paper?

**Person B:** I can't believe I broke my back writing that stupid paper just to get a C+.

**Mini Dialogue #6**

**Person A:** Don't worry. I'll work for you this weekend.

**Person B:** Are you sure? You always work your fingers to the bone. Thank you so much for switching weekends with me.

**Mini Dialogue #7**

**Person A:** I'm never going to lend Jack money again. He still hasn't given me back the \$20 he borrowed a month ago.

**Person B:** Forget about it. Last year, he stiffed me out of \$25.

**Mini Dialogue #8**

**Person A:** I can't believe I almost got a perfect score on my pharmacy licensing exam.

**Person B:** Are you kidding me? You just send chills up my spine! Wow!

**Mini Dialogue #9**

**Person A:** Are you speaking to Eric and Debbie?

**Person B:** Are you kidding me? How can I? As soon as we broke up, he stabbed me in the back and began dating her, my own roommate. They both stabbed me in the back.

**Mini Dialogue #10**

**Person A:** She's never going to enjoy working here if she doesn't learn to adjust to our rules.

**Person B:** It's too bad she's so stiff-necked, because she's actually a very good worker.

**Chapter 8 Post-Assessment****Dialogue #1**

**Pharmacist:** Good morning. Are you Mr. Eric Gallagher?

**Patient:** Yes, I am. Good morning.

**Pharmacist:** I'm the clinic pharmacist, Elizabeth New. How are you feeling this morning?

**Patient:** Well, I have felt better, but it's been hard for me to walk. My right toe has been hurting a lot. It's real inflamed and burning.

**Pharmacist:** Have you had problems with your big toe for a while?

**Patient:** Yeah. I have gout, and I'm having a real big flare-up.

**Pharmacist:** How long have you had gout?

**Patient:** Oh, I guess about 10 years. You know, it comes and goes. I went to the emergency room 3 nights ago. It was really bad. My toe was so swollen and real tender. I couldn't even wear my shoes. I wore my sandals.

**Pharmacist:** Are you currently taking any medication?

**Patient:** No, but the last time I had a real bad flare-up about a year ago, and my doctor gave me a cortisone shot and he also gave me a medicine called probene. I think that's what it's called.

**Pharmacist:** I think you mean probenecid. What did the ER doctor give you?

**Patient:** He gave me a prescription. Here it is.

**Pharmacist:** OK, I see she has also written a prescription for probenecid and over-the-counter Aleve. OK, Mr. Gallagher, since this is your first time in the clinic, I need to ask you a few questions about your medical history, and then I'll go over your prescription with you and tell you a bit more about how to treat your gout.

**Patient:** Sure.

**Pharmacist:** OK. How old are you?

**Patient:** I'm 53.

**Pharmacist:** Are you currently taking any other medications?

**Patient:** Well, I just finished taking an antibiotic for my swimmer's ear. I had a bad ear infection in my right ear.

**Pharmacist:** Do you remember the name of the antibiotic?

**Patient:** I think it was Cort- something. Yeah, it was Cortisporin, I think.

**Pharmacist:** Did it clear up your ear infection?

**Patient:** Yeah. It really worked fast.

**Pharmacist:** Any other medications?

**Patient:** No, but I take my multivitamins. And I take Metamucil every day just so I don't get constipated.

**Pharmacist:** Have you had any surgery?

**Patient:** Yeah. I had my appendix taken out about 10 years ago. And about 15 years ago, I had surgery on my left knee.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have a family history of gout?

**Patient:** Yeah, my dad. He passed away about 4 years ago.

**Pharmacist:** Do you smoke?

**Patient:** Not anymore. I used to be a two-pack-a-week smoker, but I quit about 3 years ago, after my best buddy died of lung cancer. He was a chain smoker.

**Pharmacist:** Quitting was the wise thing to do. Do you have any allergies?

**Patient:** Yeah, I'm allergic to CAT scan dye.

**Pharmacist:** You're allergic to iodine. OK, Mr. Gallagher, now let's talk about how to treat your gout. The doctor has prescribed probenecid. Probenecid is used to help lower the high levels of uric acid in your body. When your body produces too much uric acid, crystals form in the joints and cause gout. Hopefully the medication will reduce the chance and severity of a future gout attack. The doctor also wants you to take Aleve, which will help to reduce the inflammation. Have you taken Aleve before?

**Patient:** Yeah.

**Pharmacist:** Any problems with it?

**Patient:** No, should I watch for any problems?

**Pharmacist:** Well, in some patients it can cause stomach bleeding and ulcers. So just keep an eye out.

**Patient:** How often do I take the gout medicine?

**Pharmacist:** Take the probenecid twice daily. And make sure you take it with food to reduce stomach upset. It's important to also drink a glass of water with the tablets. And drink at least eight 8-ounce glasses of water a day to prevent kidney stones.

**Patient:** I hope this gets rid of my gout.

**Pharmacist:** Well, I need to warn you. It's possible that you may experience more gout attacks in the next month while the medication helps the body remove the extra uric acid in your body, so don't stop taking probenecid if you get another gout attack.

**Patient:** But isn't the probenecid going to take the pain away?

**Pharmacist:** No, it's not a pain reliever. That's why you need to take Aleve for pain relief. Also, keep in mind that in some patients probenecid can cause dizziness, loss of appetite, sore gums, and frequent urination. I'll give you a complete list of the side effects. Please read them very carefully.

**Patient:** These gout attacks are really difficult to stomach.

**Pharmacist:** I know. But it's important to know that there are also other ways to help relieve symptoms. First, avoid or limit alcohol. Alcohol prevents the excretion of uric acid. Second, always maintain a healthy weight, and drink plenty of fluids.

**Patient:** No beer with my buddies?

**Pharmacist:** Try not to have more than two drinks a day. But right now I would advise against drinking. Do you have any other questions, Mr. Gallagher?

**Patient:** No. You have really educated me.

**Pharmacist:** OK, now I just need to ask some personal information questions, and then I'll get the prescription for you.

### *Dialogue #2*

**Pharmacist:** Good afternoon, Mrs. Vo. How are you today?

**Patient:** OK, and you? Please, you can call me Vicky.

**Pharmacist:** Sure, Vicky. I'm Anthony Gonzalez and I'm fine today. I'm the clinic pharmacist and I'm here to see how you're doing and to review your prescriptions with you. And you are here today because you have a prescription for osteoporosis.

**Patient:** Yeah, osteoporosis. I have weak bones, and my doctor said I have brittle bones.

**Pharmacist:** I also see from your chart that you have had two cataracts removed, one on each eye.

**Patient:** And now I can see better and more clearly.

**Pharmacist:** When did you have the cataracts removed?

**Patient:** I remember very well. It was October 6, 2005.

**Pharmacist:** Did the doctor give a medication for any reason?

**Patient:** Yes, Dr. Wu, W-U, not Dr. Woo—W-O-O. He gave me Lotemax—L-O-T-E-M-A-X.

**Pharmacist:** Thank you for spelling both the name of the medication and the doctor's name. You make my job easier.

**Patient:** Sure. No problem.

**Pharmacist:** Can you tell me why Dr. Wu gave you Lotemax?

**Patient:** He told me to help with eye inflammation.

**Pharmacist:** Did it help?

**Patient:** Yes, very much. I can see good again.

**Pharmacist:** Mrs. Vo, I mean Vicky, are you taking any other medication?

**Patient:** No. I am healthy but now Dr. Jones told me I have os-te-o-po-ro-sis. Not easy to pronounce.

**Pharmacist:** I know what you mean. Were you feeling pain in your body before you went to see Dr. Jones?

**Patient:** Yeah. Sometimes I have a little pain in my back and I don't walk with my back straight.

**Pharmacist:** Yes, people with osteoporosis will experience back pain, and very strong pain if they have a fracture. A fracture is a break in the bone. And people with osteoporosis will begin walking with a stooped posture, which means the back is no longer as straight as it used to be. Some people will get shorter.

**Patient:** Yeah. I'm starting to walk like an old lady.

**Pharmacist:** How old are you, Mrs. Vo?

**Patient:** 68, but I feel strong, but now I have osteoporosis.

**Pharmacist:** Did Dr. Jones give you a prescription?

**Patient:** Yeah, she told me it's FO-SA-MAX.

**Pharmacist:** OK. That's Fosamax. Did Dr. Jones explain how to take this medicine?

**Patient:** She said take one pill a day and I will feel better. If any problems, I'm to call her.

**Pharmacist:** OK, I will give you some more important information.

**Patient:** Good.

**Pharmacist:** It's very important that you take the pill every day. Are you taking any other medications?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Now, it's important to take the tablet with a full glass of water and that you swallow the tablet whole. Don't chew it or suck it. Do you understand me?

**Patient:** Yeah, just take quickly with water.

**Pharmacist:** Yes. Then make sure you do not lie down. Your body must be upright. Sit on a chair, stand, or walk, but do so for 30 minutes. After 30 minutes, then you can eat your meal and have your tea or coffee or juice. Do not drink water.

**Patient:** I must be very careful. This is serious medicine. This helps my osteoporosis?

**Pharmacist:** Yes. Fosamax will help to stop osteoporosis and help you from losing bone. Stopping osteoporosis or bone loss will help you to keep your bones healthy and help your bones from breaking, or from getting fractures.

**Patient:** Good. I will take my medicine every day as you say.

**Pharmacist:** Also, pay attention to some problems you may have. Some medicines have side effects. For example, some people who take Fosamax have stomach pain. I will give you the patient information leaflet that explains all the side effects. Read it carefully.

**Patient:** I will read it with my son, and I have Vietnamese and English dictionary. I will read carefully.

**Pharmacist:** That's a very good idea. Vicky, do you have any allergies?

**Patient:** Yes, bees!

**Pharmacist:** Now, it's important to remember that you cannot eat certain foods with this medicine. For example, you should not eat foods such as citrus fruit, like oranges. Don't eat tomatoes or tomato sauce. And try not to drink coffee, chocolate, soda, peppermint, or pepper.

**Patient:** No problem. I don't eat those foods.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Do you have any questions?

**Patient:** No, not now. You are very helpful. I can call you, if I have question?

**Pharmacist:** Sure, you can call me. Here's my card with my name and phone number on it. And of course, you can also call Dr. Jones.

**Patient:** OK. I have an appointment with her in 1 month for a checkup.

---

## CHAPTER 9

### Pharmacist/Patient Dialogues

#### *Dialogue #1*

**Pharmacist:** Good morning. I'm Richard Mendez and I'm the pharmacist working with your doctor, Dr. Gabby Lucas. Are you Ariana Snow?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** How are you today?

**Patient:** I'm OK. Can I go home now?

**Pharmacist:** Well, you are being discharged from the hospital today, but first I need to go over your new medication with you and your mom. Are you Mrs. Snow?

**Patient's mother:** Yes, I am.

**Pharmacist:** It's very nice to meet you both. Like I said, I just want to review the new medication and answer any questions you have. I see from your chart that you have been diagnosed with epilepsy after having two seizures, and that this is the first time you'll be taking medication to control your seizures.

**Patient:** Yeah.

**Patient's mother:** Out of nowhere she had a terrible seizure. We didn't know what was wrong so we raced her to the emergency room and she was admitted overnight.

**Pharmacist:** Did you lose consciousness, Ariana?

**Patient:** Yeah, I guess so. I don't remember any of it. But my mom told me that my legs and arms were jerking out of control and that my body got real stiff.

**Pharmacist:** Well, hopefully your new medication will leave you free of seizures or at least control your seizures. Dr. Lucas has prescribed Tegretol. That's the brand name. It's also known as carbamazepine. That's the generic name. This is what the Tegretol looks like. It's a red-speckled, pink chewable tablet. How old are you, Ariana?

**Patient:** I'm 16.

**Pharmacist:** Tegretol is known as an antiepileptic drug and anticonvulsant drug that helps to treat your type of seizures, which are called grand mal seizures.

**Patient's mother:** Yes, that's what the doctor said. How often does she take it?

**Pharmacist:** Dr. Lucas has prescribed that you take one tablet twice daily. Ariana, take the pill with or without food, and make sure you take it the same time each day. But you shouldn't have grapefruit or grapefruit juice with this medication, unless your doctor says it's okay.

**Patient's mother:** Ariana has always been very healthy. When she was younger, she used to get a lot of ear infections. And she was allergic to Ceclor, the antibiotic to stop the infection. It made her body break out in a rash and she'd get very watery diarrhea.

**Pharmacist:** Well, it could cause unsteadiness as she adjusts to the medicine. Keep your eye out for nausea, dizziness, and vomiting. And it's not uncommon to feel fatigued. I'll give you a complete list of possible side effects, including serious, but rare, side effects.

**Patient:** What kind of serious side effects?

**Pharmacist:** Well, though unlikely, pay attention to your chest and ankles. For example, if you get chest pains or if your ankles swell up, call your doctor immediately. And if you notice problems with speech or coordination, call your doctor. Ariana, do you have any other allergies?

**Patient:** I'm allergic to cats and latex.

**Pharmacist:** Mom, does Ariana have any other medical conditions?

**Patient's mother:** No, just ear infections in the past. She hasn't had one since she was 5. She did develop an eye infection when she first got her contacts, but she's fine now. And she's had stitches three times.

**Patient:** Yeah, on my head. I got hit with a hockey stick. I got six stitches. I also got five stitches on my chin. I got hit with a tennis racket. And I broke my right arm when I was 12 on a water slide.

**Pharmacist:** Wow. Are you playing any sports now?

**Patient:** Yeah, I play softball. I'm a pitcher. I can still play, even though I have epilepsy, right?

**Pharmacist:** Talk to Dr. Lucas, but I'm sure you can continue to be physically active and participate in sports, as long as you take your medication and follow up with your doctor. But Dr. Lucas might want to talk to you about wearing a helmet when you participate in certain sports or recreational activities with a high risk of head injury. Also, it's very important that you wear a medical alert bracelet. And don't swim alone.

**Patient's mother:** What should we do when she has another seizure?

**Pharmacist:** Well, roll Ariana to one side and put a soft pillow under her head. And don't put your fingers in her mouth. She will not swallow her tongue. And don't try to restrain her or yell or shake her when she's having a seizure.

**Patient:** Am I going to have seizures forever?

**Pharmacist:** Well, everyone is different, but the good news is that most people with epilepsy do become seizure free as long as they take medication. And we know that more than half of children with epilepsy eventually stop taking their medication and become seizure free. And if you feel that the Tegretol is not working for you, call your doctor.

**Patient:** Good. I can still play sports.

**Pharmacist:** That's right. As long you take your medication as prescribed. And never stop taking your medication unless directed by your doctor. Any other questions?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** Mom?

**Patient's mother:** No, not right now. You've been very helpful. Ariana is tough as nails. She'll be fine.

## *Dialogue #2*

**Pharmacist:** Hi. Are you Susan Wilson?

**Patient:** Yes, I am.

**Pharmacist:** How are you today? My name is Lucas Page and I'm the pharmacist on duty in the clinic today. I'm here to talk to you about the medication Dr. Lena Kasporova has prescribed. She has prescribed Betaseron. Do you know why you need to take Betaseron?

**Patient:** Well, I've been diagnosed with MS. Dr. Kasporova said I have relapsing multiple sclerosis and that I'm in the early stages of MS.

**Pharmacist:** That's right. Betaseron will not cure your MS, but it will help to reduce the number of flare-ups and the attacks that make you weak. The medication will slow down the disease.

**Patient:** My doctor said that it's interferon.

**Pharmacist:** Yes, it's the same as interferon, which is a protein that your body produces naturally. This protein helps the body's immune system. If you have MS, adding more interferon may help your body to fight the effects of MS. Did your doctor tell you that you need to inject the interferon?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** Okay, now, before we go on I just need to ask you a few questions. Is your birth date May 21, 1964, and are you 44?

**Patient:** Yes.



**Pharmacist:** Your chart states that you're allergic to penicillin and wasps. Anything else?

**Patient:** No, I don't think so.

**Pharmacist:** Do you think you might be pregnant?

**Patient:** No, I'm not pregnant.

**Pharmacist:** I also see that you have a history of migraine headaches. Can you tell me more about that?

**Patient:** Well, I don't get them anymore like I used to. The last time I was on medication was 10 years ago. I think it was a beta-blocker. Now I know how to manage them. I know when it's coming. I get nauseous and I'm sensitive to light and noise. I just go to bed in the dark and put an ice pack on my neck and on my forehead until it passes.

**Pharmacist:** Are you currently working?

**Patient:** Yeah, I'm a freelance writer, so I work from home most of the time. I make my own schedule. And since I don't have any children yet, I have great flexibility.

**Pharmacist:** That's good. Okay, now back to Betaseron. I will show you how to use it. You're going to inject this medication under your skin.

**Patient:** What part of my body should I inject?

**Pharmacist:** You can inject the dose in your abdomen, your buttocks, your upper arms, or your thighs. It's a good idea to change the site of each injection to avoid any skin problems in that one area. And don't inject in the area where skin is infected, sore, or irritated.

**Patient:** How often do I inject?

**Pharmacist:** You're going to do this every other day. It's better if you do this at night before you go to bed. This will help to reduce the side effects.

**Patient:** What are the side effects? Is this going to make me feel worse?

**Pharmacist:** Well, it's not uncommon for patients to feel like they're getting the flu. It's possible to get a headache, feel tired, get a fever and chills, and have achy muscles the first time you inject the medication. You'll start feeling like this about a day after, but these symptoms will improve and eventually go away the more you use the medication. To help reduce these symptoms, also take Tylenol or Motrin before each dose.

**Patient:** It doesn't sound like much fun. Any other side effects I should worry about?

**Pharmacist:** Well, it's not unusual to feel pain and swelling in the injection area. You might experience some abdominal pain, constipation, and diarrhea. But if you find that you're either too cold or too hot, or really tired, or see a change in weight, tell your doctor. And if you get a skin rash, itching, or swelling and have problems breathing, get medical help immediately. I'll give you a complete pamphlet with more detailed side effects and what you need to know about the medication.

**Patient:** There's more? What else do I need to know?

**Pharmacist:** Well, if you miss a dose, try to take it as soon as you remember and call your doctor to establish a new schedule. Do not double up the dose to catch up, and do not inject yourself 2 days in a row. And make sure not to shake the vial. If you can see particles in the liquid or if it looks discolored, don't use it. Let us or your retail pharmacist know.

**Patient:** Wow. I'll try to remember all of that. It's no fun having MS.

**Pharmacist:** Well, it's important to take care of yourself. Make sure you get plenty of sleep. And don't stop exercising if you're already doing so. And swimming is also good for MS patients who are bothered by heat.

**Patient:** Yeah. I don't like hot showers or baths.

**Pharmacist:** Some patients who are bothered by warmth and heat usually have their air conditioning on year round. And it's very important to do the normal activities that you do and to continue to do the things that you like to do. And it's a good idea to join a support group. We have an MS support group in the hospital. Here, I'll give you the name and phone number of the nurse who runs the support group. Give her a call when you're ready.

**Patient:** Thanks. I will.

## Mini Dialogue Listening Exercises

### *Mini Dialogue #1*

**Person A:** You must be so relieved the test is over. Now you can take it easy.

**Person B:** I couldn't wait for it to be over. My mind went blank so many times.

**Mini Dialogue #2**

**Person A:** Can you believe some of these patients?

**Person B:** They can be very difficult sometimes. One of them bit my head off the other day when I accidentally gave her another patient's prescription.

**Mini Dialogue #3**

**Person A:** I really do not like our pharmaceuticals professor. She's a really tough grader.

**Person B:** I know what you mean. I felt like giving her a piece of my mind after she gave me a D on the first exam.

**Mini Dialogue #4**

**Person A:** What's wrong? Did something happen?

**Person B:** If I don't find a job soon, I don't know how I'm going to keep my head above water.

**Mini Dialogue #5**

**Person A:** Did you hear that Linda is going to be promoted to manager?

**Person B:** I can't believe it. Her promotion really boggles the mind.

**Mini Dialogue #6**

**Person A:** Did you hear that Ana wants to own her own community pharmacy?

**Person B:** Yeah, I heard. She really picked Ed's brain. He owns two pharmacy stores.

**Chapter 9 Post-Assessment****Dialogue #1**

**Pharmacist:** Good morning. Are you Mr. Joseph Caruso?

**Patient:** Yes, I am. Are you the pharmacist? My doctor told me I need to see the pharmacist in the clinic.

**Pharmacist:** Yes. I'm your pharmacist. My name is Andrea Thompson. How are you today?

**Patient:** Okay, but I'm a little bit shaky these days. I tremble a bit and my muscles get stiff. Sometimes I move normal and sometimes I get stiff. I had some tests and my doctor tells me I have Parkinson's. That's why I'm here. To get my prescription for the new medicine.

**Pharmacist:** I have your patient chart here. This morning I'm going to review your chart with you to make sure that I understand everything clearly. I'll review your medical history and your medications, and then explain to you the new medication you will be taking to treat your Parkinson's. Are you here alone?

**Patient:** No. My wife is parking the car. She'll be in soon.

**Pharmacist:** Okay. Mr. Caruso, your first name is Joseph?

**Patient:** Yes, Joseph Anthony.

**Pharmacist:** Your date of birth is January 23, 1945?

**Patient:** Yes. I'm 63.

**Pharmacist:** I see that you have had high cholesterol. Are you still taking medication?

**Patient:** Well, I had high cholesterol. It used to be as high as 268 two years ago. But my doctor, Dr. Elias Soto, told me I needed to lower it and lose weight. So he gave me Lipitor and I was walking almost every day and in 8 weeks I lost 12 pounds and my cholesterol was 168. I used to weigh 225 and now I weigh 190. I'm not taking Lipitor anymore, but now that I started getting shaky and trembling I walk less.

**Pharmacist:** I am very impressed with your new cholesterol number, and losing 12 pounds in 8 weeks is really amazing. I hope you're eating well. Keep it up.

**Patient:** Yes, I think I'm eating well. I eat reduced-fat or fat-free food, but I still like my pasta and my glass of red wine with dinner.

**Pharmacist:** I also see that you have a history of constipation. What do you take for your constipation?

**Patient:** Well, I'm not constipated right now, but when I do get constipation, I take glycerin suppositories. I forget the name.

**Pharmacist:** According to your chart you have been prescribed Sani-Supp.

**Patient:** Yeah. That's the name. And I also take Citrucel. It helps.

**Pharmacist:** I also see from your chart that at one time your blood sugar was a little elevated.

**Patient:** Yeah. I had a blood test during my annual physical 2 years ago for my cholesterol and Dr. Soto said my blood sugar test was 105. He told me 100 and below is normal. And that was when my cholesterol was really high and before I started to take Lipitor. He told me to really watch myself because I could get diabetes. He told me to cut back on sugar. So I did. But then I had another blood test a few weeks later and my blood sugar was 95. So I've been real careful. I don't want to get diabetes.

**Pharmacist:** Well, you've managed to control your weight and cholesterol, and prevented yourself from getting diabetes. You did all the right things.

**Patient:** And now another doctor tells me I have Parkinson's. Can you believe it? It doesn't make any sense.

**Pharmacist:** Well, you are a model patient, and you listen to your doctor. And people with Parkinson's can live many productive years with the disease. Let me explain how the medication that Dr. Sanjay Sheth has prescribed works. The note in your chart indicates that he wants you to take Eldepryl. Do you have the prescription with you?

**Patient:** Yeah. Here it is.

**Pharmacist:** This medication will help to improve the shakiness and tremors and muscle stiffness that you're having. It's a 5-mg capsule that you will take twice a day. Take a capsule with breakfast and a capsule with lunch. You might notice a couple of side effects. For example, you might have dry mouth, feel a little dizzy, feel nauseous, and have a little trouble sleeping. If these continue, tell your doctor. I'll give you a list of all the possible side effects, some common and some that are rare, for example, bloody or tarry stools and vomiting that looks like coffee grounds. Do you have any questions?

**Patient:** No, not really. I just hope it works.

**Pharmacist:** Like I said, you seem like a good patient, so if you follow your doctor's instructions, the medication should be able to decrease your tremors and stiffness. Now, you also need to pay careful attention to what you eat with this medication. Foods that should not be eaten while on this medication are cheeses such as parmesan and cheddar, certain meats like salami and liverwurst, and other foods like pickled herring, sauerkraut, soy sauce, and red wine. These foods and others need to be avoided to prevent a serious high blood pressure reaction. I'll give you a complete list. There are many, so read it carefully and share it with your wife.

**Patient:** Are you kidding me? I can't have my glass of red wine with my dinner? And no parmesan cheese with my pasta? How can these foods cause high blood pressure?

**Pharmacist:** Well, they contain tyramine, and tyramine in combination with your medication can cause serious high blood pressure.

**Patient:** I can't believe it. I have to change the way I eat.

**Pharmacist:** Well, you did a nice job avoiding sugar to prevent diabetes. And you can still eat healthy food like fruits, vegetables, and whole grains. They will also help to prevent constipation, which you have a history of. One of the things Parkinson's can do is slow down the digestive tract. If you feel constipated, talk to your doctor and ask him if it's okay for you to take Sani-Supp again.

**Patient:** Should I stop going for my walks?

**Pharmacist:** No. Walking is helpful. When you walk, just slow down a little. You can also swim. You'll need to make a few adjustments now that you have Parkinson's. The medication can help manage any problems you may have with walking and moving. And remember, people with Parkinson's can live good, productive lives. Talk to your doctor if you have any questions about the disease or if you notice any new changes or symptoms, such as difficulty swallowing, chewing, and speaking. And although there is no cure, Parkinson's is treatable. There are many support groups. Do you have the internet at home?

**Patient:** Yeah.

**Pharmacist:** I'll give you the web address of the American Parkinson's Disease Association. You'll find a lot of good information and support on this website.

**Patient:** OK. I'll check it out. Thanks.

## *Dialogue #2*

**Pharmacist:** Good morning. I'm Eric Frank, and I'm the pharmacist who will go over your prescription and answer any questions you might have. How are you today?

**Patient:** I've been better. I'm here to get my prescription to help me with my anxiety. My doctor told me I have an anxiety disorder. He said it's called GAD. It means generalized anxiety disorder.

**Pharmacist:** Okay. Can you tell me your name?

**Patient:** My name is Karen Manning.

**Pharmacist:** Okay, Karen. I'm sorry to hear that you're experiencing anxiety. It's a good thing you went to see your doctor. There is treatment available to help people cope with their GAD. What has your doctor prescribed?

**Patient:** I think it's Xanax. Here's the prescription.

**Pharmacist:** Okay. Before I fill your prescription, I just need to ask you a few questions. Have you been to our pharmacy before?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** Karen, what's your date of birth?

**Patient:** December 31, 1968. I'm 38.

**Pharmacist:** The doctor prescribing the medication is Dr. Brian Duncan?

**Patient:** Yeah.

**Pharmacist:** Karen, do you have any allergies?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** What's your home address?

**Patient:** 37 Marina Drive in Edison.

**Pharmacist:** And your home number?

**Patient:** 766-1187.

**Pharmacist:** Are you currently on any medication?

**Patient:** Just birth control pills and vitamins.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have a history of any medical problems or conditions?

**Patient:** Well, I had my appendix removed when I was 10. I developed a pretty bad nail fungal infection that I got at a nail salon about 2 years ago. I took a medicine for the fungal infection. And I had some acid reflux a few years ago, but I'm fine now.

**Pharmacist:** And you're not currently taking any medications for the fungal infection or the acid reflux now?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** Okay. Now I'm going to fill your prescription for Xanax. Did Dr. Duncan tell you how the Xanax works and how to take it?

**Patient:** He just told me take one pill a day, and to make an appointment to see him in 2 weeks.

**Pharmacist:** Well, there are things you should know about Xanax. Xanax will help to treat your anxiety and will produce a calming effect. Different people will experience anxiety for different reasons. Some people experience GAD as a result of having a hard time coping with an illness, and sometimes stress, such as stress with life situations such as work, can trigger anxiety.

**Patient:** Yeah, with me it's my work and my boss. I've really been having a bad time at work, and I can't sleep. I feel restless. I can't concentrate. I get headaches and sometimes diarrhea. And I used to exercise regularly but my anxiety is so bad that I can't even do that.

**Pharmacist:** The Xanax should help you to feel better. It's an antianxiety drug and a sedative, but you need to be careful with Xanax because it can be habit forming and cause dependency.

**Patient:** Will it make me sleepy?

**Pharmacist:** Well, it can cause drowsiness and dizziness, so be careful if you need to be alert to drive. And try not to drink alcohol when on this medication. And though unlikely, let your doctor know if you have slurred speech, have trouble walking, or feel clumsy. I'll give you a complete list of all the side effects so read them carefully, and if you're having any problems let your doctor know immediately. And do not share this drug with anyone. It's against the law.

**Patient:** What if I'm still not feeling better? What if I'm still having anxiety attacks and feeling anxious?

**Pharmacist:** Let your doctor know. He may need to adjust the dosage.

**Patient:** Okay.

**Pharmacist:** Continue to see your doctor; share your concerns and worries with him. And take care of yourself. Try to get enough rest, eat well, and try to exercise and go for long walks. Avoid caffeine and nicotine. Both can make the anxiety worse. And do not drink alcohol. I hope you start to feel better soon.

**Patient:** Me too. Thanks.

---

## CHAPTER 10

---

### Pharmacist/Patient Dialogues

#### *Dialogue #1*

**Pharmacist:** Hello, how can I help you?

**Patient:** Yeah, I need to get a prescription filled. Here it is.

**Pharmacist:** Are you Leeza Matson?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** Is that L-E-E-Z-A and M-A-T-S-ON?

**Patient:** Yes. I've been here before.

**Pharmacist:** What's your date of birth?

**Patient:** March 10, 1982.

**Pharmacist:** Is your address still 11 Lancaster Road in Summit?

**Patient:** No. I live on 1212 Warwick Avenue in Summit.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have a new phone number?

**Patient:** Yes. It's 322-9376.

**Pharmacist:** Can you repeat that?

**Patient:** 3-2-2-9-3-7-6.

**Pharmacist:** Thanks. Now, do you have any allergies?

**Patient:** I'm severely allergic to nuts.

**Pharmacist:** Are you on any other medications?

**Patient:** Well, I was taking Tylenol, thinking it would stop the burning sensation and the pressure I feel in my lower abdomen. And I take birth control pills.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Your prescription is for Bactrim. Do you know why the doctor has prescribed Bactrim?

**Patient:** Yeah. I have cystitis. I have an infection in my bladder.

**Pharmacist:** Have you had cystitis before?

**Patient:** No. Will this medicine make it go away? It's so uncomfortable; I'm starting to tear out my hair.

**Pharmacist:** Well, the Bactrim should give you some peace of mind and some relief soon as long as you take it as directed by your doctor. Dr. Chen wants you to take one tablet twice a day. Take one in the morning and one in the evening. Make sure you drink a full glass of water with it.

**Patient:** Will the medication upset my stomach?

**Pharmacist:** If it does, you can take the tablets with milk or food.

**Patient:** How long do I take the medicine?

**Pharmacist:** Dr. Chen has given you a prescription for 15 days. It's very important that you finish the entire prescription. Don't stop taking the tablets if you start feeling better. Stopping sooner can cause the bacteria that are causing your cystitis to continue to grow, and then you might relapse and get another infection.

**Patient:** I will definitely take every tablet. I just want it to stop the burning sensation I get when I urinate and the need to go to the bathroom. I feel like I have to urinate all the time.

**Pharmacist:** It should take care of those symptoms. Make sure to keep an eye on possible side effects. It may make you nauseous, give you a headache, and cause diarrhea. Some people have been known to break out into a rash. This could be an allergic reaction so tell your doctor immediately. I'll give you a complete printout of all the side effects.

**Patient:** A friend of mine told me that cranberry juice can help get rid of my bladder infection. Is that true?

**Pharmacist:** Your friend is correct. Cranberry juice does help to fight infection. But along with cranberry juice, make sure you drink lots of water. Try to avoid coffee, caffeinated soft drinks, orange and other citrus juices, and spicy foods. To help with the pressure you're feeling in your lower abdomen, use a heating pad.

**Patient:** A heating pad? I hadn't thought of that. Only problem is I don't have one.

**Pharmacist:** We have plenty of heating pads. They're located in aisle 23.

**Patient:** Wow, you have given me a lot of good advice. My doctor just told me to urinate frequently and to empty my bladder and drink lots of water after sexual intercourse, but he didn't tell me about the cranberry juice and the heating pad.

**Pharmacist:** Well, that's good advice, too. And make sure you tell him if your infection recurs.

**Patient:** OK, let me go get a heating pad.

**Pharmacist:** Will you be paying cash or do you have insurance?

**Patient:** I have Healthy Life Insurance. I think I have a \$10.00 co-pay for the medicine.

**Pharmacist:** OK, let me know when you're ready and I'll ring you up.

### *Dialogue #2*

**Pharmacist:** Good morning, Mr. Mercado. How are you today?

**Patient:** I'm OK.

**Pharmacist:** Is your first name Luis?

**Patient:** Yes, I'm Luis Mercado. Are you a doctor?

**Pharmacist:** No, I'm the clinic pharmacist, Antonia Spagnola. I'm going to take care of your medication needs today. Do you have your prescription with you?

**Patient:** Yes. The doctor is giving me medicine for my problem with my prostate.

**Pharmacist:** Mr. Mercado, how old are you?

**Patient:** I'm 63.

**Pharmacist:** What's your date of birth?

**Patient:** June 18, 1944.

**Pharmacist:** What did the doctor say the problem is?

**Patient:** He said my prostate is getting big.

**Pharmacist:** Did he say you have an enlarged prostate?

**Patient:** Yes. He told me to get this medicine. Here's the paper.

**Pharmacist:** OK. The prescription is for a medicine we call Avodart. Does that name sound familiar?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** Avodart, which is spelled A-V-O-D-A-R-T, is a medication that will help to shrink your enlarged prostate.

**Patient:** Shrink?

**Pharmacist:** Yes. It means it will help your enlarged prostate to get smaller. Right now, your prostate has gotten bigger and it's pressing against the urethra and blocking your urine from flowing. An enlarged prostate will cause you to have difficulty urinating.

**Patient:** Yes. I want to urinate, but it's a small amount of urine. Only a little comes out. But I feel like I have to urinate a lot. And at nighttime I feel like I have to go a lot.

**Pharmacist:** Well, Dr. Echols wants you to take Avodart because it will help to shrink or make your prostate smaller so that you can urinate more normally.

**Patient:** That's good.

**Pharmacist:** Did Dr. Echols explain to you how to take Avodart?

**Patient:** He said to take it once a day.

**Pharmacist:** That's right. Take it once a day, with or without food. It's a soft-gel capsule that you need to swallow whole.

**Patient:** This medicine will shrink it soon?

**Pharmacist:** Well, it's probably going to take about 3 to 6 months before the medication takes effect and before you start to feel better when you urinate.

**Patient:** That's a long time.

**Pharmacist:** I know, but once it starts to take effect you will notice a great improvement.

**Patient:** Is this going to interfere with my sex life?

**Pharmacist:** Well, it is possible that you may experience some negative side effects. For example, you may experience impotence and maybe a decreased interest in sex, but these problems will go away once your body adjusts to the medication. I'll give you a patient information leaflet that comes with the medicine. Read it carefully. And please don't share this medicine with anyone, especially women. Avodart is not for women.

**Patient:** OK.

**Pharmacist:** Mr. Mercado, are you taking any other medications?

**Patient:** I take Lipitor for my cholesterol. And I had a cataract taken out of my left eye about 2 months ago. And I take Metamucil if I'm constipated, but not every day.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have any allergies?

**Patient:** I can't eat shrimp or shellfish; I'm so allergic.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have any questions?

**Patient:** I have to wait 3 to 6 months before I can urinate normal again? That's a long time.

**Pharmacist:** I know, but there are a few things that you can do in the meantime to help control your symptoms. You say you feel like you need to urinate frequently at night. To prevent that, try not to drink water or other drinks, especially drinks that contain caffeine, after seven at night. Caffeine can produce more urine and irritate your bladder. And try to limit alcohol. Also try sitting on the toilet seat, rather than standing, to empty your bladder. And believe it or not, exercise can help your difficulty urinating. Lack of exercise helps us to keep our urine in.

**Patient:** I'll try to do what you tell me. I hope it works.

**Pharmacist:** Sometimes simple lifestyle changes can really help. And of course, if your symptoms get worse and you are very uncomfortable, please tell your doctor.

**Patient:** I will.

**Pharmacist:** OK, now the prescription is for 1 month, but you have five refills, so come back to see me or another pharmacist on duty when you need a refill. In the meantime, if you have any questions about the medication, call us or your doctor. Our phone number is on the medication label.

**Patient:** OK, thank you very much.

## Chapter 10 Post-Assessment

### *Dialogue #1*

**Pharmacist:** Good morning.

**Patient:** Good morning.

**Pharmacist:** I'm the clinic pharmacist, Jude Berger. How can I help you?

**Patient:** Yes, my name is Joan Brown and I need a prescription filled. I'm having problems with my bladder. The doctor says I have an overactive bladder and she gave me this prescription. I think it's for Detrol. Here it is.

**Pharmacist:** You're right. Have you had Detrol before?

**Patient:** No. This is the first time. I've been having problems losing my urine every time I have the urge to urinate. It's so embarrassing. My doctor told me I have urge incontinence.

**Pharmacist:** I see that Dr. Susan Hoffman is your doctor.

**Patient:** Yeah. She said the Detrol should help stop my urge to urinate and the leakage. I've even started to wear absorbent pads, you know, Depends. Can you hurry up? I'm afraid I'm going to need to go to the bathroom soon.

**Pharmacist:** Sure, I'll try, but first I need to ask you a few questions. Are you currently taking any medication?

**Patient:** Yes. I'm on Amaryl. I have type II diabetes.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have any allergies?

**Patient:** Latex and Ceclor.

**Pharmacist:** When were you taking Ceclor?

**Patient:** Oh, a long time ago, years ago when I had an ear infection. I haven't had an ear infection since and I know not to take Ceclor.

**Pharmacist:** OK. How old are you?

**Patient:** I'm 48.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have any other medical conditions?

**Patient:** Well, I have three fibroids and I have had two breast biopsies that were benign, thank God. But now I have this overactive bladder.

**Pharmacist:** Did the doctor explain to you how Detrol works and how to take it?

**Patient:** She just told me to take it twice a day and to see her in 6 weeks.

**Pharmacist:** OK, then, let me explain how Detrol works. Detrol will help to treat your overactive bladder by relaxing the muscles in your bladder and helping you to control your urination. And yes, you'll take the 2-mg, round, white tablet twice a day.

**Patient:** Do I take it with food?

**Pharmacist:** You can take it with or without food.

**Patient:** Will it have any side effects?

**Pharmacist:** It's not uncommon for some people to get dry mouth and dry eyes, constipated, dizzy, or headaches. To prevent constipation, make sure you have a diet rich in fiber and drink enough water.

**Patient:** But won't drinking water make me want to urinate even more?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, that's true. If you get constipated, tell your doctor and she'll recommend an appropriate laxative and stool softener. Also, keep in mind that this medication may cause you to feel dizzy and drowsy and have blurred vision, so be careful when driving. Also, Detrol can cause decreased sweating, so be careful not to overheat if you exercise or do strenuous activities.

**Patient:** Are you certain this medication is going to stop my overactive bladder? So far it doesn't sound so good. Now I need to worry about constipation, blurred vision, and overheating. Isn't there something else that I can take or do?

**Pharmacist:** Well, your doctor has prescribed Detrol because it will be beneficial to you. But in the meantime, there are things that you can do to take care of yourself and to reduce the number of times you have the urge to urinate and the number of leakages. Control the amount of fluids you take and when you take them during the day. You'll also need to learn how to control your bladder.

**Patient:** Oh, yeah. My doctor told me how to delay urinating every time I have the urge. She said I should begin delaying the urge for 10 minutes, then go, and continue to increase the time delay until I can delay it for up to 2 hours. I hope I can do it.

**Pharmacist:** Training your bladder is important. You should also try to double void, meaning when you urinate, wait a few minutes and try to go again until your bladder is completely empty. You should also learn how to do Kegel exercises to help strengthen your pelvic floor muscles. A physical therapist can teach you how to do these exercises.

**Patient:** I'll try to remember everything that you've told me.

**Pharmacist:** I strongly suggest you take a look at the National Association for Continence. You can find them on the web. It has great information on support groups for people with overactive bladders and great tips on how to stay motivated using the strategies I've just told you. You'll find that you're not alone and that there are others who can help you.

**Patient:** Thank you so much. You've been great, but can you tell me where the bathroom is? I need to go now!

## *Dialogue #2*

**Patient:** Hi, are you the pharmacist?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, I am. I'm Leonard Chase. How can I help you?

**Patient:** I need to get a prescription for Ma...cro...dantin. I think that's how it's pronounced.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have the prescription from your doctor?

**Patient:** Yeah, here it is.

**Pharmacist:** What is your name?

**Patient:** Jacklyn Cho.

**Pharmacist:** How do you spell your first name?

**Patient:** J-A-C-K-L-Y-N.

**Pharmacist:** And your last name?

**Patient:** C-H-O.

**Pharmacist:** Have you been here before?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** Jacklyn, what's your date of birth?

**Patient:** February 12, 1989. I'm 18.

**Pharmacist:** OK. I just need to get your address and your phone number.

**Patient:** I live on 27 Sunset Terrace in Watertown, and my phone number is 467-4485.

**Pharmacist:** What type of insurance do you have?

**Patient:** I'm covered by my father's insurance. It's Health Choice Medical and Drug Plan. I have the card. Do you need it?

**Pharmacist:** Sure. I need to enter the insurance information in our computer. Jacklyn, who is your doctor?

**Patient:** Dr. Varsha Patel.



**Pharmacist:** Do you have any allergies?

**Patient:** I don't have allergies to medicines, I don't think, but I get hay fever in the spring and I'm lactose intolerant and allergic to tomatoes.

**Pharmacist:** Are you currently on any medications?

**Patient:** Just birth control pills.

**Pharmacist:** Have you been taking anything to treat your urinary tract infection?

**Patient:** Just cranberry juice. My friend told me it's supposed to help.

**Pharmacist:** Well, cranberry juice can help to prevent the bacteria from spreading, but you need an antibiotic and that's why Dr. Patel has prescribed Macrochantin. Have you ever taken an antibiotic?

**Patient:** No, I don't think so.

**Pharmacist:** OK, well I'll explain to you how Macrochantin works and how to use it. Macrochantin is an antibiotic that helps to stop the bacteria from growing in your bladder.

**Patient:** I hope it gets rid of the burning sensation I get when I urinate.

**Pharmacist:** It should, as long as you take your medication until the full prescribed amount is finished. Don't stop taking it if you start to feel better. Finish the entire prescription. However, if the condition gets worse, tell your doctor. Dr. Patel wants you to take a capsule four times a day, so try to take one every 6 hours. Make sure you swallow the capsule whole.

**Patient:** OK.

**Pharmacist:** Also, since you've never taken an antibiotic, keep your eye out for some side effects. You might notice that your urine might look dark yellow or a little brown. Don't worry about this. This is quite normal. You might also feel nauseous, lose your appetite, get a headache, or feel dizzy. If you feel nauseous, take the medication with food. I'll give you a pamphlet with more details about the medication.

**Patient:** OK. Should I stop drinking cranberry juice?

**Pharmacist:** You can continue to drink cranberry juice. And make sure you drink plenty of water. Water helps to dilute the bacteria and to flush it out.

**Patient:** Can I still drink alcohol like beer and wine?

**Pharmacist:** Well, I wouldn't recommend it. Avoid alcohol, caffeine, and citrus drinks until your infection has cleared. These tend to irritate the bladder.

**Patient:** I hope I don't get another infection. I'm so uncomfortable.

**Pharmacist:** Well, there are things you can do to prevent future infections. It's important to empty your bladder and not to hold in your urine. Also, after urinating it's important to wipe from front to back, and very important to empty your bladder and to drink plenty of water to flush out any bacteria after sexual intercourse. If you take your medication as prescribed, your symptoms should start clearing up.

**Patient:** OK, thanks.

---

## CHAPTER 11

### Pharmacist/Patient Dialogues

#### *Dialogue #1*

**Pharmacist:** Hello, I'm Justine Barry, the hospital pharmacist on duty. Are you Jonathan Libster?

**Patient:** Yeah.

**Pharmacist:** How are you doing this morning?

**Patient:** Well, I'm happy to be leaving the hospital and going home.

**Pharmacist:** Well, before you can go home, I need to talk to you about the medication that Dr. Sorenson has prescribed. He has prescribed Aldactone. Do you know why?

**Patient:** Because I have cirrhosis. I have a bad liver. I guess the medicine will make my liver better.

**Pharmacist:** Well, it won't make your liver better. Cirrhosis of the liver causes irreversible scarring of the liver. But what the medication will help you with is the removal of the excess fluid in your body caused by cirrhosis. Aldactone is a diuretic.

**Patient:** Yeah. I still have a lot of water in my abdomen and my legs are swollen even though I don't drink as much as I used to and I don't eat as much salt as I used to.

**Pharmacist:** It's really important that you stop drinking alcohol all together. Alcohol is a toxin that is filtered through your liver, but in the process the alcohol damages the liver. It's crucial that you stop drinking alcohol.

**Patient:** I know. That's how I got cirrhosis in the first place. I have a drinking problem. But I also don't want to have to get a new liver or die. And I want to get rid of this water in my abdomen and legs. It's hard to move and walk. How many times do I take this pill?

**Pharmacist:** Well, your doctor has prescribed that you take two 25-mg tablets, one in the morning and one in evening, but not too late, or you might be getting up in the middle of the night to urinate.

**Patient:** I'm also taking rifampin to help me with my itching. I itch a lot with this cirrhosis. Can I take both medications at the same time?

**Pharmacist:** Yes. Have you had any side effects with the rifampin?

**Patient:** No. I'm getting some relief.

**Pharmacist:** Aldactone has some side effects that you may or may not experience. You may notice that your breasts may become enlarged. Other rare side effects include diarrhea, drowsiness, and impotence. If you notice any of these side effects, call your doctor. I'll give you a pamphlet to take with you that tells you all the side effects.

**Patient:** Can I take it with food?

**Pharmacist:** You can take it with or without food. While I have your chart here, I just want to confirm a few things. According to your chart, you're allergic to bees, wasps, shellfish, iodine, and sulfa?

**Patient:** That's right.

**Pharmacist:** Well, I'm glad you don't eat shellfish. It's one of the foods that people with cirrhosis need to avoid altogether.

**Patient:** Really? Why?

**Pharmacist:** Well, uncooked shellfish, including oysters and clams, is not always free from bacteria, and bacteria are extremely dangerous to people with cirrhosis.

**Patient:** I didn't know that.

**Pharmacist:** According to your chart, you're still drinking about two cans of beer a week?

**Patient:** I think that's good. I've cut back a lot, and I'm not drinking hard liquor.

**Pharmacist:** Mr. Libster, I can't emphasize this enough. You need to stop drinking alcohol entirely. You have a damaged liver that can lead to liver failure, a liver transplant, or death. I'm sure your doctor has told you this.

**Patient:** Well, I don't smoke.

**Pharmacist:** That's good. Do you use drugs?

**Patient:** When I was much younger I smoked pot, but it's been years.

**Pharmacist:** I'm sure your doctor has told you that there are things you can do to reduce liver damage as a result of your cirrhosis. But just in case, let me give you important advice. First...

**Patient:** I know. Don't drink alcohol.

**Pharmacist:** Second, eat healthy—fruits and vegetables. Restrict salt because salt causes your body to retain water. Be careful not to take aspirin or Aleve or Motrin. And stay away from sick people because your body is not able to fight off infections like you would if you were healthy.

**Patient:** Yeah, I know about staying away from sick people. My doctor vaccinated me against hepatitis A and B and the flu and pneumonia.

**Pharmacist:** Good. I see that in your chart. One more thing, I just want to confirm your age and date of birth.

**Patient:** I'm 43. I was born June 28, 1964.

## *Dialogue #2*

**Pharmacist:** Good morning. How are you today?

**Patient:** Not so good.

**Pharmacist:** Are you Samantha Duffy?

**Patient:** Yes. Are you a doctor?

**Pharmacist:** No, I'm the clinic pharmacist, Mustafa Pasdar. I'm going to take care of your medication needs today. Do you have a prescription with you?

**Patient:** Yeah. Here it is. The doctor is giving me medicine for my hepatitis. I have hepatitis B.

**Pharmacist:** Samantha, how old are you?

**Patient:** I'm 25, and you can call me Sam.

**Pharmacist:** Sam, what's your date of birth?

**Patient:** May 14, 1982.

**Pharmacist:** OK, your doctor...is your doctor Ben Whitman?

**Patient:** Yeah.

**Pharmacist:** Dr. Whitman has prescribed Hepsera. Do you know why you've been prescribed Hepsera?

**Patient:** Because I got hepatitis B. I got infected after having unprotected sex with a person who's infected. I started to get sick and had pain around my abdomen. I had dark urine and I noticed my skin was turning yellow, and my eyes too. That's when I went to Dr. Whitman, and he gave me tests and then told me I had hepatitis B.

**Pharmacist:** I'm sorry to hear that you have hepatitis B. It's a very serious liver infection. I can tell you Hepsera will help to slow down the virus, but it will not cure your hepatitis. And this is very important: It will not prevent you from spreading the virus to others, so you need to be careful. I'll explain more about how to do this, but first let me tell you how to use Hepsera.

**Patient:** OK.

**Pharmacist:** Dr. Whitman has prescribed that you take Hepsera, which is spelled H-E-P-S-E-R-A, once a day. You can take it with or without food.

**Patient:** How long will I have to take it?

**Pharmacist:** Well, your doctor will decide that and will monitor how you're doing on the medication. It's possible that your hepatitis could worsen if you discontinue the medication. It's very important that you keep all your blood work appointments. You'll be getting your blood tested on a regular basis to monitor your liver and kidney function.

**Patient:** What else can happen to me on this drug?

**Pharmacist:** Well, there are side effects you'll need to pay attention to. You might experience headaches, fever, weakness, and diarrhea. Serious side effects include rash, swelling, and a change in your urine amount. If you experience any of these, contact your doctor. I'll give you a leaflet for you to read carefully.

**Patient:** OK. I can't believe I'm going to have hepatitis forever.

**Pharmacist:** Well, if you have the virus in your system for less than 6 months, you should be able to recover. Your immune system may be able to clear up the virus. However, if you have had the virus for more than 6 months, you have chronic hepatitis B and it may be lifelong because your body has not been able to fight the infection. Like I said earlier, it's important to see your doctor and keep all your appointments so that he can monitor your condition.

**Patient:** This just boggles the mind. I can't believe it.

**Pharmacist:** Did Dr. Whitman explain to you the other ways hepatitis B is transmitted?

**Patient:** Yeah. He told me through sharing contaminated needles. Even people like you, healthcare workers can accidentally get it if they come in contact with contaminated human blood. And even infected pregnant mothers can pass it on to their babies. And of course, having unprotected sex with an infected person. I've learned my lesson.

**Pharmacist:** Sam, since you are infected, it's very important to protect your partners from the virus and to protect them from exposure to blood, saliva, and vaginal secretions. It's important that your partner wear a condom for vaginal and anal sex and that you both wear dental condoms for oral sex. And of course, let your partner know that you have the virus. Of course, don't share intravenous needles and syringes and don't share razors and toothbrushes. I know this is a lot of information to digest.

**Patient:** Can I still drink?

**Pharmacist:** I would not advise drinking alcohol. Alcohol can speed up the progression of the disease. But eat a healthy diet of fruits, vegetables, whole grains, and protein. Exercise and get enough sleep. These lifestyle changes are important.

**Patient:** I'll try.

**Pharmacist:** Remember, Sam, not taking your medicine and not making important lifestyle changes can lead to other serious complications such as cirrhosis of the liver, which is permanent scarring of the liver, liver cancer, and liver damage. Talk to your doctor if you have any questions and concerns.

**Patient:** I will. Thanks so much.

## Chapter 11 Post-Assessment

### *Dialogue #1*

**Pharmacist:** Good morning.

**Patient:** Good morning.

**Pharmacist:** I'm the clinic pharmacist, Felicia Arroyo. How can I help you?

**Patient:** Well, I need a prescription filled. The doctor says I have hepatitis C and he gave me this prescription. I think it's a prescription for two things. She said I need to get injections and take capsules, too. I think it's called Rebetrone.

**Pharmacist:** You're right. Rebetrone is a combination drug of interferon alpha-2b solution and ribavirin capsules.

**Patient:** That sounds confusing.

**Pharmacist:** I know. I'll explain it to you and you can ask me any questions you have, but first I need to get your name.

**Patient:** Right. My name is James Richter. That's R-I-C-H-T-E-R. This is my first time in this clinic.

**Pharmacist:** James, what is your date of birth?

**Patient:** September 21, 1975. I'm 32.

**Pharmacist:** Your home address?

**Patient:** 701 Julia Lane in Willamstown.

**Pharmacist:** Phone number?

**Patient:** 876-5321.

**Pharmacist:** James, do you have any allergies?

**Patient:** No, I don't think so, but I can't eat onions. I'm allergic to those.

**Pharmacist:** And your doctor's name?

**Patient:** Charles Borden.

**Pharmacist:** Did your doctor talk to you about hepatitis C?

**Patient:** Yeah, he told me that it looks like I got it from a contaminated needle when I got my last tattoo. I have five tattoos and I never had any problems before. And I noticed that after I got my last tattoo, I started to feel sick, like I had the flu. I went to the clinic doctor in the hospital and after a few blood tests he told me I had hepatitis C. I don't use drugs or inject drugs, and I haven't gotten a blood transfusion ever, so it looks like it was the tattoo.

**Pharmacist:** Did Dr. Borden explain to you how to take the medication?

**Patient:** He told me I need to inject myself and I need to take a pill. The nurse showed me how to inject, and I almost fainted. I don't like needles. They make me feel queasy.

**Pharmacist:** If you feel queasy, make sure someone is with you when you inject. You will inject the interferon alpha-2b, which comes in the form of prepared solution in vials called Intron A. You will inject subcutaneously, or in your skin. And then you will take the ribavirin 200-mg capsule. Ribavirin is an antiviral medication. You'll do this once a day, but make sure you do it the same time every day. I would recommend you do this at bedtime.

**Patient:** That's it?

**Pharmacist:** Well, it's important that you drink a full glass of water with the capsule. Ribavirin can cause dehydration, so it's very important that you drink fluids every day. And you can take the capsules with or without food, but make sure that you do the same thing every day. Also, it's important to keep both medicines in the refrigerator and don't shake the vials.

**Patient:** So this medication should take care of my hepatitis, right?

**Pharmacist:** Well, it's not known if Rebetrone cures hepatitis C or if it prevents the transmission of the virus to others or if it prevents cirrhosis of the liver, which is permanent scarring of the liver, or if it prevents liver cancer.

**Patient:** Are you kidding me? Is this medicine going to make me sicker?

**Pharmacist:** Well, there are side effects. This medication can cause some patients to have flu-like symptoms and to become anemic, become dehydrated, feel dizzy, feel nauseous, and even experience hair loss and hair thinning.

**Patient:** You mean I could become bald?

**Pharmacist:** Like I said, in some patients it can cause hair loss and hair thinning.

**Patient:** Any more bad side effects?

**Pharmacist:** Well, this medication has caused some serious side effects in some patients, such as depression, mood and behavior changes, and thoughts of suicide.

**Patient:** Are you serious?

**Pharmacist:** I will give you the complete patient pamphlet describing this medication, its benefits, and its side effects. Your doctor has prescribed this medication to treat your hepatitis C because he has determined that the benefits to you are greater than the risks of the side effects, which can also include allergic reactions such as a rash, swelling of the lips and mouth, and difficulty breathing. Call your doctor immediately or get medical attention immediately if this happens.

**Patient:** Can I at least have sex?

**Pharmacist:** Good question. It's very important for your partner not to get pregnant while taking this drug, so it's very important to avoid pregnancy. Interferon is known to cause birth defects in unborn children, so it's very important that women and partners taking this medication avoid getting pregnant while on the medication and for 6 months after the treatment is over. So please make sure you use reliable birth control and don't engage in unprotected sex.

**Patient:** Wow. I'm not married or planning to get any woman pregnant, but thanks for the warning. Looks like my life is over.

**Pharmacist:** No, not at all. You just need to make a few adjustments to prevent spreading the virus to others, and to take measures to protect your health and the health of others. There are a few things you can do and you can begin by avoiding alcohol, which speeds the progression of liver diseases. Eat a healthy diet of fruits, vegetables, and whole grains, and make sure that others don't come in contact with your blood, so avoid sharing razors and toothbrushes, and cover and protect any wounds you may get. Of course, you can't donate blood, semen, or organs and it's always a good idea to let other health workers you come in contact with know that you have the virus.

**Patient:** I can't believe this. All because I got a tattoo.

## *Dialogue #2*

**Patient:** Hi, are you the pharmacist?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, I am. I'm Victor Watson. How can I help you?

**Patient:** I need to get a prescription for pred-ni-sone.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have the prescription from your doctor?

**Patient:** Yeah, here it is.

**Pharmacist:** What is your name?

**Patient:** Sonia Sanchez.

**Pharmacist:** How do you spell your first name? Do you spell it S-O-N-Y-A or S-O-N-I-A?

**Patient:** S-O-N-I-A.

**Pharmacist:** And your last name?

**Patient:** Sanchez. S-A-N-C-H-E-Z.

**Pharmacist:** Have you been here before?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** What's your date of birth?

**Patient:** 1/5/49.

**Pharmacist:** OK. And your address and your phone number?

**Patient:** My address is 6 Moonlight Terrace in Ivytown, and my phone number is 367-7644.

**Pharmacist:** What type of insurance do you have?

**Patient:** It's Personal Health. I have the card. Do you need it?

**Pharmacist:** Sure. I need to enter the insurance information in our computer. Who's your doctor?

**Patient:** Dr. Michelle Drake.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have any allergies?

**Patient:** I'm allergic to penicillin and eggs.

**Pharmacist:** Are you currently on any medications?

**Patient:** Just Fosamax for my bones. I'm in menopause.

**Pharmacist:** Did the doctor tell you why you need prednisone?

**Patient:** I have autoimmune hepatitis. Same thing my mother had. She died a few years ago after several other health complications.

**Pharmacist:** I'm sorry to hear that your mother died. Heredity is one cause of autoimmune hepatitis, but if it's discovered early and treated early, it can be controlled with medication such as prednisone to suppress the immune system and to slow the progression of the disease. But it's important to be careful with the medication.

**Patient:** How much prednisone do I take?

**Pharmacist:** Your doctor has prescribed one 40-mg tablet per day. This prescription comes in 20-mg tablets, so you will take two at the same time, once a day. And it's recommended that you take it with food.

**Patient:** I hope it helps me. My doctor said the good news is that I don't have cirrhosis of the liver. My liver biopsy was negative, thank God.

**Pharmacist:** Well, that's good. The prednisone should help to inhibit the disease, as long as you take your medication as directed by your doctor. It will not cure your condition. And I'm sure your doctor has told you that you need to get more frequent blood tests to monitor your liver.

**Patient:** Yeah, she did. I've never been on prednisone, but I have a friend whose dog is on prednisone to shrink her cancer tumors. She seems to be doing fine. My liver should be getting better soon, right?

**Pharmacist:** Well, you might not see immediate improvement, and it may take some time. However, there are side effects that you should be aware of. Prednisone can cause fluid and salt retention; weight gain; puffiness in the face, or what we call moon face and high blood pressure.

**Patient:** Weight gain and moon face?

**Pharmacist:** It can also cause osteoporosis, and patients will also take Fosamax, but since you're already taking Fosamax, that's good. I would also recommend a calcium supplement of 600 mg and vitamin D, both twice daily. This will help treat your osteoporosis and prevent further erosion while taking prednisone.

**Patient:** Well, I do exercise regularly. I go to the gym and lift weights and jog and walk around the indoor track. But I'll take your suggestion and get calcium and vitamin D, too.

**Pharmacist:** I'm glad you exercise. I would continue doing that as long as you're feeling good and strong.

**Patient:** Am I going to need to take prednisone for the rest of my life?

**Pharmacist:** Well, your doctor will determine that. As soon as your symptoms—

**Patient:** You mean like my fatigue, discomfort around my abdomen, and my jaundice?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, those symptoms and other symptoms you have may improve, and your doctor may want to reduce the dose of the medication while still controlling the disease. Every individual is different. Some will be on prednisone for life, others for a few years. Some will go into remission, but usually the disease will return if the medication is discontinued. The good news is that because you were diagnosed early and because you're getting treatment, you don't run the risk of developing cirrhosis of the liver and liver failure.

**Patient:** I guess I should consider myself pretty lucky.

---

## CHAPTER 12

### Pharmacist/Patient Dialogues

#### *Dialogue #1*

**Pharmacist:** Hello. My name is Frank Walker, and I'm the clinic pharmacist for today. Are you Emily Lynch?

**Patient:** Yeah.

**Pharmacist:** How are you today?

**Patient:** Well, I could be doing better. I guess you know why I'm here. Dr. Alexander said you would talk to me about my medication for my vaginal yeast infection.

**Pharmacist:** That's right. Dr. Alexander prescribed a nonprescription medication called Monistat. You can buy it over the counter in any pharmacy or supermarket. I'm going to give you a sample to take home with you, but you'll need to go to your local pharmacy to buy some more. Do you know what Monistat is?

**Patient:** Well, I've seen commercials for it on TV. I've never had this problem before, you know, yeast infection. This is so embarrassing.

**Pharmacist:** Well, it's quite common. In fact, three out of four women will experience vaginal yeast infection, and there's no reason to be embarrassed. Dr. Alexander wants you to take Monistat-7 suppositories.

**Patient:** I don't take a pill?

**Pharmacist:** No. You will insert a suppository using the applicator into your vagina as if you were inserting a tampon. It's a 100-mg suppository.

**Patient:** How often do I insert it?

**Pharmacist:** You need to insert a suppository using the applicator once nightly for 7 nights. This medication will help to treat your yeast infection.

**Patient:** Is the medicine going to hurt?

**Pharmacist:** No, the medicine should not hurt you, but you might feel some irritation or burning after inserting the suppository. These are the only potential side effects. And I would recommend wearing a light panty liner as discharge from the suppositories can occur.

**Patient:** Is it going to get rid of the itch and the thick discharge that looks like cottage cheese?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, it should. Those are typical symptoms of a vaginal yeast infection.

**Patient:** I've never had a yeast infection. Is this considered a sexually transmitted disease?

**Pharmacist:** No, it's not a sexually transmitted disease. You can relax.

**Patient:** Then how did I get it?

**Pharmacist:** Well, certain changes in your environment can trigger an overgrowth of a naturally occurring fungus called *Candida*.

**Patient:** Fungus?

**Pharmacist:** Relax. A lot of factors can trigger a yeast infection, like certain antibiotics, pregnancy, birth control pills, and menopause.

**Patient:** Well, I'm not pregnant or menopausal. I'm only 21. But I am on birth control pills. But I've been on the pill for 3 years and I've never had a yeast infection.

**Pharmacist:** Sometimes bubble baths, vaginal contraceptives, and tight clothes can trigger the growth of the fungus.

**Patient:** Really? Bubble bath? I got a new bottle of bubble bath recently. Maybe that's how I got it.

**Pharmacist:** It could be. The good news is that you saw your doctor soon, and now you can start treating it.

**Patient:** OK. Thanks for the info. Now I know to stay away from bubble bath. If I stop using the bubble bath, I'll be OK and not get another yeast infection?

**Pharmacist:** Well, it's a good idea to stop using the bubble bath. And there are other things that women in general should do to prevent vaginitis and yeast infections. Try to avoid whirlpools and hot tubs. It's a good idea to avoid scented pads and tampons. They can irritate the vagina.

**Patient:** Can I still douche? I douche once in a while.

**Pharmacist:** I wouldn't douche. Douching can actually cause vaginal infections. It certainly doesn't clear up infections.

**Patient:** Really? I didn't know that. I'll have to tell all my girlfriends.

**Pharmacist:** I would recommend eating yogurt that contains active *Lactobacillus* cultures. *Lactobacillus* is a good bacterium that is common in the vagina.

**Patient:** Are you serious? I had no idea. Wow, I've really learned a lot. Dr. Alexander didn't tell me any of this. He just said "take Monistat."

**Pharmacist:** Well, I'm glad you've learned a lot. And don't forget to take the entire dosage. Finish the entire course of treatment even if you start to feel better..

**Patient:** You mean, finish all seven suppositories?

**Pharmacist:** That's right.

**Patient:** Will do. Thanks a lot.

## Dialogue #2

**Pharmacist:** Good morning. How are you today?

**Patient:** OK. I need a prescription filled.

**Pharmacist:** Sure. What's the prescription for?

**Patient:** I have ED. You know.

**Pharmacist:** Sure. I understand.

**Patient:** Here it is. I've been here before.

**Pharmacist:** OK. Let me look you up in our computer. What is your name?

**Patient:** Lester Greenwald II.

**Pharmacist:** Lester Greenwald the second. Is your date of birth July 16, 1951?

**Patient:** Yes. All the information is the same. Same address. Same insurance.

**Pharmacist:** 22 Ardmore Road in Westmont, and you have Healthy Life Insurance?

**Patient:** Yeah.

**Pharmacist:** I want you to know that your insurance plan does not cover Viagra.

**Patient:** Are you serious? You gotta be kidding me. This is ridiculous. I pay part of the cost of my insurance. Those lousy insurance companies get you all the time.

**Pharmacist:** Mr. Greenwald, I can understand your frustration. I would suggest calling your insurance company.

**Patient:** Oh, you bet I will. I'm sorry. You can call me Les.

**Pharmacist:** That's OK, Les. Like I said, your prescription is for Viagra. Did Dr. Ahmet talk to you about Viagra?

**Patient:** Well, he told me it will probably take a while before I improve. You know, I was having a lot of pressure and stress at work. And I was depressed. I was taking Zoloft for a while. The doctor told me that what's causing my ED. It's psychological. I'm not physically abnormal, you know.

**Pharmacist:** Are you still taking Zoloft?

**Patient:** No, I started to feel better so I don't take it anymore, but I think maybe the Zoloft could be a reason why I've been having this ED problem. It's never been a problem in the past. I've had ED for more than 2 months. That's when I went to see Dr. Ahmet, our family doctor. My wife has been patient and understanding, but, well, you know.

**Pharmacist:** I understand. There are several reasons for erectile dysfunction, or as you say, ED. Your doctor is prescribing Viagra because he feels it will treat your situation. You're not alone. Many men experience ED. And you're lucky you have a patient and understanding wife. Would you like to know how Viagra works?

**Patient:** I guess.

**Pharmacist:** Viagra will help to relax the smooth muscles in your penis. What this will do is increase the amount of blood in the penis to cause an erection during sexual stimulation. Viagra will help an erection to occur.

**Patient:** Is it a pill or a liquid?

**Pharmacist:** It's a blue, diamond-shaped tablet. Your doctor has ordered 50-mg tablets. You take one tablet only before sexual activity.

**Patient:** How soon before my wife and I can get intimate? You know.

**Pharmacist:** Well, you can take it between 4 hours and 30 minutes before, but taking one tablet about an hour before sexual intimacy is most effective. And it's very important to remember that Viagra can be taken only once in a 24-hour period.

**Patient:** How soon will the Viagra start working, and how long will it last?

**Pharmacist:** Well, the Viagra should start to work 30 minutes after taking it. The medication should last for 4 hours, but after 2 hours it works less effectively.

**Patient:** How about side effects? Is there anything I should worry about?

**Pharmacist:** Well, there are some common side effects to look out for. You can become dizzy, become flushed, get back pain, or get diarrhea. Viagra is also known to cause blue vision, which is sensitivity to light. I'll give you a complete patient leaflet for you to read very carefully.

**Patient:** Do I eat when I take the tablet?

**Pharmacist:** No. You don't have to, but if you do, don't eat a high-fat meal. A high-fat meal may delay the onset of Viagra.

**Patient:** Well, Dr. Ahmet thinks Viagra will help me. I'm not taking any medications right now that would be a problem. I don't have any medical problems except this problem.

**Pharmacist:** That's good to know. You should also know that men on Viagra should not take heart medications that contain nitrates. Do you have any other questions?

**Patient:** Yeah. When will this problem go away?

**Pharmacist:** Well, you're not going to see changes immediately. Every patient is different. If you see that your situation is not improving, please see your doctor again. He may need to adjust the dosage.

**Patient:** OK. Thanks so much.



## Chapter 12 Post-Assessment

### *Dialogue #1*

**Pharmacist:** Good morning.

**Patient:** Good morning.

**Pharmacist:** I'm the clinic pharmacist, Rosa Mendez. Do you need help?

**Patient:** Yeah. I gotta get a medication. I have the clap. Doctor said I have gonorrhea.

**Pharmacist:** What is your name?

**Patient:** David Cunningham.

**Pharmacist:** Did your doctor give you a prescription?

**Patient:** Yeah. It's right here.

**Pharmacist:** Your doctor, Dr. Sanderson, has prescribed two antibiotics, doxycycline and azithromycin.

**Patient:** He did? Two? Why two?

**Pharmacist:** Doxycycline is used to treat gonorrhea and azithromycin is used to treat chlamydia.

**Patient:** Chlamydia? I have gonorrhea and chlamydia?

**Pharmacist:** According to your doctor, yes. Let me explain to you how both antibiotics work.

**Patient:** As long as it stops this burning sensation when I piss, you know, urinate. And I also have some kind of discharge coming from my penis. My doctor told me my urethra is infected.

**Pharmacist:** Gonorrhea and chlamydia are both bacterial infections spread through sexual contact. The antibiotics will help to treat the infection.

**Patient:** How long will I have to take both antibiotics?

**Pharmacist:** You're going to take both antibiotics for 7 days. You're going to take the light yellow doxycycline tablet, which is 100 mg, twice a day for 7 days. Take one tablet in the morning and one tablet in the evening. And you're also going to take the red azithromycin capsule once a day for 7 days.

**Patient:** Can I take them together?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, but don't eat food with them. Doxycycline should not be taken with food. And you don't need to eat food with azithromycin. Take both medications at least 1 hour before or 2 hours after meals.

**Patient:** OK. That's it, huh?

**Pharmacist:** Well, you need to be aware of possible side effects.

**Patient:** Like what?

**Pharmacist:** Well, with doxycycline you could experience nausea, upset stomach, dizziness, trouble sleeping, and lightheadedness. And try to avoid sun exposure as it may cause photosensitivity. And with azithromycin you could experience diarrhea, loose stools, vomiting, and abdominal pain. I'll give you a complete computer printout of the side effects for you to take with you and read carefully.

**Patient:** Sure. Is that it?

**Pharmacist:** It's really important that you finish the entire prescription. If you stop taking your medication too early, the infection could return.

**Patient:** Oh, I'll finish it. I don't want this stuff to return. It's no way to live. I guess sex is out of the question.

**Pharmacist:** Avoid sexual intercourse until after your infections are completely gone. See your doctor after you finish the prescribed antibiotics. And use latex condoms when you're ready to resume sexual intercourse and avoid oral intercourse. Gonorrhea and chlamydia are contagious. You can get both infections again if you don't take measures to prevent getting and spreading both. And it's critical to let your partner...

**Patient:** Or partners know. I know. I hear you. I just hope these antibiotics do the trick.

**Pharmacist:** It's important to practice safe sex. If you have any concerns, please call your doctor or call the clinic pharmacy. The phone number is on the medication bottle label. Now, David, I need to confirm some information that appears in your chart.

**Patient:** Sure.

**Pharmacist:** Your date of birth?

**Patient:** May 18, 1983. I'm 24.

**Pharmacist:** Address?

**Patient:** 643 Millbrook Road, Apartment 4C, in Morton.

**Pharmacist:** Phone?

**Patient:** 543-0090.

**Pharmacist:** According to your doctor and your patient records in your chart, you have no allergies and you're not taking any medications?

**Patient:** That's right.

**Pharmacist:** And do you have insurance?

**Patient:** No, I'll be paying cash.

### *Dialogue #2*

**Patient:** Hi, are you the pharmacist?

**Pharmacist:** Yes, I am. I'm Stuart Robertson. How can I help you?

**Patient:** I have a prescription for two medicines I can't pronounce.

**Pharmacist:** Do you have the prescription with you?

**Patient:** Yeah, here it is.

**Pharmacist:** OK, your doctor, Dr. Gerber, has prescribed levofloxacin and metronidazole. Do you know why she has prescribed these medications?

**Patient:** Yeah. I have PID, short for pelvic inflammatory disease.

**Pharmacist:** OK. What is your name?

**Patient:** Roberta Livingston.

**Pharmacist:** OK, Roberta. Have you been to this pharmacy before?

**Patient:** No.

**Pharmacist:** What's your date of birth?

**Patient:** June 19, 1985. I'm 22.

**Pharmacist:** Home address?

**Patient:** 65 Springdale Road in Cherryville.

**Pharmacist:** How do you spell Springdale?

**Patient:** S-P-R-I-N-G-D-A-L-E.

**Pharmacist:** Your doctor is Dr. Francesca Gerber?

**Patient:** Yes.

**Pharmacist:** Roberta, do you have any allergies?

**Patient:** Just iodine. I can't have CAT scan dye or shellfish.

**Pharmacist:** Are you currently on any medications?

**Patient:** No. I just take Tylenol when I have a headache. I take vitamins, too.

**Pharmacist:** Are you on birth control?

**Patient:** Not now. I had an IUD but my doctor removed it, and now that I have PID.

**Pharmacist:** Have you taken levofloxacin or metronidazole before?

**Patient:** No. How often should I take them?

**Pharmacist:** Your doctor has prescribed that you take levofloxacin once a day. It's a terra cotta pink, 250-mg tablet. You need to take metronidazole twice daily. It's a white, round, 250-mg tablet. You can take them together. You can take one levofloxacin and one metronidazole in the morning, and one metronidazole in evening. They will stop the growth of the bacteria that is causing your PID.

**Patient:** Can I take them with food?

**Pharmacist:** You need to take both of them with a glass of water or with milk to prevent an upset stomach. Both medications can cause an upset stomach.

**Patient:** How long do I take both medications?

**Pharmacist:** Your doctor has prescribed they be taken for 14 days.

**Patient:** Besides maybe an upset stomach, are there any other side effects? Can I still drink alcohol?

**Pharmacist:** No, you can't drink alcohol when you take metronidazole. And you should also know that because you take vitamins, you need to take the levofloxacin either 2 hours before or 2 hours after you take your vitamins. Vitamins and antacids bind with the medication to prevent the medication from being fully absorbed. Now, as for the other side effects, both can cause an upset stomach, diarrhea, drowsiness, nausea, headache, and loss of appetite. In addition, metronidazole can cause constipation and dry mouth, and levofloxacin can cause trouble sleeping.

**Patient:** OK. You mentioned that they help the bacteria in my body. Is it going to stop the pain in my pelvis and my lower abdomen, and in my back and in the heavy vaginal discharge I have?

**Pharmacist:** Those are typical symptoms of PID. The medications will help, but it's important to take the fully prescribed dosage. Don't stop taking the tablets even if you start feeling better. PID is a serious disease that needs to be treated. It can lead to complications such as chronic pelvic pain, ectopic pregnancy, and infertility. I'm sure your doctor has discussed this with you.

**Patient:** She has.

**Pharmacist:** And of course it's important to tell one's partner and to abstain from sexual intercourse until the infection has cleared up, and to...

**Patient:** Practice safe sex and to use a condom.

**Pharmacist:** Good. If you have any problems with the medications, call Dr. Gerber or call us. Roberta, do you have any other questions?

**Patient:** Can I use my credit card to pay for these? I don't have insurance.

**Pharmacist:** Sure.



## Pharmacotherapy Workup Notes



Pharmacotherapy Workup© NOTES		ASSESSMENT			
CONTACT INFORMATION	Name				
	Address		City	State	Postal Code
	Telephone (h)	(w)	(cell)	e-mail	
	Pharmacy Name		Clinic Name		
	(tel)		(tel)		

DEMOGRAPHICS	Age	Date of Birth	Gender: M/F
	Weight	Height	Lean Body Weight
	Pregnancy status: Y/N	Breast Feeding: Y/N	Due Date
	Occupation		
	Living Arrangements/Family		
	Health Insurance (coverage issues):		

**REASON FOR THE ENCOUNTER**

MEDICATION EXPERIENCE	What is the patient's general attitude toward taking medication?	Needs attention in care plan	
		Y	N
	What does the patient want/expect from his/her drug therapy?	Needs attention in care plan	
		Y	N
	What concerns does the patient have with his/her medications?	Needs attention in care plan	
		Y	N
	To what extent does the patient understand his/her medications?	Needs attention in care plan	
		Y	N
	Are there cultural, religious, or ethical issues that influence the patient's willingness to take medications?	Needs attention in care plan	
		Y	N
	Describe the patient's medication taking behavior	Needs attention in care plan	
		Y	N

CHILDHOOD IMMUNIZATIONS*		Birth	1 mo	2 mos	4 mos	6 mos	12 mos	15 mos	18 mos	24 mos	4-6 yrs	11-12 yrs	13-18 yrs
	Hepatitis B	Dose 1		Dose 2			Dose 3						
	Diphtheria, Tetanus, Pertussis			1	2	3		4					
	<i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> Type b			1	2	3	4						
	Polio-inactivated			1	2	3					4		
	Measles, Mumps, Rubella						1					2	
	Varicella (chicken pox)												
	Pneumococcal			1	2	3	4						
	Hepatitis A(children in high risk regions)										Hepatitis A Series		
	Influenza (Children ≥6 with asthma, diabetes, HIV, sickle cell, cardiac disease)						Yearly						

Current on all childhood immunizations

ADULT IMMUNIZATIONS*		19-49 YEARS	50-64 YEARS	65 YEARS & OLDER
	Tetanus, Diphtheria (Td)	1 booster every ten years	1 booster every ten years	1 booster every ten years
	Influenza	1 dose annually for persons with medical or occupational indications or household contacts of persons with indications	1 annual dose	1 annual dose
	Pneumococcal (polysaccharide)	1 dose for persons with medical or other indications. (1 dose revaccination for immunosuppressive conditions)	1 dose for person with medical or other indications. (1 dose revaccination for immunosuppressive conditions)	1 dose for unvaccinated persons 1 dose revaccination

Current on all adult immunizations

\*see <http://www.cdc.gov/nip> for more information

SOCIAL DRUG USE	Substance	History of Use	Substance	History of Use
	Tobacco <input type="checkbox"/> No tobacco use	<input type="checkbox"/> 0-1 packs per day <input type="checkbox"/> >1 packs per day <input type="checkbox"/> previous history of smoking <input type="checkbox"/> attempts to quit	Alcohol <input type="checkbox"/> No alcohol use	<input type="checkbox"/> < 2 drinks per week <input type="checkbox"/> 2-6 drinks per week <input type="checkbox"/> > 6 drinks per week <input type="checkbox"/> history of alcohol dependence
	Caffeine <input type="checkbox"/> No caffeine use	<input type="checkbox"/> < 2 cups per day <input type="checkbox"/> 2-6 cups per day <input type="checkbox"/> > 6 cups per day <input type="checkbox"/> history of caffeine dependence	Other recreational drug use	

Copyright© 2003-2005 Peters Institute of Pharmaceutical Care, Cipolle RJ, Strand LM, Morley PC  
 Pharmaceutical Care Practice: The Clinician's Guide, McGraw Hill, 2004

<b>ALLERGIES &amp; ALERTS</b>	Medication Allergies (drug, timing, reaction—rash, shock, asthma, nausea, anemia)
	Adverse reactions to drugs in the past
	Other Alerts/Health Aids/Special Needs (sight, hearing, mobility, literacy, disability)

<b>CURRENT MEDICAL CONDITIONS AND MEDICATIONS</b>	<b>INDICATION</b>	<b>DRUG PRODUCT</b>	<b>DOSAGE REGIMEN</b> dose, route, frequency, duration	<b>START DATE</b>	<b>RESPONSE</b> effectiveness/safety

<b>PAST DRUG THERAPIES</b>	<b>INDICATION</b>	<b>DRUG THERAPY</b>	<b>RESPONSE</b>	<b>DATE</b>

<b>PAST MEDICAL HISTORY (RELEVANT ILLNESSES, HOSPITALIZATIONS, SURGICAL PROCEDURES, INJURIES, PREGNANCIES, DELIVERIES)</b>

NUTRITIONAL STATUS (NOTE DAILY INTAKE OF CALORIES, CALCIUM, SODIUM, CHOLESTEROL, FIBER, POTASSIUM, VITAMIN K)			
calories	K <sup>+</sup>	cholesterol	Vitamin K
calcium	Na <sup>+</sup>	fiber	

OTHER FOOD OR DIETARY RESTRICTIONS / NEEDS

Vital signs: BP \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_      HR \_\_\_\_\_ bpm      Resp Rate \_\_\_\_\_      Temp \_\_\_\_\_

REVIEW OF SYSTEMS		y/n		y/n			
General Systems	Poor appetite			GU/Reproductive	Dysmenorrhea/ menstrual bleeding		
	Weight change				Incontinence		
	Pain				Impotence		
	Headache				Decreased sexual drive		
	EENT	Dizziness (vertigo)			Vaginal discharge or itching		
		Change in vision			Hot flashes		
		Loss of hearing			Kidney/Urinary	Urinary frequency	
		Ringing in the ears (tinnitus)				Bloody urine (hematuria)	
		Bloody nose (epistaxis)				Renal dysfunction	
		Cardiovascular	Allergic rhinitis			Hematopoietic Symptoms	Excessive bruising
	Glaucoma				Bleeding		
	Bloody sputum (hemoptysis)				Anemia		
	Pulmonary		Chest pain			Musculoskeletal	Back pain
			Hyperlipidemia				Arthritis pain (osteo/rheumatoid)
		Hypertension			Tendonitis		
		Myocardial Infarction			Painful muscles		
	Gastrointestinal	Orthostatic hypotension			Neuropsychiatric	Numb, tingling sensation in extremities (parasthesia)	
		Asthma				Tremor	
		Shortness of breath				Loss of balance	
	Skin	Wheezing				Depression	
Heartburn				Suicidal			
Abdominal pain				Anxiety, nervousness			
Nausea				Inability to concentrate			
Vomiting				Seizure			
Endocrine Systems	Diarrhea			Stroke/TIA			
	Constipation			Memor loss			
	Eczema/Psoriasis			Infectious Disease	HIV/AIDS		
Itching (pruritis)			Malaria				
Rash			Syphilis				
Hepatic	Diabetes				Gonorrhea		
	Hypothyroidism				Herpes		
Nutrition/Fluid/Electrolytes	Menopausal Symptoms				Chlamydia		
	Dehydration				Tuberculosis		
	Edema						
	Potassium deficiency						

Copyright© 2003-2005 Peters Institute of Pharmaceutical Care, Cipolle RJ, Strand LM, Morley PC  
 Pharmaceutical Care Practice: The Clinician's Guide, McGraw Hill, 2004



## DRUG THERAPY PROBLEMS TO BE RESOLVED

DRUG THERAPY PROBLEMS	<b>MEDICAL CONDITION AND DRUG THERAPY INVOLVED</b>	<b>INDICATION</b>
		<p><b>Unnecessary Drug Therapy</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> No medical indication</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Duplicate therapy</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Non-drug therapy indicated</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Treating avoidable ADR</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Addictive/recreational</li> </ul> <p><b>Needs Additional Drug Therapy</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Untreated condition</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Preventive/prophylactic</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Synergistic/potentiating</li> </ul>
	<b>MEDICAL CONDITION AND DRUG THERAPY INVOLVED</b>	<b>EFFECTIVENESS</b>
		<p><b>Needs Different Drug Product</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> More effective drug available</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Condition refractory to drug</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Dosage form inappropriate</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Not effective for condition</li> </ul> <p><b>Dosage Too Low</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Wrong dose</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Frequency inappropriate</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Drug interaction</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Duration inappropriate</li> </ul>
<b>MEDICAL CONDITION AND DRUG THERAPY INVOLVED</b>	<b>SAFETY</b>	
	<p><b>Adverse Drug Reaction</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Undesirable effect</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Unsafe drug for patient</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Drug interaction</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Dosage administered or changed too rapidly</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Allergic reaction</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Contraindications present</li> </ul> <p><b>Dosage Too High</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Wrong dose</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Frequency inappropriate</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Duration inappropriate</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Drug interaction</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Incorrect administration</li> </ul>	
<b>MEDICAL CONDITION AND DRUG THERAPY INVOLVED</b>	<b>COMPLIANCE</b>	
	<p><b>Noncompliance</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Directions not understood</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Patient prefers not to take</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Patient forgets to take</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Patient cannot afford</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Cannot swallow/administer</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Drug product not available</li> </ul>	

**No Drug Therapy Problem(s) at this time**



Pharmacotherapy Workup © **NOTES** **CARE PLAN**

**INDICATION**

(Description and history of the present illness or medical condition including previous approaches to treatment and responses)

**GOALS OF THERAPY** (improvement or normalization of signs/symptoms/laboratory tests or reduction of risk)

- 1.
- 2.

**DRUG THERAPY PROBLEMS** to be resolved

None at this time

Therapeutic Alternatives (to resolve the drug therapy problem)

- 1.
- 2.

**PHARMACOTHERAPY PLAN** (Includes current drug therapies and changes)

MEDICATIONS (DRUG PRODUCTS)	DOSAGE INSTRUCTIONS (DOSE, ROUTE, FREQUENCY, DURATION)	NOTES CHANGES

Other interventions to optimize drug therapy

**SCHEDULE FOR NEXT FOLLOW-UP EVALUATION:**

Copyright© 2003-2005 Peters Institute of Pharmaceutical Care, Cipolle RJ, Strand LM, Morley PC  
 Pharmaceutical Care Practice: The Clinician's Guide, McGraw Hill, 2004



Pharmacotherapy Workup© **NOTES** **EVALUATION**

**Medical Condition:** \_\_\_\_\_

Date:                    /        /                    /        /                    /        /

	Outcome Parameter	Pretreatment/ Baseline	First Evaluation	Second Evaluation
<b>EFFECTIVENESS</b>	Sign/symptom			
	Sign/symptom			
	Laboratory value			
	Laboratory value			
<b>SAFETY</b>	Sign/symptoms			
	Signs/symptoms			
	Laboratory value			
	Laboratory value			
	Other			
<b>OUTCOME STATUS</b>	<b>Initial:</b> goals being established, initiate new therapy <b>Resolved:</b> goals achieved, therapy completed <b>Stable:</b> goals achieved, continue same therapy <b>Improved:</b> adequate progress being made, continue same therapy <b>Partial Improvement:</b> progress being made, adjustments in therapy required <b>Unimproved:</b> no progress yet, continue same therapy <b>Worsened:</b> decline in health, adjust therapy <b>Failure:</b> goals not achieved, discontinue current therapy and replace with different therapy			
	New Drug Therapy Problems Identified		<input type="checkbox"/> none at this time <input type="checkbox"/> documented	<input type="checkbox"/> none at this time <input type="checkbox"/> documented

Date	Schedule for next follow-up	Comments

Signature \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

PARAMETERS COMMONLY USED TO EVALUATE EFFECTIVENESS AND/OR SAFETY OF DRUG THERAPY		
PARAMETER	GOALS OF THERAPY (NORMAL VALUES)	CLINICAL USE
Blood pressure	Goals of therapy include: systolic blood pressure of 110–140 mmHg diastolic blood pressure of 75–85 mmHg <130/80 with diabetes or kidney disease	Used to evaluate effectiveness and safety of antihypertensive drug therapies such as diuretics, beta blockers, ACE inhibitors, angiotensin II receptors blockers, aldosterone antagonists, calcium blockers.
Total Cholesterol	Goal of therapy < 200 mg/dl (SI < 5.17 mmol/L)	Represents all of the different kinds of cholesterol in the blood and includes high-density lipids (HDL), low-density lipids (LDL), and triglycerides (TG).
LDL Low-density lipoprotein	Goal of therapy varies depending on other risk factors including cigarette smoking, hypertension, HDL <40mg/dl, family history of CHD and male >45 or female >55. • without other risk factors <160 mg/dl (SI <4.1 mmol/L) • with 2 risk factors <130 mg/dl (SI <3.4 mmol/L) • with CHD and ≥2 risk factors <100 mg/dl (SI <2.6 mmol/L) Optional high risk <70 mg/dl	Used to evaluate the effectiveness of lipid lowering drug therapies including atorvastatin (Lipitor®), fluvastatin (Lescol®), lovastatin (Mevacor®), pravastatin (Pravachol®), rosuvastatin (Crestor®), simvastatin (Zocor®) ezetimibe/simvastatin (Vytorin®) nicotinic acid (Niacin®) gemfibrozil (Lopid®), clofibrate (Atromid-S®) colestipol (Colestid®), cholestyramine (Questran®)
HDL High-density lipoprotein	Goals of therapy > 40 mg/dl (SI >1.04 mmol/L)	HDL removes excess cholesterol from peripheral tissues and is considered "good" cholesterol. Elevated HDL levels are associated with decreased risk for coronary heart disease.
Triglycerides	<160 mg/dl <1.8 mmol/L	Elevated triglycerides considered an independent risk factor for coronary heart disease.
Glucose	Goal of therapy includes: preprandial blood glucose of 80–120 mg/dL bedtime blood glucose of 100–140 mg/dL Fasting plasma glucose of > 126 mg/dL on two occasions is consistent with the diagnosis of diabetes mellitus	Used to evaluate drug therapy to manage hyperglycemia associated with diabetes mellitus including insulin (Humulin®) (Novolin®), glipizide (Glucotrol®), glyburide (Diabeta®) (Mircronase®), pioglitazone (Actos®), rosiglitazone (Avandia®)
HbA <sub>1c</sub> Hemoglobin A <sub>1c</sub>	Goal of therapy < 7% Normal range 4–6%	Used to evaluate the effectiveness of glucose control in patients with diabetes. Reflects the blood glucose control over the past 2 to 3 months.
TSH Thyroid Stimulating Hormone	Goals of therapy include the reduction of TSH levels to the normal range of 0.3–5 µU/ml (SI 0.3–5 mU/L)	Used to evaluate the effectiveness of thyroid replacement therapy to manage hypothyroidism, levothyroxine (Synthroid®). Elevated TSH levels are indicative of hypothyroidism.
INR International Normalized Ratio	Goal of therapy varies with the indication. INR 2.0–3.0 for atrial fibrillation, deep vein thrombosis, pulmonary emboli INR 2.5–3.5 for mechanical prosthetic values	Used to evaluate the effectiveness and safety of anticoagulant therapy. Used to determine dosage adjustments for warfarin (Coumadin®) therapy.
K <sup>+</sup> Serum Potassium	Goal of therapy is to maintain serum potassium within the normal range of 3.5–5.0 mEq/L (SI 3.5–5.0 mmol/L)	Used to evaluate and prevent cardiac toxicity associated with hypokalemia caused by diuretics, diarrhea/vomiting. Can aggravate digoxin (Lanoxin®) toxicity. Hyperkalemia associated with renal dysfunction, ACE inhibitors including captopril (Capoten®), enalapril (Vasotec®), lisinopril (Prinivil®) (Zestril®), ramipril (Altace®)
Creatinine serum creatinine (SCr) creatinine clearance (CrCl)	Creatinine normal range 0.6–1.3 mg/dL (SI 53–115 µmol/L) Creatinine Clearance normal range 80–100 ml/min Drug dosage adjustments often required when CrCl is <30 ml/min	Used as a guideline to determine appropriate dosage of medications which are dependent on renal function for elimination. Used to determine if drug therapy is causing nephrotoxicity or if drugs are accumulating to unsafe levels due to decreasing renal function.
ALT Alanine aminotransferase  AST Aspartate aminotransferase	Normal values Males 10–40 Units/ml Females 8–35 Units/ml  Males 20–40 Units/ml Females 15–30 Units/ml	Used to evaluate liver damage caused by medications such as simvastatin (Zocor®), pravastatin, lovastatin (Mevacor®), atorvastatin (Lipitor®) (Pravachol®), fluvastatin (Lescol®), rosuvastatin (Crestor®), carbamazepine, phenytoin, acetaminophen  If elevated 2–3 times, drug-induced hepatic damage suspected

# Index

---

## A

Abbreviations, 303–318, 329  
Abdomen, 79, 83, 86, 157  
    Chinese pronunciations, 167  
    dialogues, 360–365  
    dictation, 167–168  
    Gujarati pronunciations, 166  
    idiomatic expressions using, 174  
    Korean pronunciations, 167  
    medical conditions and patient  
        complaints, 160–161  
    multiple choice questions, 155–156,  
        176–177  
    parts of speech, 157–164  
    pharmacist/patient dialogues,  
        168–173, 177–180  
    pronunciation exercise, 164–166  
    Russian pronunciations, 167  
    Spanish pronunciations, 166  
    true/false questions, 155, 175–176  
    Vietnamese pronunciations, 166  
    vocabulary, 156–157, 161–164  
    word forms, 157–161  
Abdominal, 98, 164  
Abdominal pain, 156  
Abscess, 10  
Absorbency, 233  
Absorbent, 240, 247  
Absorption, 157, 164  
Ache, 79, 81, 86, 183  
Aching, 190  
Acne, 6, 10  
Acute, 112  
Acute pyelonephritis, 235  
Acuteness, 105  
Adam's apple, 82  
Addison's disease, 86  
Adenoids, 59  
Adenomyosis, 281, 284–285, 295  
Adrenaline, 138  
“After one's blood,” 95  
Agitated, 77  
Agitation, 79, 86, 207  
Airplane ear, 28, 30–31, 33  
Airway, 112  
Alcoholic cirrhosis, 253, 256  
Alcoholism, 255, 261  
“All ears,” 25, 44

Allergens, 53, 55, 107–108  
Allergic, 54, 71  
Allergy, 53  
Alopecia, 6–7, 10  
Alzheimer's disease, 207, 210,  
    212–213, 216  
Amenorrhea, 275, 277, 279, 283–285, 293  
Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis,  
    211–214, 216  
Anemia, 81, 86  
Aneurysm, 129, 131, 134, 138  
Angina, 129–131, 133, 136, 138, 150  
Angioplasty, 138  
Ankylosing spondylitis, 185, 188, 190  
Antihistamines, 55, 58–59  
Anus, 157, 164  
Anxiety, 131, 138, 149  
Aorta, 131, 138  
Aortic aneurysm, 134  
Appendicitis, 155, 159  
Appendix, 157, 164  
Appetite, 81, 86  
Armpit, 86  
Arrhythmia, 138  
Arteriosclerosis, 132, 134–135  
Artery, 131, 134, 138  
Arthritis, 181, 183, 186, 190  
Ascites, 255, 261  
Aspirate, 216  
Aspiration, 209  
Asthma, 103, 105, 107, 110, 112, 122  
Asthmatic, 105  
Astigmatism, 33  
Atherosclerosis, 131, 133–134, 138  
Athlete's foot, 1, 20  
Atonic, 216  
Atonicity, 209  
Atrial fibrillation, 135, 138  
Atrophic vaginitis, 281, 284–285, 295  
Autoimmune, 82, 183, 190  
Autoimmune hepatitis, 253, 256–260,  
    268–270

## B

Backwash, 164  
Bacteria, 277  
Bacterial vaginosis, 285  
“Bad mouth,” 67

Balance, 209, 216  
Barking cough, 107  
Barrett's esophagus, 155, 159  
“Bated breath,” 120  
“Beat one's brains,” 224  
Bed wetting, 240  
“Behind one's back,” 199  
Belch, 158, 160, 163–164  
Belly button, 164  
Bellyache, 158, 164  
“Bend someone's ear,” 42  
Benign, 86  
Benign prostatic hyperplasia, 232  
Bile, 164  
Bile duct, 261  
Bipolar disorder, 211, 216  
Birth control, 285  
Birthmark, 10  
“Bite someone's head off,” 224, 226  
Black nail, 10  
Black toe, 7, 10  
Bladder, 240  
Bladder training, 240  
Bleed, 53  
Blink, 27–28  
Blinking, 33  
Blister, 1, 4, 10, 21, 56  
Bloating, 158–159, 163–164, 176–177  
Block, 53  
Blocked nose, 56, 59  
Blood, 79, 86, 95  
“Blood boil,” 95–97  
“Blood from a stone,” 95  
“Blood is thicker than water,” 95–96  
Blood pressure, 130  
“Blood run cold,” 95–96  
Bloodshot, 30, 33  
Blood-streaked, 112  
Blood-tinged, 112  
Blow, 53  
Bluish color, 112  
Blur, 27, 33  
Blurred vision, 26  
“Boggles the mind,” 224  
Boil, 4, 10  
Bone marrow, 82, 86  
“Bone of contention,” 199  
“Bone to pick,” 199

- Bony lump, 190  
 Booger, 55, 59  
 “Bored stiff,” 199  
 Bout, 164  
 Bowel, 164  
 Bowel movement, 86  
 Bradycardia, 131, 138  
 “Break one’s back,” 199, 201  
 Breakout, 10  
 Breast lump, 285  
 Breath, 78  
 “Breath of fresh air,” 120, 123  
 “Breathe down someone’s neck,” 120  
 “Breathe easy,” 120  
 Brittle, 4, 6, 10  
 Brittleness, 183, 190  
 Bronchial, 106  
 Bronchial tubes, 110  
 Bronchitis, 103, 105, 107–109, 112, 123  
 Bronchodilator, 105, 107–109  
 Bruise, 4, 10, 20  
 Bruising, 56, 81  
 Bulge, 27, 44  
 Bulginess, 27  
 Bulging eye, 33  
 Bump, 4, 7, 10, 44, 54  
 Bumpy, 29  
 Burning, 232  
 Burp, 164  
 Bursitis, 181, 190  
 “Butterflies in one’s stomach,” 174, 176  
 Buzzing, 34
- C**
- Canker sore, 51–52, 54, 57, 59  
 “Can’t stomach someone or something,” 174, 176  
 Cardiac catheterization, 138  
 Cardiomyopathy, 138  
 Cardiovascular system  
   Chinese pronunciations, 141  
   dialogues, 354–360  
   dictation, 141–142  
   Gujarati pronunciations, 140–141  
   idiomatic expressions using, 147–148  
   Korean pronunciations, 141  
   medical conditions and patient complaints, 134–135  
   multiple choice questions, 129–130, 135–137, 149–151  
   parts of speech, 131–138  
   pharmacist/patient dialogues, 142–147, 151–154  
   pronunciation exercise, 138–140  
   Russian pronunciations, 141  
   Spanish pronunciations, 140  
   true/false questions, 129, 137, 149  
   Vietnamese pronunciations, 140  
   vocabulary, 130–131, 135–138  
   word forms, 131–133
- Carpal tunnel syndrome, 190  
 Cartilage, 190  
 Cataract, 25, 29, 33–34  
 “Catch one’s breath,” 120  
 Catheter, 237, 240  
 Cauliflower ear, 34  
 Celiac disease, 161–162, 164  
 Cerebral hemorrhage, 138  
 Cerebrovascular accident, 138  
 Cervical cancer, 280  
 Cervicitis, 281, 283  
 Cervix, 277, 285  
 Chapped lips, 51, 59, 71  
 Cheek, 59  
 Chest  
   Chinese pronunciations, 114  
   dialogues, 349–354  
   dictation, 114–115  
   Gujarati pronunciations, 113–114  
   idiomatic expressions using, 120  
   Korean pronunciations, 114  
   medical conditions and patient complaints, 107–109  
   multiple choice questions, 103–104, 122–123  
   parts of speech, 105–111  
   pharmacist/patient dialogues, 115–119, 123–127  
   pronunciation exercise, 86–87  
   Russian pronunciations, 114  
   Spanish pronunciations, 113  
   true/false questions, 103, 122  
   Vietnamese pronunciations, 113  
   vocabulary, 104–105  
   word forms, 105–109
- Chiggers, 10  
 Chills, 105, 112  
 “Chills up/down one’s spine,” 199  
 Chinese pronunciations, 13, 36, 62, 89, 114, 141, 167, 193, 218, 242, 262, 288  
 Chipped tooth, 60  
 Chlamydia, 293–294  
 Cholesterol, 129, 131, 138  
 “Chopped liver,” 254  
 Chronic bronchitis, 109  
 Chronic infection, 110  
 Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 103, 108–110, 112  
 Chronicity, 105  
 Cigarettes, 107  
 Circulation, 131  
 Cirrhosis, 253–256, 258–261, 268, 270  
 Clammy, 112  
 Claudication, 134  
 Clear, 55  
 Clog, 27, 34, 54  
 Clogged nose, 60  
 Clogging, 134  
 Clot, 131, 138
- Cloud, 53  
 Cloudiness, 53  
 Cloudy discharge, 60  
 Coagulability, 132  
 Coagulation, 132, 138  
 Coarse, 10, 81  
 Cold intolerance, 81–82, 86  
 Cold sore, 51, 60  
 Collagen, 183, 190  
 Collapse, 105  
 Collapsed lung, 109, 112  
 Collapsibility, 105  
 Colon, 158, 164  
 Colon cancer, 163  
 Colostomy, 164  
 Community-acquired bladder infection, 236–237  
 Compulsion, 209  
 Concentration, 81  
 Condoms, 280, 285, 294  
 Congenital, 139  
 Congenital heart disease, 130  
 Congested, 51–52  
 Congestion, 53, 60, 129  
 Congestive heart failure, 130, 134, 149  
 Conjunctivitis, 25, 34  
 Connective tissue, 190  
 Constipation, 77, 79, 81, 86, 96, 156, 158–159, 163–164, 176  
 Contact lens, 34  
 Contagion, 53, 253, 255  
 Contagious, 56, 109, 269  
 Contaminant, 270  
 Contamination, 255, 261  
 Contents, 240  
 Contraception, 278, 280  
 Contraceptive, 278, 285  
 Contract, 240  
 Contraction, 158, 164  
 Controllability, 278  
 Coordination, 79, 86  
 COPD, 103, 108–110, 112  
 Cornea, 34  
 Cough, 53, 107  
 Cough up, 107  
 Coughing, 53, 55, 60  
 Crack, 4, 53  
 Cracked, 10  
 Cracked lips, 60  
 Crackles, 112  
 Cramp, 132, 139, 158, 165, 278, 285  
 Creak, 105  
 Creaking, 112  
 Crohn’s disease, 156, 159, 161–162  
 Cross-eyed, 34  
 Croup, 105, 107–108, 110, 112  
 Crushing sensation, 139, 150  
 Crust, 4, 31  
 Crusty, 10, 29  
 Crusty eyelid, 34, 45

- Cushing's disease, 86  
 Cuticle, 10  
 Cyst, 6, 10, 285  
 Cystic fibrosis, 107–109, 112  
 Cystitis, 231, 234–236, 238–240
- D**
- “Dance one's heart out,” 148  
 Dandruff, 1, 6–7, 10  
 Deaf, 34  
 Deafness, 27  
 Debilitation, 183, 191, 202  
 Decongestants, 55, 60  
 Deformity, 183, 191  
 Degeneration, 183  
 Degenerative, 191, 226  
 Delirious, 77  
 Delirium, 77, 79, 83, 86, 96  
 Demented, 209  
 Dementia, 207, 213–214, 216  
 Dentures, 60  
 Depression, 207–209, 211–214, 216, 227  
 Dermatitis, 10  
 Deterioration, 201  
 Deviated septum, 51, 56, 60  
 Dexterity, 207, 210, 216  
 Diabetes, 77, 79, 81–83, 85–86, 97, 133, 136, 236  
 Diagnosed, 81  
 Diaper rash, 10  
 Diaphragm, 158, 165, 285  
 Diarrhea, 81, 156, 158, 165  
 “Difficult to stomach,” 174, 176  
 Digestion, 158, 165, 176  
 Diphtheria, 105, 112  
 Discharge, 26, 30  
 Disorder, 81  
 Disorientation, 207, 210, 216  
 Distorted, 34  
 Distortion, 27  
 Distracted, 216  
 Distraction, 210  
 Diuretic, 132, 139  
 Diverticula, 159, 161, 165  
 Diverticular disease, 155  
 Diverticulitis, 155, 165  
 Diverticulosis, 159, 165  
 Dizziness, 27  
 Dizzy, 34, 83  
 “Don't hold your breath,” 120  
 Double vision, 30, 34  
 Double voiding, 240  
 Douche, 285  
 Drain, 34, 240  
 Drainage, 28, 44, 55, 233  
 Dribble, 233, 240, 248  
 Drip, 54  
 Drool, 54, 56, 60  
 Droop, 28  
 Droopy eye, 25
- Drowsiness, 54, 80–81  
 Drowsy, 55, 86  
 Dry cough, 60  
 Dry eye, 30, 32–34, 44  
 Dry mouth, 51, 56, 60  
 Dryness, 4  
 Duct, 255  
 Dysfunction, 278  
 Dysmenorrhea, 278, 280, 284–285  
 Dyspareunia, 285  
 Dysphagia, 158, 161, 165  
 Dyspnea, 104–105, 110, 112
- E**
- Ear(s)
- Chinese pronunciations, 36
  - dialogues, 336–338
  - dictation, 36–37
  - Gujarati pronunciations, 36
  - idiomatic expressions using, 41–42
  - Korean pronunciations, 36
  - medical conditions and patient complaints, 29–30
  - multiple choice questions, 25–26, 43–45
  - parts of speech, 27–33
  - pharmacist/patient dialogues, 37–41, 45–49
  - pronunciation exercise, 33–35
  - Spanish pronunciations, 35
  - true/false questions, 25, 43
  - Vietnamese pronunciations, 35
  - vocabulary, 26–27, 31–33
  - word forms, 27–30
- Ear infection, 25, 29, 31  
 Ear lobe, 34  
 Ear plugs, 30  
 Ear popping, 25  
 Ear wax, 25  
 Earache, 25, 34  
 Eardrum, 28, 31  
 Echocardiogram, 139  
 Ectopic, 278  
 Ectopic pregnancy, 279, 285, 294  
 Eczema, 4, 10  
 Edema, 105, 112, 132, 139  
 Ejaculation, 278, 285  
 Electric shock, 216  
 Electrocardiogram, 139  
 Embolism, 105, 132, 139  
 Emergency contraception, 280, 284  
 Emphysema, 103–104, 106–107, 109–110  
 Emphysemic, 122  
 Emptiness, 233  
 Encephalopathy, 255  
 Endocrine system
- Chinese pronunciations, 89
  - dialogues, 345–349
  - dictation, 89–90
- Gujarati pronunciations, 88  
 idiomatic expressions using, 94–95  
 Korean pronunciations, 88  
 medical conditions and patient complaints, 82–83  
 multiple choice questions, 77–78, 96–98  
 parts of speech, 79–85  
 pharmacist/patient dialogues, 90–96, 98–101  
 pronunciation exercise, 86–87  
 Russian pronunciations, 89  
 Spanish pronunciations, 88  
 true/false questions, 77, 96  
 Vietnamese pronunciations, 88  
 vocabulary, 78–79  
 word forms, 79–83
- Endometrial cancer, 282, 294  
 Endometriosis, 278, 281, 284–285, 294–295  
 Enlarged prostate, 237, 239–240  
 Enlarged spleen, 77  
 Enlargement, 80–81, 86, 233  
 Epigastric area, 160, 165  
 Epigastrium, 158  
 Epilepsy, 207, 210–212, 215, 217, 227  
 Epinephrine, 139  
 Episode, 106  
 Episodic, 112  
 Erectile dysfunction, 275, 279, 283–284, 286, 293–294  
 Erection, 278  
 Erode, 165  
 Erodibility, 158  
 Erythrocyte sedimentation rate, 191  
 Esophagus, 155, 158, 165  
 Exacerbation, 132, 139, 150, 217  
 Excessive, 54, 70  
 Excessiveness, 54  
 Excrete, 10  
 Excretion, 4  
 Exertion, 106, 112  
 Exhalation, 106  
 Exhale, 112  
 Exhaustion, 80, 86, 106  
 Expectorant, 106, 108, 123  
 Expectorate, 107, 110, 112, 122  
 Expectoriation, 106
- Eye(s)
- Chinese pronunciations, 36
  - dialogues, 336–338
  - dictation, 36–37
  - Gujarati pronunciations, 36
  - idiomatic expressions using, 41
  - Korean pronunciations, 36
  - medical conditions and patient complaints, 29–30
  - multiple choice questions, 25–26, 43–45
  - parts of speech, 27–33
  - pharmacist/patient dialogues, 37–41, 45–49

- Eye(s) (*Cont.*)  
 pronunciation exercise, 33–35  
 Russian pronunciations, 36  
 Spanish pronunciations, 35  
 true/false questions, 25, 43  
 Vietnamese pronunciations, 35  
 vocabulary, 27, 31–33  
 word forms, 27–30
- Eye herpes, 34  
 Eye pressure, 34  
 Eye strain, 30, 34  
 “Eye to eye,” 26  
 Eyeball, 34  
 Eyelid, 29  
 “Eyes are bigger than one’s stomach,”  
 174–175  
 “Eyes in the back of one’s head,” 41, 43  
 “Eyes like a hawk,” 41, 43–44  
 “Eyes were glued,” 41–42
- F**
- Faintness, 132, 139  
 Fallopian tube, 286  
 Farsighted, 30–31, 34  
 Farsightedness, 33  
 Fatigue, 80–81, 86, 108, 123, 135  
 Febrile, 112  
 Fecal impaction, 155, 159, 162, 176  
 Fecal incontinence, 161  
 Feces, 158–159, 165  
 “Feel it in my bones,” 182  
 “Feel something in one’s bones,” 199  
 Fertile, 286  
 Fertility, 275, 278  
 Fever, 106  
 Fever blisters, 52, 56–57, 59–60, 71  
 Fibrillation, 135  
 Fibrocystic breasts, 286  
 Fibroid, 278, 286  
 Fibromyalgia, 182, 185–187,  
 190–191, 203  
 Fibrosis, 106  
 Fine, 10  
 Flakes, 4, 30  
 Flakiness, 4  
 Flaky, 1, 10  
 Flare, 165  
 Flatulence, 165  
 Flexibility, 183, 191  
 Floaters, 29, 34  
 Flow, 233, 240, 247  
 Fluid, 28–30, 34  
 Fluidity, 28  
 Flushness, 132, 139  
 Flutter, 130, 139  
 “Foam at the mouth,” 67, 70  
 Focus, 28–29, 34, 45  
 Foreign body, 25, 34  
 Foreign objects, 29  
 Forgetfulness, 210, 217
- Fracture, 183, 186, 191  
 “From the bottom of one’s heart,” 147  
 Froth, 106, 112  
 Frothiness, 278  
 Frothy discharge, 286  
 Functional incontinence, 236, 239  
 Fungal infection, 10  
 Fungus, 56  
 Fusion, 183, 191  
 Fuzz, 28  
 Fuzziness, 28  
 Fuzzy, 34
- G**
- Gag, 54  
 Gag reflex, 60  
 Gait, 217  
 Gallbladder, 165  
 Gangrene, 78, 80, 86, 133  
 Gargle, 54–55, 60  
 Gas, 159, 165  
 Gash, 7, 10  
 Gasping, 139  
 Gastric, 177  
 Gastric ulcers, 161, 165  
 Gastritis, 161, 164–165  
 Gastroenteritis, 160, 162, 164–165  
 Gastroesophageal reflux disease, 155,  
 159–160, 162–163  
 Gastrointestinal system  
 Chinese pronunciations, 167  
 dialogues, 360–365  
 dictation, 167–168  
 Gujarati pronunciations, 166  
 idiomatic expressions using, 174  
 Korean pronunciations, 167  
 medical conditions and patient  
 complaints, 160–161  
 multiple choice questions, 155–156,  
 176–177  
 parts of speech, 157–164  
 pharmacist/patient dialogues,  
 168–173, 177–180  
 pronunciation exercise, 164–166  
 Russian pronunciations, 167  
 Spanish pronunciations, 166  
 true/false questions, 155, 175–176  
 Vietnamese pronunciations, 166  
 vocabulary, 156–157, 161–164  
 word forms, 157–161
- Generalized anxiety disorder, 207, 211,  
 214–216  
 Generalized seizures, 208  
 Genital herpes, 275, 282–283, 285  
 “Get in my hair,” 18–19  
 “Get off one’s back,” 199  
 “Get something off your chest,”  
 103, 120  
 “Get under my skin,” 17, 19  
 Gingivitis, 60
- Gland, 86  
 Glare, 28–29, 34  
 Glaucoma, 25, 34  
 Glucose, 77, 81–82, 86  
 Gluten, 159  
 Goiter, 81, 84, 86  
 Gonorrhea, 275, 278–279, 281,  
 284–286, 294  
 “Good eye,” 41  
 “Good head on one’s shoulders,” 208  
 Gout, 181, 183, 185–186, 188,  
 190–191, 202  
 Gouty arthritis, 184  
 Grade, 83  
 Grand mal seizure, 207  
 Graves disease, 78, 85–86  
 “Green behind the ears,” 43  
 “Grin from ear to ear,” 42  
 Grit, 28  
 Grittiness, 28  
 Gritty, 34  
 Gujarati pronunciations, 12, 36, 62, 88,  
 113–114, 140–141, 166, 192, 218,  
 241, 262, 287  
 Gums, 60
- H**
- Hacking cough, 104, 112  
 Hair  
 Chinese pronunciations, 13  
 dialogues, 333–336  
 Gujarati pronunciations, 12  
 idiomatic expressions using, 18  
 Korean pronunciations, 12–13  
 loss of, 10  
 medical conditions and patient  
 complaints, 5–7  
 multiple-choice questions for, 1–2,  
 20–21  
 parts of speech, 3–9  
 pharmacist/patient dialogues  
 involving, 14–17, 21–23  
 pronunciations, 10–11  
 Russian pronunciations, 13  
 Spanish pronunciations, 12  
 true/false questions regarding,  
 1, 19–20  
 Vietnamese pronunciations, 12  
 vocabulary for, 3, 7–9  
 word forms, 3–7  
 “Hair stand on end,” 18–19  
 Hairy tongue, 60  
 Halitosis, 51, 56, 58, 60, 70  
 Halos, 29, 34  
 “Hang one’s head,” 224, 227  
 Hard, 149  
 “Hard as nails,” 18  
 “Hard nosed,” 67, 70  
 “Hard to stomach,” 174  
 Hardening, 132, 139



- “Hardly have time to breathe,” 120  
 Hashimoto’s disease, 84–86  
 “Have a heart,” 147  
 Hay fever, 60  
 Head lice, 6, 10, 20  
 Hearing loss, 29, 34  
 Heart  
   Chinese pronunciations, 141  
   dialogues, 354–360  
   dictation, 141–142  
   Gujarati pronunciations, 140–141  
   idiomatic expressions using, 147–148  
   Korean pronunciations, 141  
   medical conditions and patient complaints, 134–135  
   multiple choice questions, 129–130, 135–137, 149–151  
   parts of speech, 131–138  
   pharmacist/patient dialogues, 142–147, 151–154  
   pronunciation exercise, 138–140  
   Russian pronunciations, 141  
   Spanish pronunciations, 140  
   true/false questions, 129, 137, 149  
   Vietnamese pronunciations, 140  
   vocabulary, 130–131, 135–138  
   word forms, 131–133  
 Heart attack, 129, 133–134, 138  
 Heart failure, 129, 133–136, 138–139  
 “Heart of gold,” 147, 149  
 “Heart of stone,” 147, 149  
 “Heart sank,” 148  
 “Heart skips a beat,” 147, 149  
 “Heart was in the right place,” 147  
 Heartburn, 139, 155, 159–160, 165  
 “Heart-to-heart,” 147  
 Heat intolerance, 86  
 “Heavy heart,” 147, 149  
 Hematuria, 233, 240  
 Hemochromatosis, 259, 261  
 Hemolysis, 255  
 Hemolytic anemia, 261  
 Hemorrhage, 134  
 Hemorrhoids, 158, 160, 162, 165  
 Hepatic encephalopathy, 258–259, 261, 269  
 Hepatic system  
   Chinese pronunciations, 262  
   dialogues, 381–386  
   dictation, 263–264  
   Gujarati pronunciations, 262  
   idiomatic expressions using, 268  
   Korean pronunciations, 262  
   medical conditions and patient complaints, 257–258  
   multiple choice questions, 253–254, 269–270  
   parts of speech, 255–260  
   pharmacist/patient dialogues, 264–268, 270–274  
   pronunciation exercise, 261–262  
   Russian pronunciations, 263  
   Spanish pronunciations, 262  
   true/false questions, 253, 268–269  
   Vietnamese pronunciations, 262  
   vocabulary, 254–255, 258–260  
   word forms, 255–258  
 Hepatitis A, 253, 256–257, 259–260, 268, 270  
 Hepatitis B, 253–254, 256, 259–260, 268–269  
 Hepatitis C, 253, 256, 259–260, 268  
 Hiatal hernia, 155, 159–160, 165  
 High blood pressure, 139  
 “Hit between the eyes,” 41, 197  
 Hives, 10  
 Hoarse voice, 60  
 Hoarseness, 54  
 Hodgkin’s lymphoma, 85–86  
 “Hold your tongue,” 68  
 Hormone, 80–82, 86, 278, 286  
 Hot flashes, 275, 279, 286, 293  
 Human papillomavirus, 281–283, 285  
 Hyperglycemia, 83–84  
 Hypertension, 132, 139  
 Hyperthyroidism, 77, 85–86  
 Hypoglycemia, 77, 80  
 Hypothyroidism, 77, 82, 85–86, 97  
 Hysterectomy, 278, 281, 284, 286, 295
- I**  
 Idiomatic expressions  
   back, 198–199  
   blood, 95  
   bone, 198–199  
   brain, 224  
   chest, 120  
   ears, 41–42  
   endocrine system, 94–95  
   eyes, 41  
   hair, 18  
   head, 224  
   heart, 147–148  
   hepatic system, 268  
   joint, 198–199  
   lung, 120  
   lymphatic system, 94–95  
   mind, 224  
   mouth, 67–68  
   muscle, 198–199  
   musculoskeletal system, 198–199  
   nails, 18  
   nose, 67  
   reproductive system, 293  
   respiratory system, 120  
   skin, 17–18  
   spine, 198–199  
   stiff, 198–199  
   stomach, 174  
   urinary system, 247
- Immune, 191  
 Immune globulin, 258, 261  
 Immune system, 86  
 Immunization, 183, 255, 261  
 Impaction, 156  
 Impairment, 210  
 Impede, 240  
 Impediment, 233  
 Incontinence, 80, 86, 158–159, 161, 165, 231, 233, 239–240  
 Indigestion, 86, 158, 160–161, 164–165  
 Infected, 29  
 Infection, 25, 51  
 Infertility, 275, 278, 280, 286, 295  
 Inflamed sinuses, 55  
 Inflammation, 4, 10, 29–30, 56, 81  
 Inflexible, 202  
 Influenza, 106, 112  
 Ingrown nail, 10  
 Inhalant, 106  
 Inhalation, 103, 106  
 Inhale, 112  
 Inhaler, 103, 106  
 Inoperability, 255, 261  
 Inseminate, 286  
 Insemination, 278  
 Insomnia, 80–81, 87  
 Insomniac, 80  
 Insulin, 81–82, 87  
 Intercourse, 286  
 Intermittence, 132  
 Intermittent claudication, 139  
 Interstitial cystitis, 231, 234–235, 239–240, 248  
 Intestine, 158  
 Intolerable, 97  
 Intolerance, 77, 80  
 Intolerant, 97  
 Intrauterine device, 286  
 Involuntariness, 233  
 Involuntary contraction, 240  
 Irregular heartbeat, 139  
 Irreversibility, 210, 217  
 Irritable, 56  
 Irritable bowel syndrome, 155, 159–160, 163–164  
 Irritant, 4  
 Irritation, 4, 10, 54  
 Ischemia, 132–133, 136, 139, 149  
 Isolation, 210, 217  
 Itch, 4, 10  
 Itchiness, 4  
 Itching, 55  
 Itchy, 21, 25, 29  
 Itchy throat, 60
- J**  
 Jaundice, 28, 34, 256, 258, 261  
 Joint, 184, 191

**K**

“Keep an eye out,” 41, 198  
 “Keep me abreast,” 276  
 “Keep one’s head,” 224  
 “Keep your hair on,” 18  
 “Keep your head above water,” 224  
 “Keep your nose clean,” 67  
 Kegel exercises, 240, 247  
 Keloid, 2, 6, 11  
 Kidney infection, 231, 236–237,  
 239–240  
 Knife-like pain, 112  
 Knuckle, 184, 191  
 Korean pronunciations, 12–13, 36, 62,  
 88, 114, 141, 167, 192, 218, 241,  
 262, 288

**L**

Labored, 107  
 Labored breathing, 112, 123  
 Laceration, 2, 4, 11  
 Lactation, 278–279, 286  
 Lapse, 210, 217  
 Lazy eye, 29, 34  
 Leak, 231, 233, 240  
 “Lend an ear,” 41  
 Lesion, 11  
 “Let my hair down,” 18  
 Lethargy, 77, 80, 87  
 Leukemia, 77, 84–85  
 Lice, 6  
 Ligament, 184, 191  
 Light therapy, 217  
 Lightheaded, 83–84, 87  
 Lightheadedness, 80  
 Limp, 134  
 Lips, 68  
 Liver cancer, 254  
 Liver transplant, 261  
 “Lose one’s head,” 224, 226  
 Lou Gehrig’s disease, 212  
 Lower esophageal sphincter, 165  
 Low-grade, 108  
 Lump, 28  
 Lung  
   Chinese pronunciations, 114  
   dialogues, 349–354  
   dictation, 114–115  
   Gujarati pronunciations, 113–114  
   idiomatic expressions using, 120  
   Korean pronunciations, 114  
   medical conditions and patient  
   complaints, 107–109  
   multiple choice questions, 103–104,  
   122–123  
   parts of speech, 105–111  
   pharmacist/patient dialogues,  
   115–119, 123–127  
   pronunciation exercise, 86–87  
   Russian pronunciations, 114

Spanish pronunciations, 113  
 true/false questions, 103, 122  
 Vietnamese pronunciations, 113  
 vocabulary, 104–105  
 word forms, 105–109  
 Lupus, 182, 184–185, 187, 190–191  
 Lymph nodes, 77–78, 87  
 Lymphatic system  
   Chinese pronunciations, 89  
   dialogues, 345–349  
   dictation, 89–90  
   Gujarati pronunciations, 88  
   idiomatic expressions using, 94–95  
   Korean pronunciations, 88  
   medical conditions and patient  
   complaints, 82–83  
   multiple choice questions, 77–78,  
   96–98  
   parts of speech, 79–85  
   pharmacist/patient dialogues, 90–96,  
   98–101  
   pronunciation exercise, 86–87  
   Russian pronunciations, 89  
   Spanish pronunciations, 88  
   true/false questions, 77, 96  
   Vietnamese pronunciations, 88  
   vocabulary, 78–79  
   word forms, 79–83  
 Lymphoma, 77, 82, 85

**M**

Macular degeneration, 34  
 “Make my mouth water,” 67  
 “Make my skin crawl,” 18  
 “Make one’s blood boil,” 95–97  
 Malaise, 87  
 Malignant, 87  
 Manic-depressive disorder, 211, 227  
 Marfan syndrome, 181  
 Mask, 80, 87  
 Mastectomy, 286  
 Mastitis, 275, 278, 286, 293  
 Measles, 87  
 Medical conditions  
   cardiovascular system, 134–135  
   chest, 107–109  
   ears, 29–30  
   endocrine system, 82–83  
   eyes, 29–30  
   hair, 5–7  
   heart, 134–135  
   hepatic system, 257–258  
   lung, 107–109  
   lymphatic system, 82–83  
   mental health, 212–213  
   mouth, 55–56  
   musculoskeletal system, 185–187  
   nails, 5–7  
   neurologic system, 212–213  
   nose, 55–56  
   reproductive system, 280–282  
   respiratory system, 107–109  
   skin, 5–7  
   urinary system, 235–236  
 “Melt in your mouth,” 67  
 Menarche, 278  
 Menopause, 278–279, 281, 285–286  
 Menorrhagia, 275, 278, 282–284, 286  
 Menses, 286  
 Menstruation, 275, 278, 286, 295  
 Mental health  
   Chinese pronunciations, 218  
   dialogues, 371–378  
   dictation, 219–220  
   Gujarati pronunciations, 218  
   idiomatic expressions using, 223–224  
   Korean pronunciations, 218  
   medical conditions and patient  
   complaints, 212–213  
   multiple choice questions, 207–208,  
   226–227  
   parts of speech, 209–216  
   pharmacist/patient dialogues,  
   220–223, 227–230  
   pronunciation exercise, 216–217  
   Russian pronunciations, 218  
   Spanish pronunciations, 218  
   true/false questions, 207, 226  
   Vietnamese pronunciations, 218  
   vocabulary, 213–214  
   word forms, 209–213  
 Mental impairment, 217  
 Metabolism, 80, 82, 87, 97  
 Middle ear infection, 34  
 “Mind goes blank,” 224  
 “Mind-numbing,” 224  
 Mini-stroke, 136  
 Miscarry, 276, 278, 286  
 Mitral valve prolapse, 135, 139  
 Mittelschmerz, 276, 286  
 Mobility, 182, 184, 191, 203  
 Mobilization, 203  
 Moderation, 158, 165  
 Moist, 11  
 Moistness, 4  
 Mole, 11  
 Mononucleosis, 87  
 Mood swing, 87  
 Morning after pill, 280, 284  
 Mouth  
   Chinese pronunciations, 62  
   dialogues, 341–345  
   dictation, 62–63  
   Gujarati pronunciations, 62  
   idiomatic expressions using, 67–68  
   Korean pronunciations, 62  
   medical conditions and patient  
   complaints, 55–56  
   multiple choice questions, 51–52,  
   70–71

- parts of speech, 53–59  
 pharmacist/patient dialogues, 63–66, 71–75  
 pronunciation exercise, 59–61  
 Russian pronunciations, 62  
 Spanish pronunciations, 61  
 true/false questions, 51, 69–70  
 Vietnamese pronunciations, 61  
 vocabulary, 52–53, 57–59  
 word forms, 53–55
- Mouth sore, 54, 60
- Mucous discharge, 51
- Mucus, 51, 54–56, 59–60
- Multiple sclerosis, 207, 211–215, 217
- Mumbler, 210
- Mumbling speech, 217
- Mumps, 87
- Muscle cramp, 87
- “Muscle one’s way in,” 199
- Muscle wasting, 214
- Musculoskeletal system  
 Chinese pronunciations, 193  
 dialogues, 365–371  
 dictation, 193–194  
 Gujarati pronunciations, 192  
 idiomatic expressions using, 198–199  
 Korean pronunciations, 192  
 medical conditions and patient complaints, 185–187  
 multiple choice questions, 181–182, 202–203  
 parts of speech, 183–190  
 pharmacist/patient dialogues, 194–198, 203–206  
 pronunciation exercise, 190–192  
 Russian pronunciations, 193  
 Spanish pronunciations, 192  
 true/false questions, 181, 201–202  
 Vietnamese pronunciations, 192  
 vocabulary, 182–183, 187–190  
 word forms, 183–185
- “My heart goes out to you,” 130
- Myelin sheath, 217
- Myocardial infarction, 139
- Myoclonic, 217
- N**
- Nail(s)  
 Chinese pronunciations, 13  
 dialogues, 333–316  
 Gujarati pronunciations, 12  
 idiomatic expressions using, 18  
 Korean pronunciations, 12–13  
 medical conditions and patient complaints, 5–7  
 multiple-choice questions for, 1–2, 20–21  
 parts of speech, 3–9  
 pharmacist/patient dialogues involving, 14–17, 21–23  
 pronunciations, 10–11  
 Russian pronunciations, 13  
 Spanish pronunciations, 12  
 true/false questions regarding, 1, 19–20  
 Vietnamese pronunciations, 12  
 vocabulary for, 3, 7–9  
 word forms, 3–7
- “Nail biting,” 18
- Nasal, 54
- Nasal aspirator, 57
- Nasal congestion, 51
- Nasal discharge, 55, 60
- Nasal flaring, 109, 112
- Nasal passages, 56, 58
- Nausea, 80, 87
- Nauseation, 80
- Navel, 165
- Nearsighted, 34
- Nearsightedness, 33
- “Need to take a piss,” 232, 247
- Nervous, 87
- Nervousness, 80
- Neurologic system  
 Chinese pronunciations, 218  
 dialogues, 371–378  
 dictation, 219–220  
 Gujarati pronunciations, 218  
 idiomatic expressions using, 223–224  
 Korean pronunciations, 218  
 medical conditions and patient complaints, 212–213  
 multiple choice questions, 207–208, 226–227  
 parts of speech, 209–216  
 pharmacist/patient dialogues, 220–223, 227–230  
 pronunciation exercise, 216–217  
 Russian pronunciations, 218  
 Spanish pronunciations, 218  
 true/false questions, 207, 226  
 Vietnamese pronunciations, 218  
 vocabulary, 213–214  
 word forms, 209–213
- Neurology, 210, 217
- Night sweats, 81
- Night vision, 34
- Nipple, 286
- Nitroglycerin, 139
- “No bones about something,” 199
- Nocturia, 240
- Nocturnal enuresis, 232, 237, 239–240
- Node, 191
- Nodule, 87
- Non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma, 85, 87
- Nose  
 Chinese pronunciations, 62  
 dialogues, 341–345  
 dictation, 62–63  
 Gujarati pronunciations, 62  
 idiomatic expressions using, 67  
 Korean pronunciations, 62  
 medical conditions and patient complaints, 55–56  
 multiple choice questions, 51–52, 70–71  
 parts of speech, 53–59  
 pharmacist/patient dialogues, 63–66, 71–75  
 pronunciation exercise, 59–61  
 Russian pronunciations, 62  
 Spanish pronunciations, 61  
 true/false questions, 51, 69–70  
 Vietnamese pronunciations, 61  
 vocabulary, 52–53, 57–59  
 word forms, 53–55
- “Nose around,” 67
- Nose job, 60
- “Nose out of joint,” 198, 201
- Nose spray, 57
- “Nose to the grindstone,” 67
- Nosebleed, 51, 56, 59–60
- Nostril, 51, 54, 60
- “Not breathe a word,” 120
- “Not have the heart to do something,” 147
- “Not have the stomach for,” 174
- Numbness, 80, 87
- O**
- Obesity, 129
- Obsession, 210
- Obsessive-compulsive disorder, 217
- Obstruction, 106, 158, 165
- Obstructiveness, 106
- Obstructor, 106
- Occult blood, 165
- Oil, 4
- Oiliness, 4
- Oily, 11
- Onset, 217
- Ooze, 4, 11, 21
- Optic nerve, 34
- Oral herpes, 60
- Oral thrush, 56, 58, 60
- Osteoarthritis, 184–187, 189, 191, 203
- Osteomyelitis, 181
- Osteoporosis, 181–182, 184, 187–189, 191
- “Out of breath,” 122
- Outbreaks, 261
- Ovarian cancer, 282
- Ovarian cyst, 276, 282
- Ovary, 278, 286
- Overactive, 77, 87
- Overactive bladder, 231, 234–236, 238–240, 248
- Overactivity, 80, 233
- Overflow, 240
- Overflow incontinence, 239

- Overproduction, 87  
Ovulation, 278, 286
- P**
- Pacemaker, 130  
Paget's disease, 181  
"Paid through the nose," 51  
Pain, 134  
Painful, 55  
Palate, 58, 60  
Paleness, 80–81  
Pallor, 80, 87  
Palpitations, 129, 132, 139  
Pancreas, 158, 165  
Panic, 210, 226  
Panic attack, 217  
Pap smear, 286  
Paralysis, 130, 132, 139, 150  
Parkinson's disease, 207, 211–212, 214, 216, 232  
Partial seizures, 208  
"Pat on the back," 199, 201  
Patch, 4, 11  
Patient complaints  
  cardiovascular system, 134–135  
  chest, 107–109  
  ears, 29–30  
  endocrine system, 82–83  
  eyes, 29–30  
  hair, 5–7  
  heart, 134–135  
  hepatic system, 257–258  
  lung, 107–109  
  lymphatic system, 82–83  
  mental health, 212–213  
  mouth, 55–56  
  musculoskeletal system, 185–187  
  nails, 5–7  
  neurologic system, 212–213  
  nose, 55–56  
  reproductive system, 280–282  
  respiratory system, 107–109  
  skin, 5–7  
  urinary system, 235–236  
Patient history and physical database  
  form, 322–329  
"Peace of mind," 224  
Peeling, 11  
Pelvic inflammatory disease, 275, 279–280, 284, 286  
Pelvis, 240, 278, 286  
Penis, 278, 286, 293  
Peptic ulcers, 159–160, 162, 165  
Perforated eardrum, 28, 34, 44  
Pericarditis, 135–136  
Perimenopause, 280, 283, 285–286, 294  
Peripheral artery disease, 133, 137, 139  
Peripheral vascular disease, 136, 139  
Peripheral vision, 34  
Pernicious anemia, 261, 269  
Persistence, 106  
Persistent cough, 112, 123  
Perspiration, 106, 112  
Perspiring, 103  
Pertussis, 104, 106, 108, 110, 112  
Pessary, 240  
Pharmacist/patient dialogues  
  answers to, 413–471  
  cardiovascular system, 142–147, 151–154  
  chest, 115–119, 123–127  
  ears, 37–41, 45–49  
  endocrine system, 90–96, 98–101  
  eyes, 37–41, 45–49  
  hair, 14–17, 21–23  
  heart, 142–147, 151–154  
  hepatic system, 264–268, 270–274  
  lung, 115–119, 123–127  
  lymphatic system, 90–96, 98–101  
  mental health, 220–223, 227–230  
  mouth, 63–66, 71–75  
  musculoskeletal system, 194–198, 203–206  
  nails, 14–17, 21–23  
  neurologic system, 220–223, 227–230  
  nose, 63–66, 71–75  
  reproductive system, 289–293, 295–299  
  respiratory system, 115–119, 123–127  
  skin, 14–17, 21–23  
  urinary system, 243–247, 249–252  
Pharmacotherapy workup notes, 473–480  
Pharmacy documentation, 301–332  
Phlegm, 55–57, 59–60  
Phobia, 210, 217  
Photophobia, 33–34  
Photosensitivity, 184, 191  
"Pick someone's brain," 224, 226  
Pick the nose, 60  
"Piece of one's mind," 224, 226  
Pill rolling, 217  
Pimples, 4, 7, 11, 29  
Pink eye, 25–26, 31, 33–34  
Pins and needles, 11  
Pituitary gland, 87  
Plaque, 60, 139  
Platelet, 261  
Pleurisy, 103, 106, 108, 112  
Pneumonia, 103, 106–109  
Pneumothorax, 103, 107  
"Poke your nose into something," 67  
Polycystic ovary syndrome, 280, 286  
Portal hypertension, 261  
Postnasal drip, 51, 55, 57, 60  
Postpartum, 286  
Posture, 184  
Postvoid residual urine, 240  
Pouch, 165  
Pregnancy, 278  
Premature ovarian failure, 282, 284  
Premenstrual syndrome, 276, 281, 286, 293, 295  
Presbyopia, 28–29, 32, 34  
Pressure, 28, 30, 81  
Prickly heat, 11  
Progesterone, 286  
Progress, 210  
Progressive, 217  
Prolapse, 135  
Pronunciations  
  abdomen, 164–166  
  cardiovascular system, 138–140  
  chest, 86–87  
  Chinese variations, 13, 36, 62, 89, 114, 141, 167, 193, 218, 242, 262, 288  
  ears, 33–35  
  endocrine system, 86–87  
  eyes, 33–35  
  gastrointestinal system, 164–166  
  Gujarati variations, 12, 36, 62, 88, 113–114, 140–141, 166, 192, 218, 241, 287  
  hair, 10–11  
  heart, 138–140  
  hepatic system, 261–262  
  Korean variations, 12–13, 36, 62, 88, 114, 141, 167, 192, 218, 241, 262, 288  
  lung, 86–87  
  lymphatic system, 86–87  
  mental health, 216–217  
  mouth, 59–61  
  musculoskeletal system, 190–192  
  nails, 10–11  
  neurologic system, 216–217  
  nose, 59–61  
  reproductive system, 285–287  
  respiratory system, 86–87  
  Russian variations, 13, 36, 62, 89, 114, 141, 167, 193, 218, 242, 263, 288  
  skin, 10–11  
  Spanish variations, 12, 35, 61, 88, 113, 140, 166, 192, 218, 241, 262, 287  
  urinary system, 240–241  
  Vietnamese variations, 12, 35, 61, 88, 113, 140, 166, 192, 218, 241, 262, 287  
Prostate cancer, 231, 234  
Protruding, 77, 81, 87  
Protrusion, 80  
Psoriasis, 4, 11  
Puff, 80, 112  
Puffiness, 80–81, 84, 97  
Puffy, 87  
Pulmonary embolism, 103, 108, 112  
Pulse, 132, 139

- Pump, 139  
Pupil, 34  
Pus, 1–2, 4, 11
- R**
- “Rack one’s brains,” 224  
Radioactive iodine therapy, 84  
Ragweed, 60  
Range of motion, 191  
Rapid breathing, 112  
Rash, 11, 81  
Rectal, 177  
Rectum, 158, 165  
Recurrence, 54  
Reflux, 165  
Regulate, 87  
Regulation, 80  
Regurgitation, 158, 165  
Relapse, 80, 87, 191  
Relief, 54–55  
Relieve, 70  
Remission, 191  
Reproductive system  
  Chinese pronunciations, 288  
  dialogues, 386–391  
  dictation, 288–289  
  Gujarati pronunciations, 287  
  idiomatic expressions using, 293  
  Korean pronunciations, 288  
  medical conditions and patient complaints, 280–282  
  multiple choice questions, 275–276, 294–295  
  parts of speech, 277–285  
  pharmacist/patient dialogues, 289–293, 295–299  
  pronunciation exercise, 285–287  
  Russian pronunciations, 288  
  Spanish pronunciations, 287  
  true/false questions, 275, 293–294  
  Vietnamese pronunciations, 287  
  vocabulary, 276–277, 282–285  
  word forms, 277–282  
Residue, 233  
Respiratory system  
  Chinese pronunciations, 114  
  dialogues, 349–354  
  dictation, 114–115  
  Gujarati pronunciations, 113–114  
  idiomatic expressions using, 120  
  Korean pronunciations, 114  
  medical conditions and patient complaints, 107–109  
  multiple choice questions, 103–104, 122–123  
  parts of speech, 105–111  
  pharmacist/patient dialogues, 115–119, 123–127  
  pronunciation exercise, 86–87  
  Russian pronunciations, 114  
  Spanish pronunciations, 113  
  true/false questions, 103, 122  
  Vietnamese pronunciations, 113  
  vocabulary, 104–105  
  word forms, 105–109  
Rest, 150  
Retention, 80  
Retentiveness, 80  
Retina, 34  
Rheumatism, 184, 191  
Rheumatoid arthritis, 181, 184, 186, 188–189  
Rhinoplasty, 51, 60  
Rigidity, 210, 217, 227  
Ring, 28  
Ringing, 34  
Rouse, 217  
“Run in one’s blood,” 95  
Runny nose, 51, 55, 59–60  
Rupture, 4, 11, 29–30  
Ruptured cyst, 8  
Ruptured eardrum, 31, 33  
Russian pronunciations, 13, 36, 62, 89, 114, 141, 167, 193, 218, 242, 263, 288
- S**
- Saliva, 56, 60  
“Save your breath,” 120  
“Say something under one’s breath,” 120  
Scab, 4, 6–7, 11  
Scabies, 11, 286  
Scales, 11  
Scar, 1, 4, 8, 11  
“Scared stiff,” 199, 202  
Scarred, 21  
Scarring, 30, 261  
Schatzki’s ring, 161–162, 165  
Scleroderma, 181, 185–188, 190–191, 202  
Scrape, 4, 6, 8, 11  
Scratch, 11, 20  
Scratchiness, 55–56  
“Scratching one’s head,” 207  
Scratchy throat, 60  
“Scream at the top of one’s lungs,” 120  
“Sealed lips,” 68  
Seasonal affective disorder, 207–208, 211–216, 227  
Secrete, 34  
Seizures, 207–208, 210, 217  
Semen, 278, 286, 294  
Seminal fluid, 286  
Sensitivity, 184  
Septicemia, 233, 240  
Sex, 279  
Sexually transmitted disease, 286  
Sexually transmitted infection, 286  
Shakiness, 106  
Shaking chills, 112  
Shallow breathing, 104, 112  
Shallowness, 106  
Sharp pain, 112  
Sharpness, 106  
Shingles, 7–8, 11  
Shiver, 106  
Shivering, 112  
“Shivers up/down one’s spine,” 199  
“Shoots his or her mouth off,” 52  
Shortness of breath, 103–104, 108, 112, 123, 135  
“Shouting at the top of one’s lungs,” 103  
Shuffling walk, 217  
Silk, 11  
“Sing one’s heart out,” 148  
Sinus infection, 55–56, 60  
Sinus passages, 60  
Sinusitis, 51  
Sjögren’s syndrome, 181, 184–185, 190–191  
Skin  
  Chinese pronunciations, 13  
  dialogues, 333–336  
  Gujarati pronunciations, 12  
  idiomatic expressions using, 17–18  
  Korean pronunciations, 12–13  
  medical conditions and patient complaints, 5–7  
  multiple-choice questions for, 1–2, 20–21  
  parts of speech, 3–9  
  pharmacist/patient dialogues involving, 14–17, 21–23  
  pronunciations, 10–11  
  Russian pronunciations, 13  
  Spanish pronunciations, 12  
  true/false questions regarding, 1, 19–20  
  Vietnamese pronunciations, 12  
  vocabulary for, 3, 7–9  
  word forms, 3–7  
“Skin deep,” 18  
“Skin of my teeth,” 17  
“Skin off one’s nose,” 67  
Skipping heart beat, 139  
Sleepiness, 82  
“Slip of the tongue,” 68  
Slur, 210  
Slurred speech, 217  
“Smile from ear to ear,” 42  
Smoking, 107–108, 187  
Sneeze, 54  
Sneezing, 60  
Snores, 52, 56  
Snoring, 60  
SOAP notes, 318–322  
Sore, 4, 11  
Sore throat, 59–60  
Spanish pronunciations, 12, 35, 61, 88, 113, 140, 166, 192, 218, 241, 262, 287

- Spasm, 132, 139  
 Sperm, 282, 286, 294  
 Spermicide, 286  
 Spider angioma, 261  
 Spinal tap, 217  
 Spine, 184, 191  
 Spit, 60, 106, 112  
 Sputum, 55–56, 59–60  
 Squeezing, 132, 139, 151  
 Squint, 28, 34  
 Squinter, 28  
 “Stab someone in the back,” 199  
 Stage, 83  
 Stare, 210  
 Staring spells, 217  
 “Stick your nose into something,” 67  
 Stiff, 87, 181, 191  
 “Stiff,” 199  
 “Stiff upper lip,” 68, 195  
 “Stiff-necked,” 199, 202  
 Stiffness, 80, 97, 184  
 Stomach acid, 165  
 Stool, 81, 165  
 Stooped posture, 191, 202, 226  
 Strain, 165  
 Strep throat, 55, 59–60  
 Stress, 184, 191  
 Stress incontinence, 231, 234–235, 239, 247  
 Stretchability, 184, 191  
 Stroke, 129, 133, 135, 139  
 Stuffiness, 54  
 Stuffy nose, 52, 54, 57, 59  
 Sty, 25, 29–31, 33  
 Subside, 191  
 Substance abuse, 281  
 Sufferer, 54–55  
 Suffering, 54  
 Suicide, 210, 217  
 Sunscreen, 11  
 Superficial, 11  
 Superficial wound, 8, 21  
 Susceptible, 191  
 Susceptibility, 184  
 Swallow, 54, 80, 87, 158, 165  
 Swallowing, 56, 156  
 Sweat, 4, 11, 20  
 Swell, 4, 21, 25, 44, 51  
 Swelling, 30, 56, 81, 83  
 Swimmer’s ear, 30, 32–34  
 Swollen, 11, 54  
 Syncope, 132, 139  
 Syndrome, 279  
 Synovitis, 184, 191, 201  
 Syphilis, 279
- T**  
 Tachycardia, 132, 139  
 “Take someone’s words out of his or her mouth,” 68
- Taste buds, 56, 61  
 Tear, 28–30, 34  
 “Tear my hair out,” 18–20, 196  
 Tearfulness, 28  
 Tearing, 30  
 Teething, 56–57, 70–71  
 Temporomandibular joint, 191  
 Tender, 87  
 Tenderness, 54, 80, 158, 165  
 Tendonitis, 181, 191  
 Testicle, 279, 286  
 Testicular cancer, 280, 284, 294  
 Testosterone, 286  
 Therapy, 210  
 “Thick skinned,” 17  
 Thickening, 132, 139  
 Thirst, 80, 87  
 Throb, 132, 139  
 Thrombosis, 133, 139  
 Thrush, 51, 56, 58  
 Thyroid, 77, 80  
 Thyroid cancer, 82  
 Thyroid nodule, 78  
 Thyroiditis, 80  
 TIA, 129, 134  
 Tick bite, 11  
 Tightness, 104, 106, 112, 123  
 Tingle, 54, 61  
 Tingling, 70  
 Tinnitus, 30, 34  
 Toilet, 240  
 Tolerance, 80  
 Tolerated, 98  
 Tongue, 68  
 Tonsils, 61  
 Tooth, 54, 61  
 Total incontinence, 232  
 “Tough as nails,” 18–20  
 Toxic, 255  
 Toxic shock syndrome, 275, 286  
 Toxicity, 269  
 Toxin, 253, 261  
 Trachea, 82  
 Transient ischemic attack, 129, 134  
 Transmission, 279  
 Transplant, 255, 268  
 Transplantation, 135  
 Tremble, 80, 87, 96  
 Trembler, 80  
 Tremor, 80–81, 217  
 Tuberculosis, 103, 109  
 Tug, 28, 35  
 Tugged, 45  
 Tugging, 29  
 Tunnel vision, 26, 33  
 “Turn a deaf ear,” 42  
 “Turn one’s stomach,” 174–175  
 “Turn your stomach,” 156  
 Twitch, 28, 35, 210, 217
- U**  
 Ulcer, 4, 11  
 Ulcerates, 54  
 Ulceration, 4  
 Ulcerative colitis, 156, 159–160, 162, 164  
 “Under one’s nose,” 67  
 Underactive, 87  
 Underarm, 87  
 Underproduction, 87  
 Unquenchable, 87  
 Unsteadiness, 210, 217  
 “Up to your ears,” 42  
 Urethra, 233, 240  
 Urethritis, 231, 235–236, 240, 247  
 Urge incontinence, 238–239  
 Urgency, 155  
 Urinalysis, 233, 240  
 Urinary incontinence, 231–232, 234  
 Urinary sphincter, 240  
 Urinary system  
   Chinese pronunciations, 242  
   dialogues, 377–381  
   dictation, 242–243  
   Gujarati pronunciations, 241  
   idiomatic expressions using, 247  
   Korean pronunciations, 241  
   medical conditions and patient complaints, 235–236  
   multiple choice questions, 231–232, 248–249  
   parts of speech, 233–239  
   pharmacist/patient dialogues, 243–247, 249–252  
   pronunciation exercise, 240–241  
   Russian pronunciations, 242  
   Spanish pronunciations, 241  
   true/false questions, 231, 247  
   Vietnamese pronunciations, 241  
   vocabulary, 232–233, 237–239  
   word forms, 233–236  
 Urinary tract infection, 231–232, 234, 238–240  
 Urinate, 87, 240  
 Urination, 80, 247  
 Urine, 80–81, 233, 240  
 Uterine fibroids, 275, 286  
 Uterus, 279
- V**  
 Vaccination, 261  
 Vaccine, 255  
 Vagina, 279  
 Vaginitis, 275, 279, 281, 286  
 Varices, 268  
 Vein, 132, 139  
 Venereal disease, 287  
 Vertebrae, 191  
 Vertigo, 29, 35  
 Vessel, 132

- Vietnamese pronunciations, 12, 35, 61, 88, 113, 140, 166, 192, 218, 241, 262, 287
- Viral hepatitis, 261
- Virus, 255
- Vocabulary
- abdomen, 156–157, 161–164
  - cardiovascular system, 130–131, 135–138
  - chest, 104–105
  - ears, 26–27, 31–33
  - endocrine system, 78–79
  - eyes, 27, 31–33
  - gastrointestinal system, 156–157, 161–164
  - hair, 3, 7–9
  - heart, 130–131, 135–138
  - hepatic system, 254–255, 258–260
  - lung, 104–105
  - lymphatic system, 78–79
  - mental health, 213–214
  - mouth, 52–53, 57–59
  - musculoskeletal system, 182–183, 187–190
  - nails, 3, 7–9
  - neurologic system, 213–214
  - nose, 52–53, 57–59
  - pharmacy documentation, 302–318
  - reproductive system, 276–277, 282–285
  - respiratory system, 104–105
  - skin, 3, 7–9
  - urinary system, 232–233, 237–239
- Void, 231, 240
- Voluntary muscles, 217
- Volunteer, 210
- Vomit, 132, 139
- W**
- “Wait with bated breath,” 120
  - Walking pneumonia, 107, 113
  - Wanderer, 210
  - Wandering, 217
  - Wart, 7–8, 11
  - “Waste one’s breath,” 120
- Water, 54
- Water retention, 87
- Wax, 28, 30, 35
- Wear and tear, 191
- “Wear one’s heart on one’s sleeve,” 148
- Weight loss, 81
- “Wet behind the ears,” 42
- Wheezer, 106
- Wheezing, 103, 109, 113
- Whooping cough, 108, 113, 122
- Windpipe, 77, 82, 84, 87, 96
- “Work one’s fingers to the bone,” 199
- Workup notes, 473–480
- Wound, 4, 11, 21, 71
- Wrinkles, 11
- Y**
- Yeast, 279
  - Yeast infection, 275, 284, 287, 293
  - “Yell at the top of one’s lungs,” 120, 196
- Z**
- Zit, 11







